International Telecommunication Union

ITU-T

TELECOMMUNICATION
STANDARDIZATION SECTOR
OF ITU

G.992.3
(04/2009)

SERIES G: TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS AND MEDIA, DIGITAL SYSTEMS AND NETWORKS

Digital sections and digital line system – Access networks

Asymmetric digital subscriber line transceivers 2 (ADSL2)

Recommendation ITU-T G.992.3

ITU-T

ITU-T G-SERIES RECOMMENDATIONS

TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS AND MEDIA, DIGITAL SYSTEMS AND NETWORKS

INTERNATIONAL TELEPHONE CONNECTIONS AND CIRCUITS	G.100–G.199
GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS COMMON TO ALL ANALOGUE CARRIER-TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS	G.200–G.299
INDIVIDUAL CHARACTERISTICS OF INTERNATIONAL CARRIER TELEPHONE SYSTEMS ON METALLIC LINES	G.300–G.399
GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF INTERNATIONAL CARRIER TELEPHONE SYSTEMS ON RADIO-RELAY OR SATELLITE LINKS AND INTERCONNECTION WITH METALLIC LINES	G.400–G.449
COORDINATION OF RADIOTELEPHONY AND LINE TELEPHONY	G.450–G.499
TRANSMISSION MEDIA AND OPTICAL SYSTEMS CHARACTERISTICS	G.600–G.699
DIGITAL TERMINAL EQUIPMENTS	G.700–G.799
DIGITAL NETWORKS	G.800–G.899
DIGITAL SECTIONS AND DIGITAL LINE SYSTEM	G.900–G.999
General	G.900–G.909
Parameters for optical fibre cable systems	G.910–G.919
Digital sections at hierarchical bit rates based on a bit rate of 2048 kbit/s	G.920–G.929
Digital line transmission systems on cable at non-hierarchical bit rates	G.930–G.939
Digital line systems provided by FDM transmission bearers	G.940–G.949
Digital line systems	G.950–G.959
Digital section and digital transmission systems for customer access to ISDN	G.960–G.969
Optical fibre submarine cable systems	G.970–G.979
Optical line systems for local and access networks	G.980–G.989
Access networks	**G.990–G.999**
MULTIMEDIA QUALITY OF SERVICE AND PERFORMANCE – GENERIC AND USER-RELATED ASPECTS	G.1000–G.1999
TRANSMISSION MEDIA CHARACTERISTICS	G.6000–G.6999
DATA OVER TRANSPORT – GENERIC ASPECTS	G.7000–G.7999
PACKET OVER TRANSPORT ASPECTS	G.8000–G.8999
ACCESS NETWORKS	G.9000–G.9999

For further details, please refer to the list of ITU-T Recommendations.

Recommendation ITU-T G.992.3

Asymmetric digital subscriber line transceivers 2 (ADSL2)

Summary

Recommendation ITU-T G.992.3 describes asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) transceivers on a metallic twisted pair that allows high-speed data transmission between the network operator end (ATU-C) and the customer end (ATU-R). It defines a variety of frame bearers in conjunction with one of two other services, or without underlying service, dependent on the environment:

1) ADSL transmission simultaneously on the same pair with voiceband service.
2) ADSL transmission simultaneously on the same pair with integrated services digital network (ISDN) (Appendix I or II of Recommendation ITU-T G.961) services.
3) ADSL transmission without underlying service, optimized for deployment with ADSL over voiceband service in the same binder cable.
4) ADSL transmission without underlying service, optimized for deployment with ADSL over ISDN service in the same binder cable.
5) ADSL transmission with specific requirements for Reach Extended ADSL2, simultaneously on the same pair with voiceband service.
6) ADSL transmission with extended upstream bandwidth, simultaneously on the same pair with voiceband service.
7) ADSL transmission on the same pair with voiceband services and operating in an environment with TCM-ISDN (Appendix III of Recommendation ITU-T G.961) services in an adjacent pair.

This Recommendation specifies the physical layer characteristics of the asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) interface to metallic loops.

This Recommendation has been written to help ensure the proper interfacing and interworking of ADSL transmission units at the customer end (ATU-R) and at the network operator end (ATU-C), and also to define the transport capability of the units. Proper operation shall be ensured when these two units are manufactured and provided independently. A single twisted pair of telephone wires is used to connect the ATU-C to the ATU-R. The ADSL transmission units must deal with a variety of wire pair characteristics and typical impairments (e.g., crosstalk and noise).

An ADSL transmission unit can simultaneously convey all of the following: a number of downstream frame bearers; a number of upstream frame bearers; a baseband plain old telephone service (POTS)/ISDN duplex channel; and ADSL line overhead for framing, error control, operations, and maintenance. Systems support a net data rate ranging up to a minimum of 8 Mbit/s downstream and 800 kbit/s upstream. Support of net data rates above 8 Mbit/s downstream and support of net data rates above 800 kbit/s upstream are optional.

This Recommendation defines several optional capabilities and features:

- transport of STM and/or ATM and/or Packets;
- transport of a network timing reference;
- multiple latency paths;
- multiple frame bearers;

- short initialization procedure;
- dynamic rate repartitioning;
- seamless rate adaptation;
- extended impulse noise protection;
- erasure decoding;
- virtual noise;
- impulse noise monitor.

It is the intention of this Recommendation to provide, by negotiation during initialization, for U-interface compatibility and interoperability between transceivers complying with this Recommendation and between transceivers that include different combinations of options.

This Recommendation describes the second generation of ADSL, based on the first generation Recommendation ITU-T G.992.1. It is intended that this Recommendation be implemented in multi-mode devices that support both Recommendations ITU-T G.992.3 and ITU-T G.992.1.

This Recommendation has been written to provide additional features, relative to Recommendation ITU-T G.992.1. Recommendation ITU-T G.992.1 was approved in 1999. Since then, several potential improvements have been identified in areas such as data rate versus loop reach performance, loop diagnostics, deployment from remote cabinets, spectrum control, power control, robustness against loop impairments and radio frequency interference (RFI), and operations and maintenance. This Recommendation provides a new ADSL U-interface specification, including the identified improvements, which ITU-T believes will be most helpful to the ADSL industry.

Relative to Recommendation ITU-T G.992.1, the following application-related features have been added:

- Improved application support for an all-digital mode of operation and voice-over-ADSL operation.
- Packet TPS-TC function, in addition to the existing STM and ATM TPS-TC functions.
- Mandatory support of 8 Mbit/s downstream and 800 kbit/s upstream for TPS-TC function #0 and frame bearer #0.
- Support for inverse multiplexing over ATM (IMA) in the ATM TPS-TC.
- Improved configuration capability for each TPS-TC with configuration of latency, bit error ratio (BER) and minimum, maximum and reserved data rates.

Relative to Recommendation ITU-T G.992.1, the following PMS-TC-related features have been added:

- A more flexible framing, including support for up to 4 frame bearers, 4 latency paths.
- Parameters allowing enhanced configuration of the overhead channel.
- Frame structure with receiver-selected coding parameters.
- Frame structure with optimized use of Reed-Solomon (RS) coding gain.
- Frame structure with configurable latency and bit error ratio.
- Operations, administration and management (OAM) protocol to retrieve more detailed performance monitoring information.
- Enhanced on-line reconfiguration capabilities, including dynamic rate repartitioning.

Relative to Recommendation ITU-T G.992.1, the following PMD-related features have been added:

- New line diagnostics procedures available for both successful and unsuccessful initialization scenarios, loop characterization and trouble-shooting.
- Enhanced on-line reconfiguration capabilities including bitswaps and seamless rate

adaptation.

- Optional short initialization sequence for recovery from errors or fast resumption of operation.
- Optional seamless rate adaptation with line rate changes during showtime.
- Improved robustness against bridged taps with receiver-determined pilot tone.
- Improved transceiver training with exchange of detailed transmit signal characteristics.
- Improved SNR measurement during channel analysis.
- Subcarrier blackout to allow RFI measurement during initialization and showtime.
- Improved performance with mandatory support of trellis coding.
- Improved performance with mandatory one-bit constellations.
- Improved performance with data modulated on the pilot tone.
- Improved RFI robustness with receiver-determined tone ordering.
- Improved transmit power cutback possibilities at both the central office (CO) and remote side.
- Improved initialization with receiver- and transmitter-controlled duration of initialization states.
- Improved initialization with receiver-determined carriers for modulation of messages.
- Improved channel identification capability with spectral shaping during channel discovery and transceiver training.
- Mandatory transmit power reduction to minimize excess margin under management layer control.
- Power saving feature for the central office ATU with new L2 low power state.
- Power saving feature with new L3 idle state.
- Spectrum control with individual tone masking under operator control through the CO-MIB.
- Improved conformance testing, including increase in data rates for many existing tests.

Through negotiation during initialization, the capability of equipment to support this Recommendation and/or Recommendation ITU-T G.992.1 is identified. For reasons of interoperability, equipment may support both Recommendations such that it is able to adapt to the operating mode supported by the far-end equipment.

Annex C to this Recommendation has been published independently due to its size and its specific structure.

Source

Recommendation ITU-T G.992.3 was approved on 22 April 2009 by ITU-T Study Group 15 (2009-2012) under Recommendation ITU-T A.8 procedures.

FOREWORD

The International Telecommunication Union (ITU) is the United Nations specialized agency in the field of telecommunications, information and communication technologies (ICTs). The ITU Telecommunication Standardization Sector (ITU-T) is a permanent organ of ITU. ITU-T is responsible for studying technical, operating and tariff questions and issuing Recommendations on them with a view to standardizing telecommunications on a worldwide basis.

The World Telecommunication Standardization Assembly (WTSA), which meets every four years, establishes the topics for study by the ITU-T study groups which, in turn, produce Recommendations on these topics.

The approval of ITU-T Recommendations is covered by the procedure laid down in WTSA Resolution 1.

In some areas of information technology which fall within ITU-T's purview, the necessary standards are prepared on a collaborative basis with ISO and IEC.

NOTE

In this Recommendation, the expression "Administration" is used for conciseness to indicate both a telecommunication administration and a recognized operating agency.

Compliance with this Recommendation is voluntary. However, the Recommendation may contain certain mandatory provisions (to ensure e.g., interoperability or applicability) and compliance with the Recommendation is achieved when all of these mandatory provisions are met. The words "shall" or some other obligatory language such as "must" and the negative equivalents are used to express requirements. The use of such words does not suggest that compliance with the Recommendation is required of any party.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS

ITU draws attention to the possibility that the practice or implementation of this Recommendation may involve the use of a claimed Intellectual Property Right. ITU takes no position concerning the evidence, validity or applicability of claimed Intellectual Property Rights, whether asserted by ITU members or others outside of the Recommendation development process.

As of the date of approval of this Recommendation, ITU had received notice of intellectual property, protected by patents, which may be required to implement this Recommendation. However, implementers are cautioned that this may not represent the latest information and are therefore strongly urged to consult the TSB patent database at http://www.itu.int/ITU-T/ipr/.

CONTENTS

Page

Page

Page

Recommendation ITU-T G.992.3

Asymmetric digital subscriber line transceivers 2 (ADSL2)

1 Scope

For the interrelationships of this Recommendation with other ITU-T G.99x-series Recommendations, see [b-ITU-T G.995.1].

This Recommendation describes the interface between the telecommunication network and the customer installation in terms of their interaction and electrical characteristics. The requirements of this Recommendation apply to a single asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL).

ADSL provides a variety of frame bearers in conjunction with other services:

- ADSL service on the same pair with voiceband services (including plain old telephone service (POTS) and voiceband data services). The ADSL service occupies a frequency band above the voiceband service, and is separated from it by filtering.
- ADSL service on the same pair as integrated services digital network (ISDN) service, as defined in Appendices I and II of [ITU-T G.961]. The ADSL service occupies a frequency band above the ISDN service, and is separated from it by filtering.
- ADSL service on the same pair with voiceband services (e.g., POTS and voiceband data services), and with TCM-ISDN services as defined in Appendix III of [ITU-T G.961] on an adjacent pair. The ADSL service occupies a frequency band above the voiceband service, and is separated from it by filtering.
- ADSL service with specific requirements for Reach Extended ADSL2, on the same pair with voiceband services (including POTS and voiceband data services). The ADSL service occupies a frequency band above the voiceband service, and is separated from it by filtering.
- ADSL service with extended upstream bandwidth on the same pair with voiceband services (including POTS and voiceband data services). The ADSL service occupies a frequency band above the voiceband service, and is separated from it by filtering.

ADSL also provides a variety of frame bearers without baseband services (i.e., POTS or ISDN) being present on the same pair:

- ADSL service on a pair, with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over POTS present on an adjacent pair.
- ADSL service on a pair, with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over ISDN present on an adjacent pair.

In the direction from the network operator to the customer premises (i.e., the downstream direction), the frame bearers provided may include low-speed frame bearers and high-speed frame bearers; in the other direction, from the customer premises to the central office (i.e., the upstream direction), only low-speed frame bearers are provided.

The transmission system is designed to operate on two-wire twisted metallic copper pairs with mixed gauges. This Recommendation is based on the use of copper pairs without loading coils, but bridged taps are acceptable in all but a few unusual situations.

An overview of digital subscriber line transceivers can be found in [b-ITU-T G.995.1].

Specifically, this Recommendation:

- defines the transmission protocol-specific transmission convergence sub-layer for ATM, STM and Packet transport through the frame bearers provided;

- defines the combined options and ranges of the frame bearers provided;
- defines the line code and the spectral composition of the signals transmitted by both ATU-C and ATU-R;
- defines the initialization procedure for both the ATU-C and the ATU-R;
- specifies the transmit signals at both the ATU-C and ATU-R;
- describes the organization of transmitted and received data into frames;
- defines the functions of the operations, administration and management (OAM) channel.

In separate annexes, it also:

- Describes the transmission technique used to support the simultaneous transport of voiceband services and frame bearers (ADSL over POTS, Annex A) on a single twisted-pair.
- Describes the transmission technique used to support the simultaneous transport of ISDN services as defined in Appendices I and II of [ITU-T G.961], and frame bearers (ADSL over ISDN, Annex B) on a single twisted-pair.
- Describes the transmission technique used to support the simultaneous transport of voiceband services and frame bearers (ADSL over POTS, Annex C) on a single twisted-pair, with TCM-ISDN service as defined in Appendix III of [ITU-T G.961] on an adjacent pair.
- Describes the transmission technique used to support the transport of only frame bearers on a pair, with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over POTS present on an adjacent pair (all-digital mode, Annex I).
- Describes the transmission technique used to support the transport of only frame bearers on a pair, with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over ISDN present on an adjacent pair (all-digital mode, Annex J).
- Describes the transmission technique used to support the simultaneous transport of voiceband services and frame bearers for reach-extended operation (READSL2 over POTS, Annex L) on a single twisted-pair.
- Describes the transmission technique used to support the simultaneous transport of voiceband services and frame bearers for extended upstream bandwidth operation (EUADSL2 over POTS, Annex M) on a single twisted-pair.

This Recommendation defines the minimal set of requirements to provide satisfactory simultaneous transmission between the network and the customer interface of a variety of frame bearers and other services such as POTS or ISDN. This Recommendation permits network providers an expanded use of existing copper facilities. All required physical layer aspects to ensure compatibility between equipment in the network and equipment at a remote location are specified. Equipment may be implemented with additional functions and procedures.

2 References

The following ITU-T Recommendations and other references contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this Recommendation. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All Recommendations and other references are subject to revision; users of this Recommendation are therefore encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent edition of the Recommendations and other references listed below. A list of the currently valid ITU-T Recommendations is regularly published. The reference to a document within this Recommendation does not give it, as a stand-alone document, the status of a Recommendation.

[ITU-T G.961] Recommendation ITU-T G.961 (1993), *Digital transmission system on metallic local lines for ISDN basic rate access*.

[ITU-T G.993.1]	Recommendation ITU-T G.993.1 (2004), *Very high speed digital subscriber line transceivers (VDSL)*.
[ITU-T G.994.1]	Recommendation ITU-T G.994.1 (2003), *Handshake procedures for digital subscriber line (DSL) transceivers*.
[ITU-T G.996.1]	Recommendation ITU-T G.996.1 (2001), *Test procedures for digital subscriber line (DSL) transceivers*.
[ITU-T G.997.1]	Recommendation ITU-T G.997.1 (2009), *Physical layer management for digital subscriber line (DSL) transceivers*.
[ITU-T I.361]	Recommendation ITU-T I.361 (1999), *B-ISDN ATM layer specification*.
[ITU-T I.432.1]	Recommendation ITU-T I.432.1 (1999), *B-ISDN user-network interface – Physical layer specification: General characteristics*.
[ITU-T O.42]	Recommendation ITU-T O.42 (1988), *Equipment to measure non-linear distortion using the 4-tone intermodulation method*.
[IEEE 802.3]	IEEE 802.3-2005, *IEEE Standard for Information technology – Telecommunications and information exchange between systems – Local and metropolitan area networks – Specific requirements – Part 3: Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications*.
[ISO 8601]	ISO 8601:2004, *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.
[ANSI T1.TRQ.10]	ANSI T1.TRQ.10-2003, *Splitters used for Line Splitting and Line Sharing Applications*.
[ATIS-0600016]	ATIS-0600016.2008, *Remote End POTS Splitter Requirements*.
[Broadband Forum TR-048]	Broadband Forum TR-048 (2002), *ADSL Interoperability Test Plan*.
[ETSI TS 101 388]	ETSI TS 101 388 V1.4.1 (2007), *Access Terminals Transmission and Multiplexing (ATTM); Access transmission systems on metallic access cables; Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line (ADSL) – European specific requirements [ITU-T Recommendation G.992.1 modified]*.
[ETSI TS 101 952-1]	ETSI TS 101 952-1 V1.1.1 (2002), *Access network xDSL transmission filters; Part 1: ADSL splitters for European deployment*.
[ETSI TS 102 080]	ETSI TS 102 080 V1.4.1 (2003), *Transmission and Multiplexing (TM); Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) basic rate access; Digital transmission on metallic local lines*.

3 Definitions

This Recommendation defines the following terms:

3.1 ADSL line: The ADSL line is characterized by a metallic transmission medium utilizing an analogue coding algorithm, which provides both analogue and digital performance monitoring at the line entity. The ADSL line is delimited by the two end points, known as line terminations. ADSL line terminations are the points where the analogue coding algorithms end and the subsequent digital signal is monitored for integrity. The ADSL line is defined between the α and the β reference points (see clause 5.1 of [ITU-T G.997.1] and Figure 5-1).

3.2 ADSL overhead data: All data transmitted at the U-x reference point, needed for system control, added by the PMS-TC in any one direction, including cyclic redundancy check (CRC) octets, OAM overhead messages and fixed indicator bits for OAM; it does not include Reed-Solomon forward error correction (FEC) overhead.

3.3 ADSL system overhead data: All data transmitted at the U-x reference point, needed for system control and error protection, added by the PMS-TC in any one direction; that is the ADSL overhead plus the Reed-Solomon FEC overhead.

3.4 aggregate data rate: The data rate transmitted at the U-x reference point in any one direction; it is the net data rate plus ADSL overhead data rate.

3.5 anomaly: A discrepancy between the actual and desired characteristics of an item. The desired characteristics may be expressed in the form of a specification. An anomaly may or may not affect the ability of an item to perform a required function. Performance anomalies are defined in clause 8.12.1.

3.6 bridged taps: Sections of unterminated twisted-pair cables connected in parallel across the cable under consideration.

3.7 channelization: Allocation of the net data rate to frame bearers.

3.8 data frame: A grouping of bits from different latency paths over a single symbol time period, after addition of FEC octets and after interleaving, which is exchanged over the δ reference point between PMS-TC and PMD layer through the PMD.Bits primitive (see Figures 5-1 and 5-2).

3.9 data symbol: A discrete multitone (DMT) symbol modulating a data frame.

3.10 data symbol rate: The net average rate (after allowing for the overhead of the synchronization symbol) at which symbols carrying data frames are transmitted (= 4000 data symbol/s).

3.11 dBrn: Ratio (in decibels) of a power level with respect to a reference power of 1 pico-Watt (equivalent –90 dBm) (see [b-ITU-T O.41]).

3.12 dBm: Ratio (in decibels) of a power level with respect to a reference power of 1 milliwatt, i.e., dBm = 10 × $\log_{10}$(PSD[watts]/1 mW).

3.13 dBm/Hz: Power spectral density in watts/Hz where the power is expressed in units of dBm, i.e., dBm/Hz = 10 × $\log_{10}$(PSD[watts/Hz]/1 mW).

3.14 defects: A defect is a limited interruption in the ability of an item to perform a required function. It may or may not lead to maintenance action depending on the results of additional analysis. Successive anomalies causing a decrease in the ability of an item to perform a required function are considered as a defect. Performance defects are defined in clause 8.12.1.

3.15 discrete multitone (DMT) symbol: A set of complex values $\{Z_i\}$ forming the frequency domain inputs to the inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT) (see clause 8.8.2). The DMT symbol is equivalently the set of real valued time samples, $\{x_n\}$, related to the set of $\{Z_i\}$ via the IDFT.

3.16 downstream: The transport of data in the ATU-C to ATU-R direction.

3.17 far-end performance: Term used at the ATU-C to indicate the performance measured at the downstream loop-side input of the ATU-R, where this performance is reported to the ATU-C in upstream overhead messages and indicators, or term used at the ATU-R to indicate the performance measured at the upstream loop-side input of the ATU-C, where this performance is reported to the ATU-R in downstream overhead messages and indicators.

3.18 forward error correction (FEC) data frame: The grouping of mux data frames within a latency path, after addition of FEC octets, and before interleaving (see clause 7.4).

3.19 frame bearer: A data stream of a specified data rate between two TPS-TC entities (one in each ATU), that is transported transparently by the PMS-TC and PMD sublayers.

3.20 indicator bits: Overhead bits, part of ADSL overhead data, used for OAM purposes; embedded in the sync octets (see clause 7.8.2.2).

3.21 line rate: The bit rate transmitted at the U-x reference point in any one direction, that is the total data rate plus trellis coding overhead, also defined as $(\sum b_i) \times 4$ kbit/s.

3.22 loading coils: Inductors placed in series with the twisted-pair at regular intervals in order to improve the voiceband response; loading coils are removed for DSL use.

3.23 MEDLEYset: The set of subcarriers transmitted during the channel analysis phase. It consists of the subcarriers in the SUPPORTEDset (as indicated by the transmitter in the initialization ITU-T G.994.1 phase), with removal of the subcarriers in the BLACKOUTset (as indicated by the receiver in the initialization channel discovery phase) (see clause 8.13.2.4).

3.24 multiple latency: Simultaneous transport of multiple frame bearers, in which frame bearers are allocated to more than one latency path (i.e., two, three or four).

3.25 monitored subcarrier: A subcarrier in the MEDLEYset, to which the receiver allocates zero bits ($b_i = 0$) and a non-zero power ($g_i > 0$).

3.26 mux data frame: The grouping of octets from different frame bearers within the same latency path, after the sync octet has been added.

3.27 near-end performance: Term used at the ATU-R to indicate the performance measured at the downstream loop-side input of the ATU-R, or term used at the ATU-C to indicate the performance measured at the upstream loop-side input of the ATU-C.

3.28 net data rate: The sum of all frame bearer data rates over all latency paths in any one direction.

3.29 network timing reference: An 8 kHz timing marker used to support the distribution of a timing reference over the network.

3.30 nominal transmit power spectral density (PSD) level: The transmit PSD level (expressed in dBm/Hz) defined in this Recommendation for each of the operating modes (see Annexes A, B, I and J) in any one direction, which is used at the start of initialization and relative to which subsequent transmit PSD level changes may occur, as determined necessary by the transceivers during initialization and showtime.

3.31 power cutback (PCB): Reduction of the transmit PSD level (expressed in dB) in any one direction, relative to the nominal transmit PSD level. The same transmit PSD level reduction is applied over the whole frequency band (i.e., flat cutback).

3.32 primitives: Primitives are basic measures of performance, usually obtained from digital signal line codes and frame formats, or as reported in overhead indicators from the far end. Performance primitives are categorized as events, anomalies and defects (see clause 8.12). Primitives may also be basic measures of other quantities (e.g., AC or battery power), usually obtained from equipment indicators. Alternatively, the term is also used to indicate logical information flows over the α, β, δ, γ and U reference points shown in Figure 5-2.

3.33 reference transmit power spectral density level (REFPSD): The nominal transmit PSD level, lowered by the power cutback, in any one direction.

3.34 showtime: The state of either ATU-C or ATU-R, reached after all initialization and training is completed, in which frame bearer data are transmitted.

3.35 single latency: Simultaneous transport of one or more frame bearers in any one direction, in which all frame bearers are allocated to the same latency path.

3.36 splitter: Filter that separates the high frequency signals (ADSL) from the voiceband or ISDN signals (frequently called a POTS or ISDN splitter, even though the voiceband signals may comprise more than POTS).

3.37 **subcarrier**: A particular complex valued input, Z_i, to the IDFT (see clause 8.8.2).

3.38 **superframe**: A grouping of 68 data frames and one sync frame, modulated onto 69 symbols, over a total time duration of 17 ms (see clause 8.4).

3.39 **symbol rate**: The rate at which all symbols, including the synchronization symbol, are transmitted; that is ((69/68) × 4000 = 4058.8 symbol/s); contrasted with the data symbol rate.

3.40 **sync octet**: An octet of data that may be present at the beginning of each mux data frame, that contains ADSL overhead.

3.41 **sync frame**: A frame with deterministic content, modulated onto a sync symbol.

3.42 **sync symbol**: A DMT symbol modulating a sync frame.

3.43 **total data rate**: Aggregate data rate plus Reed-Solomon FEC overhead.

3.44 **upstream**: The transport of data in the ATU-R to ATU-C direction.

3.45 **used subcarrier**: A subcarrier in the MEDLEYset, to which the receiver allocates a non-zero number of bits ($b_i > 0$).

3.46 **voiceband**: 0 to 4 kHz; expanded from the traditional 0.3 to 3.4 kHz to deal with voiceband data services wider than POTS.

3.47 **voiceband services**: POTS and all data services that use the voiceband or some part of it.

3.48 **xDSL**: Any of the various types of digital subscriber line technologies.

4 Abbreviations and acronyms

This Recommendation uses the following abbreviations and acronyms:

AC	Alternating Current
ADSL	Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line
AFE	Analogue Front End
AGC	Automatic Gain Control
AN	Access Node
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode
ATP	Aggregate Transmit Power
ATU	Asymmetric digital subscriber line Transceiver Unit
ATU-C	Asymmetric digital subscriber line Transceiver Unit at the central office end (i.e., network operator)
ATU-R	Asymmetric digital subscriber line Transceiver Unit at the remote terminal end (i.e., customer premises)
ATU-x	either ATU-C or ATU-R
BER	Bit Error Ratio
BS	Bit-Swapping
CO	Central Office
CP	Customer Premises
CPE	Customer Premises Equipment

CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
DAC	Digital-to-Analogue Converter
DC	Direct Current
DMT	Discrete Multitone
DRR	Dynamic Rate Repartitioning
DSL	Digital Subscriber Line
EC	Echo Cancelling
EMS	Element Management System
eoc	embedded operation channel
ES	Errored Second
FDM	Frequency-Division Multiplexing
FEC	Forward Error Correction
FEXT	Far-End crosstalk
FFEC	Far-end Forward Error Correction
FHEC	Far-end Header Error Check
FLCD	Far-end Loss of Cell Delineation
FNCD	Far-end No Cell Delineation
FOCD	Far-end Out-of-Cell Delineation
GF	Galois Field
GSTN	General Switched Telephone Network
HDLC	High-level Data Link Control
HEC	Header Error Control
HPF	High-Pass Filter
IB	Indicator Bit
ID code	vendor Identification code
IDFT	Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform
IAT	Inter Arrival Time
IMA	Inverse Multiplexing over Asynchronous transfer mode
INCD	Impulse Noise Cluster Degraded data symbols
INCG	Impulse Noise Cluster number of Gaps
INCL	Impulse Noise Cluster Length
INM	Impulse Noise Monitoring
INMCC	Impulse Noise Monitoring Cluster Continuation
INMDF	Impulse Noise Monitoring Default Flag
INMIATO	Impulse Noise Monitoring Inter Arrival Time Offset
INMIATS	Impulse Noise Monitoring Inter Arrival Time Step
INS	Impulse Noise Sensor

ISDN	Integrated Services Digital Network
LCD	Loss-of-Cell Delineation
LOF	Loss-of-Frame defect
LOS	Loss-of-Signal defect
LPF	Low-Pass Filter
LPR	Loss-of-Power defect
LS	Local Switch
LSB	Least Significant Bit
LTR	Local Timing Reference
MC	Maximum Count indication
MDF	Mux Data Frame
MIB	Management Information Base
MPS	Management Protocol Specific
MSB	Most Significant Bit
MTPR	Multitone Power Ratio
NCD	No Cell Delineation
NEXT	Near-End crosstalk
NID	Network Interface Device
NMS	Network Management System
NSF	Non-Standard Facility
NT	Network Termination
NTR	Network timing reference: 8 kHz reference to be transmitted downstream
OAM	Operations, Administration and Maintenance
OCD	Out-of-Cell Delineation
PCB	Power Cutback
PHY	Physical layer
PMD	Physical Media Dependent (sublayer)
PMS-TC	Physical Media-Specific Transmission Convergence
POTS	Plain Old Telephone Service (one of the services using the voiceband; sometimes used as a descriptor for all voiceband services)
ppm	parts per million
PRBS	Pseudo-Random Binary Sequence
PSD	Power Spectral Density
PSTN	Public Switched Telephone Network
PTS	Packet Transport Specific
QAM	Quadrature Amplitude Modulation
RDI	Remote Defect Indication

RFI	Radio Frequency Interference
rms	Root mean square
RS	Reed-Solomon
RT	Remote Terminal
RX	Receiver
SEF	Severely Errored Frame
SM	Service Module
SNR	Signal-to-Noise Ratio
SRA	Seamless Rate Adaptation
STM	Synchronous Transfer Mode
T/S	Interface(s) between asynchronous digital subscriber line network termination and customer premises equipment or home network
TC	Transmission Convergence (sublayer)
TP	Twisted Pair
TPS-TC	Transmission Protocol-Specific Transmission Convergence layer
T-R	Interface(s) between ATU-R and switching layer (ATM or STM or Packet)
TX	Transmitter
U-C	Loop interface – Central office end
U-R	Loop interface – Remote terminal end
UTC	Unable To Comply
VDSL	Very high speed Digital Subscriber Line
VCI	Virtual Connection Identifier
VPI	Virtual Path Identifier
V-C	Logical interface between ATU-C and a digital network element such as one or more switching systems
ZHP	Impedance High-Pass filter
4-QAM	4 point Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (i.e., two bits per symbol)
$\oplus$	Exclusive-or; modulo-2 addition
$\lceil x \rceil$	Rounding to the higher integer

5 Reference models

ITU-T G.992.3 devices fit within the family of DSL Recommendations described in [b-ITU-T G.995.1]. Additionally, ITU-T G.992.3 devices rely upon constituent components described within [ITU-T G.994.1] and [ITU-T G.997.1]. This clause provides the necessary functional, application and protocol reference models so that the subclauses of this Recommendation may be related to these additional Recommendations.

5.1 ATU functional model

Figure 5-1 shows the functional blocks and interfaces of an ATU-C and ATU-R that are referenced in this Recommendation. It illustrates the most basic functionality of the ATU-R and the ATU-C.

Each ATU contains both an application-invariant section and an application-specific section. The application-invariant section consists of the PMS-TC and PMD layers and are defined in clauses 7 and 8, while the application-specific aspects that are confined to the TPS-TC layer and device interfaces, are defined in Annex K. Management functions, which are typically controlled by the operator's management system (EMS or NMS), are not shown in Figure 5-1. Figure 5-3 provides a high level view that includes the management interface.

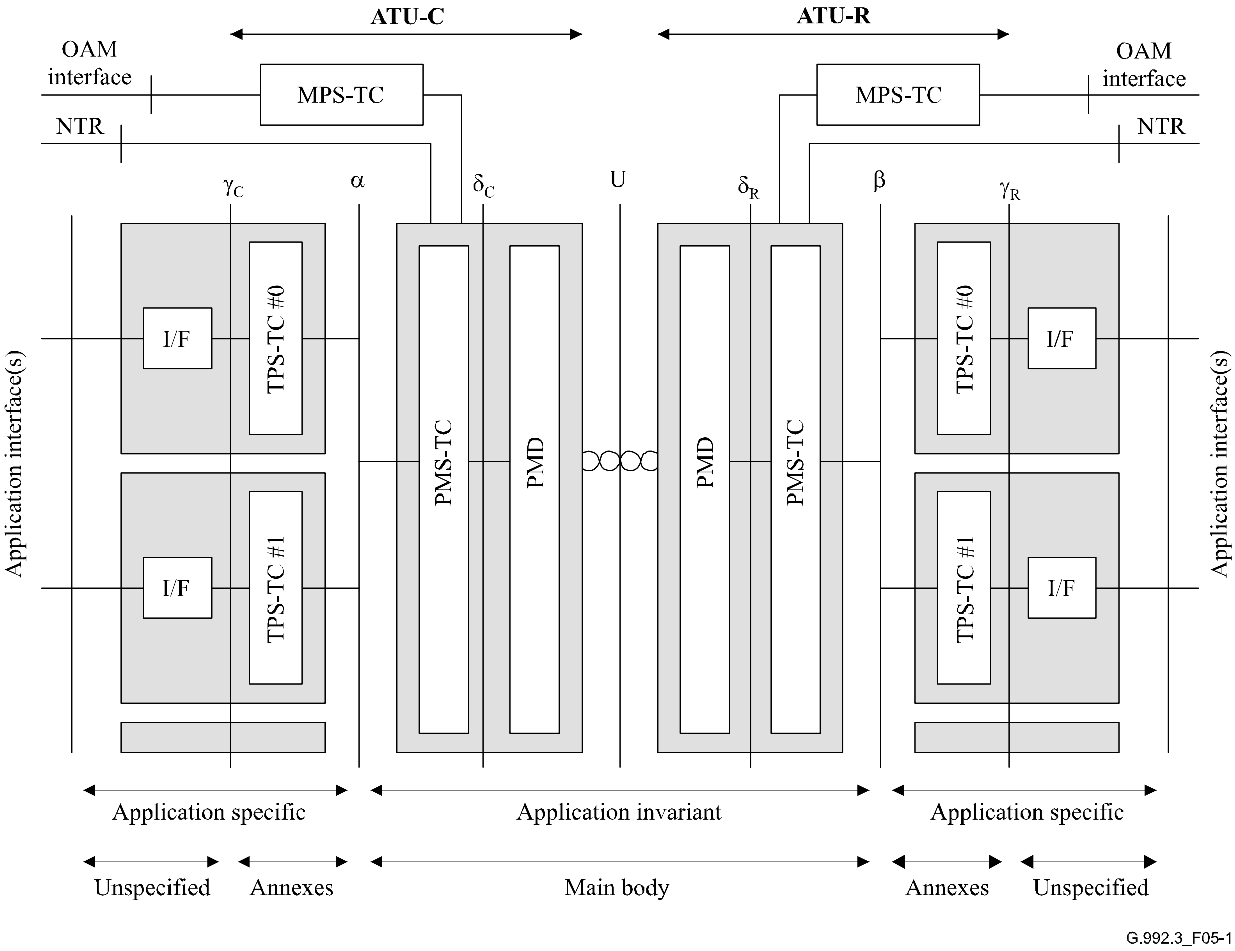


Figure 5-1 – ATU functional model

The principal functions of the PMD layer may include symbol timing generation and recovery, encoding and decoding, modulation and demodulation, echo cancellation (if implemented) and line equalization, link startup and physical layer overhead (superframing). Additionally, the PMD layer may generate or receive control messages via the overhead channel of the PMS-TC layer.

The PMS-TC layer contains the framing and frame synchronization functions, as well as forward error correction, error detection, scrambler and descrambler functions. Additionally, the PMS-TC layer provides an overhead channel that is used to transport control messages generated in the TPS-TC, PMS-TC or PMD layers as well as messages generated at the management interface.

The PMS-TC is connected across the α and β interfaces in the ATU-C and the ATU-R, respectively, to the TPS-TC layer. The TPS-TC is application specific and consists largely of adaptation of the customer interface data and control signals to the (a)synchronous data interface of the TPS-TC. Additionally, the TPC-TC layer may also generate or receive control messages via the overhead channel of the PMS-TC layer.

The TPS-TC layer communicates with the interface blocks across the γ_R and γ_C interfaces. Depending upon the specific application, the TPS-TC layer may be required to support one or more channels of user data and associated interfaces. The definition of these interfaces is beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

The MPS-TC function provides procedures to facilitate the management of the ATU. The MPS-TC function communicates with higher layer functions in the management plane that are described in [ITU-T G.997.1] (e.g., the element management system, controlling the CO-MIB). Management information is exchanged between the MPS-TC functions through an ADSL overhead channel. The PMS-TC multiplexes the ADSL overhead channel with the TPS-TC data streams for transmission over the DSL. The management information contains indications of anomalies and defects, and related performance monitoring counters. In addition, several management command procedures are defined for use by higher layer functions, specifically for testing purposes.

The α, β, γ_R and γ_C interfaces are only intended as logical separations and need not be physically accessible. The γ_R and γ_C interfaces are logically equivalent to, respectively, the T-R and V-C interfaces shown in Figure 5-4.

5.2 User plane protocol reference model

The user plane protocol reference model, shown in Figure 5-2, is an alternate representation of the information shown in Figure 5-1. The user plane protocol reference model is included to emphasize the layered nature of this Recommendation and to provide a view that is consistent with the generic xDSL models shown in [b-ITU-T G.995.1].

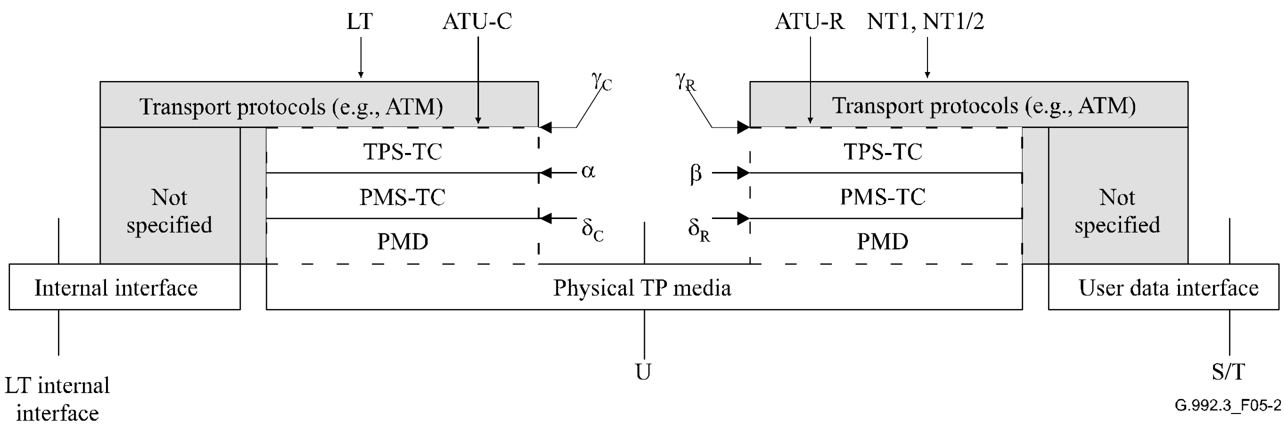


Figure 5-2 – User plane protocol reference model

The one-way payload transfer delay between the γ_C and γ_R reference points is the sum of:

- delay through the TPS-TC at the ATU-C and ATU-R;
- delay through the PMS-TC at the ATU-C and ATU-R;
- delay through the PMD at the ATU-C and ATU-R.

The delay through the TPS-TC depends on the TPS-TC type used. The delay through the PMS-TC and PMD sublayer (i.e., the delay between the α and β reference points) can be modelled independently of the TPS-TC type used, and is referred to as the nominal one-way maximum payload transfer delay. It is defined as:

$$delay_{\alpha-\beta} = 3.75 + \frac{\lceil S_P \times D_P \rceil}{4} \text{ms}$$

where the $\lceil x \rceil$ notation denotes rounding to the higher integer, and S_P and D_P are PMS-TC control parameters defined in clauses 7.5 and 7.6.

Table 5-1 illustrates the data rate terminology and definitions as applicable at various reference points. The reference points refer to those shown in the reference model in Figure 5-2 and the

PMS-TC block diagram in Figure 7-6.

Table 5-1 – Data rate terminology and definitions

Data rate	Equation (kbit/s)	Reference point
Net data rate	$\sum \text{Net}_{\text{p.act}}$ (see Table 7-7)	α, β
Aggregate data rate = net data rate + frame overhead rate	$\sum\left(\text{Net}_{\text{p.act}} + \text{OR}_{\text{P}}\right)$ (see Table 7-7)	A
Total data rate = aggregate data rate + RS coding overhead rate	$\left(\sum \text{L}_{\text{P}}\right) \times 4$ (see Table 7-6)	B, C, δ
Line rate = total data rate + trellis coding overhead rate	$\left(\sum b_i\right) \times 4$ (see Table 8-4)	U

5.3 Management plane reference model

The management plane protocol reference model, shown in Figure 5-3 is an alternate representation of the information shown in Figure 5-1. The management plane protocol reference model is included to emphasize the separate functions provided by the MPS-TC and TPS-TC functions and to provide a view that is consistent with the generic xDSL models shown in [b-ITU-T G.995.1].

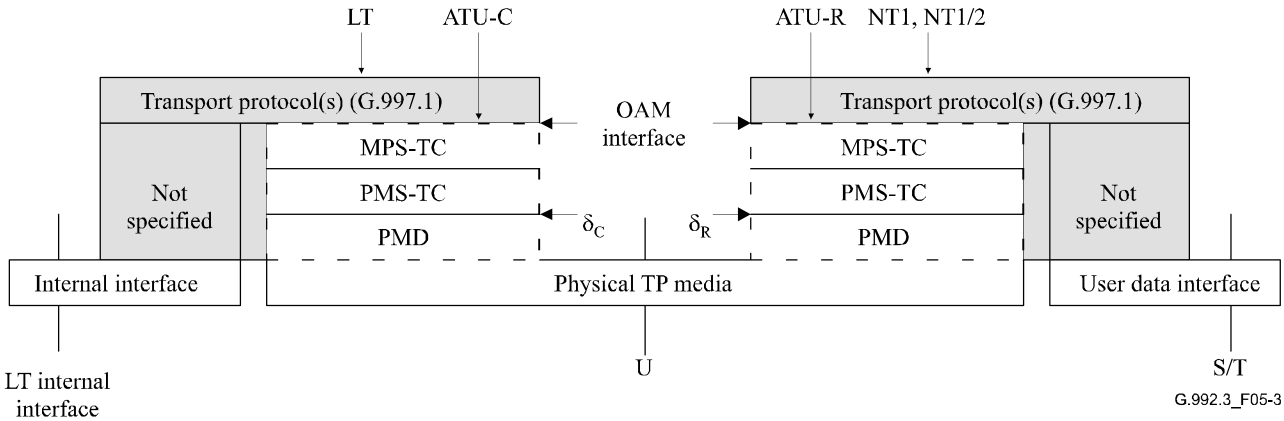


Figure 5-3 – Management plane protocol reference model

5.4 Application models

The application models for ITU-T G.992.3 are based upon the generic reference configuration described in clause 6.1 of [b-ITU-T G.995.1]. There are four separate applications models, one each for ADSL data service only, ADSL data service with underlying POTS service, ADSL data service with underlying ISDN service, and voice-over-ADSL service.

Two generic application models for ITU-T G.992.3 exist. The application model for remote deployment with splitter is shown in Figure 5-4.

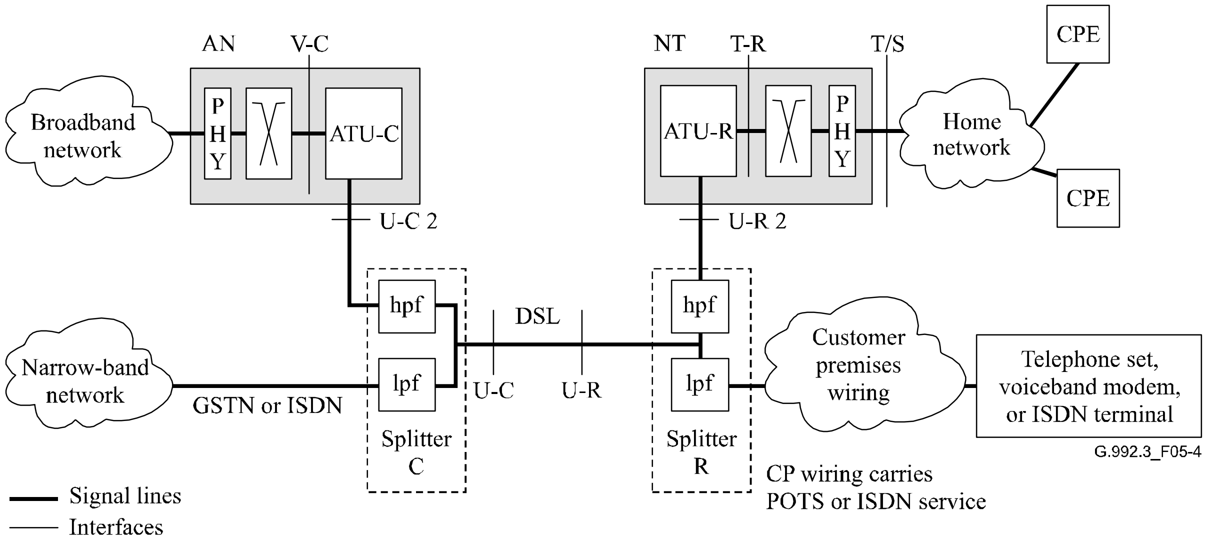


Figure 5-4 – Generic application reference model for remote deployment with splitter

The application model for splitterless remote deployment is shown in Figure 5-5. An optional low-pass filter may be included to provide isolation and protection of telephone sets, voiceband modems, ISDN terminals and the ATU-R. The location of filters in all application model diagrams is intended to be functional only. The specific functions of the filter may be regionally specific. The filter may be implemented in a variety of ways, including splitters, in-line filters, integrated filters with ATU devices, and integrated filters with voice equipment.

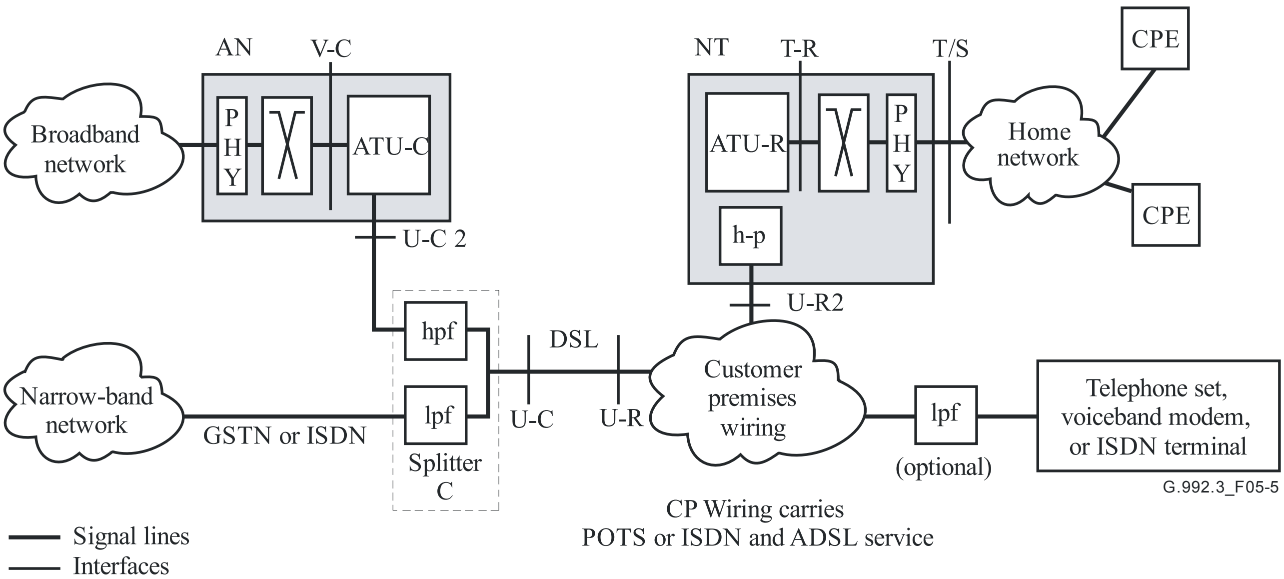


Figure 5-5 – Generic application reference model for splitterless remote deployment

NOTE 1 – The U-C and U-R interfaces are fully defined in this Recommendation. The V-C and T-R interfaces are defined only in terms of logical functions, not in physical terms. The T/S interface is not defined in this Recommendation.

NOTE 2 – Implementation of the V-C and T-R interfaces is optional when interfacing elements are integrated into a common element.

NOTE 3 – One or other of the high-pass filters, which are part of the splitters, may be integrated into the ATU-x; if so, then the U-C2 and U-R2 interfaces become the same as the U-C and U-R interfaces, respectively.

NOTE 4 – More than one type of T-R interface may be defined, and more than one type of T/S interface may be provided from an ADSL NT (e.g., NT1 or NT2 types of functionalities).

NOTE 5 – A future issue of this Recommendation may deal with customer installation distribution and home network requirements.

NOTE 6 – Specifications for the splitters are given in Annex E.

5.4.1 Data service

Figure 5-6 depicts the typical application model for delivering data service over ITU-T G.992.3, showing reference points and attached equipment. In such an application, an ATU-R is part of the ADSL NT which will typically connect to one or more user terminals, which may include data terminals, telecommunications equipment or other devices. These connections to these pieces of terminal equipment are designated S/T reference points. The connection between ATU-R and ATU-C will typically be a direct one through a DSL, with the customer premises endpoint of the DSL designated as the U-R reference point and the network endpoint designated the U-C reference point. The ATU-C is part of the access node, which will typically connect to a broadband access network at the V reference point. In this application model, there will be no associated narrow-band service carried on the same DSL.

The ADSL may be operated in all-digital mode, without underlying service, or may be operated in the mode for underlying POTS or ISDN service, with the bandwidth reserved for the underlying service being unused.

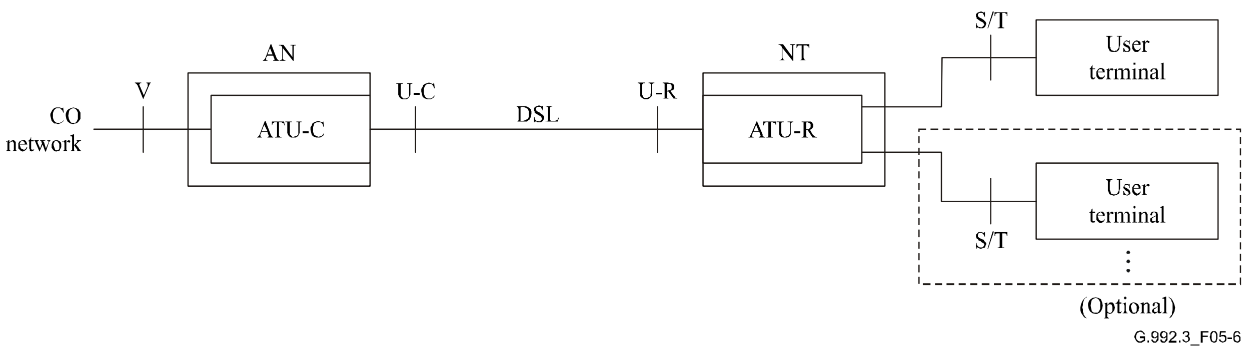


Figure 5-6 – Data service application model

5.4.2 Data with POTS service

Figure 5-7 depicts the typical application model for delivering data service over ITU-T G.992.3 with an underlying POTS service on the same DSL, showing reference points and attached equipment. In such an application, an ATU-R is part of the ADSL NT which will typically connect to one or more user terminals, which may include data terminals, telecommunications equipment or other devices. The connections to these pieces of terminal equipment are designated S/T reference points. The ATU-R will not be directly attached to the U-R reference point but will be separated from the DSL by a high-pass filter element. Additionally, one or more voice terminals will also be part of the application model at the customer premises. These voice terminals may include POTS telephones, telephone answering devices, voiceband analogue modems or other devices. The voice terminals may be attached directly the U-R reference point or may be connected through a low-pass filter element per voice terminal (splitterless remote deployment) or may be connected through a common low-pass filter element (remote deployment with splitter). At the central endpoint of the DSL, the ATU-C will connect to the U-C reference point through a high-pass filter element. The ATU-C is part of the access node, which will typically connect to a broadband access network at the

V reference point. Additionally, there will be a low-pass filter element attached at the U-C reference point to connect with the GSTN core network.

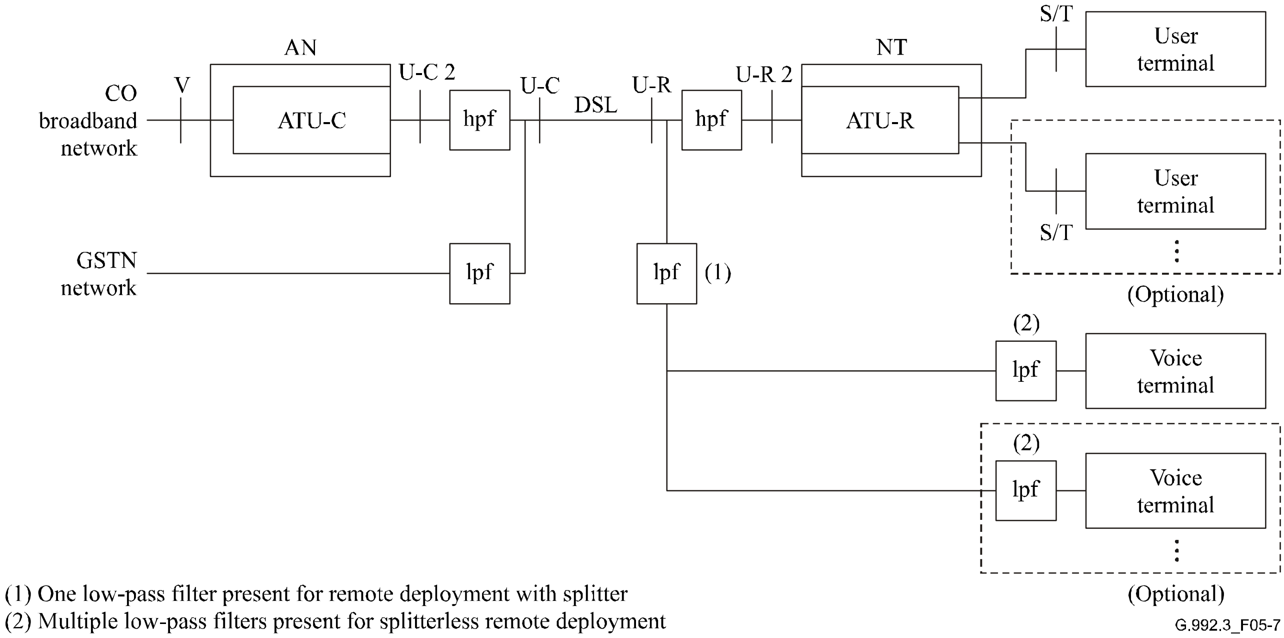


Figure 5-7 – Data with POTS service application model

NOTE – The low-pass filter shown at the customer premises in Figures 5-5 and 5-7 is also known as an in-line filter. The specification of in-line filter characteristics is outside the scope of this Recommendation. However, in-line filters are specified by regional standards bodies, e.g., see [b-ANSI T1.421].

5.4.3 Data with ISDN service

Figure 5-8 depicts the typical application model for delivering data service over ITU-T G.992.3 with an underlying ISDN service on the same DSL, showing reference points and attached equipment. In such an application, the ATU-R is part of the ADSL NT which will typically connect to one or more user terminals, which may include data terminals, telecommunications equipment or other devices. The connections to these pieces of terminal equipment are designated S/T reference points. The ATU-R will not be directly attached to the U-R reference point but will be separated from the DSL by a high-pass filter element. One ISDN NT will also be part of the application model at the customer premises. The ISDN NT is not attached directly to the U-R reference point but will be separated from the DSL by a low-pass filter element. Additionally, one or more voice terminals will also be part of the application model at the customer premises. These voice terminals are connected to the ISDN NT and may include POTS or ISDN telephones, telephone answering devices, voiceband analogue modems or other devices. At the central endpoint of the DSL, the ATU-C will connect to the U-C reference point through a high-pass filter element. The ATU-C is part of the access node, which will typically connect to a broadband access network at the V reference point. Additionally, there will be a low-pass filter element attached at the U-C reference point to connect with the GSTN core network.

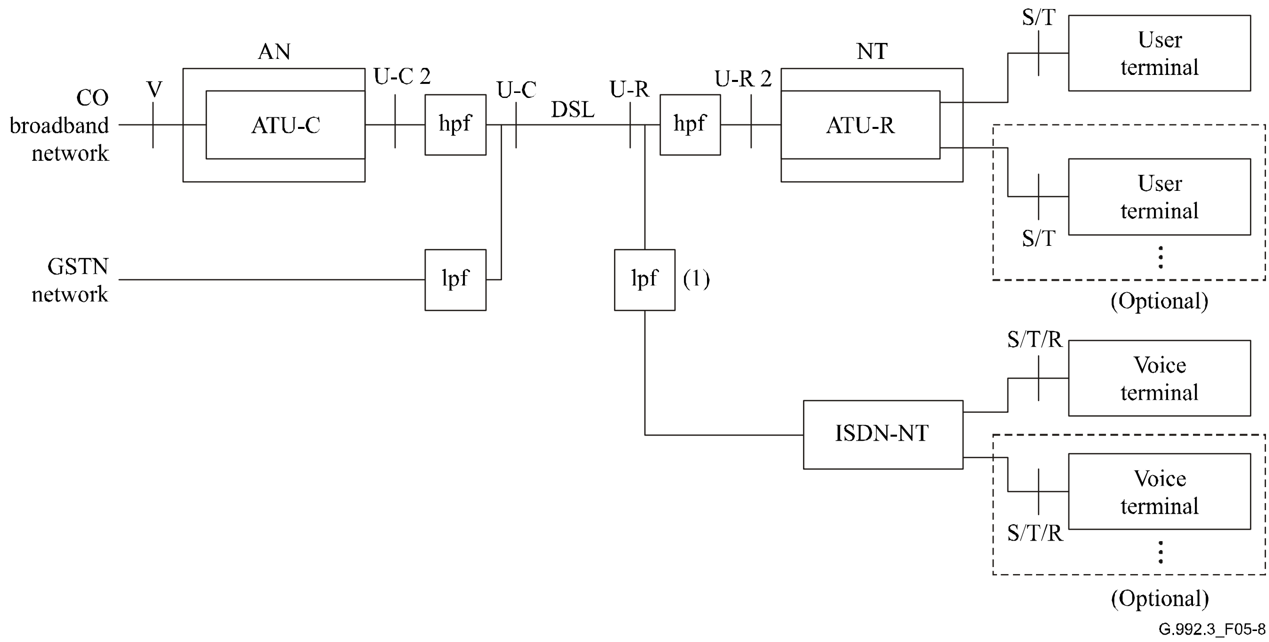


Figure 5-8 – Data with ISDN service application model

5.4.4 Voice over data service

Figure 5-9 depicts the typical application model for delivering data and voice services over ITU-T G.992.3, showing reference points and attached equipment. In such an application, an ATU-R is part of the ADSL NT which will typically connect to one or more user terminals and to one or more voice terminals. The data terminals may include data terminals, telecommunications equipment, or other devices. The voice terminals may include POTS or ISDN telephone devices, telephone answering devices, voiceband analogue modems or other devices. The connections to these pieces of terminal equipment are designated S/T reference points. The ATU-R and ATU-C will include a voice interworking function that allows a connection from the GSTN network to the voice terminal equipment. The connection between ATU-R and ATU-C will typically be a direct one through a DSL, with the customer premises endpoint of the DSL designated as the U-R reference point and the network endpoint designated the U-C reference point. The ATU-C is part of the access node, which will typically connect to a broadband access network at the V reference point. In addition, the ATU-C will connect to the GSTN core network.

The ADSL may be operated in all-digital mode, without underlying service, or may be operated in the mode for underlying POTS or ISDN service, with the bandwidth reserved for the underlying service being unused, or, although not depicted in Figure 5-8, there may also be an underlying POTS or ISDN service delivered through the DSL.

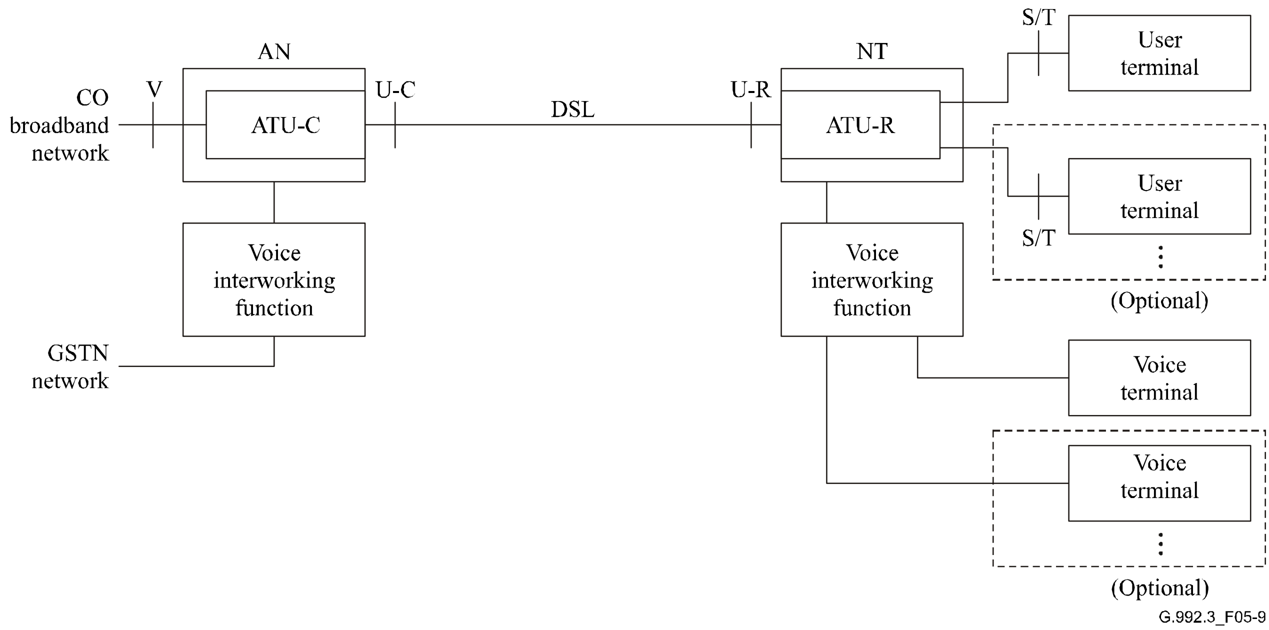


Figure 5-9 – Voice over data service application model

6 Transport protocol-specific transmission convergence (TPS-TC) function

6.1 Transport capabilities

This Recommendation provides procedures for the transport of the output frame bearers of one to four unidirectional TPS-TC functions in both the upstream and downstream directions. For purposes of reference and identification, each of the TPS-TC functions within an ATU is labelled as if it were mapped to a particular frame bearer, i.e., TPS-TC #0, #1, #2, #3 would be mapped on frame bearer #0, #1, #2, #3, respectively. The TPS-TC functions may be of differing types and each type is described in detail in Annex K.

After each of the transmit and receive TPS-TC functions has been mapped to a frame bearer during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization, transport of the TPS-TC functions on frame bearers is carried out by underlying PMS-TC and PMD layers through a series of data frames and PMD symbols. The TPS-TC transport capabilities are configured by the control parameters described in Annex K. The control parameters provide for the application of appropriate data rates and characteristics of each TPS-TC function as if it were mapped to a particular frame bearer. Any receive TPS-TC function can be logically connected to any transmit TPS-TC function that supports the same TPS-TC function type. Unless specifically described to the contrary in Annex K, the control parameters of the connected transmit and receive TPS-TC functions shall be configured with identical control parameter values during initialization and reconfiguration of the ATUs. The receive PMD, PMS-TC and TPS-TC functions recover the various input signals of the corresponding transmit TPS-TC function whose signals having been transported across the TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions of an ATU-C and ATU-R pair.

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the TPS-TC function. Each TPS-TC type may have its own unique set of management primitives as defined in Annex K. The management primitives are handled in a transparent manner by the PMS-TC and MPS-TC functions.

6.2 Interface signals and primitives

Each ATU-C TPS-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure 6-1. Signals at the upper edge are defined in Annex K for each TPS-TC type; the depicted signals on the upper edge in Figure 6-1 are merely examples. However, signals at the lower, left and right edges shall conform to the signals required by the PMS-TC and MPS-TC functional interfaces shown in Figure 6-1. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to a higher layer function and are defined for each TPS-TC type in Annex K. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to the PMS-TC function and shall conform to the primitives defined in clause 7.3. One very important characteristic of the data signals presented to the PMS-TC is that they shall be synchronized to local PMD clocks.

Each ATU-R TPS-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure 6-2, although the upper edge will vary depending on the TPS-TC type. In Figure 6-2 the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from Figure 6-1.

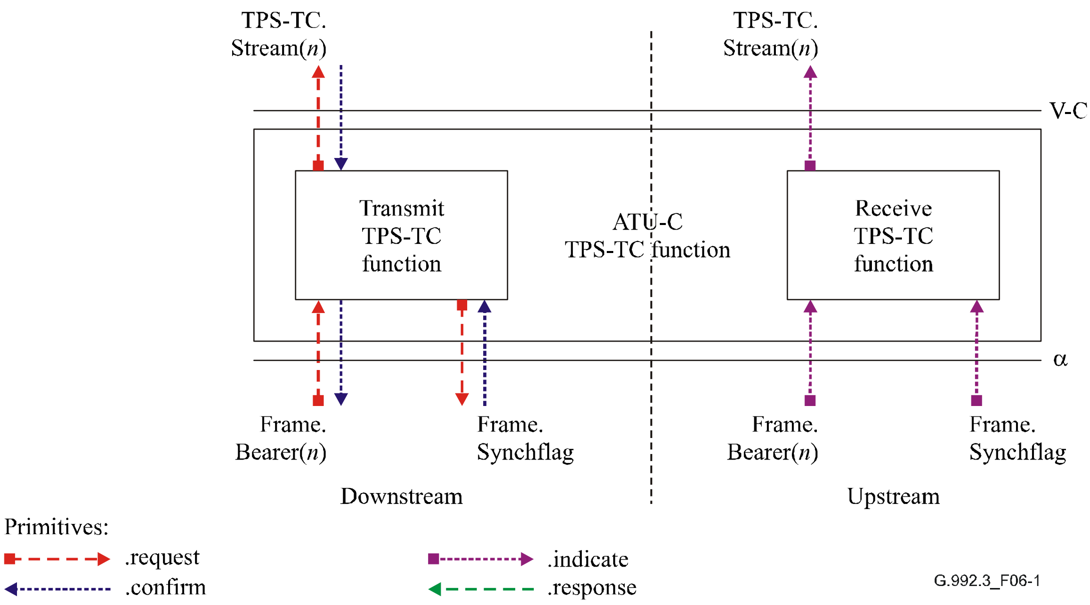


Figure 6-1 – Signals of an ATU-C TPS-TC function

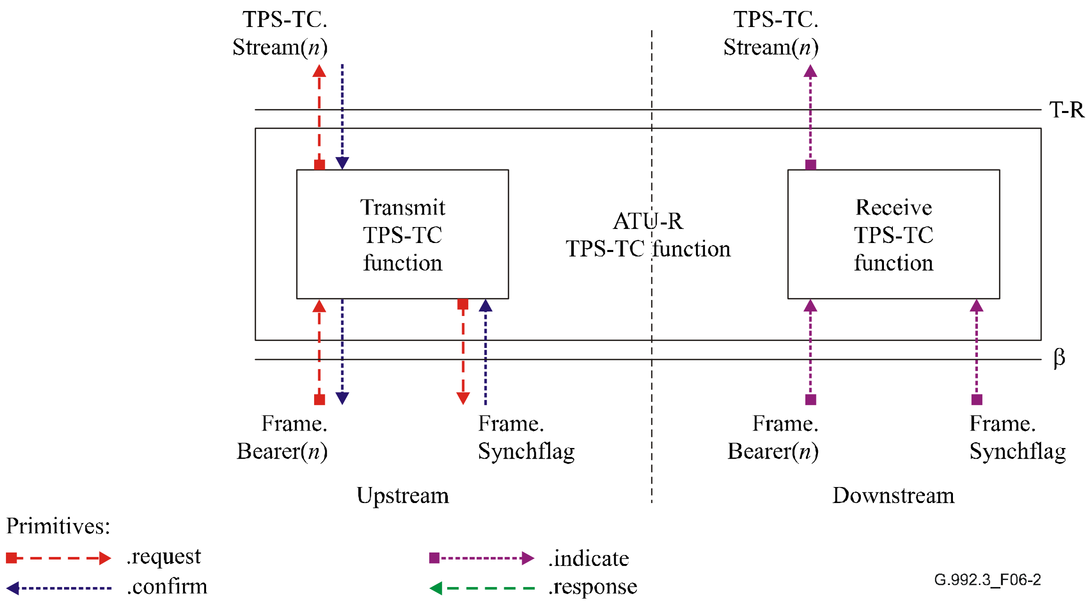


Figure 6-2 – Signals of an ATU-R TPS-TC function

The signals shown in Figures 6-1 and 6-2 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between a higher layer function and TPS-TC function are dependent on the type of the TPS-TC function. These are defined in Annex K.

The primitives that are used between the TPS-TC and PMS-TC functions are described in clause 7.3.

6.3 Control parameters

The configuration of the TPS-TC functions is controlled by a set of control parameters. Some of the control parameters are displayed in Table 6-1. The remainder of the control parameters is dependent on the TPS-TC type and is described in Annex K.

Table 6-1 – TPS-TC parameters

Parameter	Definition
N_{BC}	The number of enabled TPS-TC functions and the number of enabled frame bearers. The TPS-TC functions and frame bearers are labelled #0, #1, #2 and #3. N_{BC} is the number of non-zero values in the { $type_0$, $type_1$, $type_2$, $type_3$} set. The value may be different for the ATU-C and the ATU-R.
$type_n$	The TPS-TC type mapped to frame bearer #n (n = 0 to 3). The TPS-TC type shall be set to a value described in Annex K. The $type_n$ value of zero shall be used to disable TPS-TC function # n and frame bearer # n.
$maxtype_n$	The maximum number of TPS-TC functions of type n supported.

The values of all control parameters listed in Table 6-1 shall be set during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization, in accordance with common capabilities of the ATU devices as described in clause 6.6. The capability to support these control parameters by each ATU in each direction may also be exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization, as described in clause 6.6. All valid control parameter configurations are described in clause 6.3.1, and operation of the ATU with other configuration is outside the scope of this Recommendation. All mandatory control parameter configurations, which are described in clause 6.3.2, shall be supported by each ATU.

6.3.1 Valid configurations

An ATU may support up to four simultaneous TPS-TC functions in each direction. The control parameter N_{BC} shall be in the 1 to 4 range.

The valid values of the control parameter $type_n$ shall be those contained within the Annex K or the value of zero. All other values are reserved for use by ITU-T. If the $type_n$ parameter is non-zero for upstream and downstream, then it shall have the same value for upstream and downstream.

An ATU shall support mapping of all supported TPS-TC types to all supported frame bearers. The valid labelling of supported frame bearers shall start from 0 and increase by one. Thus there are only 4 cases: {0}, {0, 1}, {0, 1, 2} or {0, 1, 2, 3}.

6.3.2 Mandatory configurations

An ATU shall support at least one combination of a TPS-TC function (of a type defined in Annex K) and a frame bearer in each direction.

6.4 Data plane procedures

Each TPS-TC function shall provide transmit data plane procedures as defined in Annex K that terminate in the assertion of the PMS-TC transmit primitives defined in clause 7.3. These procedures are otherwise transparent to the PMS-TC function.

6.5 Management plane procedures

Each TPS-TC function may provide local management primitives as defined in Annex K. Up to two of these primitives may be transported to the far end using the PMS-TC procedure defined in clause 7.8.2.2. These are transported in a manner that is otherwise transparent to the PMS-TC function.

Each TPS-TC function may additionally provide local processing of the primitives per [ITU-T G.997.1]. The results of local processing may be made available through management counter read commands of the MPS-TC function defined in clause 9.4.1.6. The format and syntax of the returned data from these commands is defined in Annex K.

6.6 Initialization procedure

TPS-TC functions shall be fully configured prior to the initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD functions or be configured after initialization of the PMS-TC and PMS function in a manner that is outside the scope of this Recommendation. The configuration prior to initialization is performed via an ITU-T G.994.1 MS message. Information may be exchanged prior to the mode select to ascertain capabilities using ITU-T G.994.1 CL or CLR messages. Most of the information conveyed through ITU-T G.994.1 messages is dependent on the TPS-TC type and is defined in Annex K.

6.6.1 ITU-T G.994.1 phase

The CL and CLR messages shall describe capabilities of the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively, and can be constrained by application requirements, service requirements, implementation choices, etc. Therefore, the capabilities indicated in the CL and CLR messages are the enabled capabilities, which may be equal to or a subset of the set of capabilities supported by the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively. In any case, the MS message (and all subsequent initialization messages) shall account for all capability restrictions indicated in the CL and CLR messages.

6.6.1.1 ITU-T G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about the TPS-TC function shall be communicated through [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the CL and CLR messages. Additional information appropriate to each TPS-TC function shall be arranged in blocks of information as described in Annex K. This information may be optionally requested and reported via ITU-T G.994.1 CL and CLR messages at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once between the ATU-C and ATU-R prior to enabling a TPS-TC function but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- supported combinations of downstream frame bearers and TPS-TC types;
- supported combinations of upstream frame bearers and TPS-TC-types;
- supported number of TPS-TC functions of type *n*.

This information on supported combinations is represented using an ITU-T G.994.1 tree model of the information as described in Annex K. An ATU shall provide both the upstream and downstream information in CL and CLR messages. Corresponding to each Spar(2) bit from Annex K that is set to a 1, one additional block of information shall be provided in the CL and CLR messages. The supported number of TPS-TC functions of type *n* is represented using an ITU-T G.994.1 tree model of the information as in Table 6-2.

Table 6-2 – Format for TPS-TC capabilities information

Spar(2) bits	Definition of Npar(3) bits
maxtype Upstream	Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the *maxtype* values for upstream, using an unsigned 3-bit value in the 0 to 4 range for each of the TPS-TC types 1 (STM), 2 (ATM) and 3 (PTM).
maxtype Downstream	Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the *maxtype* values for downstream, using an unsigned 3-bit value in the 0 to 4 range for each of the TPS-TC types 1 (STM), 2 (ATM) and 3 (PTM).

6.6.1.2 ITU-T G.994.1 mode select message

The following control parameters of TPS-TC function shall be configured through [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the MS message. Additional control parameters appropriate to each TPS-TC type shall be arranged in blocks of information as described in Annex K. This information shall be selected prior to the PMD and TPS-TC initialization. The information includes:

- mapped combinations of downstream frame bearers and TPS-TC types;
- mapped combinations of upstream frame bearers and TPS-TC types.

The *maxtype* information shall not be included in an MS message. The Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.

This configuration for TPS-TC is represented using an ITU-T G.994.1 tree model of the information as described in Annex K. An ATU provides both the upstream and downstream trees in the MS message. Corresponding to each Spar(2) bit from Annex K (one bit per combination of a frame bearer and TPS-TC type) that is set to a 1, one block of information shall be provided in the MS message as defined in Annex K. For each frame bearer, no more than one corresponding Spar(2) bit shall be set. A frame bearer that has one corresponding Spar(2) bits set, shall be enabled (i.e., $type_n > 0$). Any frame bearer that is supported but that does not have any of its corresponding Spar(2) bit set shall be disabled (i.e., $type_n = 0$). N_{BC} is the number of non-zero values in the $\{ type_0, type_1, type_2, type_3 \}$ set.

6.6.2 Channel analysis phase

No TPS-TC capabilities or control parameter settings are exchanged during the channel analysis phase.

6.6.3 Exchange phase

No TPS-TC capabilities or control parameter settings are exchanged during the exchange phase.

6.7 On-line reconfiguration

On-line reconfiguration procedures are defined uniquely for each TPS-TC type in Annex K. The procedure may rely on the primitives associated with PMD.Synchflag for synchronization of the on-line reconfiguration changes.

6.8 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the TPS-TC functions are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

6.8.1 L0 link state operation

The TPS-TC function shall operate according to all data plane and management plane procedures defined in clauses 6.4 and 6.5 as well as any specified in Annex K while the link is in power management state L0. All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in clause 6.3 and Annex K shall apply.

6.8.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

Entry into the L2 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in clause 9.5.3.3. Following the successful completion of the protocol, the coordinated entry into the L2 link state may rely on the primitives associated with PMD.Synchflag for synchronization as further defined in Annex K.

6.8.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU is intended to provide the transition from link state L0 to state L3. The transition should be as described in clause 9.5.3.1 or clause 9.5.3.2. Any specific TPS-TC tear-down procedure shall be as provided in Annex K.

6.8.2 L2 link state operation

The TPS-TC function shall operate according to all data plane and management plane procedures defined in clauses 6.4 and 6.5 as well as specified in Annex K while the link is in power management state L2. All control parameter definitions provided in clause 6.3 and Annex K shall apply.

The low power trim procedure shall not affect the operation of the TPS-TC function.

6.8.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

Entry into the L0 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in either clause 9.5.3.4 or clause 9.5.3.5. Following the successful completion of the protocol, the coordinated entry into the L0 link state may rely on the primitives associated with PMD.Synchflag for synchronization as further defined in Annex K.

6.8.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

If operating in link state L2, the ATUs are intended to transition to link state L3 by making use of the orderly shutdown procedure. Alternatively, the ATUs can also transition to link state L0 and subsequently transition to link state L3 by making use of the orderly shutdown procedure. However, in the event of sudden power loss, the link may transition from link state L2 to state L3 directly. The transition should be as described in clause 9.5.3.2. Any specific TPS-TC tear-down procedure shall be as provided in Annex K.

6.8.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, any specified procedures for the TPS-TC function shall be as provided in Annex K.

6.8.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in clause 6.6.

7 Physical media-specific transmission convergence (PMS-TC) function

7.1 Transport capabilities

The primary purpose of the ATU PMS-TC function is to provide for the multiplexing and transport of several channels of information. The ATU PMS-TC function provides procedures to multiplex and transport:

- one to four frame bearers in the upstream and downstream directions;
- an NTR signal from the ATU-C to the ATU-R; and
- an overhead channel in both directions to support the MPS-TC function of each ATU.

After transmit PMS-TC procedures have been applied, transport of the frame bearers to a receive

PMS-TC function is carried out by a pair of PMD functions through a series of PMD symbols. The transport capabilities of the PMS-TC function are configured using a number of control parameters described in clause 7.5 to provide application appropriate data rates and characteristics for each frame bearer. The values of control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU. The ATU receive PMS-TC function recovers the various input signals to the corresponding transmit PMS-TC function, those signals having been transported across the PMS-TC and PMD functions of an ATU-C and ATU-R pair.

The transmit PMS-TC function accepts input signals from the data plane and control plane. As a data plane element, the transmit PMS-TC function accepts one to four input frame bearers from the TPS-TC functions. All transmit data plane input signals are synchronized to the local PMD transmit clocks. These inputs are conveyed to the receive PMS-TC function interface as depicted in Figure 7-1. Octet boundaries in the frame bearers and the position of most significant bits are maintained from the input interface of the transmit PMS-TC function to the output interface of the receive PMS-TC function.

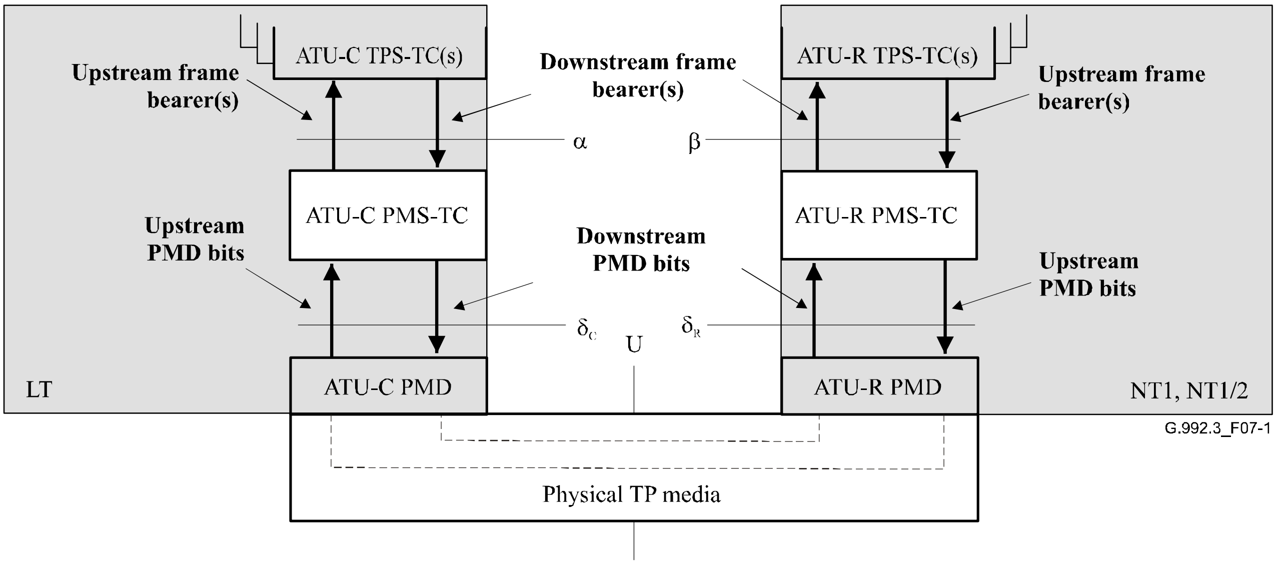


Figure 7-1 – PMS-TC transport capabilities within the user plane

As an element of the control plane, the pair of PMS-TC functions transports the NTR timing reference signal from the ATU-C to the ATU-R as depicted in Figure 7-2.

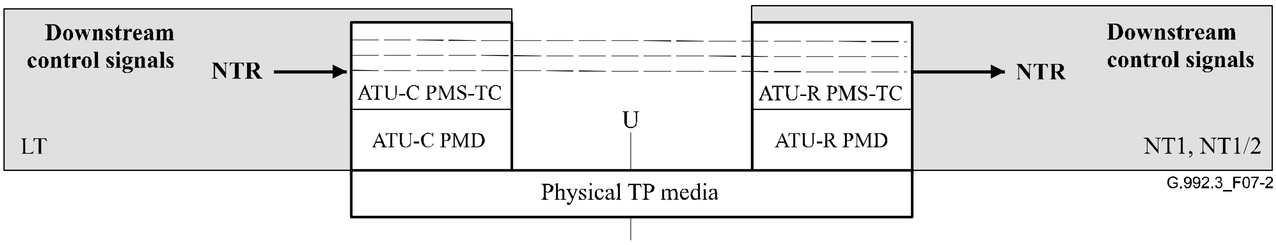


Figure 7-2 – PMS-TC transport capabilities within the control plane

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the PMS-TC function. However, the PMS-TC function provides management primitive indications to the MPS-TC function within the ATU, as depicted in Figure 7-3.

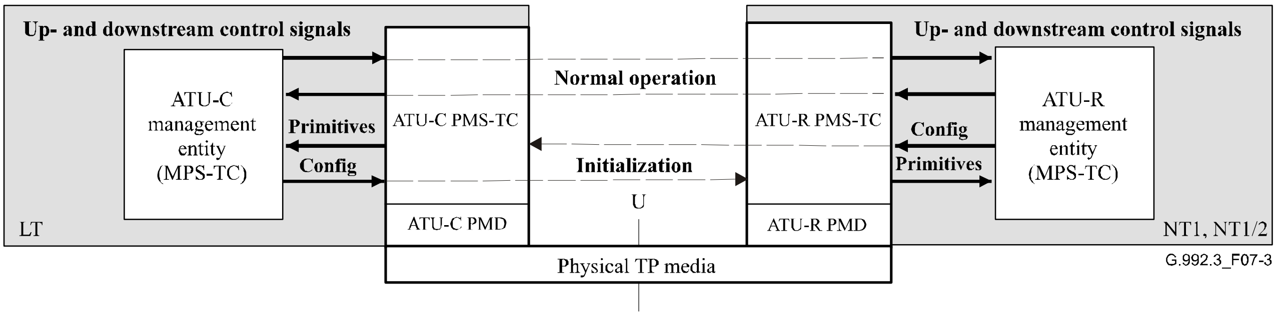


Figure 7-3 – PMS-TC transport capabilities within the management plane

7.2 Additional functions

In addition to transport functionality, the ATU transmit PMS-TC function also provides procedures for the:

- scrambler;
- insertion of redundancy for Reed-Solomon-based forward error correction;
- insertion of checksums for block-based error detection; and
- interleaving of data frames to spread the effect of impulsive impairments on the U interface.

These functions are configured by a number of control parameters described in clause 7.5 to provide application-appropriate FEC protection, latency and impulse noise immunity for each frame bearer. The values of the control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU. The ATU receive PMS-TC function reverses each of the listed procedures so that the transported information may be recovered. Additionally, the ATU receive PMS-TC function provides several supervisory primitives associated with some of these functions (e.g., block checksum error, forward error correction event) as described in clause 7.9.1.

7.3 Block interface signals and primitives

The ATU-C PMS-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure 7-4. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to or from the TPS-TC function. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to or from the PMD function. The signals at the left and right edges convey control primitives within the ATU-C.

The ATU-R PMS-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure 7-5. In this figure, the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from the previous figure. Also, the NTR signal is conveyed as an output of the receive PMS-TC function at the ATU-R.

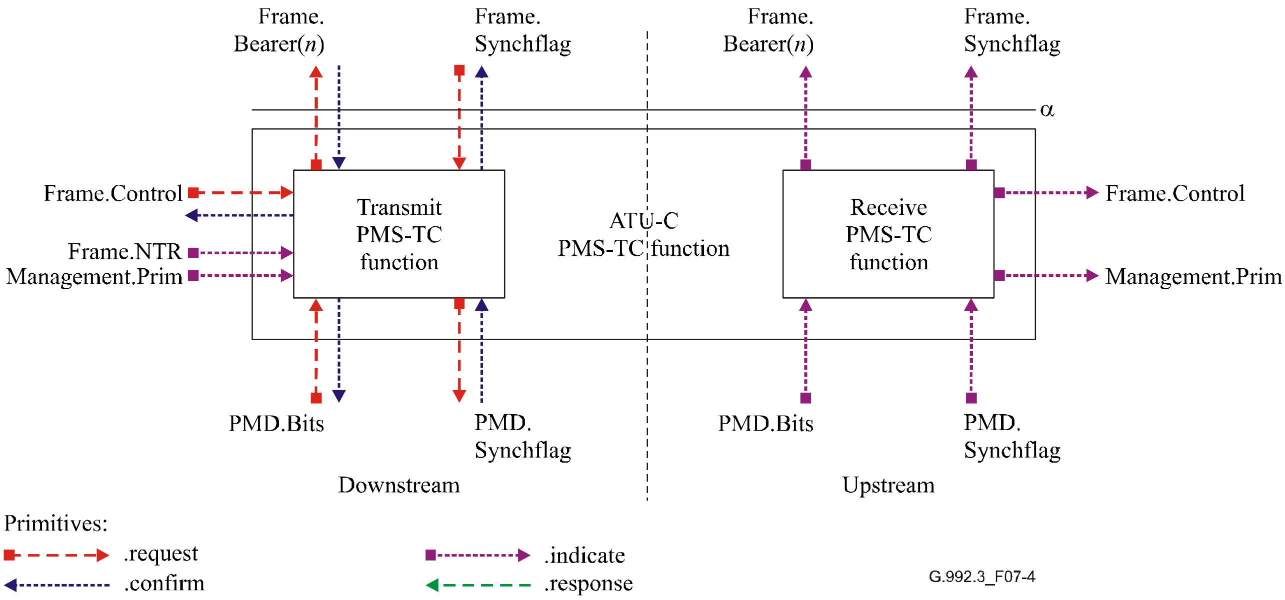


Figure 7-4 – Signals of the ATU-C PMS-TC function

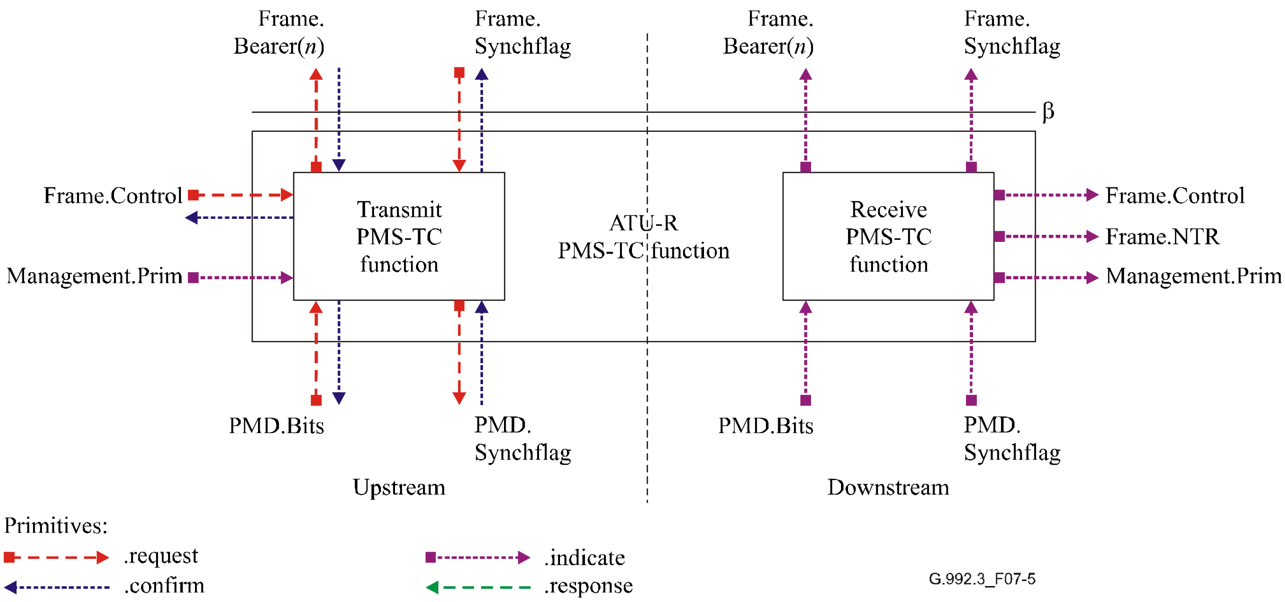


Figure 7-5 – Signals of the ATU-R PMS-TC function

The signals shown in Figures 7-4 and 7-5 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for the purpose of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between the TPS-TC function and the PMS-TC function are described in Table 7-1. These primitives support the exchange of bearer data and regulation of data flow to match PMS-TC control parameters. They also support coordinated on-line reconfiguration of the ATU-C and ATU-R.

The primitives that are used between the PMS-TC and PMD functions are described in clause 8.

The primitives for the transport of control messages via the shared overhead channel are described in Table 7-2. These primitives may be used by the PMD, TPS-TC and other functions of the ATU. These primitives support the exchange of control messages and bits, and regulation of data flow to match PMS-TC overhead channel configuration.

A miscellaneous primitive for the transport of NTR by the PMS-TC function via the shared overhead channel is described in Table 7-3. Primitives used to signal maintenance indication primitives to the local maintenance entity are described in Table 7-4.

Table 7-1 – Signalling primitives between the TPS-TC function and PMS-TC function

Signal	Primitive	Description
Frame.Bearer(*n*)	.request	This primitive is used by the transmit PMS-TC function to request one or more octets from the transmit TPS-TC function to be transported. By the interaction of the request and confirm, the data flow is matched to the PMS-TC configuration (and underlying functions). Primitives are labelled n = 0 to 3 corresponding to frame bearer #0 to #3.
	.confirm	The transmit TPS-TC function passes one or more octets to the PMS-TC function to be transported with this primitive. Upon receipt of octets with this primitive, the PMS-TC function shall perform the mux data frame selector procedure in clause 7.7.1.1.
	.indicate	The receive PMS-TC function passes one or more octets to the TPS-TC function that has been transported with this primitive.
Frame.Synchflag	.request	The transmit TPS-TC function passes requests to the PMS-TC function to cause the PMS-TC to relay a PMD.Synchflag request to the PMD layer. This Frame.Synchflag primitive is used to coordinate various reconfigurations of the TPS-TC function pairs.
	.confirm	This primitive is used by the transmit PMS-TC function to confirm receipt of a Frame.Synchflag.request primitive. By the interaction of the request and confirm, the transmit TPS-TC function is notified that a PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive has been received by the PMS-TC function. In particular, any Frame.Bearer(*n*).request primitives that have not yet been confirmed upon receipt of the Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive are known to be passed to the transmit PMD function after the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive.
	.indicate	The receive PMS-TC function makes use of this primitive to indicate to the TPS-TC function that a PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive has been received by the PMS-TC function. Any indications already received by the TPS-TC function are known to have been passed from the receive PMD function prior to the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive.

Table 7-2 – Signalling primitives to transport control messages over the pair of PMS-TC functions

Signal	Primitive	Description
Frame.Control	.request	The MPS-TC function uses this primitive to pass one entire control message for transport to the transmit PMS-TC function. Upon receipt of a message, the PMS-TC function shall begin the transmitter protocol procedure in clause 7.8.2.4.1.
	.confirm	This primitive is used by the transmit PMS-TC function to confirm receipt of a Frame.Control.request primitive. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the data flow is synchronized to the rate that can be accommodated by the overhead rate of the PMS-TC functions.
	.indicate	The receive PMS-TC function uses this primitive to pass single received control messages or indications to the MPS-TC function.

Table 7-3 – Signalling primitives to transport NTR information over the pair of PMS-TC functions

Signal	Primitive	Description
Frame.NTR	.indicate	This primitive is used to convey the current phase of the NTR signal to the transmit PMS-TC function. Upon receipt of this primitive, the PMS-TC transmit function shall execute the NTR transport procedure described in clause 7.8.1. At the ATU-R, this primitive is passed by the receive PMS-TC function.

Table 7-4 – Signalling primitives to convey maintenance indications to the local maintenance entity

Signal	Primitive	Description
Management.Prim	.indicate	This primitive is used by various local functions within the ATU to pass management anomalies, defects and parameters to the transmit MPS-TC function. Upon receipt of this primitive, the transmit PMS-TC function shall execute the indicator bits procedure described in clause 7.8.2.2. This primitive is used by the receive PMS-TC function to signal a number of anomaly supervisory primitives to the MPS-TC function.

7.4 Block diagram and internal reference point signals

Figure 7-6 depicts the functions within a transmit PMS-TC function that supports N_{BC} frame bearers ($1 \leq N_{BC} \leq 4$). These frame bearers (i.e., Frame.Bearer(n).confirm primitives from the transmit TPS-TC function) are shown at the leftmost edge of Figure 7-6. Within the transmit PMS-TC function, there are one to four latency path functions that accept input from zero, one or more of the frame bearers. Within each latency path function, there are three reference points labelled A, B and C. The output signals from each latency path function at reference point C are combined by an additional multiplexing function to form the PMD bits (i.e., PMD.Bits.confirm primitives to the transmit PMD function), depicted at the rightmost edge of Figure 7-6.

The control input signals are depicted at the uppermost edge of Figure 7-6. These are encoded onto a shared overhead channel, one octet associated with each of the latency path functions. These sync octets are combined with frame bearer data within the latency path function at reference point A.

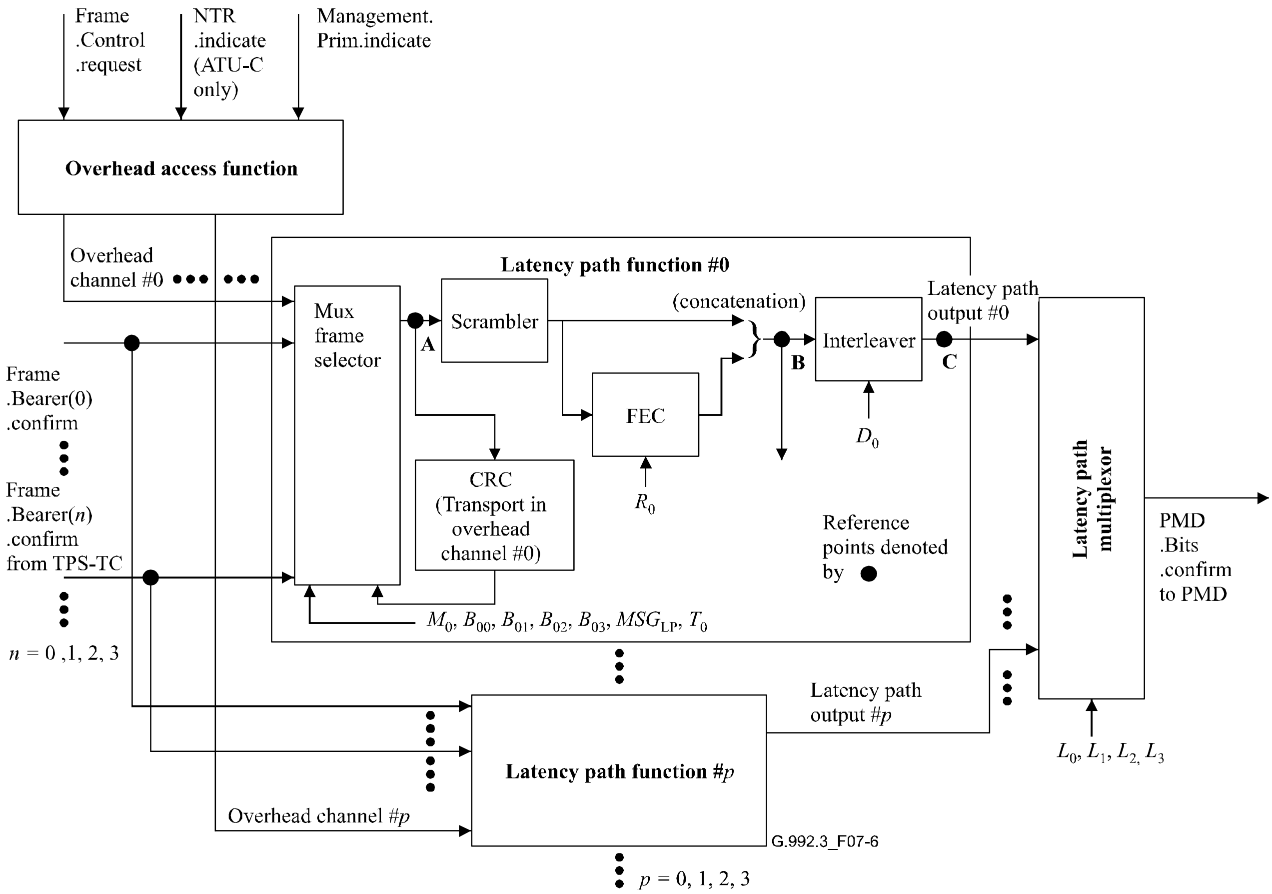


Figure 7-6 – Block diagram of transmit PMS-TC function

Because of the various functions depicted in Figure 7-6, the data within the transmit PMS-TC function has a different structural grouping as it moves from the frame bearers to the PMD bits. Reference points are defined within the block diagram for purposes of helping to depict this structure. These reference points are for clarity only. The reference points with which the PMS-TC procedures will be described are depicted in Figure 7-6 and listed in Table 7-5. It is important to note that all octet boundaries and positions of most significant bits in the frame bearers will be maintained at each of the reference points listed in Table 7-5.

Table 7-5 – PMS-TC function internal reference points

Reference point	Definition
A: Mux data frame	The data within a latency path function after the sync octet has been added.
B: FEC data frame	The data within a latency path function after the output of the FEC redundancy octets are merged with scrambled data.
C: Interleaved FEC data frame	The data and redundancy octets that have been interleaved. This is the output signal of a latency path function.

7.5 Control parameters

The configuration of the PMS-TC function is controlled by a set of control parameters displayed in Table 7-6.

Table 7-6 – Control parameters

Parameter	Definition
MSG_{min}	The minimum rate of the message-based overhead that shall be maintained by the ATU. MSG_{min} is expressed in bits per second.
MSG_{max}	The maximum rate of the message-based overhead that shall be allowed by the ATU. MSG_{max} is expressed in bits per second.
N_{BC}	See Table 6-1. This is a TPS-TC configuration parameter repeated here for clarity.
N_{LP}	The number of latency paths enabled to transport frame bearers and overhead. The latency path functions are labelled #0, #1, #2 and #3.
MSG_{LP}	The label of the latency path used to transport the message-based overhead information.
MSG_C	The number of octets in the message-based portion of the overhead structure.
$B_{p,n}$	The nominal number of octets from frame bearer #n per mux data frame at reference point A in latency path function #p. When T_p is not set to 1 and n is the lowest index of the frame bearers assigned to latency path #p, the number of octets from the frame bearer #n in the latency path function #p varies between $B_{p,n}$ and $B_{p,n}$ + 1.
M_p	The number of mux data frames per FEC data frame in latency path function #p.
T_p	The ratio of the number of mux data frames to the number of sync octets in the latency path function #p. A sync octet is inserted with every T_p-th mux data frame. When T_p is not set to one, an extra frame bearer octet is carried whenever a sync octet is not inserted.
R_p	The number of RS redundancy octets per codeword in latency path function #p. This is also the number of redundancy octet per FEC data frame in the latency path function #p.
D_p	The interleaving depth in the latency path function #p.
L_p	The number of bits from the latency path function #p included per PMD.Bits.confirm primitive.

The first two control parameters listed in Table 7-6 establish persistent constraints upon the operation of the PMS-TC function that apply during all initialization and reconfiguration procedures. The values of these control parameters shall be set during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization, in accordance with common requirements of the ATU devices. The requirements for these control parameters by each ATU in each direction may also be exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization.

The remaining control parameters listed in Table 7-6 establish the specific parameters that control the PMS-TC procedures described in this clause. The values of these control parameters shall be set during the PMD initialization procedure in accordance with capabilities of each ATU and requirements of each ATU's higher layers as determined by TPS-TC initialization procedures. Additionally, some of the control parameters in Table 7-6 may be modified during on-line reconfiguration procedures.

All valid control parameter configurations are described in clause 7.6.2. All mandatory control parameter configurations described in clause 7.6.3 shall be supported by each ATU.

7.6 Frame structure

The various transported data can be assigned various structural groupings as it moves through the transmit PMS-TC function. These taken together are termed the frame structure. The frame structure is defined for clarity only and the actual groupings within an ATU implementation may vary.

The ATU frame structure for the case of two frame bearers transported over a single latency path (N_{BC} = 2, N_{LP} = 1, T_p = 1) is illustrated in Figure 7-7. This figure shows the frame structure and data groupings at the start of the PMS-TC procedure, at each reference point A, B and C of latency path function #0, and at the end of the PMS-TC procedure.

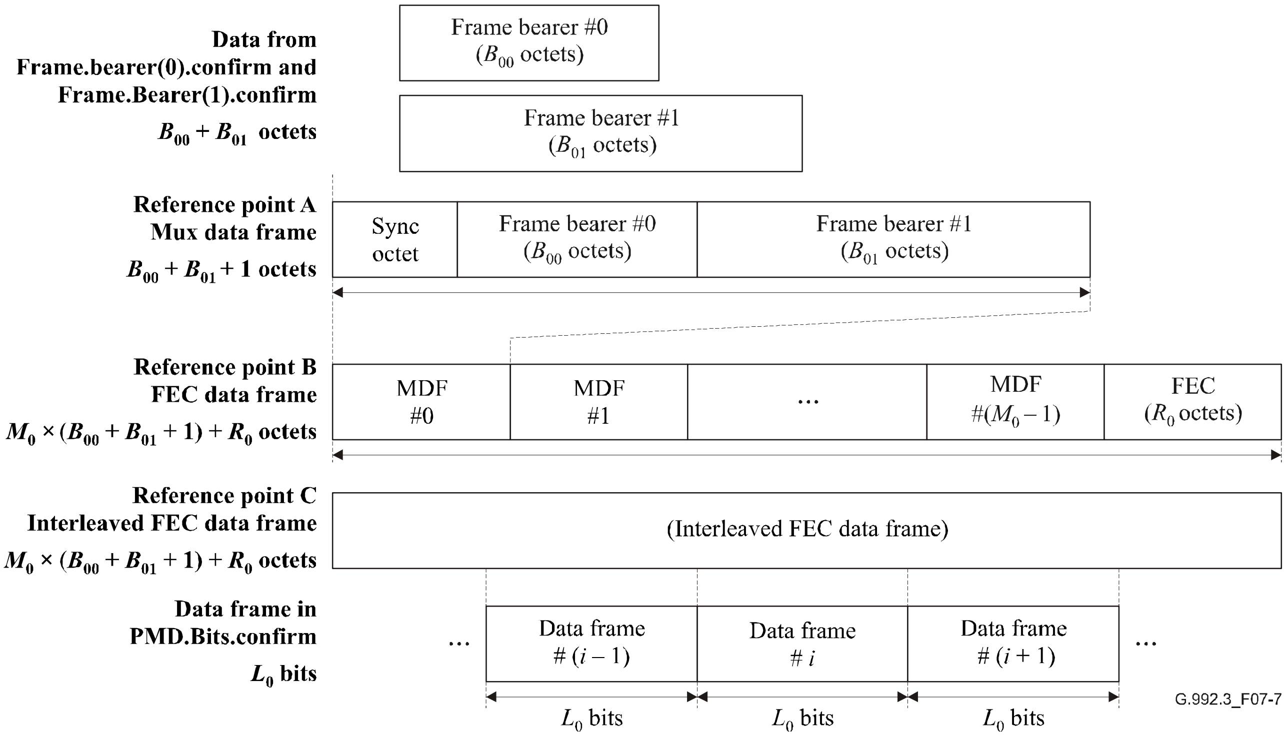


Figure 7-7 – Illustration of frame structure with single latency dual bearers and T_p = 1

As a further illustration, Figure 7-8 depicts the frame structure when the PMS-TC function is configured to support two frame bearers with two latency paths (N_{BC} = 2, N_{LP} = 2, B_{00} = 0, B_{11} = 0). MSG_{LP} is set to one and T_0 = 1. Figure 7-8 illustrates PMS-TC functions for a mux data frame (MDF) that does not include the sync octet for the second latency, assuming that T_1 is not set to 1 for this example and the current mux data frame selector counter modulo T_p is not equal to 0.

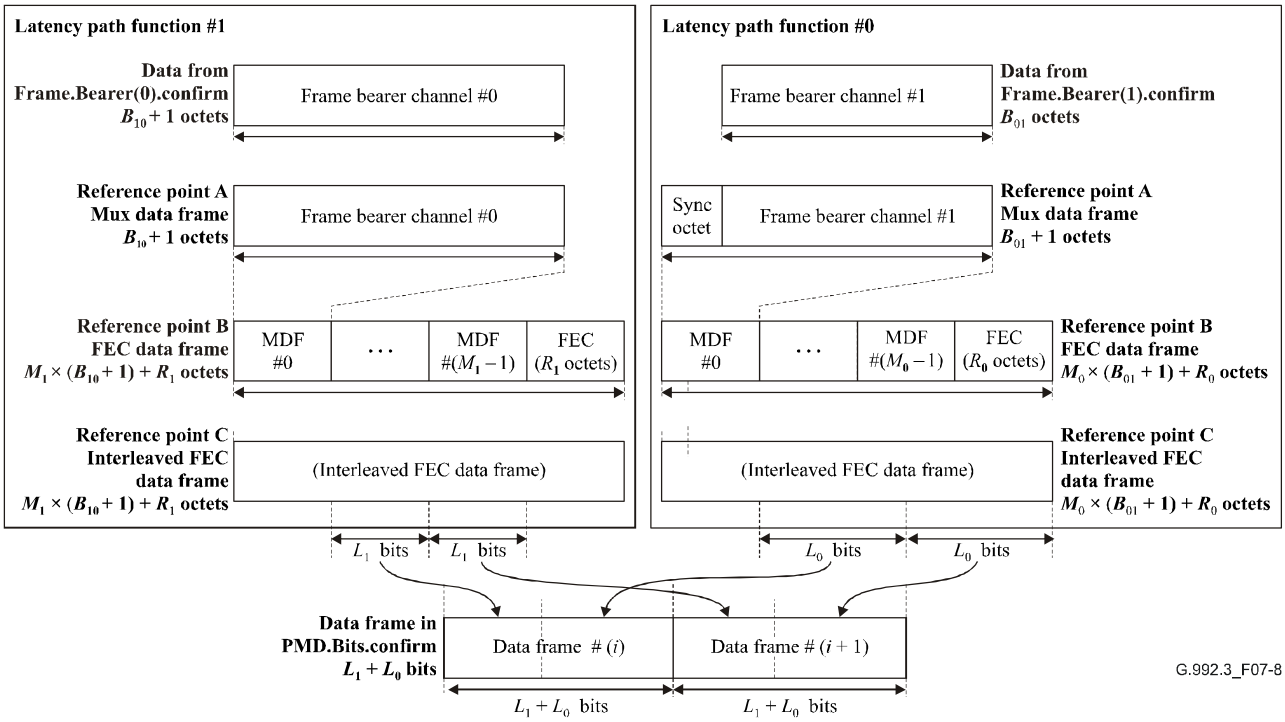


Figure 7-8 – Illustration of frame structure with dual latency and dual bearers

7.6.1 Derived definitions

Table 7-7 displays several definitions of symbols that derive from the PMS-TC control parameters and that are used to describe characteristics of the ATU data frame. These definitions are for clarity only.

Table 7-7 – Derived characteristics of the ATU data frame

Symbols	Definition and value
K_p	**Definition**: The number of octets per mux data frame in latency path function #p $K_p = \sum_{i=0}^{N_{BC}-1} B_{p,i} + 1$
N_{FECp}	**Definition**: The number of octets per FEC data frame and interleaved FEC data frame in latency path function #p $N_{FECp} = M_p \times K_p + R_p$
S_p	**Definition**: The number of PMD.Bits.request primitives (and, correspondingly, the number of PMD symbols) over which the FEC data frame spans, not accounting for the interleaving procedure, is always $S_p = \frac{8 \times N_{FECp}}{L_p}$ The value of S_p may represent a non-integer value.

Table 7-7 – Derived characteristics of the ATU data frame

Symbols	Definition and value
$net\_act_{p,n}$	**Definition**: Net data rate of frame bearer #n in latency path function #p When $T_p = 1$: $$net\_act_{p,n} = \frac{B_{p,n} \times M_p}{S_p} \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{B_{p,n} \times M_p \times L_p}{K_p \times M_p + R_p} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$$ When $T_p \neq 1$, for bearers associated to the lowest index: $$net\_act_{p,n} = \left(\frac{B_{p,n} \times M_p}{S_p} + \frac{(T_p - 1) \times M_p}{T_p \times S_p} \right) \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{(T_p \times (B_{p,n} + 1) - 1) \times M_p \times L_p}{T_p \times (K_p \times M_p + R_p)} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$$ for bearers associated with subsequence values in the list: $$net\_act_{p,n} = \frac{B_{p,n} \times M_p}{S_p} \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{B_{p,n} \times M_p \times L_p}{K_p \times M_p + R_p} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$$
$Net_{p,act}$	**Definition**: Net data rate of latency path function #p When $T_p = 1$, $Net_{p,act} = \frac{(K_p - 1) \times M_p}{S_p} \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{(K_p - 1) \times M_p \times L_p}{K_p \times M_p + R_p} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$ When $T_p \neq 1$, $Net_{p,act} = \left(\frac{(K_p - 1) \times M_p}{S_p} + \frac{(T_p - 1) \times M_p}{T_p \times S_p} \right) \times 32 \text{ kbit/s}$ $$= \frac{(T_p \times K_p - 1) \times M_p \times L_p}{T_p \times (K_p \times M_p + R_p)} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$$
OR_p	**Definition**: Overhead rate of latency path function #p $$OR_P = \frac{M_p}{T_p \times S_p} \times 32 \text{ kbit/s} = \frac{M_p \times L_p}{T_p \times (K_p \times M_p + R_p)} \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$$
$delay_p$	**Definition**: PMS-TC delay of latency path function #p Nominal one-way maximum transport delay of latency path function #p is defined as: $$delay_p = \frac{\lceil S_p \times D_p \rceil}{4} \text{ms}, (\text{where} \lceil x \rceil \text{denotes rounding to the higher integer})$$
SEQ_p	**Definition**: Length of the sync octet sequence of latency path function #p $$SEQ_p = \begin{cases} 2 & \textit{if } p \neq MSG_{LP} \textit{ and latency path \# } p \textit{ is not the lowest latency path } (\textit{See } 7.8.2.1) \\ 6 & \textit{if } p \neq MSG_{LP} \textit{ and latency path \# } p \textit{ is the lowest latency path } (\textit{See } 7.8.2.1) \\ MSG_C + 2 & \textit{if } p = MSG_{LP} \textit{ and latency path \# } p \textit{ is not the lowest latency path } (\textit{See } 7.8.2.1) \\ MSG_C + 6 & \textit{if } p = MSG_{LP} \textit{ and latency path \# } p \textit{ is the lowest latency path } (\textit{See } 7.8.2.1) \end{cases}$$
PER_p	**Definition**: The period of the overhead channel in latency path #p $$PER_p = \frac{T_p \times S_p \times SEQ_p}{4 \times M_p} ms$$

Table 7-7 – Derived characteristics of the ATU data frame

Symbols	Definition and value
INP_p	**Definition**: Impulse noise protection for latency path *p* (INP_p) is defined as the number of consecutive DMT symbols, or fractions thereof, as seen at the input to the de-interleaver, for which errors can be completely corrected by the error correcting code, regardless of the number of errors within the errored DMT symbols (see Note). When the Reed-Solomon decoder in the receiver does not use erasure decoding, the INP_p shall be computed as: $$INP\_no\_erasure_p = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\times\left(S_p \times D_p\right)\times\left(\frac{R_p}{N\_FEC_p}\right)$$ DMT symbols, where parameters D_p *and* R_p are defined in Table 7-6 and parameters $NFEC_p$ and S_p are defined in this table. When erasure decoding is used, INP_p might not equal $INP\_no\_erasure_p$. NOTE – This is equivalent to the number of consecutive errored octets within any block of $(NFEC_p - 1)\cdot D_p + 1$ octets, as seen at the input to the de-interleaver, for which errors can be completely corrected by the error correcting code, divided by $L_p/8$, the number of octets loaded in a DMT symbol for latency path *p*. The parameter L_p is defined in Table 7-6.

7.6.2 Valid framing configurations

Table 7-8 displays the allowable range of each PMS-TC control parameter. Additionally, the control parameters shall satisfy some relationships to one another for the set of control parameter values to be valid as displayed in Table 7-8. Some ranges of the valid control parameter values are expressed in terms of NSC, which is the number of subcarriers as defined in clause 8.

An additional requirement is made on the value of the $B_{p,n}$. Each frame bearer shall be transported in one, and only one, latency path. This means that in any valid framing configuration, there shall be no more than one non-zero control parameter in each set $\{B_{0.n}, B_{1.n}, B_{2.n}, B_{3.n}\}$.

Table 7-8 – Valid framing configurations

Parameter	Capability
MSG_{min}	$4000 \le MSG_{min} < 64000$
MSG_{max}	$MSG_{max} = 64000$
N_{BC}	$1 \le N_{BC} \le 4$
N_{LP}	$1 \le N_{LP} \le 4$
MSG_{LP}	$0 \le MSG_{LP} \le 3$
MSG_C	The valid values of MSG_C are those required to support valid minimum and maximum overhead rates, MSG_{min} and MSG_{max}.
$B_{p,n}$	$0 \le B_{p,n} \le 254$, $\sum_n B_{p,n} \le 254$
M_p	1, 2, 4, 8 or 16. If $R_p = 0$ then $M_p = 1$
T_p	$1 \le T_p \le 64$
R_p	0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14 or 16

Table 7-8 – Valid framing configurations

Parameter	Capability
D_p	1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 For the downstream latency path #0, additional valid D_0 values are: 96, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 288, 320, 352, 384, 416, 448, 480, 511 If $R_p = 0$ then $D_p = 1$
Relationship of $N_{FEC\,0}$ and D_0	For the downstream latency path #0, configurations that satisfy the following relationship are valid: $(N_{FEC\,0} - 1) \times (\mathrm{D}_0 - 1) \leq 254 \times 63 = 16002$ For the upstream latency path #0, configurations that satisfy the following relationship are valid: $(N_{FEC\,0} - 1) \times (\mathrm{D}_0 - 1) \leq 254 \times 7 = 1778$
L_p	$1 \leq L_p \leq 15 \times (NSC - 1)$ and $\sum L_p$ shall be such that $8 \leq \sum L_p \leq 15 \times (NSC - 1)$
Relation of S_p and M_p	Configurations that satisfy the following relationship are valid: $M_p/2 \leq S_p \leq 32 \times M_p$ (see Note 1). For the downstream latency path #0, additional valid configurations are: $M_0/16 \leq S_0 \leq M_0/2$
Overhead rate constraints	Configurations that satisfy the following relationship are valid: 0.1 kbit/s $\leq OR_p \leq$ 64 kbit/s (see Note 2).
Delay constraints	Configurations that satisfy the following relationship are valid: $1/2 \leq S_p \leq 64$ (see Note 3) For the downstream latency path #0, additional valid S_0 values are: $1/16 \leq S_0 < 1/2$
Overhead channel period	At initialization, configurations that provide a period for each overhead channel PER_p between 15 and 20 ms are valid. After an on-line reconfiguration of type 2 (DRR) or type 3 (SRA), configurations that provide a period for each overhead channel PER_p between 1.875 and 160 ms are valid.
NOTE 1 – This condition is a bound on the number of mux data frames per symbol. NOTE 2 – The 0.1 kbit/s overhead rate lower bound corresponds to an $SEQ_p = 2$ (see Table 7-14) and an overhead channel period of 160 ms. NOTE 3 – This condition puts bounds on the number of FEC codewords per symbol. NOTE 4 – Setting MSG_{min} higher than 28 kbit/s may cause configuration errors and reduce the maximal achievable net data rate.	

7.6.3 Mandatory configurations

7.6.3.1 Mandatory latency path function

An ATU shall support all combinations of the values of PMS-TC control parameters for latency path function #0 displayed in Tables 7-9 and 7-10 in the downstream and upstream direction, respectively. Configurations that result in non-integer values of S_0 shall be supported. The values shown in the tables shall be supported in all transmitters and receivers.

Table 7-9 – Mandatory downstream control parameter support for latency path #0

Parameter	Capability
MSG_{min}	All valid values of MSG_{min} shall be supported within latency path #0.
MSG_{max}	MSG_{max} shall be set to 64000 within latency path #0.
Number of frame bearers	N_{BC}
B_{00}	All valid values of B_{00} shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory downstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU.
MSG_{LP}	0
MSG_C	All valid values of MSG_C shall be supported within path #0.
M_0	All valid values of M_0 shall be supported.
T_0	All valid values of T_0 shall be supported.
R_0	All valid values of R_0 shall be supported.
D_0	1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 Support of additional optional D_0 values is indicated during initialization. All indicated values of D_0 shall be supported.
S_0	$1/2 \le S_0 < 64$ Support of additional optional S_0 values is indicated during initialization, through $S_{0\,min}$, with $1/16 \le S_{0\,min} \le 1/2$. All values of S_0, with $S_{0\,min} \le S_0 < 1/2$, shall be supported.
L_0	All valid values of L_0 shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory downstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU.

Table 7-10 – Mandatory upstream control parameter support for latency path #0

Parameter	Capability
MSG_{min}	All valid values of MSG_{min} shall be supported within latency path #0.
MSG_{max}	MSG_{max} shall be set to 64000 within latency path #0.
Number of frame bearers	N_{BC}
B_{00}	All valid values of B_{00} shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory upstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU.
MSG_{LP}	0
MSG_C	All valid values of MSG_C shall be supported within latency path #0.
M_0	All valid values of M_0 shall be supported.
T_0	All valid values of T_0 shall be supported.
R_0	All valid values of R_0 shall be supported.
D_0	1, 2, 4, 8 Support of additional optional D_0 values is indicated during initialization. All indicated values of D_0 shall be supported.
L_0	All valid values of L0 shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory upstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU.

7.6.3.2 Other latency path functions

An ATU shall support all combinations of the values of PMS-TC control parameters for each optional latency path #*p* that is supported as displayed in Tables 7-11 and 7-12 in the downstream and upstream direction, respectively. Configurations that result in non-integer values of S_P shall be supported. The values shown in the tables shall be supported in all transmitters and receivers.

Table 7-11 – Mandatory downstream control parameter support for optional latency paths

Parameter	Capability
MSG_{min}	All valid values of MSG_{min} shall be supported within any supported latency path.
MSG_{max}	MSG_{max} shall be set to 64000 within any supported latency path.
Number of frame bearers	N_{BC}
B_{p0}	All valid values of B_{p0} shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory downstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU.
MSG_{LP}	Any supported latency path function shall be capable of carrying the message-based portion of the overhead structure. $MSG_{LP} = p$ shall be supported.
MSG_C	All valid values of MSG_C shall be supported within any supported latency path.
M_p	All valid values of M_p shall be supported.
T_p	All valid values of T_p shall be supported
R_p	$R_{p\ max}$ is identified during initialization. All valid values of R_p up to and including $R_{p\ max}$ shall be supported.
D_p	$D_{p\ max}$ is identified during initialization. All valid values of D_p up to and including $D_{p\ max}$ shall be supported.
L_p	All valid values of L_p shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory downstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU.

Table 7-12 – Mandatory upstream control parameter support for optional latency paths

Parameter	Capability
MSG_{min}	All valid values of MSG_{min} shall be supported within any supported latency path.
MSG_{max}	MSG_{max} shall be set to 64000 within any supported latency path.
Number of frame bearers	N_{BC}
B_{p0}	All valid values of B_{p0} shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory upstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU.
MSG_{LP}	Any supported latency path function shall be capable of carrying the message-based portion of the overhead structure. $MSG_{LP} = p$ shall be supported.
MSG_C	All valid values of MSG_C shall be supported within any supported latency path.
M_p	All valid values of M_p shall be supported.
T_p	All valid values of T_p shall be supported
R_p	$R_{p\ max}$ is identified during initialization. All valid values of R_p up to and including $R_{p\ max}$ shall be supported.
D_p	$D_{p\ max}$ is identified during initialization. All valid values of D_p up to and including $D_{p\ max}$ shall be supported.
L_p	All valid values of L_p shall be supported up to a maximum required to support the highest mandatory upstream data rate for any TPS-TC supported by the ATU.

7.7 Data plane procedures

7.7.1 Latency path function

7.7.1.1 Mux data frame selector

Within latency path function #*p*, the mux data frame selector multiplexes the frame bearers with the overhead channel for latency path function #*p*. The output of the mux data frame selector is in the structure of the mux data frame at reference point A. The control parameters M_p, T_p and B_{p0}, ... , B_{p3} determine the selection and the order of the octets from Frame.Bearer(*n*).confirm primitives, the CRC octet described in clause 7.7.1.2, and the overhead channel #*p* from the overhead access function described in clause 7.8.2.

The mux data frame selector maintains a counter that is initialized to zero at the completion of initialization. The counter is incremented each time a complete mux data frame is constructed and is used in conjunction with the control parameter T_p in the following manner. The first octet of every mux data frame is nominally used to transport the shared overhead channel of the PMS-TC function. However, this octet is sometimes used to carry data if the value of T_p is not 1. If T_p is not 1 and if the counter value modulo T_p is zero, then the octet is used to transport overhead; otherwise, an extra octet of data is transported. The data is taken from the frame bearer with the lowest index that is assigned to latency path #*p*. In the case that there is no frame bearer assigned to latency path #*p*, an octet with the value of zero is used.

When the octet is used for overhead, the next octet is taken from the overhead message structure described in clause 7.8.2.1. Because the counter used in conjunction with T_p is reset at the completion of initialization, the first mux data frame generated always has a sync octet carrying the overhead channel.

The remaining octets of every mux data frame in latency path #*p* are constructed by taking B_{p0} octets from Frame.Bearer(0).confirm primitives, B_{p1} octets from Frame.Bearer(1), etc. The octets are taken from the primitives so that their octet alignment, MSB position and order within the frame bearer are maintained. Each mux data frame always contains a total of K_p octets.

The mux data frame selector procedure of the latency path function #*p* creates M_p mux data frames, a total of $M_p \times K_p$ octets. This procedure is followed by the CRC procedure.

7.7.1.2 Cyclic redundant checksum

Each latency path periodically calculates a CRC octet, *crc*0 to *crc*7, to enable error detection. The CRC covers $T_P \times SEQ_p \times K_p - 1$ message octets, starting from the first octet after the sync octet of the first mux data frame and ending with the last octet of the last mux data frame.

The *crc*0 to *crc*7 bits shall be computed from $(T_P \times SEQ_p \times K_p - 1) \times 8$ message bits at reference point A using the equation:

$$crc(D) = M(D)D^8 \text{ modulo } G(D)$$

where:

$$M(D) = m_0 Dk^{-1} + m_1 D^{k-2} + ... + m_{k-2} D + m_{k-1}, \text{ is the message polynomial,}$$

$$k = (T_p \times SEQ_p \times K_p - 1) \times 8,$$

$$G(D) = D^8 + D^4 + D^3 + D^2 + 1, \text{ is the generating polynomial,}$$

$$crc(D) = c_0 D^7 + c_1 D^6 + ... + c_6 D + c_7, \text{ is the check polynomial,}$$

and D is the delay operator.

That is, the CRC is the remainder when $M(D)\ D^8$ is divided by $G(D)$. Each octet shall be input into the $crc(D)$ equation least significant bit first.

The CRC value calculated is presented to the mux data frame selector described in clause 7.7.1.1 for transport during the next available overhead channel octet, i.e., first octet in the next repetition of the overhead channel structure (see clause 7.8.2.1). This procedure is followed by the scrambler procedure.

7.7.1.3 Scrambler

The binary data streams at reference point A shall be scrambled as illustrated in Figure 7-9 using the following equation:

$$d_n' = d_n \oplus d_{n-18}' \oplus d_{n-23}'$$

where d_n is the *n*-th input to the scrambler, and d_n' is the *n*-th output from the scrambler.

Each octet shall be input into the scrambler equation least significant bit first. The scrambler procedure of the latency path function #*p* shall scramble M_p mux data frames, or $M_p \times K_p$ octets. This procedure is followed by the FEC procedure.

NOTE – The starting state of the scrambler is not specified. Receiver implementations should use self-synchronizing descrambler designs.

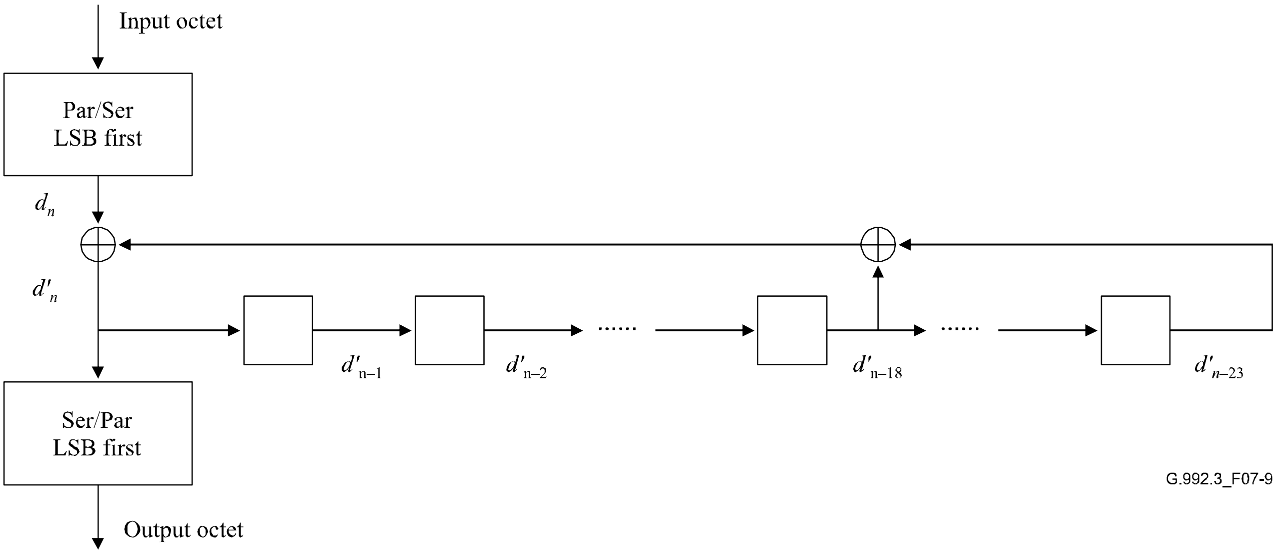


Figure 7-9 – Scrambler procedure

7.7.1.4 Forward error correction function

The FEC procedure inserts Reed-Solomon FEC redundancy octets to provide coding gain as an outer coding function to the PMD function. The FEC procedure of latency path function #*p* shall calculate R_p octets from $M_p \times K_p$ input octets. The octets are appended to the end of the input octets in the structure of FEC output data frame at reference point B.

When $R_p = 0$, no redundancy octets are appended and the values in the FEC output data frame are identical to the input values. For all other values of R_p, the following encoding procedure shall be used to create the R_p octets:

The FEC procedure shall take in M_p scrambled mux data frames comprising message octets, m_0, m_1, ... , $m_{Mp\times Kp-2}$, $m_{Mp\times Kp-1}$. The procedure shall produce R_p redundancy octets c_0, c_1, ... , c_{Rp-2}, c_{Rp-1}. These two taken together comprise the FEC codeword of size $M_p \times K_p + R_p$ octets. The R_p redundancy octets shall be appended to the message octets to form the FEC output data frame at reference point B.

At the end of the initialization sequence, the FEC function always starts with the first of M_p mux data frames.

The redundancy octets are computed from the message octets using the equation:

$$C(D) = M(D)D^{Rp} \text{ modulo } G(D)$$

where:

$M(D) = m_0 D^{Mp\times Kp-1} + m_1 D^{Mp\times Kp-2} + ... + m_{Mp\times Kp-2} D + m_{Mp\times Kp-1}$ is the message polynomial,

$C(D) = c_0 D^{Rp-1} + c_1 D^{Rp-2} + ... + c_{Rp-2} D + c_{Rp-1}$ is the check polynomial, and

$G(D) = \prod \left(D + \alpha^i\right)$ is the generator polynomial of the Reed-Solomon code,

where the index of the product runs from $i = 0$ to $R_p - 1$.

That is, $C(D)$ is the remainder obtained from dividing $M(\mathrm{D})\ D^R$ by $G(D)$. The arithmetic is performed in the Galois field GF(256), where α is a primitive element that satisfies the primitive binary polynomial $x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1$. A data octet ($d_7$, d_6, ... , d_1, d_0) is identified with the Galois field element $d_7\alpha^7 + d_6\alpha^6 ... + d_1\alpha + d_0$.

The FEC procedure of the latency path #p creates N_{FECp} octets in the structure of a FEC output data frame at reference point B. This procedure is followed by the interleaver procedure.

7.7.1.5 Interleaver

To spread the Reed-Solomon codeword and, therefore, reduce the probability of failure of the FEC in the presence of impulse noise, the FEC output data frames shall be convolutionally interleaved. The interleaver creates the interleaved FEC output data frames at reference point C, at the output of the latency path function. This procedure is followed by the frame multiplexing procedure.

Convolutional interleaving is defined by the rule (using the currently defined values of the framing control parameters D_p and the derived parameter N_{FECp}):

- Each of the N_{FECp} octets B_0, B_1, ... , $B_{NFEC(p-1)}$ in an FEC output data frame is delayed by an amount that varies linearly with the octet index. More precisely, octet B_i (with index i) is delayed by $(D_p - 1) \times i$ octets, where D_p is the interleaver depth.

An example for $N_{FECp} = 5$, $D_p = 2$ is shown in Table 7-13, where B_i^j denotes the i-th octet of the j-th FEC output data frame.

Table 7-13 – Convolutional interleaving example for N_{FECp} = 5, D_p = 2

Interleaver input	B_0^j	B_1^j	B_2^j	B_3^j	B_4^j	B_0^{j+1}	B_1^{j+1}	B_2^{j+1}	B_3^{j+1}	B_4^{j+1}
Interleaver output	B_0^j	B_3^{j-1}	B_1^j	B_4^{j-1}	B_2^j	B_0^{j+1}	B_3^j	B_1^{j+1}	B_4^j	B_2^{j+1}

With D_p as one of the mandatory values identified in Table 7-9 or Table 7-11, and with the above-defined rule, the output octets from the interleaver always occupy distinct time slots when N_{FECp} is odd and D_p is a power of 2. When N_{FECp} is even, a dummy octet shall be added at the beginning of the codeword at the input to the interleaver. The resultant odd-length codeword is then convolutionally interleaved, and the dummy octet shall then be removed from the output of the interleaver.

With D_0 as one of the optional (i.e., valid but not mandatory) values identified in Table 7-8, the codeword length $N_{FEC\,0}$ and D_0 shall be co-prime (i.e., have no common divisors except for 1). No dummy octets shall be used, as with the above-defined rule, the output octets from the interleaver always occupy distinct time slots.

The interleaving procedure of the latency path function #p shall interleave a single FEC output data frame, or $M_p \times K_p + R_p$ octets. This procedure is followed by the frame multiplexing procedure.

7.7.2 Frame multiplexing

The output signals of all latency paths are multiplexed together to form the output of the PMS-TC function. The frame multiplexing procedure combines bits from each configured latency path in decreasing label order, starting from $p = 3$ down to $p = 0$. L_p bits are taken from each latency path. $L_p = 0$ if latency path #p is not supported or disabled. The bits are taken LSB first. The data is packed into a PMD.Bits.confirm primitive in order of latency path $p = 3$ down to $p = 0$.

7.8 Control plane procedures

7.8.1 NTR transport

An ATU-C may optionally transport an 8-kHz timing marker as NTR to support the transport of a timing reference from a voice PSTN access network to equipment located with the ATU-R. The 8-kHz timing marker is provided to the ATU-C as part of the interface at the V reference point. Additionally, if this capability is supported, the local PMD shall provide a PMD sampling clock that is a multiple of 2.208 MHz ±50 ppm along with an indication of when each overhead message structure (described in clause 7.8.2.1) begins.

If NTR transport is configured during initialization or reconfiguration of the PMS-TC function, the ATU-C shall generate an 8-kHz local timing reference (LTR) by dividing the PMD sampling clock by the appropriate integer. The ATU-C shall compute the change in phase offset between the input NTR and the LTR from the previous overhead message structure start indication to the present one. The phase offset shall be measured as a difference in cycles of a 2.208 MHz clock in units of approximately 453 ns. The phase offset shall be encoded into a single octet, denoted by bits *ntr*7 to *ntr*0, representing a signed integer in the –128 to +127 range in 2's-complement notation. When *ntr*7 is a 0, the number shall represent a positive value of the change of phase offset, indicating that the LTR is higher in frequency than the NTR.

An ATU-C may choose to lock its transmit PMD function clocks to a multiple of the NTR frequency. In that case, all phase changes between the LTR and NTR would be measured as zero. In this case, the ATU-C shall signal that NTR is supported during initialization and encode the indicator bits *ntr*7 to *ntr*0 to zero.

The bit *ntr*7 to *ntr*0 shall be transported using the overhead channel as described in clause 7.8.2.2.

NOTE 1 – The NTR should have a maximum frequency variation of ±32 ppm. The LTR should have a maximum frequency variation of ±50 ppm. The maximum mismatch should therefore be ±82 ppm. The offset is communicated via the overhead channel at the same rate as the CRC indicators and can be mapped into a single octet.

NOTE 2 – The NTR phase offset value is transmitted once per overhead channel period (see Table 7-8). The overhead channel period in the L2 state may be longer than in the L0 state (see clause 7.12.2). For the NTR to work properly, the ATU-C should maintain a maximum overhead channel period in the L2 state, which allows NTR phase offset changes over that period to be represented in the [–128 to +127] range. A mismatch of ±82 ppm allows for an overhead channel period in the L2 state of up to 700 ms.

NOTE 3 – The maximum ratio of the line rate after on-line reconfiguration of type 2 (DRR) or 3 (SRA) to the initialization line rate may be limited due to requirements for NTR. For a sufficiently frequent NTR update, the maximum allowable value of the period PER_p may be limited. An ATU-R should take this limit into account in DRR and SRA requests.

7.8.2 Overhead channel access

Each latency path that is enabled carries an overhead channel structure. Various primitives and messages are signalled over these overhead channels via the overhead channel access procedures described in this clause.

7.8.2.1 Overhead channel structure

Each latency path that is enabled carries an overhead channel to be transported in the sync octets. Generally, each overhead channel can contain a CRC portion, a bit-oriented portion and a message-oriented portion over a repeating sequence of sync octets of length SEQ_p. The specific structure of the overhead channel for latency path #*p* shall have one of four formats as displayed in Table 7-14 depending upon the value of the derived parameter SEQ_p.

The value of SEQ_p shall be calculated as shown in Table 7-14 and depends upon the value of MSG_{LP} as well as the latency of all paths. The value of SEQ_p shall be implicitly defined through a PARAMS message exchanged during initialization, and shall not be updated otherwise. To determine the value of SEQ_p, the indicator bits shall be allocated to the latency path that has the lowest value of the derived parameter $delay_p$, and the message-based overhead shall be allocated to latency path #MSG_{LP}. If more than one latency path has the same value of $delay_p$, the path with the lowest latency shall be the latency path with lowest $delay_p$ and lowest label p. The values of SEQ_p shall be determined during the initialization procedures, and shall not be changed through on-line reconfiguration or power management transitions not involving the initialization procedures (although the latency path with the lowest delay may change).

An overhead structure frame counter is maintained in each latency path with the frame counter incremented by one for each sync octet transmitted. The overhead structure frame counter starts from zero at the end of the initialization procedure. When the counter reaches the maximum value SEQ_p and the end of the sequence is reached, the counter is reset and the information sequence is begun again from octet sequence 0. This same counter shall be used to control the behaviour of the CRC procedure in clause 7.7.1.2 and the behaviour of the NTR transport procedure in clause 7.8.1. The value of MSG_C is identified during initialization and shall result in a message-based overhead data rate in the MSG_{min} to MSG_{max} range.

The first sync octet following the initialization sequence shall always contain a CRC octet in each latency path. The value of the CRC octet for the first sync octet following initialization is implementation specific.

The CRC octet shall be carried in the path for which it is calculated.

Table 7-14 – Overhead channel structure depending on SEQ_p

<table>
<tr><th>Octet number</th><th>Information</th><th>SEQ_p length</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Case if $p \neq MSG_{LP}$ and latency path #p is not the lowest latency path according to the definition in this clause</td><td rowspan="3">2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CRC octet</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Reserved for use by ITU-T. This octet shall be set to FF_{16} in all latency paths.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Case if $p \neq MSG_{LP}$ and latency path #p is the lowest latency path</td><td rowspan="4">6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CRC octet</td></tr>
<tr><td>1, 2, 3, 4</td><td>Bit-oriented portion of overhead channel</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Reserved for use by ITU-T. This octet shall be set to FF_{16} in all latency paths.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Case if $p = MSG_{LP}$ and latency path #p is not the lowest latency path according to the definition in this clause</td><td rowspan="4">$MSG_C + 2$</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CRC octet</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Reserved for use by ITU-T. This octet shall be set to FF_{16} in all latency paths.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2, 3, … $MSG_C + 1$</td><td>Message-oriented portion of overhead channel</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7-14 – Overhead channel structure depending on SEQ_p

<table>
<tr><th>Octet number</th><th>Information</th><th>SEQ_p length</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Case if p = MSG_{LP} and latency path #p is the lowest latency path according to the definition in this clause</td><td rowspan="5">MSG_C + 6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>CRC octet</td></tr>
<tr><td>1, 2, 3, 4</td><td>Bit-oriented portion of overhead channel</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Reserved for use by ITU-T. This octet shall be set to FF₁₆ in all latency paths.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6, 7, …
MSG_C + 5</td><td>Message-oriented portion of overhead channel</td></tr>
</table>

7.8.2.2 Indicator bits

The following indicator bits are particularly time sensitive and shall be transported as indicator bits in the bit-oriented portion of the overhead channel. Four octets shall be reserved to carry the indicator bits. The following indicator bits shall be transported relating to the PMS-TC and PMD functions:

- NTR7 to NTR0 downstream (PMS-TC-related);
- LOS and RDI in both directions (PMD-related);
- LPR upstream (PMD-related).

Additionally, each TPS-TC function may provide up to two indicators, designated as *TIB*#0 and *TIB*#1. These are transported transparently by the PMS-TC function. The definition of *TIB*#0 and *TIB*#1 are provided in Annex K.

The structure of the bit-oriented overhead portion is shown in Table 7-15. The PMD and PMS-TC bits are active low. *TIB*#0–*n* and *TIB*#1–*n* are the TPS-TC function indicator bits belonging to the TPS-TC function labelled #*n*. Indicator bits which are not used (e.g., upstream NTR and downstream LPR) shall be set to 1.

Table 7-15 – Bit-oriented structure of overhead channel

Octet sequence	**Bit 7** (MSB)	**Bit 6**	**Bit 5**	**Bit 4**	**Bit 3**	**Bit 2**	**Bit 1**	**Bit 0** (LSB)
1 (NTR)	NTR7	NTR6	NTR5	NTR4	NTR3	NTR2	NTR1	NTR0
2 (PMD)	LOS	RDI	LPR	1	1	1	1	1
3 (PMS-TC)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
4 (TPS-TC)	*TIB*#0–0	*TIB*#0–1	*TIB*#0–2	*TIB*#0–3	*TIB*#1–0	*TIB*#1–1	*TIB*#1–2	*TIB*#1–3

7.8.2.3 Overhead message format

An HDLC-based frame structure, as shown in Table 7-16, shall be used to encapsulate overhead messages. These functions carried by these messages include:

a) on-line reconfiguration messages (PMS-TC and PMD-related);

b) command/response messages (MPS-TC-related);

c) performance monitoring messages (MPS-TC-related).

The message-oriented portion of the overhead channel shall be carried in the latency path as determined by the control variable MSG_{LP}.

Table 7-16 – MDLC frame structure

Octet #	MSB LSB
	$7E_{16}$ – Opening flag
1	Address field
2	Control field
3	Message octet 1
…	….
$P + 2$	Message octet P
$P + 3$	FCS high octet
$P + 4$	FCS low octet
	$7E_{16}$ – Closing flag

A maximum message length of 1024 octets ($P = 1024$ maximum) is defined. This message length refers to the length before HDLC encapsulation.

7.8.2.4 Overhead channel protocol

7.8.2.4.1 Transmitter protocol

The transmitter shall accept messages from the MPS-TC function, as described in clause 9.4.1, with the priorities displayed in Table 7-17.

Table 7-17 – Overhead message priorities

Priority value	Address field value (2 LSBs)	Associated timeout value	Command type
1	00_2	400 ms	High priority overhead messages in Table 9-2
2	01_2	800 ms	Normal priority overhead messages in Table 9-3
3	10_2	1 s	Low priority overhead message in Table 9-4
NOTE 1 – The timeout defined in the table includes the sum of the downstream and upstream interleaving delay. NOTE 2 – Whether a response message meets the timeout or not, is determined before the CRC verification.			

The transmitter shall format messages using the HDLC frame structure described in clause 7.8.2.3, inserting the frame check sequence octets as described in [ITU-T G.997.1]. Octet transparency and octet inter-frame time fill shall be as in [ITU-T G.997.1]. Opening and closing flags may be shared (i.e., only one flag between consecutive messages).

The two least significant bits of the address field shall be set with the priority of the message according to the values shown in Table 7-17. The value of 11_2 is reserved. All other bits of the address field shall be set to 0_2.

The second least significant bit of the control field shall be set with a command (0_2) or response code (1_2). The least significant bit shall be set alternately to 0_2 and 1_2 as new messages are sent. All other bits of the control field shall be set to 0_2.

When sending a new command message, the LSB of the control field shall be inverted from the previous command message, irrespective of the priority class. The transmitter shall send the command message one time and await response message. No more than one command message of each priority value shall be awaiting a response message at any time. Upon receipt of a response message, a new command message may be sent. If a response message is not received, a timeout occurs and the command message is repeated without inverting the LSB of the control field.

Alternately, the ATU may abandon the command message after an implementation-specific number of retransmissions. There are different timeout durations for the different priority messages and are displayed in Table 7-17. Timeouts are based starting from the instant the PMS-TC sends the last octet of the request message in a PMD.Bits.confirm primitive until the instant the PMS-TC receives the first octet of the response message in a PMD.Bits.indicate primitive or a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive (see Figures 7-5 and 8-4, and Table 8-1).

When sending a new response message, the LSB of the control field shall be inverted from the previous response message, irrespective of the priority class.

The transmitter may receive messages from the MPS-TC for transmission at different priorities. The highest priority message shall be transmitted first. At any time, if the transmitter receives a message of a higher priority, the transmitter shall send the higher priority message. Any message of lower priority being transmitted may be aborted using the octet abort sequence described in [ITU-T G.997.1], i.e., a control escape octet followed by a flag. If transmission of the lower priority message is completed, it remains active and the timeout timer values are not affected. If the lower priority message is aborted, the transmitter shall retransmit the message as the priority scheme allows, without inverting the LSB of the control field.

7.8.2.4.2 Receiver protocol

The receiver shall search on octet boundaries for messages matching the structure of the HDLC frame format. Any invalid frames as described in [ITU-T G.997.1] shall be discarded. Any message with an invalid FCS shall be discarded. Any message with an address or control field not in accordance with clause 7.8.2.4.1 shall be discarded.

The alternating LSB of the control field may be used to detect messages that are being repeated because of timeout, or can be used to detect messages that might have been previously lost or discarded due to errors.

Each message received shall be delivered to the MPS-TC function.

7.8.2.4.3 Overhead message segmentation

An overhead message shall be segmented if the message length P is higher than the maximum of 1024 octets. Otherwise, an overhead message may still be segmented at the transmitter's discretion, even if the message length P is less than the maximum of 1024 octets. To avoid starvation of the protocol, it may be desirable to reduce the transmit duration of a segment to a value significantly shorter than the timeout of the highest priority message, e.g., 200 ms.

If an overhead message of length P is segmented into N segments, the n-th segment ($1 \le n \le N$) contains P_n message octets. To allow for the message indicator and message type to be included in each message segment, the following relationship shall be satisfied:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N}(P_n - 2) = P - 2, with\, \forall n : 2 < P_n < P$$

The last (P – 2) message octets of the non-segmented message shall be mapped to the N message segments in the same order as they are contained in the non-segmented message. The third message octet of the non-segmented message shall map to the third message octet of the first message segment. The last octet of the non-segmented message shall map to the P_N-th message octet of the N-th message segment. Each message segment shall be transmitted using the HDLC frame structure encapsulation defined in clause 7.8.2.3, with P_n message octets contained in the HDLC frame encapsulating the n-th message segment. Each message segment may contain a different number of message octets. The maximum number of message segments is 8 (i.e., $2 \le N \le 8$). Figure 7-10 shows the bit assignment for the control field.

Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
Flag field (set to 10 or 00)		Segment ID field (numbered 000 to 111)			Set to 0	Command (0) Response (1)	Alternate (0/1)

Figure 7-10 – Bit assignment for control field

The following shall apply to all encapsulated message segments:

- The message segment length is a variable length with a maximal length of 1024 message octets per message segment.
- The address field shall be the same for all message segments (identical to the non-segmented case).
- Each of the three least significant bits of the control field shall be the same for all message segments (identical to the non-segmented case).
- The segment ID field of the control field shall contain the message segment ID n, with n in the range 0 to 7 (MSB of message segment ID mapping to MSB of the segment ID field).
- The segment ID shall count down from $N-1$ to 0, where n is the total number of segments in the message.
- The flag field shall be set to 10_2 for the first and last segment and shall be set to 00_2 for all other segments.
- A segmented message shall have at least two segments (i.e., $N \geq 2$).
- The first octet of the message segment shall be the message designator (same for all segments, identical to the non-segmented case).
- The second octet of the message segment shall be the message type (same for all segments, identical to the non-segmented case).

An example sequence of control fields in subsequent message segments is shown in Figure 7-11.

1	0	N – 1			0	0	1

0	0	N – 2			0	0	1

...

0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1

1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Figure 7-11 – Example showing the control field in a segmented message of length *N*

Each transmitted message segment shall be acknowledged by the far-end with a segment acknowledge message, except the last one. The last command message segment shall be acknowledged by the far-end with the appropriate response message (identical to the non-segmented case). The last response message segment shall not be acknowledged. Table 7-17a defines the segment acknowledge message. The following shall apply to all encapsulated segment acknowledge messages:

- HDLC frame shall contain 5 message octets (P = 5).
- The two least significant bits of the address field shall be identical to the corresponding bits in the address field of the acknowledged message segment. All other bits of the address field shall be set to 0_2.
- The second least significant bit of the control field shall either indicate a command message (request to continue the response, e.g., L2 grant) or a response message (request to continue the command, e.g., OLR).
- The least significant bit of the control field shall toggle for each acknowledgement message as it normally toggles for each command/response message (see clause 7.8.2.4.2).
- All other bits of the control field shall be set to 0_2.

Table 7-17a – Segment acknowledge message

Message octet number	Message octet definition
Octet 1	Message designator $1111\ 0000_b$ for acknowledgement of high priority message segment $1111\ 0001_b$ for acknowledgement of normal priority message segment $1111\ 0010_b$ for acknowledgement of low priority message segment
Octet 2	Message type of segment acknowledge message 01_{16}
Octet 3	Acknowledged message segment ID (in range 1 to 7)
Octet 4	Message designator (first message octet of acknowledged message segment)
Octet 5	Message type (second message octet of acknowledged message segment)

Every message segment shall be acknowledged by the far end before the next message segment is transmitted. The segment acknowledge message shall not be segmented.

Timeouts shall be defined as follows:

- For a non-segmented message, timeout shall apply between the last octet of the command message transmitted and the first octet of the response message received.
- For a segmented response message, the timeout shall apply between the last octet of the command message transmitted and the first octet of the first message segment received.
- A timeout corresponding to the command priority shall apply between the last octet of the message segment transmitted and the first octet of the segment acknowledge message received.
- Another timeout corresponding to the command priority shall apply between the last octet of the segment acknowledge message transmitted and the first octet of the next message segment received.

If a timeout expires, the transmitter may repeat the last transmitted message. This repeated message can be an unsegmented command message, a command/response message segment (except the last segment of a response message) or a segment acknowledge message. Alternately, the ATU may abandon the message after an implementation-specific number of retransmissions.

If a segment of a segmented message is aborted by a higher priority message, the transmitter shall retransmit only the aborted segment and continue to transmit the remaining segments, if any. A segment acknowledge message shall not be aborted by a higher priority message.

Examples of overhead message segmentation and applicable timeouts are shown in Figures 7-12 and 7-13.

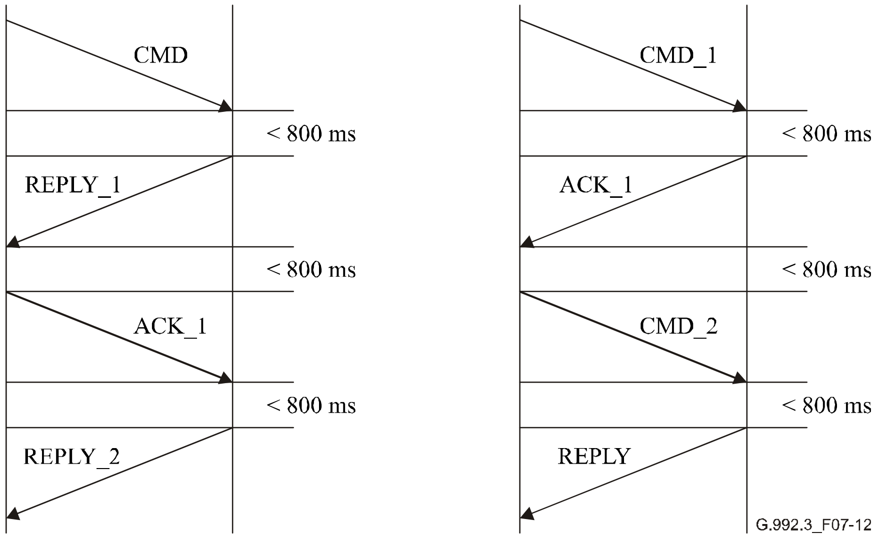


Figure 7-12 – Example of segmentation of a command and response of priority 2 in two segments

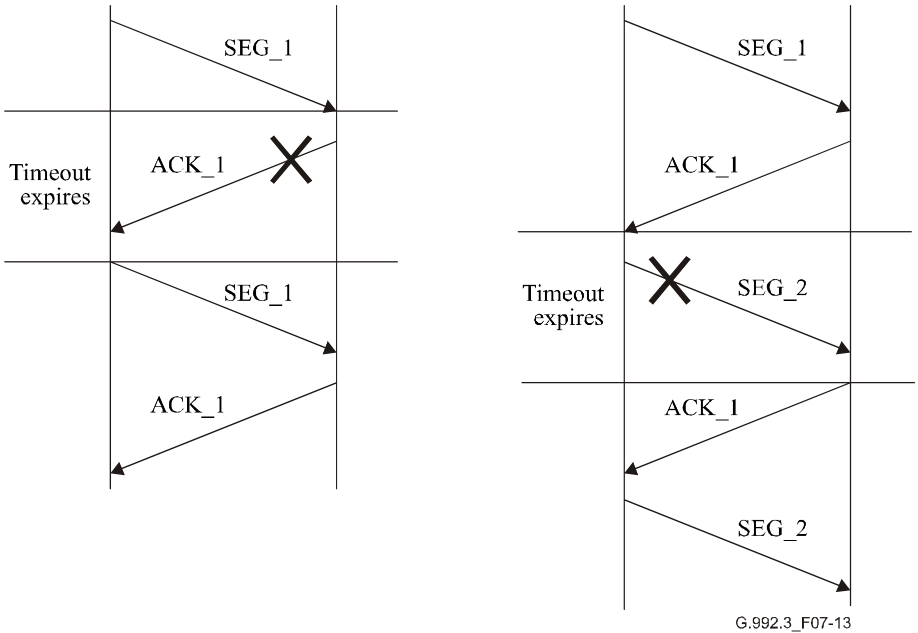


Figure 7-13 – Example of retransmission of segment and acknowledgment

7.9 Management plane procedures

7.9.1 Surveillance primitives

All PMS-TC function primitives are line related. Only anomalies are defined for each receive latency path.

Two near-end anomalies are defined for a receive latency path #p:

- Forward error correction fec-*p*: A fec-*p* anomaly occurs when a received FEC codeword for the latency path #*p* indicates that errors have been corrected. This anomaly is not asserted if errors are detected and are not correctable.
- Cyclic redundancy check crc-*p*: A crc-*p* anomaly occurs when a received CRC-8 code for the latency path #*p* is not identical to the corresponding locally generated code.

Two far-end anomalies are defined for a receive latency path #p:

- Far-end forward error correction ffec-*p*: An ffec-*p* anomaly is a fec-*p* anomaly detected at the far-end.
- Far-end block error febe-*p* anomaly: A febe-*p* anomaly is a crc-*p* anomaly detected at the far-end.

In clauses 7.2.1.1.3 and 7.2.1.2.3 of [ITU-T G.997.1], a one-second counter is used to declare a near-end severely errored second (SES). The one-second counter shall be incremented by $\Delta CRC\sec_p$ (the one-second normalized CRC anomaly counter increment) for each occurrence of a crc-*p* anomaly. A $\Delta CRC\sec_p$ value is defined for each downstream and upstream latency path separately, as a real value in the 0.125 to 8 range, as:

$$\Delta CRC\sec_p = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 15 \le PERp \le 20 \\ \dfrac{PERp}{15} & \text{if } PERp < 15 \\ \dfrac{PERp}{20} & \text{if } PERp > 20 \end{cases}$$

7.10 Initialization procedures

7.10.1 ITU-T G.994.1 phase

The CL and CLR messages shall describe capabilities of the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively, and can be constrained by application requirements, service requirements, implementation choices, etc. Therefore, the capabilities indicated in the CL and CLR messages are the enabled capabilities, which may be equal to, or a subset of, the set of capabilities supported by the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively. In any case, the MS message (and all subsequent initialization messages) shall account for all capability restrictions indicated in the CL and CLR messages.

7.10.1.1 ITU-T G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about the PMS-TC function shall be as defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the CL and CLR messages. This information may be optionally requested and reported via ITU-T G.994.1 messages at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once between ATU-C and ATU-R but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- capability to transport NTR (downstream only);
- support for erasure decoding reporting;
- minimum downstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is needed;
- minimum upstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is needed;
- maximum downstream net data rate of each latency path can be supported;
- maximum upstream net data rate of each latency path that can be supported;
- $R_{p\,max}$ on each optional latency path that can be supported;

• $D_{p\ max}$ on each optional latency path that can be supported.

In addition, non-standard capabilities may be reported through additional non-standard facility (NSF) messages.

This information is represented using an ITU-T G.994.1 tree model of the information as in Table 7-18. An ATU provides both the upstream and downstream information in response to the capabilities request message.

The latency paths supported shall start from 0 and increase by one. The capability list shall indicate that latency paths supported consists of {#0}, {#0, #1}, {#0, #1, #2} or {#0, #1, #2, #3} (there are only 4 cases). The number of latency paths supported may be different for upstream and downstream.

Table 7-18 – Format for PMS-TC capability list information

Npar(2) bit	**Definition of Npar(2) bit**
NTR	This bit is set to ONE if the ATU has the capability to transport the NTR signal in the downstream direction.
Erasure decoding reporting	This bit is set to ONE if the ATU supports reporting in R-PARAMS message as to whether or not erasure decoding is being used on the downstream latency paths.
Spar(2) bit	**Definition of related Npar(3) octets**
Downstream overhead data rate	Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the minimum message-based data rate that is needed by the ATU. The unsigned 6-bit value is the data rate divided by 1000 bits per second minus 1 (covering the range 1 to 64 kbit/s) – see Note.
Upstream overhead data rate	Parameter block of 2 octets that describes the minimum message-based data rate that is needed by the ATU. The unsigned 6-bit value is the data rate divided by 1000 bits per second minus 1 (covering the range 1 to 64 kbit/s) – see Note.
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 supported (always set to 1)	Parameter block of 6 octets that describes the maximum net_max downstream rate, downstream $S_{0\ min}$, and downstream D_0 values supported in the latency path #0. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. The net_max downstream rate shall be greater than or equal to the maximum required downstream data rate for each TPS-TC type that is supported by the ATU. The supported range of S_0 values shall be indicated by its lower bound $S_{0\ min}$. $S_{0\ min}$ shall equal 1/(n+1), with n coded as an unsigned 4-bit value in the 1 to 15 range. The D_0 values supported shall be individually indicated with 1 bit per value.
Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 supported (always set to 1)	Parameter block of 3 octets that describes the maximum net_max upstream rate and downstream D_0 values supported in the latency path #0. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. The net_max upstream rate shall be greater than or equal to the maximum required upstream data rate for each TPS-TC type that is supported by the ATU. The D_0 values supported shall be individually indicated with 1 bit per value.
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #1 supported	Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max downstream rate, downstream $R_{1\ max}$, and downstream $D_{1\ max}$ supported in the latency path #1. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{1\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid R_p values divided by 2. $D_{1\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid D_p values.
Upstream PMS-TC latency path #1 supported	Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max upstream rate, upstream $R_{1\ max}$, and upstream $D_{1\ max}$ supported in the latency path #1. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{1\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid R_p values divided by 2. $D_{1\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid D_p values.

Table 7-18 – Format for PMS-TC capability list information

Downstream PMS-TC latency path #2 supported	Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max downstream rate, downstream $R_{2\ max}$, and downstream $D_{2\ max}$ supported in the latency path #2. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{2\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid R_p values divided by 2. $D_{2\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid D_p values.
Upstream PMS-TC latency path #2 supported	Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max upstream rate, upstream $R_{2\ max}$, and upstream $D_{2\ max}$ supported in the latency path #2. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{2\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid R_p values divided by 2. $D_{2\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid D_p values.
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #3 supported	Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max downstream rate, downstream $R_{3\ max}$, and downstream $D_{3\ max}$ supported in the latency path #3. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{3\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the valid R_p values divided by 2. $D_{3\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid D_p values.
Upstream PMS-TC latency path #3 supported	Parameter block of 4 octets that describes the maximum net_max upstream rate, upstream $R_{3\ max}$, and upstream $D_{3\ max}$ supported in the latency path #3. The unsigned 12-bit net_max value is the data rate divided by 4000. $R_{3\ max}$ is an unsigned 4-bit value and shall be one of the value R_p values divided by 2. $D_{3\ max}$ is an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be the logarithm base 2 of one of the valid D_p values.
NOTE – By construction of the ADSL2 framing, the message-based overhead data rate is strictly smaller than 64 kbit/s. Hence, the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization should not request a minimum value of 64 kbit/s.	

**Table 7-18a – Standard information field –
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 1**

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 1
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Net_max (maximum net data rate, bits 12 to 7)

**Table 7-18b – Standard information field –
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 2**

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 2
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Net_max (maximum net data rate, bits 6 to 1)

**Table 7-18c – Standard information field –
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 3**

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 3
x	x			x	x	x	x	$S_{0\ min}$ value (=1/(n+1), n coded in bits 4 to 1, n = 1 to 15)
x	x	x	x					Reserved for allocation by ITU-T

The $S_{0\,min}$ value shall be less than or equal to 1/2 (i.e., n ≥ 1). If the $S_{0\,min}$ octet (see Table 7-18c) is not included in the CL or CLR message, the $S_{0\,min}$ value shall be set equal to 1/2 (implicit indication). The S_0 value selected during the exchange phase (see Table 7-7 and clause 7.10.3) shall be equal to or higher than the highest of the $S_{0\,min}$ values indicated in the CL and CLR message.

Table 7-18d – Standard information field –
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 4

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 4
x	x						x	D_0 value of 96 is supported
x	x					x		D_0 value of 128 is supported
x	x				x			D_0 value of 160 is supported
x	x			x				D_0 value of 192 is supported
x	x		x					D_0 value of 224 is supported
x	x	x						D_0 value of 256 is supported

Table 7-18e – Standard information field –
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 5

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 5
x	x						x	D_0 value of 288 is supported
x	x					x		D_0 value of 320 is supported
x	x				x			D_0 value of 352 is supported
x	x			x				D_0 value of 384 is supported
x	x		x					D_0 value of 416 is supported
x	x	x						D_0 value of 448 is supported

Table 7-18f – Standard information field –
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 6

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 6
							x	D_0 value of 480 is supported
x	x					x		D_0 value of 511 is supported
x	x	x	x	x	x			Reserved for allocation by ITU-T

The downstream D_0 value selected during the exchange phase (see clause 7.10.3) shall be one of the mandatory values (see Table 7-9) or one of the optional values (see Table 7-8), support of which is indicated in both the CL and CLR messages. The selected downstream D_0 value is not necessarily the highest commonly supported downstream D_0 value.

Table 7-18g – Standard information field – Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 1

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 1
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Net_max (maximum net data rate, bits 12 to 7)

Table 7-18h – Standard information field – Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 2

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 2
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	Net_max (maximum net data rate, bits 6 to 1)

Table 7-18i – Standard information field – Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3) coding – Octet 3

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 NPar(3)s – Octet 3
x	x						x	D_0 value of 16 is supported
x	x					x		D_0 value of 32 is supported
x	x				x			D_0 value of 64 is supported
x	x	x	x	x				Reserved for allocation by ITU-T

The upstream D_0 value selected during the exchange phase (see clause 7.10.3) shall be one of the mandatory values (see Table 7-10) or one of the optional values (see Table 7-8), support of which is indicated in both the CL and CLR message. The selected upstream D_0 value is not necessarily the highest commonly supported upstream D_0 value.

7.10.1.1.1 Short CLR message

For operating modes defined in this Recommendation for which the Spar(1) bit is set to ONE in a CLR message, an ATU-R is allowed to include only the Npar(2) information, and not include the Spar(2) and Npar(3) information. However, if an ATU-R elects to not include the Spar(2) and Npar(3) information, then all (TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD) Spar(2) and Npar(3) octets shall be omitted from the CLR message for all operating modes defined in this Recommendation for which the Spar(1) bit is set to ONE (i.e., no partial Spar(2) and Npar(3)).

In order to assure that the necessary capabilities information is exchanged prior to an MS message transaction, an ATU-R transmitting a CLR message without the Spar(2) and Npar(3) information, shall (in a subsequent transaction and prior to the MS message transaction) send an additional CLR message containing the complete (TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD) Npar(2), Spar(2) and Npar(3) information for all operating modes defined in this Recommendation for which Spar(1) bit is set to ONE in this additional CLR message.

Additionally, to decrease the duration of the ITU-T G.994.1 session, this additional CLR message shall have the Spar(1) bit set to ZERO for all operating modes defined in this Recommendation which are outside the intersection of operating modes enabled in the CL and CLR messages sent previously.

7.10.1.1.2 Short CL message

For operating modes defined in this Recommendation for which the Spar(1) bit is set to ONE in a CL message, an ATU-C is allowed to include only the Npar(2) information, and not include the Spar(2) and Npar(3) information. However, if an ATU-C elects to not include the Spar(2) and Npar(3) information, then all (TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD) Spar(2) and Npar(3) octets shall be omitted from the CL message for all operating modes defined in this Recommendation for which the Spar(1) bit is set to ONE (i.e., no partial Spar(2) and Npar(3)).

In order to assure that the necessary capabilities information is exchanged prior to an MS message transaction, an ATU-C transmitting a CL message without the Spar(2) and Npar(3) information, shall (in a subsequent transaction and prior to the MS message transaction) send an additional CL message containing the complete (TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD) Npar(2), Spar(2) and Npar(3) information for all operating modes defined in this Recommendation for which Spar(1) bit is set to ONE in this additional CL message.

7.10.1.2 ITU-T G.994.1 mode select message

The following control parameters of PMS-TC function shall be as defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the MS message. This information shall be selected prior to the PMD initialization. The information includes:

- minimum downstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is required;
- maximum downstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is allowed;
- minimum upstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is required;
- maximum upstream message-based overhead channel data rate that is allowed.

The overhead data rate in the MS message shall be set to the highest of the overhead data rate values in the CL and CLR message.

This configuration for PMS-TC is represented using an ITU-T G.994.1 tree model of the information as in Table 7-19. An ATU provides both the upstream and downstream trees in the MS message.

Table 7-19 – Format for PMS-TC mode select information

Npar(2) bit	Definition of Npar(2) bit
NTR	Set to ONE if, and only, if this bit was set to ONE in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. When set to ONE, both ATUs shall transport the NTR signal in the downstream direction, such that the NTR signal is made available at the T-R interface. When set to ZERO, indicates that the NTR signal is not available at the T-R interface.
Erasure decoding reporting	Set to ONE if, and only if, this bit was set to ONE in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. When set to ONE, indicates that the R-PARAMS message (see clause 7.10.3) shall report on whether or not erasure decoding is used on the downstream latency paths. When set to ZERO, indicates that the R-PARAMS message (see clause 7.10.3) shall not report on the use of erasure decoding on the downstream latency paths.
Spar(2) bit	**Definition of related Npar(3) octets**
Downstream overhead data rate	Parameter block of 1 octet that describes the minimum message-based data rate that is needed by the ATU. The unsigned 6-bit value is the data rate divided by 1000 bits per second minus 1 (covering the range 1 to 64 kbit/s).
Upstream overhead data rate	Parameter block of 1 octet that describes the minimum message-based data rate that is needed by the ATU. The unsigned 6-bit value is the data rate divided by 1000 bits per second minus 1 (covering the range 1 to 64 kbit/s).

Table 7-19 – Format for PMS-TC mode select information

Downstream PMS-TC latency path #0 supported	Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Upstream PMS-TC latency path #0 supported	Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #1 supported	Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Upstream PMS-TC latency path #1 supported	Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #2 supported	Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Upstream PMS-TC latency path #2 supported	Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Downstream PMS-TC latency path #3 supported	Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Upstream PMS-TC latency path #3 supported	Not included, Spar(2) bit shall be set to 0.

7.10.2 Channel analysis phase

The PMS-TC function control parameters exchanged in the C-MSG1 message are listed in Table 7-20.

Table 7-20 – PMS-TC function control parameters included in C-MSG1

Octet Nr [i]	Parameter	Format [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	$RATIO\_BCds_0$	[0xxx xxxx], bit 6 to 0
1	$RATIO\_BCds_1$	[0xxx xxxx], bit 6 to 0
2	$RATIO\_BCds_2$	[0xxx xxxx], bit 6 to 0
3	$RATIO\_BCds_3$	[0xxx xxxx], bit 6 to 0

The $RATIO\_BC_n$ is the percentage of the net data rate, in excess of sum of the minimum net data rates over all bearer channels, to be allocated to the bearer channel #*n*. The percentage is represented as a 7-bit integer in the 0 to 100 range.

The values are configured through the CO-MIB for each upstream and downstream bearer channel, as defined in [ITU-T G.997.1]. The sum of the percentages over the upstream bearer channels shall be 100%. The sum of the percentages over the downstream bearer shall be 100%. The upstream percentages are locally used by the ATU-C to determine the upstream net data rate for each of the upstream bearer channels. The downstream percentages are conveyed to the ATU-R in the C-MSG1 message during initialization and used by the ATU-R to determine the downstream net data rate for each of the downstream bearer channels.

7.10.3 Exchange phase

The remaining values of the control parameters for the TPS-TC functions, as well as additional information about the TPS-TC functions, shall be reported by the receive TPS-TC function and transported to the transmit TPS-TC function during the exchange procedure.

The information in C-PARAMS includes:

- The latency path MSG_{LP} to carry the upstream message-oriented portion of the overhead channel.
- Assignment of upstream frame bearers to upstream latency paths.
- The number of message octets MSG_c included in the upstream overhead structure.
- $B_{p,n}$ for each upstream latency path and frame bearer.
- M_p for each upstream latency path.
- R_p for each upstream latency path.
- D_p for each upstream latency path.
- T_p for each upstream latency path.
- L_p corresponding to each upstream latency path.
- The indication whether or not erasure decoding is used for each downstream latency path.

The information in R-PARAMS includes:

- The latency path MSG_{LP} to carry the downstream message-oriented portion of the overhead channel.
- Assignment of downstream frame bearers to downstream latency paths.
- The number of message octets MSG_c included in the downstream overhead structure.
- $B_{p,n}$ for each downstream latency path and frame bearer.
- M_p for each downstream latency path.
- R_p for each downstream latency path.
- D_p for each downstream latency path.
- T_p for each downstream latency path.
- L_p corresponding to each downstream latency path.

This C-PARAMS and R-PARAMS information is represented as a parameter block as in Table 7-21. The information is transmitted in the order shown during C-PARAMS and R-PARAMS as described in the PMD initialization procedure.

Table 7-21 – Format for PMS-TC PARAMS information

Octet number [i]	PMS-TC format bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]	Description
Octet 0	[pfff 00bb] bit 7 to 0	The bits bb encode the value of MSG_{LP}. MSG_{LP} indicates the latency path in which the message-based overhead information is to be transmitted. The values 00, 01, 10, and 11 correspond to latency paths #0, #1, #2 #3, respectively. The bits fff encode the initialization success/failure code as defined in this clause. The bit *p* is the probing bit. A value 1 indicates that the current initialization is used for automode probing. A value 0 indicates that the current initialization is normal initialization.
Octet 1	[cccc dddd] bit 7 to 0	The bits cccc are set to 0000, 0001, 0010 or 0011 if the frame bearer #0 is to be carried in latency path #0, #1, #2 or #3, respectively. The bits cccc are set to 1111 if $type_0$ is zero (i.e., disabled frame bearer, see Table 6-1). The bits dddd describe where the frame bearer #1 is to be carried using the same encoding method as cccc.
Octet 2	[eeee ffff] bit 7 to 0	The bits eeee and ffff describe where the frame bearers #2 and #3, respectively, are to be carried using the same encoding method as cccc of octet 1.
Octet 3	[gggg gggg] bit 7 to 0	The bits gggggggg encode the value of MSG_C, the number of octets in the message-based portion of the overhead structure. The latency path #MSG_{LP} is used to transport the message-based overhead information.
Octet 4	[hhhh hhhh] bit 7 to 0	The bits hhhhhhhh give the number of octets from bearer #0 per mux data frame being transported. This value is zero or the non-zero value from the value of the set $\{B_{00}, B_{10}, B_{20}, B_{30}\}$.
Octet 5	[iiii iiii] bit 7 to 0	The bits iiiiiii give the number of octets from bearer #1 per mux data frame being transported. This value is zero or the non-zero value from the value of the set $\{B_{01}, B_{11}, B_{21}, B_{31}\}$.
Octet 6	[jjjj jjjj] bit 7 to 0	The bits jjjjjjjj give the number of octets from bearer #2 per mux data frame being transported. This value is zero or the non-zero value from the value of the set $\{B_{02}, B_{12}, B_{22}, B_{32}\}$.
Octet 7	[kkkk kkkk] bit 7 to 0	The bits kkkkkkkk give the number of octets from bearer #3 per mux data frame being transported. This value is zero or the non-zero value from the value of the set $\{B_{03}, B_{13}, B_{23}, B_{33}\}$.

Table 7-21 – Format for PMS-TC PARAMS information

Octet number [i]	PMS-TC format bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]	Description
Octet 8	[emmm mmmm] bit 7 to 0	In C-PARAMS, the bit e shall be coded as ZERO. If the last previous MS message has the 'erasure decoding reporting' bit (see Table 7-19) set to ZERO for the selected operating mode then, in R-PARAMS, the bit e shall be coded as ZERO. If the last previous MS message has the 'erasure decoding reporting' bit (see Table 7-19) set to ONE for the selected operating mode then, in R-PARAMS, the bit e shall be coded as: ZERO: Erasure decoding is used. ONE: Erasure decoding is not used. The bit e is always present and set to ZERO if not used. The bits mmmmmmm give the value of M_p for latency path #0. They are always present and set to zero if not used.
Octet 9	[tttt tttt] bit 7 to 0	The bits tttttttt give the value of T_p for latency path #0. They are always present and set to zero if not used.
Octet 10	[rrrr 0DDD] bit 7 to 0	The bits rrrr0DDD give the value of R_p and D_p for latency path #0. The rrrr and DDD bits are coded as defined in Table 7-18. They are always present and set to zero if not used.
	[DDDD 1rrr] bit 7 to 0 (see Note)	The bits DDDD and rrr give the value of $D_0 > 64$ and $R_0 > 0$ for latency path #0. The DDDD shall represent the *n* value as defined in Table 7-21a. The rrr shall represent the R_0 as an unsigned 3-bit value and shall be one of the non-zero valid R_0 values divided by 2, minus 1.
Octet 11	[llll llll] bit 7 to 0	The bits llllllll give the LSB of the value of L_p for latency path #0. They are always present and set to zero if not used.
Octet 12	[llll llll] bit 15 to 8	The bits llllllll give the MSB of the value of L_p for the latency path #0. These are always present and set to zero if not used.
Octets 13-17	Same as octets 8-12	These octets describe the parameters for latency path #1, in the same format as octets 8 through 12. They are always present and set to zeros if unused.
Octets 18-22	Same as octets 8-12	These octets describe the parameters for latency path #2, in the same format as octets 8 through 12. They are always present and set to zeros if unused.
Octets 23-27	Same as octets 8-12	These octets describe the parameters for latency path #3, in the same format as octets 8 through 12. They are always present and set to zeros if unused.
NOTE – This octet format shall only be used to configure optional D_0 values for the downstream latency path #0.		

Table 7-21a – Coding of D_0 value in the PARAMS message

n value	D_0 value	*n* value	D_0 value
0	96	8	352
1	128	9	384
2	160	10	416
3	192	11	448
4	224	12	480
5	256	13	511
6	288	14	Reserved
7	320	15	Reserved

The value of N_{LP} (i.e., the number of enabled latency paths) is conveyed implicitly in the settings of octets 0 (bits bb), 1 (bits cccc and dddd) and 2 (bits eeee and ffff). Latency paths with a label contained in the set {bb, cccc, dddd, eeee, ffff) shall be enabled. Latency paths that are supported but with a label not contained in this set shall be disabled.

The octet 0 in Table 7-21 assigns the message-based overhead to a particular latency path #MSG_{LP} (with MSG_{LP} in the 0 to 3 range). The octets 1 and 2 in Table 7-21 assign frame bearer #*n* (for *n* = 0 to 3) to a particular latency path #*p* (with *p* in the 0 to 3 range) or disable the frame bearer. The message-based overhead and the enabled frame bearers shall be assigned to a latency path that is supported by both ATUs (as indicated in CL and CLR, see Table 7-19). If an ATU supports a particular latency path #*p*, it shall support assignment of message-based overhead and/or any number of enabled frame bearers (0 to N_{BC}) to that latency path. It is possible to assign frame bearer #*n* to latency path #*p*, with the number of octets from frame bearer #*n* per mux data frame (as indicated in octet 4, 5, 6 or 7 in Table 7-21) set to zero (i.e., $B_{p,n} = 0$).

It is not possible to configure at initialization a latency path #*p* with overhead sequence length $SEQ_p = 6$ (i.e., one that carries only a CRC and the bit-oriented portion of the overhead) without also carrying at least one frame bearer in the latency path *p*.

The method used by the receiver to select these values is implementation dependent. However, within the limit of the raw data rate and coding gain provided by the local PMD, the selected values shall meet all of the constraints communicated by the transmitter prior to the exchange phase, including:

- (message-based) overhead data rate ≥ minimum overhead data rate;
- net data rate ≥ minimum net data rate for all bearer channels;
- impulse noise protection ≥ minimum impulse noise protection for all bearer channels;
- delay ≤ maximum delay for all bearer channels.

Within these constraints, the receiver shall select the values so as to optimize in the priority configured through the CO-MIB channel initialization policy parameter (CIPOLICY, see clause 7.3.2.10 of [ITU-T G.997.1]). The channel initialization policy applies only for the selection of the values exchanged in the PARAMS message during initialization, and does not apply during showtime.

The following channel initialization policies are defined:

- Policy ZERO: if $CIpolicy_n = 0$, then:
  1) Maximize net data rate for bearer channel #*n*, per the allocation of the net data rate, in excess of the sum of the minimum net data rates over all bearer channels (see clause 7.10.2).
  2) Minimize excess margin with respect to the maximum noise margin MAXSNRM through gain scalings (see clause 8.6.4). Other control parameters may be used to achieve this (e.g., PCB see clause 8.13.3).
- Policy ONE: if $CIpolicy_n = 1$, then:
  1) Maximize INP_act_n for the bearer channel #*n*.

If the CO-MIB sets CIPOLICY (see clause 7.3.2.10 of [ITU-T G.997.1]) to ONE for a bearer channel, it shall have the minimum net data rate (see clause 7.3.2.1.1 of [ITU-T G.997.1]) set equal to the maximum net data rate (see clause 7.3.2.1.3 of [ITU-T G.997.1]) and shall have the *MAXSNRM* set to infinity (see clause 7.3.1.3.3 of [ITU-T G.997.1]).

If only a single bearer channel is configured through the CO-MIB, then the CIPOLICY shall be set to ZERO or ONE for the bearer channel. If multiple bearer channels are configured through the CO-MIB, then the CIPOLICY shall be set to ZERO for each of the bearer channels. The use of channel initialization policy ONE with multiple bearer channels is for further study.

Support of channel initialization policy ZERO is mandatory. Support of channel initialization policy ONE is optional. Additional channel initialization policies are for further study. The $CIpolicy_n$ parameter values other than 0 and 1 are reserved for use by ITU-T.

If, within these constraints, the receiver is unable to select a set of configuration parameters, then an initialization failure cause shall be indicated in the PMS-TC PARAMS information (3-bit integer, see Table 7-21), with the other bits in the PMS-TC PARAMS information set to 0. If a non-zero success/failure code is set by one of the ATUs, the transmitter shall enter the SILENT state (see Annex D) instead of the SHOWTIME state at the completion of the initialization procedures. Valid failure causes are the failure cause values 1 (configuration error) and 2 (configuration not feasible on line), as defined in [ITU-T G.997.1]. If, within these constraints, the receiver is able to select a set of configuration parameters, then value 0 is used to indicate a successful initialization. If a zero success/failure code is set by both of the ATUs, and the probing bit is not set by both of the ATUs, the transmitter shall enter the SHOWTIME state at completion of the initialization procedures.

The values 3 to 7 are reserved.

If, during an initialization used for probing during an automode procedure, the ATU decides not to go into showtime, then the probing bit *p* shall be set in the PMS-TC PARAMS information. Whether the other bits in the PMS-TC PARAMS information are completed is controlled by the value of the fff bits as defined above. If the probing bit is set by one of the ATUs, the transmitter shall enter the SILENT state (see Annex D) instead of the SHOWTIME state at completion of the initialization procedures.

Initializations with the probing bit set to 1 are considered as part of normal operation and are not to be considered as a line initialization (LINIT) failure (as defined in clause 7.1.1.3 of [ITU-T G.997.1]). Therefore, in this case, the initialization success/failure codes during probing shall not be communicated to the ITU-T G.997.1 LINIT functionality and the ITU-T G.997.1 line initialization performance monitoring parameters full initialization count (as defined in clause 7.2.1.3.1 of [ITU-T G.997.1]) and failed full initialization count (as defined in clause 7.2.1.3.2 of [ITU-T G.997.1]).

7.11 On-line reconfiguration

The procedures for on-line reconfiguration of the PMS-TC function support:

- transparency to higher layers by providing means for changes that introduce no transport errors and no interruption of service;
- changing parameters to adapt to slowly varying line conditions; and
- changing parameters to dynamically change data rate (including zero data rate).

7.11.1 Control parameters for reconfiguration

Reconfiguration is accomplished by a coordinated change to the value of one or more of the control parameters defined in clause 7.5. The control parameters displayed in Table 7-22 may be changed through on-line reconfiguration within the limits described.

Table 7-22 – Reconfigurable control parameters of the PMS-TC function

$B_{p,n}$	If frame bearer #*n* is assigned to latency path #*p*, the number of octets from frame bearer #*n* in latency path #*p* per mux data frame may be increased or decreased between a minimum of zero and a maximum corresponding to the maximum data rate for the latency path as identified during the ITU-T G.994.1 capabilities exchange. A frame bearer may only be assigned to a single latency path. The assignment is not changed through reconfiguration. The $B_{p,n}$ value may only be changed within the conditions defined in clause 7.11.1.1.
L_p	If latency path #*p* is used, the number of bits from latency path #*p* included per PMD.Bits.request may be increased or decreased between one and the maximum number of bits per PMD symbol.

7.11.1.1 Changes in an existing latency path

Reconfiguration of the $B_{p,n}$ values within an existing latency path #*p* occurs only at boundaries between interleaved FEC data frames. The transmit PMS-TC function uses the new values of the control parameters to generate interleaved FEC data frames that follow the signalling of the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as described in clause 8.16.2. It is important to note that PMD.Bits.confirm primitives that immediately follow the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive will contain bits associated with old configuration until a boundary of an interleaved FEC data frame. The receive PMS-TC function procedures use the new control parameter values to process the interleaved FEC data frame that follow the signalling of the PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as depicted in step 9 in Figure 10-1.

This procedure is used only if the value of a $B_{p,n}$ is being modified. This procedure is restricted to use for latency paths with $R_p = 0$, $S_p = 1$ and $D_p = 1$, and with alignment of the interleaved FEC data frame boundary, FEC data frame boundary, mux data frame boundary and the PMD symbol boundary.

7.11.1.2 Changes in the frame multiplexor

Reconfiguration of the frame multiplexor occurs at the start of the next PMD symbol that follows transport of the synchronization flag from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as described in clause 8.16.2. The reconfiguration of the PMS-TC functions occur at the start of the next PMD symbol that follows transport of the synchronization flag from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as described in clause 8.16.2. The transmit PMS-TC function uses the new control parameter values in its procedures to generate PMD.Bits.confirm primitives that follows signalling of the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as depicted in step 8 in Figure 10-1. The receive PMS-TC function procedures use the new control parameter values to process PMD.Bits.Indicate primitives that follow the signalling of the

PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive from the PMD function to the PMS-TC function as depicted in step 9 in Figure 10-1.

A reconfiguration of the PMS-TC functions that result in a change in the number of bits signalled in the PMD.Bits.confirm primitives requires a PMD function reconfiguration in conjunction with it.

This procedure shall be used if L_p is being modified without $B_{p,n}$ modifications.

7.12 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the PMS-TC function are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

7.12.1 L0 link state operation

The PMS-TC function shall operate according to all data plane, control plane and management plane procedures defined in clauses 7.7, 7.8 and 7.9 while the link is in power management state L0.

All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in clauses 7.5 and 7.6 shall apply.

On-line reconfiguration procedures of the PMS-TC function described in clause 7.11 shall be followed during the link state L0 upon successful completion of protocol described in clause 9.4.1.1.

7.12.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

The L0 to L2 transition procedures of the PMS-TC function supports changing some of the control parameters to reduce the number of bits transferred per PMD primitive in the downstream direction. This change is accomplished by changing the downstream control parameter displayed in Table 7-8. The transition is intended to allow changes in the downstream control parameters without errors (i.e., seamless).

Table 7-23 – Power management control parameters of the PMS-TC function

Parameter	Definition
L_p	The number of bits from latency path #p shall be decreased from L_p in the L0 link state in the range of $1 \le L_p \le 1024$ and $\sum L_p$ shall be such that $8 \le \sum L_p \le 1024$.

Entry into the L2 link state occurs with the coordinated change in the downstream L_p parameters in order to decrease the number of bits per PMD primitive. The change shall be preceded by the protocol described in clause 9.5.3.3. Following the successful completion of the protocol, the coordinated change of the L_p parameters shall occur as specified in clause 7.11.1.2.

The ATUs shall store the L0 link state PMS-TC control parameter L_p when transitioning from link state L0 to state L2.

7.12.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU is intended to provide the transition from link state L0 to state L3. The transition should be as described in clause 9.5.3.1 for the orderly shutdown procedure or clause 9.5.3.2 for the disorderly shutdown procedure. No specific PMS-TC tear-down procedure is provided.

7.12.2 L2 link state operation

The PMS-TC function shall operate according to all data plane, control plane and management plane procedures defined in clauses 7.7, 7.8 and 7.9 while the link is in power management state L2.

All control parameter definitions provided in clause 7.5 shall apply. During the L2 state, the number of bits transmitted per PMD primitive may be significantly reduced with respect to that while operating in the L0 link state. Therefore, constraints as displayed in Table 7-8 and placed on MSG_{min}, the overhead rate, the delay and overhead channel period do not apply while the link is in L2 state.

On-line reconfiguration of the PMS-TC function shall be disabled during the link state L2. Messages described in clause 9.4.1.1 shall not be transmitted by either the ATU-C or ATU-R.

The low power trim procedure shall not affect the operation of the PMS-TC function.

7.12.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The L2 to L0 transition procedures of the PMS-TC function supports restoring the control parameters from the previous L0 state upon re-entering the L0 link state. The transition is intended to allow changes in the downstream control parameters without errors (i.e., seamless).

Entry into the L0 link state occurs with the coordinated change in the downstream L_p parameters in order to restore the number of bits per PMD primitive to that used in the previous L0 link state. The change shall be preceded by the protocol described in either clause 9.5.3.4 or clause 9.5.3.5. Following the successful completion of the protocol, the coordinated change of the L_p parameters shall occur as specified in clause 7.11.1.2.

7.12.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

If operating in link state L2, the ATUs are intended to transition to link state L0 and make use of the orderly shutdown procedure. However, in the event of sudden power loss the link may transition from link state L2 to state L3 directly. The transition should be as described in clause 9.5.3.2. No specific PMS-TC tear-down procedures are provided.

7.12.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, there are no specified procedures for the PMS-TC function.

7.12.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in clause 7.10.

8 Physical media-dependent function

8.1 Transport capabilities

The ATU physical media dependent (PMD) function provides procedures for transporting a bitstream over the physical medium (i.e., over the copper pairs) in both the upstream and downstream directions. The transmit PMD function accepts data from the transmit PMS-TC function and the receive PMD function delivers data to the receive PMS-TC function as shown (for the data plane) in Figure 8-1. The transmit and receive TPS-TC functions are specified in clause 6. The transmit and receive PMS-TC functions are specified in clause 7.

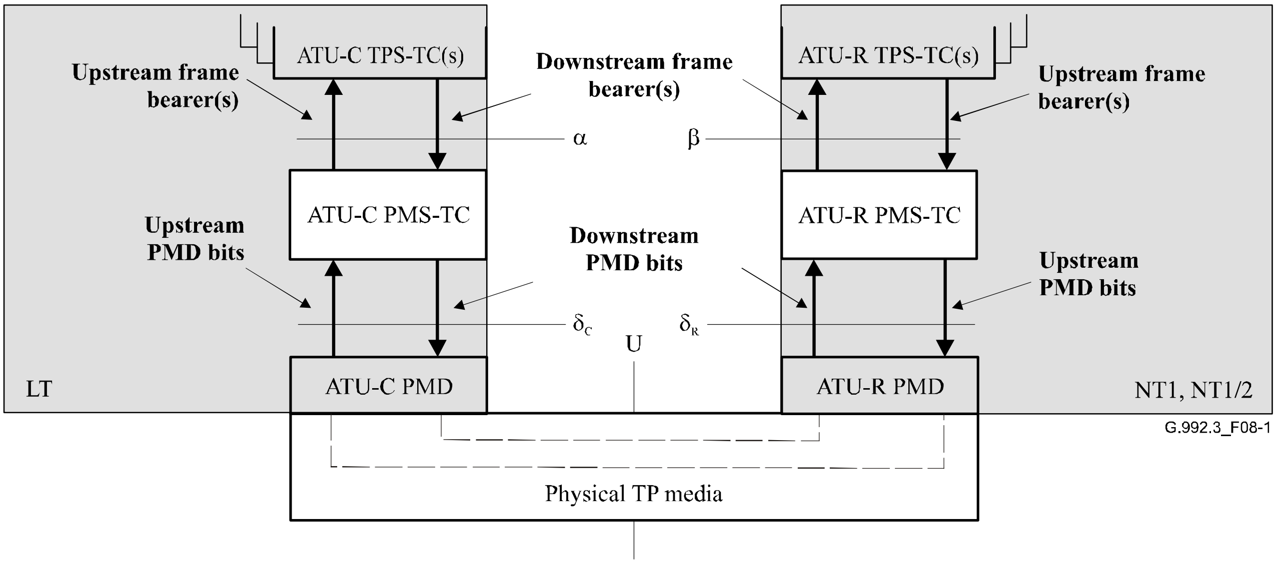


Figure 8-1 – PMD transport capabilities within the data plane

As a control plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the PMD function. However, the PMD function passes and receives control signals that are transported in the control plane to and from the far-end PMD using PMS-TC transport functions, as depicted in Figure 8-2; e.g., for on-line reconfiguration.

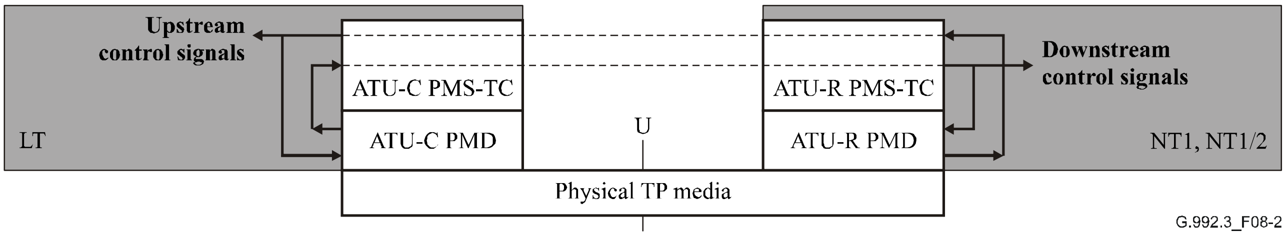


Figure 8-2 – PMD transport capabilities within the control plane

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the PMD function during normal operation. However, the receive PMD function provides management primitive indications to the local management entity within the ATU. Within the ATU, these management primitive indications result in control signals that are transported in the control plane using PMS-TC transport functions, as depicted in Figure 8-3. During initialization, the ATU transmit PMD function provides transport of some configuration parameters from the near-end management entity to the far-end PMD function.

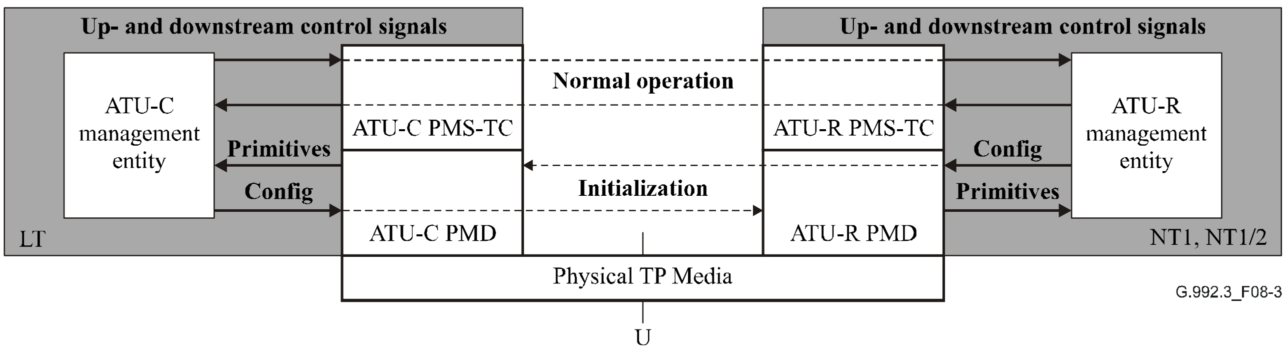


Figure 8-3 – PMD transport capabilities within the management plane

8.2 Additional functions

In addition to transport functionality, the PMD transmit function also provides procedures for:

- tone ordering;
- constellation encoder;
- synchronization and L2 exit symbols;
- modulation;
- transmitter dynamic range;
- transmitter spectral masks (including spectrum shaping);
- conversion to analogue signal for transmission over the DSL;
- on-line adaptation and reconfiguration.

These functions are configured by a number of control parameters described in clause 8.5. The values of the control parameters are set through the CO-MIB, during initialization or through reconfiguration of the ATU. The ATU receive PMD function reverses each of the listed procedures so that the transported information may be recovered and delivered to the receive PMS-TC function.

8.3 Block interface signals and primitives

The ATU PMD block has many interface signals as shown in Figure 8-4 (for both ATU-C and ATU-R). Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the Figure 8-4 legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream block and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to or from the PMS-TC function. The signals at the left and right edges convey upstream and downstream control primitives within the ATU.

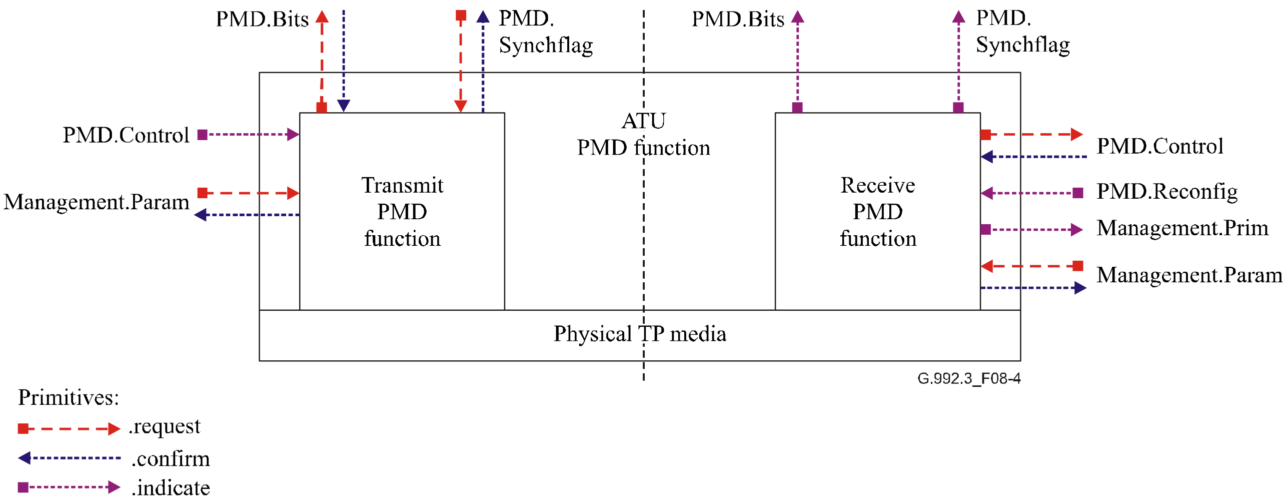


Figure 8-4 – Signals of the ATU PMD function

The signals shown in Figure 8-4 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying function to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between the PMD and PMS-TC functions are described in Table 8-1. These primitives support the exchange of PMD symbol data and regulation of data flow to match PMD configuration. They also support coordinated on-line rate adaptation and reconfiguration of the ATU-C and ATU-R.

Primitives used to signal maintenance indication primitives to the local maintenance entity are described in Table 8-3.

Table 8-1 – Signalling primitives between the PMD and PMS-TC functions

Signal	Primitive	Description
PMD.Bits	.request	This primitive is used by the transmit PMD function to request data from the transmit PMS-TC function.
	.confirm	This primitive is used by the PMS-TC transmit function to pass data to be transported to the transmit PMD function. By the interworking of the request and confirm primitives, the data flow is matched to the PMD configuration and synchronized to PMD data symbols.
	.indicate	This primitive is used by the receive PMD function to pass data to the receive PMS-TC function.
PMD.Synchflag	.request	This primitive is used by the transmit PMS-TC function to request the transmit PMD function to transport a PMD synchronization flag. This PMD.Synchflag primitive is used to coordinate various reconfigurations of the TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions (i.e., bitswap, DRR, SRA, L2 entry and L2 exit).
	.confirm	This primitive is used by the transmit PMD function to confirm receipt of a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the transmit PMS-TC function is notified that a synchronization flag has been transported on the U interface. In particular, any request primitives that have not yet been confirmed upon receipt of the PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive are known to be transported across the U interface after the PMD synchronization flag.
	.indicate	This primitive is used by the receive PMD function to indicate to the PMS-TC receive function that a PMD synchronization flag has been received on the U interface. Any indication primitives already received are known to have been transported on the U interface prior to the PMD synchronization flag. All indication primitives signalled after the PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive are known to have been transported on the U interface after the PMD synchronization flag.

Table 8-2 – Signalling primitives between the PMD and the near-end ATU control functions

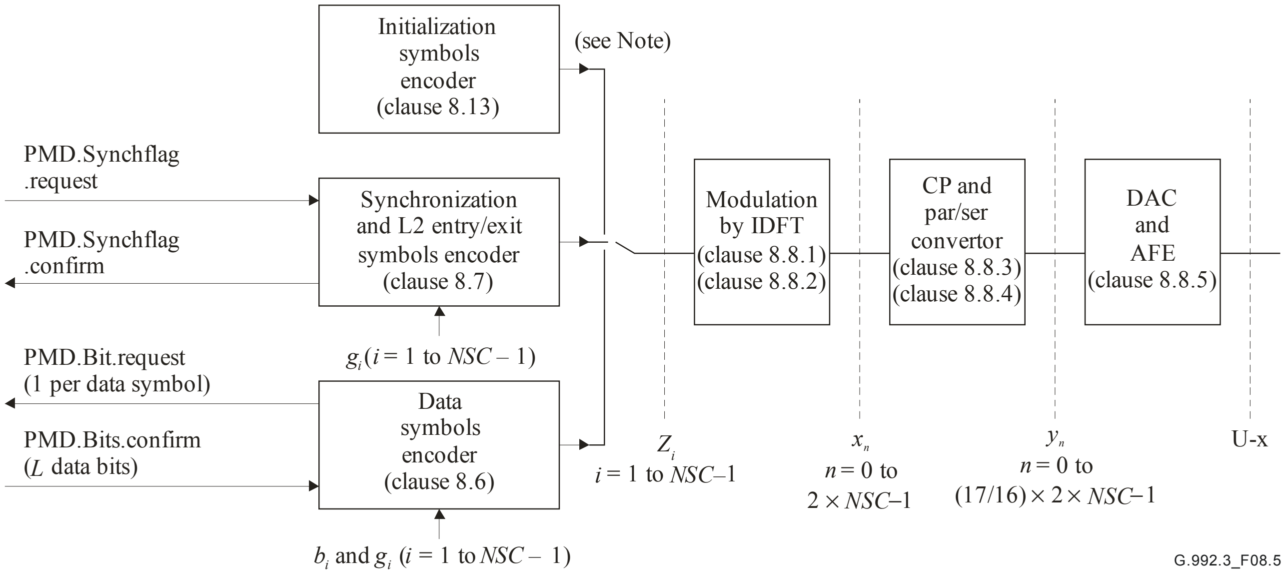
Signal	Primitive	Description
PMD.Control	.request	This primitive is used by the receive PMD function to request the near-end ATU control functions for a reconfiguration of the far-end transmit PMD function control parameters. The near-end and far-end ATU control functions use control messages over the PMS-TC functions to synchronize such reconfiguration.
	.confirm	This primitive is used by the near-end ATU control functions to confirm receipt of a PMD.Control.request primitive from the receive PMD function. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the control flow is synchronized to the rate that can be accommodated by the PMS-TC functions.
	.indicate	This primitive is used by the near-end ATU control functions to indicate to the transmit PMD function a reconfiguration of the PMD transmit function control parameters.
PMD.Reconfig	.indicate	This primitive is used by the near-end ATU control or management functions to indicate to the receive PMD function that the PMD function control parameters require reconfiguration (see clauses 8.16 and 8.17). This primitive is followed by a PMD.Control.request primitive from the receive PMD function.

Table 8-3 – Signalling primitives between the PMD and the near-end maintenance entity

Signal	Primitive	Description
Management.Prim	.indicate	This primitive is used by the receive PMD function to signal a number of supervisory anomaly or defect primitives to the near-end management entity within the ATU.
Management.Param	.request	This primitive is used by the near-end management entity to request an update of (one or more) test parameters from the transmit or receive PMD function.
	.confirm	This primitive is used by the transmit or receive PMD function in response to a Management.Param.request primitive, to convey updated test parameter values to the near-end management entity.

8.4 Block diagram and internal reference point signals

Figure 8-5 depicts the blocks within the transmit PMD function for support of NSC subcarriers. The primitives for interaction with the transmit PMS-TC function are shown at the leftmost edge of Figure 8-5.



NOTE – The initialization symbols encoder defines Z_i values for i = 1 to 2× NSC– 1 (see clause 8.13.2.4).

Figure 8-5 – Block diagram of the transmit PMD function

The transmit PMD function shall transmit 4000 data symbols per second. For each data symbol, the transmit PMD function requests and receives a constellation encoder input data frame (containing L data bits) from the transmit PMS-TC function (through the PMD.Bit.request and PMD.Bit.confirm primitives). The data frame shall then be constellation encoded as defined in clause 8.6. After constellation encoding, the output data frame (containing NSC – 1 complex values) shall be modulated into a data symbols as defined in clause 8.8 to produce an analogue signal for transmission across the digital subscriber line.

The one-way payload transfer delay introduced by the PMD sublayer (i.e., between the δ_C and δ_R reference points, see clause 5.2) shall be less than or equal to 3.75 ms.

NOTE – The one-way payload transfer delay is shared between the ATU-C and the ATU-R.

The transmit PMD function shall use the superframe structure shown in Figure 8-6. Each superframe shall be composed of 68 data frames, numbered from 0 to 67, which are encoded and modulated into 68 data symbols, followed by a synchronization symbol (see clause 8.7), which carries no data frame and is inserted by the modulator (see clause 8.8) to establish superframe boundaries. From the PMS-TC perspective, the data symbol rate shall be 4000 per second (symbol period = 250 μs) but, in order to allow for the insertion of the synchronization symbol, the transmitted data symbol rate is 69/68 × 4000 per second. The superframe duration shall therefore be 17 ms.

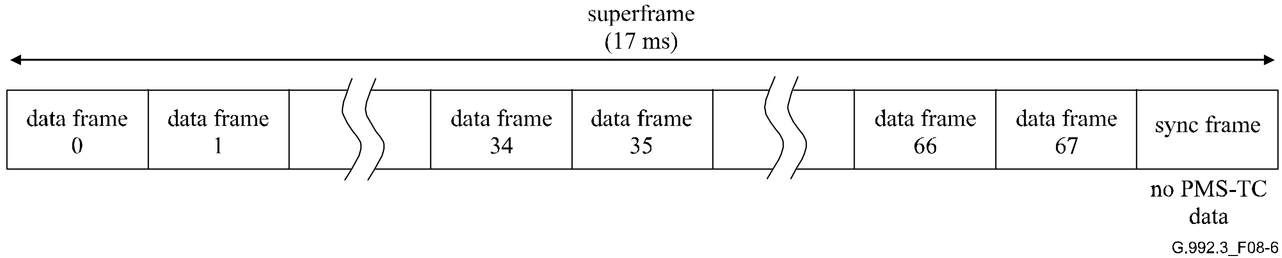


Figure 8-6 – ADSL superframe structure – ATU-C transmitter

8.5 Control parameters

8.5.1 Definition of control parameters

The configuration of the PMD function is controlled by a set of control parameters:

- The PMD transmit function control parameters are displayed in Table 8-4. The values of the control parameters in Table 8-4 are set before or during initialization and may be changed during reconfiguration of an ATU pair. The derived control parameters are listed in Table 8-5.
- The PMD receive function control parameters consist of the PMD transmit function control parameters and the additional PMD receive function control parameters displayed in Table 8-6. The values of the control parameters in Table 8-6 are set before or during initialization and are not changed during reconfiguration of an ATU pair.

The PMD receive function needs to be aware of the settings of the PMD transmit function control parameters. The PMD receive function control parameters therefore include all of the PMD transmit function control parameters.

Table 8-4 – The transmit PMD function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
NSC	The highest subcarriers index which can be transmitted (i.e., subcarrier index corresponding to Nyquist frequency, see clause 8.8.1.4). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*NSCds*) and the ATU-R (*NSCus*). Its value is fixed by the Recommendation and depends upon the underlying service (i.e., POTS or ISDN). See annexes.
MAXNOMPSD	The maximum nominal transmit PSD (*MAXNOMPSD*) level during initialization and showtime. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*MAXNOMPSDds*) and the ATU-R (*MAXNOMPSDus*). Its value depends on CO-MIB element settings and near-end transmitter capabilities and is exchanged in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase.
NOMPSD	The nominal transmit PSD level (*NOMPSD*). It is defined as the transmit PSD level in the passband at the start of initialization, relative to which power cutback is applied. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*NOMPSDds*) and the ATU-R (*NOMPSDus*). Its value depends on near-end transmitter capabilities and shall be no higher than the *MAXNOMPSD* value. Its value is exchanged in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase.
MAXNOMATP	The maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (*MAXNOMATP*) level during initialization and showtime. Nominal aggregate transmit power is defined in Table 8-5. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*MAXNOMATPds*) and the ATU-R (*MAXNOMATPus*). Its value depends on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities and is exchanged in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase.
PCB	The power cutback (*PCB*) to be applied, relative to the nominal PSD. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*PCBds*) and the ATU-R (*PCBus*). Its value depends on the loop and local capabilities. *PCBds* is the maximum of *C-MIN_PCB_DS* and *R-MIN_PCB_DS*, *PCBus* is the maximum of *C-MIN_PCB_US* and *R-MIN_PCB_US*, all exchanged during the channel discovery phase (see Tables 8-27 and 8-32).
tss_i	The transmitter spectrum shaping, applied as gain scalings, relative to either the nominal PSD level or the reference PSD level, as defined in clause 8.13 (can be different per subcarrier, $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$). The values depend on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities and are exchanged in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase.

Table 8-4 – The transmit PMD function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
t_i	The tone ordering table (can be different per subcarrier, i = 1 to NSC – 1). The values are determined by the receive PMD function in the channel analysis phase and exchanged in the exchange phase (and shall not change through on-line reconfiguration, i.e., through PMD.Reconfig and PMD.Control primitive).
b_i	The i-th entry in the bit allocation table b (can be different per subcarrier, i = 1 to NSC – 1). The values are determined by the receive PMD function in the channel analysis phase and exchanged in the exchange phase (and may change through on-line reconfiguration, i.e., through PMD.Reconfig and PMD.Control primitive).
g_i	The i-th entry in the gain table g (can be different per subcarrier, i = 1 to NSC – 1). The values are determined by the receive PMD function in the channel analysis phase and exchanged in the exchange phase (and may change through on-line reconfiguration, i.e., through PMD.Reconfig and PMD.Control primitive). The bits and gains table may not allocate bits to some subcarriers and may finely adjust the transmit PSD level of others in order to equalize expected error ratios on each of those subcarriers.
TRELLIS	The use of trellis coding (enable/disable setting). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*TRELLISds*) and the ATU-R (*TRELLISus*). Its value is determined by the receive PMD function during channel analysis phase and exchanged during the exchange phase.
PM-STATE	The power management state the ATUs are in (L0, L2 or L3). ATU-C and ATU-R are in the same power management state. Its value is configured by the near-end ATU control function, possibly based on configuration forced through the MIB and/or by the far-end control function.
*L*0-*TIME* *L2-TIME* *L2-ATPR* *L2-ATPRT*	These configuration parameters are related to the L2 low power state and exist only for the ATU-C. They are configured through the CO-MIB. The *L*0-*TIME* represents the minimum time (in seconds) between exit from L2 low power state and the next entry into the L2 low power state (see clause 9.5.2). The *L*2-*TIME* represents the minimum time (in seconds) between entry into L2 low power state and the first L2 low power trim request and between two consecutive L2 power trim requests (see clause 9.5.2). The *L*2-*ATPR* value represents the maximum aggregate transmit power reduction that is allowed in an L2 request or an L2 low power trim request (see clause 9.5.2). The *L2-ATPRT* value represents the total maximum aggregate transmit power reduction that is allowed in the L2 state; the total reduction is the sum of all reductions of L2 request and L2 power trims (see clause 9.5.2).
Tones 1 to 32	Applies to ISDN-related service option only (see Annex B).

Table 8-5 – Derived transmit PMD function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
L	The number of bits received from the PMS-TC per PMD.Bits.confirm primitive. The *L* value can be calculated from the *b* bit allocation table and the use of trellis coding. This number of bits may change when on-line reconfiguration of the *b* table is performed.
REFPSD	The reference transmit PSD (*REFPSD*) level. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*REFPSDds*) and the ATU-R (*REFPSDus*). The reference transmit PSD level is defined as the nominal transmit PSD level, lowered by the power cutback (i.e., *REFPSD* = *NOMPSD* – *PCB*).
RMSGI	The average g_i value (*RMSGI*). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*RMSGIds*) and the ATU-R (*RMSGIus*). The average g_i value is defined as $$RMSGI = 10 \times \log\left(\frac{1}{NCUSED}\sum_{i:b_i>0} g_i^2\right)$$ where *NCUSED* is the number of subcarriers with $b_i > 0$.
NOMATP	The nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*NOMATPds*) and the ATU-R (*NOMATPus*). The *NOMATP* shall be defined as: $$NOMATP[\text{dBm}] = 36.35 + NOMPSD + 10 \times \log\left(\sum_{i \in MEDLEYset} g_i^2 \times tss_i^2\right)$$ where the term 36.35 represents 10 log(Δf) (see clause 8.8.1).

Table 8-6 – The receive PMD function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
TARSNRM *MINSNRM* *MAXSNRM*	The target, minimum and maximum noise margin (defined in [ITU-T G.997.1]). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*TARSNRMus*, *MINSNRMus*, *MAXSNRMus*) and the ATU-R (*TARSNRMds*, *MINSNRMds*, *MAXSNRMds*). ATU-C: Configured through CO-MIB. ATU-R: Configured through CO-MIB and exchanged during the initialization channel analysis phase.
RA-MODE	The rate adaptation mode (defined in [ITU-T G.997.1]). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*RA-MODEds*) and the ATU-R (*RA-MODEus*). ATU-C: Configured through CO-MIB. ATU-R: Configured through CO-MIB and exchanged during the initialization channel analysis phase. The following rate adaptation modes are defined in [ITU-T G.997.1]: • MANUAL: Data rate is fixed and configured through CO-MIB; • RATE ADAPTIVE AT INIT: Data rate is selected at initialization, between minimum and maximum bounds configured through CO-MIB. Data rate is fizzed during showtime. • DYNAMIC RATE ADAPTATION: Data rate is selected at initialization, between minimum and maximum bounds configured through CO-MIB. Data rate may change during showtime within the same bounds. This Recommendation refers to this mode as seamless rate adaptation (SRA).

Table 8-6 – The receive PMD function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
PM-MODE	The power management mode indicates the allowed link states. The parameter is the same for ATU-C and ATU-R, is configured through the CO-MIB and is exchanged during the initialization channel analysis phase. Bit 0: Indicates whether the L3 state is allowed (1) or not allowed (0). Bit 1: Indicates whether the L2 state is allowed (1) or not allowed (0).
RA-USNRM *RA-UTIME*	The rate adaptation upshift noise margin and time interval (defined in [ITU-T G.997.1]). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*RA-USNRMus* and *RA-UTIMEus*) and the ATU-R (*RA-UTIMEds*, *RA-USNRMds*). ATU-C: Configured through CO-MIB. ATU-R: Configured through CO-MIB and exchanged during the initialization channel analysis phase.
RA-DSNRM *RA-DTIME*	The rate adaptation downshift noise margin and time interval (defined in [ITU-T G.997.1]). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*RA-DSNRMus* and *RA-DTIMEus*) and the ATU-R (*RA-DTIMEds*, *RA-DSNRMds*). ATU-C: Configured through CO-MIB. ATU-R: Configured through CO-MIB and exchanged during the initialization channel analysis phase.
BIMAX	The maximum number of bits per subcarrier supported by the far-end transmitter. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*BIMAXds*) and the ATU-R (*BIMAXus*). Its value depends on the capabilities of the far-end transmitter and is exchanged in the initialization channel analysis phase.
EXTGI	The maximum extension of the g_i range supported by the far-end transmitter. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*EXTGIds*) and the ATU-R (*EXTGIus*). Its value depends on the capabilities of the far-end transmitter and on the loop characteristics identified during the initialization channel discovery phase. Its value is exchanged in the initialization channel analysis phase.
MAXRXPWR (ATU-C only)	In order to provide non-reciprocal FEXT control, the ATU-C shall request an upstream transmit power cutback in the C-MSG-PCB message, such that the power received at the ATU-C is no higher than the maximum level specified in the CO-MIB. The power received at the ATU-C shall be measured as defined in clause 8.13.3.1.11.
SNRM_MODE	This parameter enables the transmitter referred virtual noise. The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*SNRM_MODEus*) and the ATU-R (*SNRM_MODEds*), and is configured through the CO-MIB. If set to 1, the virtual noise is disabled. If set to 2, the virtual noise is enabled.
TXREFVN	The transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD to be used in determining the SNR margin (see clause 8.5.1.1). The parameter can be different for the ATU-C (*TXREFVNus*) and the ATU-R (*TXREFVNds*), and is configured through the CO-MIB. The *TXREFVNds* is exchanged during the initialization channel discovery phase.

8.5.1.1 Transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD

This clause describes the transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD parameter *TXREFVN*, used only in the optional SNR margin mode *SNRM_MODE* = 2.

8.5.1.1.1 Definition of parameter *TXREFVN*

Configuration parameter *TXREFVN* defines the transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD to be used in determining the SNR margin.

The CO-MIB shall provide a *TXREFVN* parameter set for each utilized band when

SNRM_MODE = 2.

The transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD in the CO-MIB shall be specified by a set of breakpoints.

Each breakpoint shall consist of a subcarrier index t_n and a noise PSD (expressed in dBm/Hz). The *TXREFVN* parameter for each utilized band shall be a set of breakpoints that are represented by [(t_1, PSD_1), (t_2, PSD_2), ... , (t_n, PSD_n), (t_{NBP}, PSD_{NBP})], where t_1 and t_{NBP} are, respectively, the lower and higher passband edge subcarrier indices corresponding to the passband edge frequencies defined in the applicable Annex for the operation mode, and represented by f_L and f_H.

The subcarrier indices t_i shall be coded in the CO-MIB as unsigned integers in the range from $t_1 = roundup(f_L/\Delta f)$ to $t_{NBP} = \text{MIN}(rounddown(f_H/\Delta f), 511)$, where Δf is the subcarrier spacing used by the DMT modulation, defined in clause 8.8.1. The breakpoints shall be defined so that $t_n < t_{n+1}$ for $n = 1$ to $N - 1$; the frequency f_n corresponding to the index t_n can be found as: $f_n = t_n \times \Delta f$.

NOTE – Based on this formula, the last breakpoint of *TXREFVN* is given by the noise PSD on the tone index 128 if f_H = 552 kHz, on the tone index 256 if f_H = 1104 kHz, or on the tone index 511 if f_H = 2208 kHz.

The values for the transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD shall be coded as 8-bit unsigned integers representing virtual noise PSDs from −40 dBm/Hz (coded as 0) to −140 dBm/Hz (coded as 200), in steps of 0.5 dBm/Hz. Values from 201 to 255, inclusive, correspond to a virtual noise PSD of zero W/Hz (minus infinity dBm/Hz).

The maximum number of breakpoints is 16 in the downstream and 4 in the upstream direction.

The parameter in the downstream direction is *TXREFVNds*, and the parameter in the upstream direction is *TXREFVNus*.

8.5.1.1.2 Use of parameter *TXREFVN*

The transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD, for each subcarrier i, shall be obtained by linear interpolation in dB on a linear frequency scale as follows:

$$TX\_referred\_Virtual\_Noise\_PSD(i) = PSD_n + \left(PSD_{n+1} - PSD_n\right) \times \frac{i - t_n}{t_{n+1} - t_n} \qquad t_n < i \le t_{n+1}$$

The near-end transceiver should apply the Received_Virtual_Noise_PSD (see clause 8.12.3.6.1.2) at the constellation decoder point (i.e., the transceiver does not need to account for DFT leakage effects from one subcarrier to another subcarrier). All effects are to be taken into account in the setting of the *TXREFVN* in the CO-MIB.

NOTE 1 – Since the inband portion of the spectrum is expected not to significantly depend upon the transmitter filter characteristics (see clause 8.12.3.1), the above method is equivalent to the near-end transceiver calculating its bit loading using the following *Virtual_Noise_SNR* for the subcarrier with index i, at the constellation decoder (all terms are expressed in dB):

$$Virtual\_Noise\_SNR(i) = S\_tx(i) - N\_tx(i) + 20 \times \log_{10}(g_i)$$

where: $S\_tx(i) = REFPSD + log\_tss_i(i)$

$N\_tx(i) = TX\_referred\_Virtual\_Noise\_PSD(i)$

g_i is the gain adjuster for the subcarrier with index i as defined in clause 8.6.4.

and *REFPSD* is defined in Table 8-5.

TX_referred_Virtual_Noise_PSD(i) is the transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD value for subcarrier with index i, obtained by interpolation of the *NBP* breakpoints of *TXREFVN* (i.e., *NBPds* breakpoints for *TXREFVNds* and *NBPus* breakpoints for *TXREFVNus*).

The downstream *TXREFVNds* is sent in the C-MSG-PCB message during initialization, with the value of *NBPds* set during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase. If *SNRM_MODE* = 1 or either ATU does not support downstream virtual noise, then the *NBPds* value = 0 (i.e., no breakpoints for downstream virtual noise PSD shall be included in C-MSG-PCB). Each breakpoint shall be represented in 24 bits, with bits 23 to 17 reserved and coded 0, bits 16 to 8 representing a subcarrier index in range 0 to 511, and bits 7 to 0 representing an 8-bit PSD value as defined in clause 8.5.1.1.1.

NOTE 2 – Improper setting of *TXREFVN* can interact with the setting of one or more of the following parameters: maximum net data rate; downstream maximum SNR margin; impulse noise protection; and maximum interleaving delay. This interaction can result in high levels of transmit power that can lead to high crosstalk experienced by DSLs on other pairs in the same binder.

NOTE 3 – Improper setting of one or more of the following parameters – maximum net data rate, maximum SNR margin; impulse noise protection; maximum interleaving delay (in *SNRM_MODE* = 1); and *TXREFVN* (in *SNRM_MODE* = 2) – can result in high levels of transmit power that can lead to high crosstalk experienced by DSLs on other pairs in the same binder. Specifically, high values of maximum net data rate, maximum SNR margin, impulse noise protection, low values of maximum interleaving delay (in *SNRM_MODE* = 1), and high values of *TXREFVN* (in *SNRM_MODE* = 2) are of concern.

8.5.2 Mandatory and optional settings of control parameters

The valid control parameter settings for the transmit PMD function are shown in Tables 8-7 and 8-9 for the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively. The mandatory control parameter settings for the transmit PMD function are shown in Tables 8-8 and 8-10 for the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively. There are no optional values for the control parameters of the ATU-C and ATU-R transmit PMD function.

Table 8-7 – The valid ATU-C PMD transmit function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
b_i	All integer values $0 \le b_i \le 15$.
BIMAXds	8 ≤ *BIMAXds* ≤ 15.
g_i	All values from –14.5 dB (linear value 96/512) to 18 dB. The gain value shall be represented with 3 bits before and 9 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/512 in linear scale.
EXTGIds	0 ≤ *EXTGIds* ≤ *MAXNOMPSDds* – *NOMPSDds*.
TRELLISds	Trellis coding shall be supported by the ATU-C transmitter.
MAXNOMPSDds	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –40 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.
NOMPSDds	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –40 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.
MAXNOMATPds	All values corresponding to valid ITU-T G.994.1 spectrum bounds parameters.
PCBds	All values from 0 to 40 dB, in 1 dB steps.
tss_i	All values from 0 to 1 (linear scale) in 1/1024 steps. The tss_i value shall be represented with 1 bit before and 10 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/1024 in linear scale.
L	All integer values $8 \le L \le 15 \times (NSCds - 1)$.

Table 8-8 – The mandatory ATU-C PMD transmit function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
b_i	All integer values $0 \leq b_i \leq BIMAXds$, with *BIMAXds* identified during initialization.
BIMAXds	8
g_i	All values from –14.5 dB (linear value 96/512) to *EXTGIds* + 2.5 dB, with *EXTGIds* identified during initialization.
EXTGIds	0
TRELLISds	Trellis coding shall be supported by the ATU-C transmitter.
PCBds	All values from 0 to 40 dB in 1 dB steps.
tss_i	All values from 0 to 1 (linear scale), in 1/1024 steps.
L	All integer values from $8 \leq L \leq BIMAXds \times (NSCds - 1)$ with *BIMAXds* and NSCds identified during initialization.

Table 8-9 – The valid ATU-R PMD transmit function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
b_i	All integer values $0 \leq b_i \leq 15$.
BIMAXus	$8 \leq BIMAXus \leq 15$.
g_i	All values from –14.5 dB (linear value 96/512) to 18 dB. The gain value shall be represented with 3 bits before and 9 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/512 in linear scale.
EXTGIus	$0 \leq EXTGIus \leq MAXNOMPSDus - NOMPSDus$.
TRELLISus	Trellis coding shall be supported by the ATU-R transmitter.
MAXNOMPSDus	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –38 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.
NOMPSDus	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –38 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.
MAXNOMATPus	All values corresponding to valid ITU-T G.994.1 spectrum bounds parameters.
PCBus	All values from 0 to 40 dB, in 1 dB steps.
tss_i	All values from 0 to 1 (linear scale) in 1/1024 steps. The tss_i value shall be represented with 1 bit before and 10 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/1024 in linear scale.
L	All integer values $8 \leq L \leq 15 \times (NSCus - 1)$.

Table 8-10 – The mandatory ATU-R PMD transmit function control parameters

Parameter	Definition
b_i	All integer values $0 \le b_i \le BIMAXus$, with *BIMAXus* identified during initialization.
BIMAXus	8
g_i	All values from –14.5 dB (linear value 96/512) to *EXTGIus* + 2.5 dB, with *EXTGIus* identified during initialization.
EXTGIus	0
TRELLISus	Trellis coding shall be supported by the ATU-R transmitter.
PCBus	All values from 0 to 40 dB in 1 dB steps.
tss_i	All values from 0 to 1 (linear scale), in 1/1024 steps.
L	All integer values from $8 \le L \le BIMAXus \times (NSCus - 1)$ with *BIMAXus* and *NSCus* identified during initialization.

8.5.3 Setting control parameters during initialization

8.5.3.1 During the ITU-T G.994.1 phase

The control parameters to be exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase are listed in clause 8.13.2.

8.5.3.2 During the channel analysis phase

The format of the PMD function control parameters involved in the MSG1 messages shall be as shown in Table 8-11.

Table 8-11 – Format of PMD function control parameters included in MSG1

Parameter	Format
TARSNRM	Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps).
MINSNRM	Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps).
MAXSNRM	Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps). The value 511 is a special value, indicating that excess margin relative to *MAXSNRM* need not to be minimized (see clause 8.6.4), i.e., that the *MAXSNRM* value is effectively infinite.
RA-MODE	Unsigned 2-bit integer, values 1 to 3.
PM-MODE	Binary 2-bit indication, each set to 0 or 1.
RA-USNRM	Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps).
RA-UTIME	Unsigned 14-bit integer, 0 to 16383 (in seconds).
RA-DSNRM	Unsigned 9-bit integer, 0 to 310 (0 to 31 dB in 0.1 dB steps).
RA-DTIME	Unsigned 14-bit integer, 0 to 16383 (in seconds).
BIMAX	Unsigned 4 bit integer, 8 to 15.
EXTGI	Unsigned 8-bit integer, 0 to 255 (0 to 25.5 dB in 0.1 dB steps).
CA-MEDLEY	Unsigned 6-bit integer, 0 to 63 (times 512 symbols).

The value *CA-MEDLEY* represents the minimum duration (in multiples of 512 symbols) of the MEDLEY state during the initialization channel analysis phase. It can be different for the ATU-C (*CA-MEDLEYus* indicates the minimum length of the R-MEDLEY state) and the ATU-R (*CA-MEDLEYds* indicates the minimum length of the C-MEDLEY state). See clauses 8.13.5.1.4 and 8.13.5.2.4.

The PMD function control parameters exchanged in the C-MSG1 message are listed in Table 8-12.

Table 8-12 – PMD function control parameters included in C-MSG1

Octet Nr [i]	Parameter	PMD format bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	*TARSNRMds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
1	*TARSNRMds* (MSB)	[0000 000x], bit 8
2	*MINSNRMds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	*MINSNRMds* (MSB)	[0000 000x], bit 8
4	*MAXSNRMds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	*MAXSNRMds* (MSB)	[0000 000x], bit 8
6	*RA-MODEds*	[0000 00xx], bit 1 to 0
7	*PM-MODE*	[0000 00xx], bit 1 to 0
8	*RA-USNRMds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
9	*RA-USNRMds* (MSB)	[0000 000x], bit 8
10	*RA-UTIMEds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
11	*RA-UTIMEds* (MSB)	[00xx xxxx], bit 13 to 8
12	*RA-DSNRMds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
13	*RA-DSNRMds* (MSB)	[0000 000x], bit 8
14	*RA-DTIMEds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
15	*RA-DTIMEds* (MSB)	[00xx xxxx], bit 13 to 8
16	*BIMAXds*	[0000 xxxx], bit 3 to 0
17	*EXTGIds*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
18	*CA-MEDLEYus*	[00xx xxxx], bit 5 to 0
19	Reserved	[0000 0000]

The PMD function control parameters exchanged in the R-MSG1 message are listed in Table 8-13.

Table 8-13 – PMD function control parameters included in R-MSG1

Octet Nr [i]	Parameter	PMD format bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	*BIMAXus*	[0000 xxxx], bit 3 to 0
1	*EXTGIus*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
2	*CA-MEDLEYds*	[00xx xxxx], bit 5 to 0
3	Reserved	[0000 0000]

The value *EXTGI* shall be in the [0 .. (*MAXNOMPSD* – *NOMPSD*)] range. The value may or may not depend on the transmit PMD function's capabilities and the line characteristics identified during the channel discovery phase. The receive PMD function shall use g_i values in the [−14.5 .. (+2.5 + *EXTGI*)] range. Depending on its capabilities and the line characteristics identified during the channel discovery phase, the receive PMD function may or may not use g_i values up to the allowed maximum value.

The ATU-C shall set the *REFPSDds*, the downstream tss_i and the EXTGIds values such that the downstream transmit PSD mask is not violated at any of the subcarriers in the downstream MEDLEYset, even if the g_i value requested by the ATU-R is as high as (2.5 + EXTGI) dB for one or more of those subcarriers.

NOTE – An extended range for g_i values can only be used if the transmit PSD function chooses to use a nominal transmit PSD level that is below the maximum transmit PSD level allowed by the CO-MIB and can only be used within the transmit PSD mask limitations set by the CO-MIB.

8.5.3.3 During the exchange phase

The format of the PMD function control and test parameters involved in the PARAMS messages shall be as shown in Table 8-14.

Table 8-14 – Format of PMD function control parameters included in PARAMS

Parameter	Format
LATN	Test parameter, see clause 8.12.3.
SATN	Test parameter, see clause 8.12.3.
SNRM	Test parameter, see clause 8.12.3.
ATTNDR	Test parameter, see clause 8.12.3.
ACTATP	Test parameter, see clause 8.12.3.
TRELLIS	Binary indication, set to 0 or 1.
Bits and gains table	Bits and gains table is represented by *NSC* – 1 entries or 2 × (*NSC* – 1) octets. Each entry is a 16-bit unsigned integer. Bits in 4 LSBs, gain in 12 MSBs, linear scale. The gain value shall be represented with 3 bits before and 9 bits after the decimal point, i.e., a granularity of 1/512 in linear scale.
Tone ordering table	Tone ordering is represented by *NSC* – 1 entries. Each entry is an 8-bit unsigned integer, representing a subcarrier index.

The test parameters are mapped into messages using an integer number of octets per parameter value. In case the parameter value, as defined in clause 8.12.3, is represented with a number of bits that is not an integer number of octets, the parameter value shall be mapped into the least significant bits of the message octets. Unused more significant bits shall be set to 0 for unsigned parameter values and shall be set to the sign bit for signed parameter values.

The PMD function control parameters and test parameters exchanged in the C-PARAMS message are listed in Table 8-15.

Table 8-15 – PMD function control parameters included in C-PARAMS

Octet Nr [i]	Parameter	PMD format bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	*LATNus* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
1	*LATNus* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
2	*SATNus* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	*SATNus* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
4	*SNRMus* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	*SNRMus* (MSB)	[ssss ssxx], bit 9 and 8
6	*ATTNDRus* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
7	*ATTNDRus*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
8	*ATTNDRus*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 23 to 16
9	*ATTNDRus* (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 31 to 24
10	*ACTATPus* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
11	*ACTATPus* (MSB)	[ssss ssxx], bit 9 and 8
12	*TRELLISus*	[0000 000x], bit 0
13	Reserved	[0000 0000]
14	Upstream bits and gains for subcarrier 1 (LSB)	[gggg bbbb], bit 7 to 0
15	Upstream bits and gains for subcarrier 1 (MSB)	[gggg gggg], bit 15 to 8
…..	…..	…..
10 + 2 × *NSCus*	Upstream bits and gains subcarrier *NSCus* – 1 (LSB)	[gggg bbbb], bit 7 to 0
11 + 2 × *NSCus*	Upstream bits and gains subcarrier *NSCus* – 1 (MSB)	[gggg gggg], bit 15 to 8
12 + 2 × *NSCus*	Reserved	[0000 0000]
13 + 2 × *NSCus*	Upstream tone ordering first subcarrier to map	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
…..	…..	…..
11 + 3 × *NSCus*	Upstream tone ordering last subcarrier to map	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0

The PMD function control parameters exchanged in the R-PARAMS message are listed in Table 8-16.

Table 8-16 – PMD function control parameters included in R-PARAMS

Octet Nr [i]	Parameter	PMD format bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	*LATNds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
1	*LATNds* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
2	*SATNds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	*SATNds* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
4	*SNRMds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	*SNRMds* (MSB)	[ssss ssxx], bit 9 and 8
6	*ATTNDRds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
7	*ATTNDRds*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
8	*ATTNDRds*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 23 to 16
9	*ATTNDRds* (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 31 to 24
10	*ACTATPds* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
11	*ACTATPds* (MSB)	[ssss ssxx], bit 9 and 8
12	*TRELLISds*	[0000 000x], bit 0
13	Reserved	[0000 0000]
14	Downstream bits and gains for subcarrier 1 (LSB)	[gggg bbbb], bit 7 to 0
15	Downstream bits and gains for subcarrier 1 (MSB)	[gggg gggg], bit 15 to 8
…..	…..	…..
10 + 2 × *NSCds*	Downstream bits and gains subcarrier *NSCds* – 1 (LSB)	[gggg bbbb], bit 7 to 0
11 + 2 × *NSCds*	Downstream bits and gains subcarrier *NSCds* – 1 (MSB)	[gggg gggg], bit 15 to 8
12 + 2 × *NSCds*	Reserved	[0000 0000]
13 + 2 × *NSCds*	Downstream tone ordering first subcarrier to map	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
…..	…..	…..
11 + 3 × *NSCds*	Downstream tone ordering last subcarrier to map	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0

8.6 Constellation encoder for data symbols

The constellation encoder for data symbols is shown as part of the transmit PMD function in Figure 8-5. The constellation encoder for data symbols consists of the following functions:

- tone ordering;
- trellis coder;
- constellation mapper;
- gain scaling.

This clause specifies each of these functions, based on the applicable transmit PMD function configuration parameters defined in clause 8.5. The constellation encoder input data frame (from the transmit PMS-TC function) consists of L data bits. The output data frame (to the modulator) consists of $NSC - 1$ complex values (Z_i, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$).

8.6.1 Tone ordering

During initialization, the receive PMD function shall calculate the numbers of bits and the relative gains to be used for every subcarrier, as well as the order in which subcarriers are assigned bits (i.e., the tone ordering). The calculated bits and gains and the tone ordering shall be sent back to the transmit PMD function during a later stage of initialization (see clause 8.5.3.3).

The pairs of bits and relative gains are defined, in ascending order of frequency or subcarrier index i, as a bit allocation table b and gain table g (i.e., b_i and g_i, for $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$, with b_1 bits to be allocated to subcarrier 1 and b_{NSC-1} bits to be allocated to subcarrier $NSC - 1$). If trellis coding is used, the receive PMD function shall include an even number of 1-bit subcarriers in the bit allocation table b.

The tone ordering table t is defined as the sequence in which subcarriers are assigned bits from the input bitstream (i.e., t_i for $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$, with constellation mapping beginning on subcarrier t_1 and ending on subcarrier t_{NSC-1}). The tone ordering table t shall remain static for the duration of the session.

Following receipt of the tables b, g and t, the transmit PMD function shall calculate a reordered bit table b' and a reordered tone table t' from the original tables b and t. Constellation mapping shall occur in sequence according to the re-ordered tone table t', with the number of bits per tone as defined by the original bit table b. Trellis coding shall occur according to the re-ordered bit table b'.

If trellis coding is not used, $b' = b$ and $t' = t$.

If trellis coding is used, the reordering of table t shall be performed by the transmit PMD function. The reordered tone table t' shall be generated according to the following rules:

- Indices of all subcarriers supporting 0 bits or 2 or more bits appear first in t', in the same order as in table t.
- Indices of all subcarriers supporting 1 bit appear last in table t', in the same order as in table t.

If the bit allocation does not include any 1-bit subcarriers, the reordered tone table t' is identical to the original tone table t.

The (even number of) 1-bit subcarriers shall be paired to form 2-dimensional constellation points as input to the trellis encoder. The pairing shall be determined by the order in which the 1-bit subcarriers appear in the original tone ordering table t.

The table b' is generated by scanning the reordered tone table t' and reordering the entries of table b according to the following rules (with *NCONEBIT* representing the number of 1-bit subcarriers in the bit allocation table b):

- The first $NCONEBIT/2$ entries of b' shall be 0, where *NCONEBIT* is the (by definition, even) number of subcarriers supporting 1 bit.
- The next entries of b' shall be 0, corresponding to the subcarriers that support 0 bits.
- The next entries of b' shall be non-zero, corresponding to the subcarriers that support 2 or more bits. The entries shall be determined using the new tone table t' in conjunction with the original bit table b.
- The last $NCONEBIT/2$ entries of b' correspond to the paired 1-bit constellations (i.e., 2 bits per entry).

The table b' is compatible with the ITU-T G.992.1 trellis encoder.

The tables b' and t' shall be calculated from the original tables b and t as shown in the tone pairing and bit re-ordering processes below.

```
/*** CONSTRUCT THE TONE REORDERING TABLE ***/
/*
Tone ordering table is denoted as array 't' and tone reordering table
is denoted as array 'tp'. The indices to these tones are denoted as
't_index' and 'tp_index', respectively.
*/
/*
Fill out tone reordering table with entries of tone ordering table
but skip 1-bit tones.
*/
tp_index = 1;
for (t_index = 1;  t_index < NSC;  t_index++) {
  tone = t[t_index];
  bits  = b[tone];
  if (bits != 1) {
    tp[tp_index++] = tone;
  }
}
/*
Add the 1-bit tones to the end of tone reordering table.
*/
for (t_index = 1;  t_index < NSC;  t_index++) {
  tone = t[t_index];
  bits  = b[tone];
  if (bits == 1) {
    tp[tp_index++] = tone;
  }
}
/* RE-ORDERING THE BIT ARRAY */
/*
The bit table is denoted as array 'b' and the ordered bit table is
denoted as array 'bp'.
The indexes to these arrays are denoted as 'b_index' and bp_index',
respectively.
*/
/* First, count the number of loaded tones and also 1-bit tones. */
NCONEBIT = 0; /* NCONEBIT is the number of sub-carriers with 1 bit */
NCUSED   = 0; /* NCUSED is the number of loaded sub-carriers */
for (i = 1;  i < NSC;  i++) {
  if (b[i] > 0) {
    NCUSED++;
  }
  if (b[i] == 1) {
    NCONEBIT++;
  }
}
/* Fill initial zero entries for unloaded tones and half the number of 1-bit
tones */
for (bp_index = 1;  bp_index < (NSC - (NCUSED - NCONEBIT/2));
      bp_index++) {
  bp[bp_index] = 0;
}
for (tp_index = 1;  tp_index < NSC;  tp_index++) {
  tone = tp[tp_index];
  bits = b[tone];
  if (bits == 0) {
    /* skip unloaded tones */
  }
  if (bits == 1) {
    /* pair 2 consecutive 1-bit tones and add a
```

```
        single entry with 2 bits */
      bp[bp_index++] = 2;
      tp_index++;
    }
    if (bits > 1) {
      bp[bp_index++] = bits;
    }
}
```

Figure 8-7 presents an example to illustrate the tone reordering and bit reordering procedures, and the pairing of 1-bit subcarriers for trellis encoding.

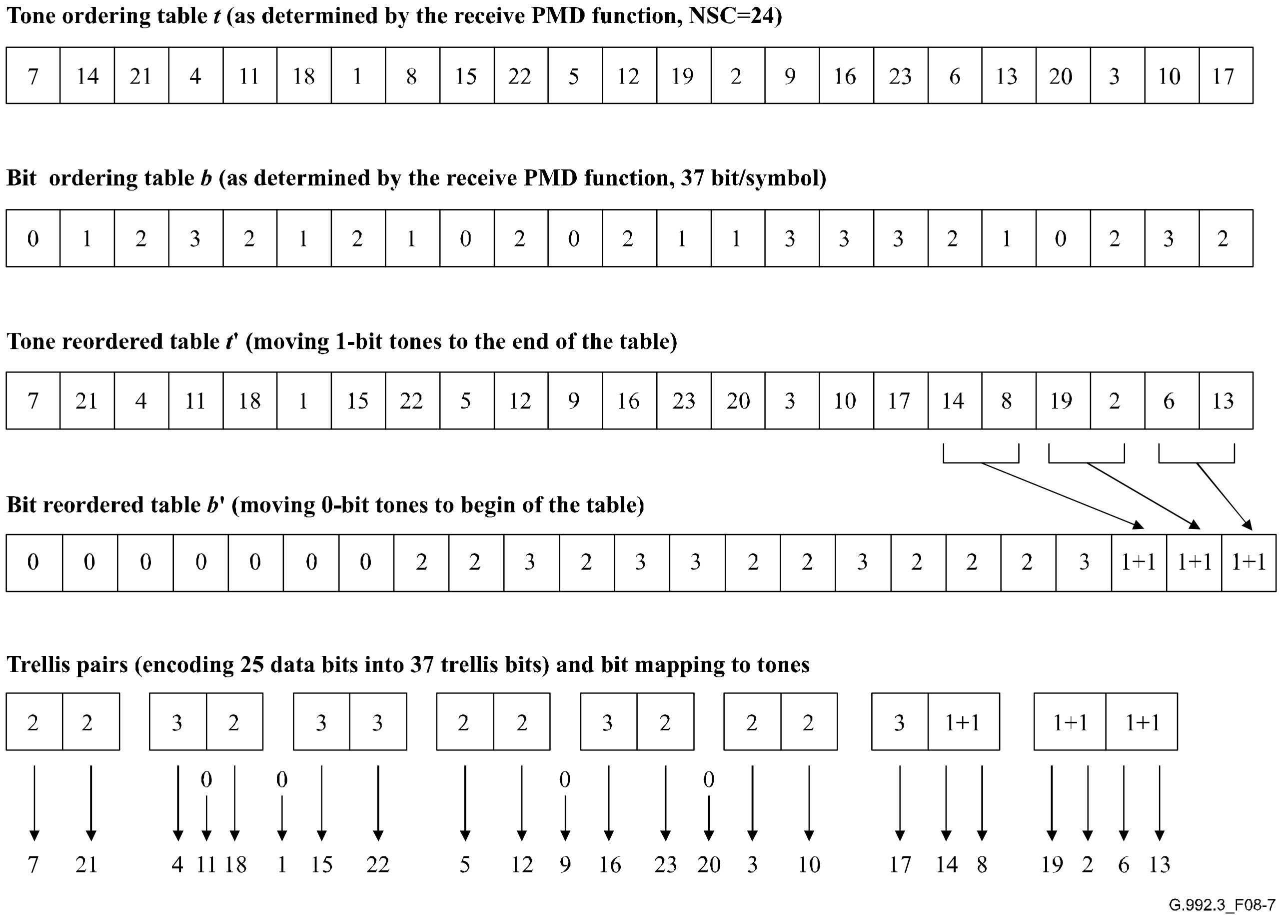


Figure 8-7 – Example of frequency ordering and pairing of one-bit carriers

If on-line reconfiguration changes the number or indices of 0-bit subcarriers or 1-bit subcarriers, then tables *t*' and *b*' shall be recalculated from the updated table *b* and the original table *t*.

The constellation encoder takes *L* bits per symbol from the PMS-TC layer. If trellis coding is used, the *L* bits shall be encoded into a number of bits *L*' matching the bit allocation table *b* and the reordered bit table *b*', i.e., into a number of bits equal to $L' = \sum b_i' = \sum b_i$ (see clause 8.6.2). The value of *L* and *L*' relate as:

$$L' = \sum b_i' = \sum b_i = L + \left\lceil \frac{NCUSED - \dfrac{NCONEBIT}{2}}{2} \right\rceil + 4$$

with the $\lceil x \rceil$ notation representing rounding to the higher integer. The above relationship shows that using the 1-bit subcarrier pairing method, on average, one trellis overhead bit is added per set of four 1-bit subcarriers, i.e., one trellis overhead bit per 4-dimensional constellation. In case trellis coding is not used, the value of L shall match the bit allocation table, i.e., $L = \sum b_i$.

A complementary procedure should be performed in the receive PMD function. It is not necessary, however, to send the re-ordered bit table b' and the re-ordered tone table t' to the receive PMD function because they are generated in a deterministic way from the bit allocation table and tone ordering tables originally generated in the receive PMD function and, therefore, the receive PMD function has all the information necessary to perform the constellation demapping and trellis decoding (if used).

8.6.2 Trellis coder

Block processing of Wei's 16-state 4-dimensional trellis code shall be supported to improve system performance. An algorithmic constellation encoder shall be used to construct constellations with a maximum number of bits equal to *BIMAXds*.

8.6.2.1 Bit extraction

Data bits from the data frame buffer shall be extracted according to the bit allocation table b_i', least significant bit first. Because of the 4-dimensional nature of the code, the extraction is based on pairs of consecutive b_i', rather than on individual ones, as in the non-trellis-coded case. Furthermore, due to the constellation expansion associated with coding, the bit allocation table, b_i', specifies the number of coded bits per subcarrier, which can be any integer from 2 to 15.

Trellis coding shall be performed on pairs of consecutive b' values, ($x = b'_{2\times i}, y = b'_{2\times i+1}$), in the order $i = 0$ to $(NSC/2) - 1$. The value b_0' is prepended to the reordered bit table b' to make an integer number of pairs and shall be set to 0.

Given a pair (x, y), $x + y - 1$ bits (reflecting a constellation expansion of 1 bit per 4 dimensions, or one half bit per subcarrier) are extracted from the data frame buffer. These $z = x + y - 1$ bits (t_z, t_{z-1}, ... , t_1) are used to form the binary word u as shown in Table 8-17. Refer to clause 8.6.2.2 for the reason behind the special form of the word u for the case $x = 0$, $y > 1$.

Table 8-17 – Forming the binary word *u*

Condition	Binary word/comment
$x > 1$, $y > 1$	$u = (t_z, t_{z-1}, \ldots, t_1)$
$x = 1$, $y \geq 1$	Condition not allowed
$x = 0$, $y > 1$	$u = (t_z, t_{z-1}, \ldots, t_2, 0, t_1, 0)$
$x = 0$, $y = 0$	Bit extraction not necessary, no message bits being sent
$x = 0$, $y = 1$	Condition not allowed
NOTE – t_1 is the first bit extracted from the data frame buffer.	

The last two 4-dimensional symbols in the DMT symbol shall be chosen to force the convolutional encoder state to the zero state. For each of these symbols, the 2 LSBs of u are predetermined, and only $(x + y - 3)$ bits shall be extracted from the data frame buffer and shall be allocated to $t_3, t_4, \ldots, t_z$.

NOTE – The above requirements imply a minimum size of the b_i' table of 4 non-zero entries. The minimum number of non-zero entries in the corresponding b_i table could be higher.

8.6.2.2 Bit conversion

The binary word $u = (u_{z'}, u_{z'-1}, \ldots, u_1)$ extracted LSB first from the data bits buffer determines two binary words $v = (v_{z'-y}, \ldots, v_0)$ and $w = (w_{y-1}, \ldots, w_0)$, which are inserted LSB first in the encoded bits buffer and used to look up constellation points in the constellation encoder (see Figure 8-8).

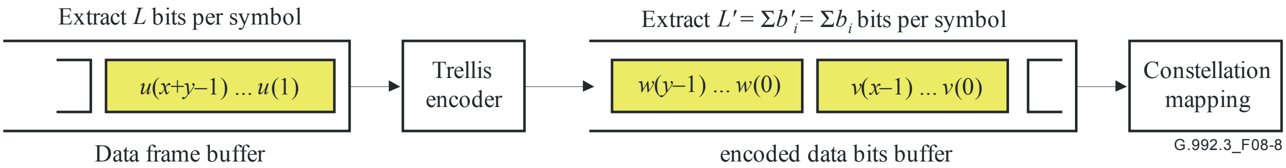


Figure 8-8 – Relationship of trellis encoder and constellation mapping

NOTE – For convenience of description, the constellation encoder identifies these x and y bits with a label whose binary representation is $(v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \ldots, v_1, v_0)$. The same constellation encoding rules apply to both the v (with $b = x$) and w (with $b = y$) vector generated by the trellis encoder.

For the usual case of $x > 1$ and $y > 1$, $z' = z = x + y - 1$, and v and w contain x and y bits, respectively. For the special case of $x = 0$ and $y > 1$, $z' = z + 2 = y + 1$, $v = (v_1, v_0) = 0$ and $w = (w_{y-1}, \ldots, w_0)$. The bits (u_3, u_2, u_1) determine (v_1, v_0) and (w_1, w_0) according to Figure 8-9.

The convolutional encoder shown in Figure 8-9 is a systematic encoder (i.e., u_1 and u_2 are passed through unchanged) as shown in Figure 8-10. The convolutional encoder state (S_3, S_2, S_1, S_0) is used to label the states of the trellis shown in Figure 8-12. At the beginning of a DMT symbol period, the convolutional encoder state is initialized to (0, 0, 0, 0).

The remaining bits of v and w are obtained from the less significant and more significant parts of $(u_{z'}, u_{z'-1}, \ldots, u_4)$, respectively. When $x > 1$ and $y > 1$, $v = (u_{z'-y+2}, u_{z'-y+1}, \ldots, u_4, v_1, v_0)$ and $w = (u_{z'}, u_{z'-1}, \ldots, u_{z'-y+3}, w_1, w_0)$. When $x = 0$, the bit extraction and conversion algorithms have been judiciously designed so that $v_1 = v_0 = 0$. The binary word v is input first to the constellation encoder, and then the binary word w.

In order to force the final state to the zero state (0, 0, 0, 0), the 2 LSBs u_1 and u_2 of the final two 4-dimensional symbols in the DMT symbol are constrained to $u_1 = S_1 \oplus S_3$, and $u_2 = S_2$.

8.6.2.3 Coset partitioning and trellis diagram

In a trellis code modulation system, the expanded constellation is labelled and partitioned into subsets ("cosets") using a technique called mapping by set-partitioning. The 4-dimensional cosets in Wei's code can each be written as the union of two Cartesian products of two 2-dimensional cosets.

For example, $C_4^0 = \left(C_2^0 \times C_2^0\right) \cup \left(C_2^3 \times C_2^3\right)$. The four constituent 2-dimensional cosets, denoted by $C_2^0, C_2^1, C_2^2, C_2^3$, are shown in Figure 8-11.

The encoding algorithm ensures that the two least significant bits of a constellation point comprise the index i of the 2-dimensional coset C_2^i in which the constellation point lies. The bits (v_1, v_0) and (w_1, w_0) are in fact the binary representations of this index.

The three bits (u_2, u_1, u_0) are used to select one of the eight possible 4-dimensional cosets. The eight cosets are labelled C_4^i where i is the integer with binary representation (u_2, u_1, u_0). The additional bit u_3 (see Figure 8-9) determines which one of the two Cartesian products of 2-dimensional cosets in the 4-dimensional coset is chosen. The relationship is shown in Table 8-18. The bits (v_1, v_0) and (w_1, w_0) are computed from (u_3, u_2, u_1, u_0) using the linear equations given in Figure 8-9.

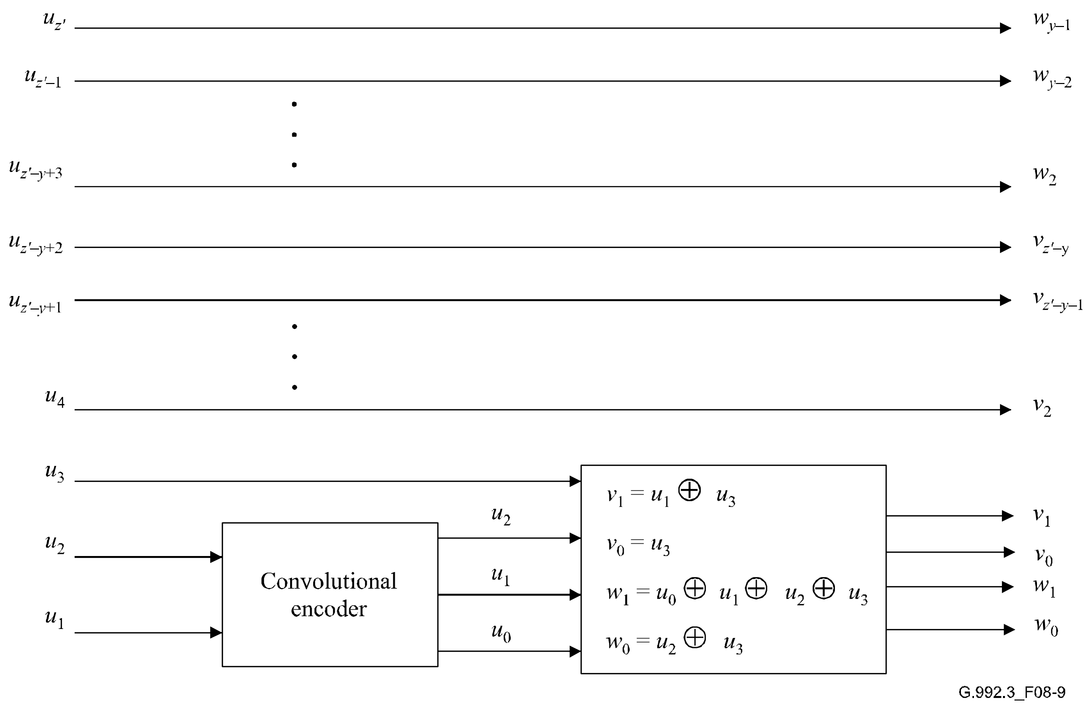


Figure 8-9 – Conversion of *u* to *v* and *w*

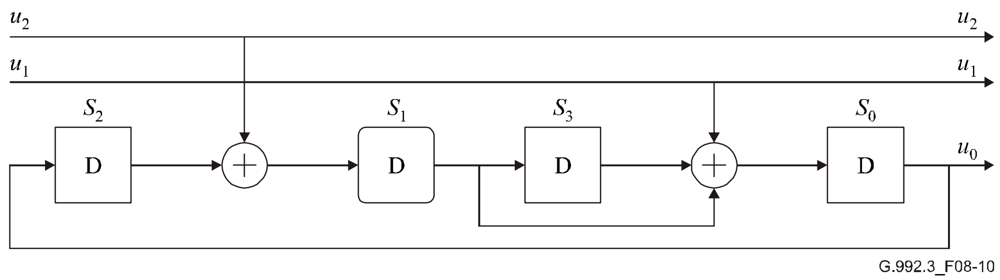


Figure 8-10 – Finite state machine for Wei's encoder

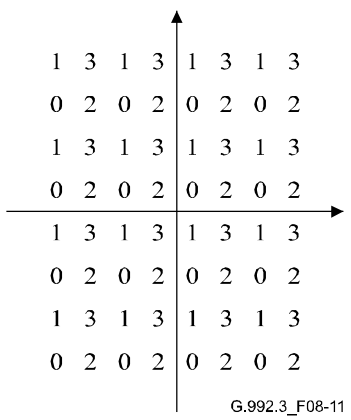


Figure 8-11 – Convolutional encoder

Table 8-18 – Relation between 4-dimensional and 2-dimensional cosets

4-D coset	u_3	u_2	u_1	u_0	v_1	v_0	w_1	w_0	2-D cosets
C_4^0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	$C_2^0 \times C_2^0$
	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	$C_2^3 \times C_2^3$
C_4^4	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	$C_2^0 \times C_2^3$
	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	$C_2^3 \times C_2^0$
C_4^2	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	$C_2^2 \times C_2^2$
	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	$C_2^1 \times C_2^1$
C_4^6	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	$C_2^2 \times C_2^1$
	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	$C_2^1 \times C_2^2$
C_4^1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	$C_2^0 \times C_2^2$
	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	$C_2^3 \times C_2^1$
C_4^5	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	$C_2^0 \times C_2^1$
	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	$C_2^3 \times C_2^2$
C_4^3	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	$C_2^2 \times C_2^0$
	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	$C_2^1 \times C_2^3$
C_4^7	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	$C_2^2 \times C_2^3$
	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	$C_2^1 \times C_2^0$

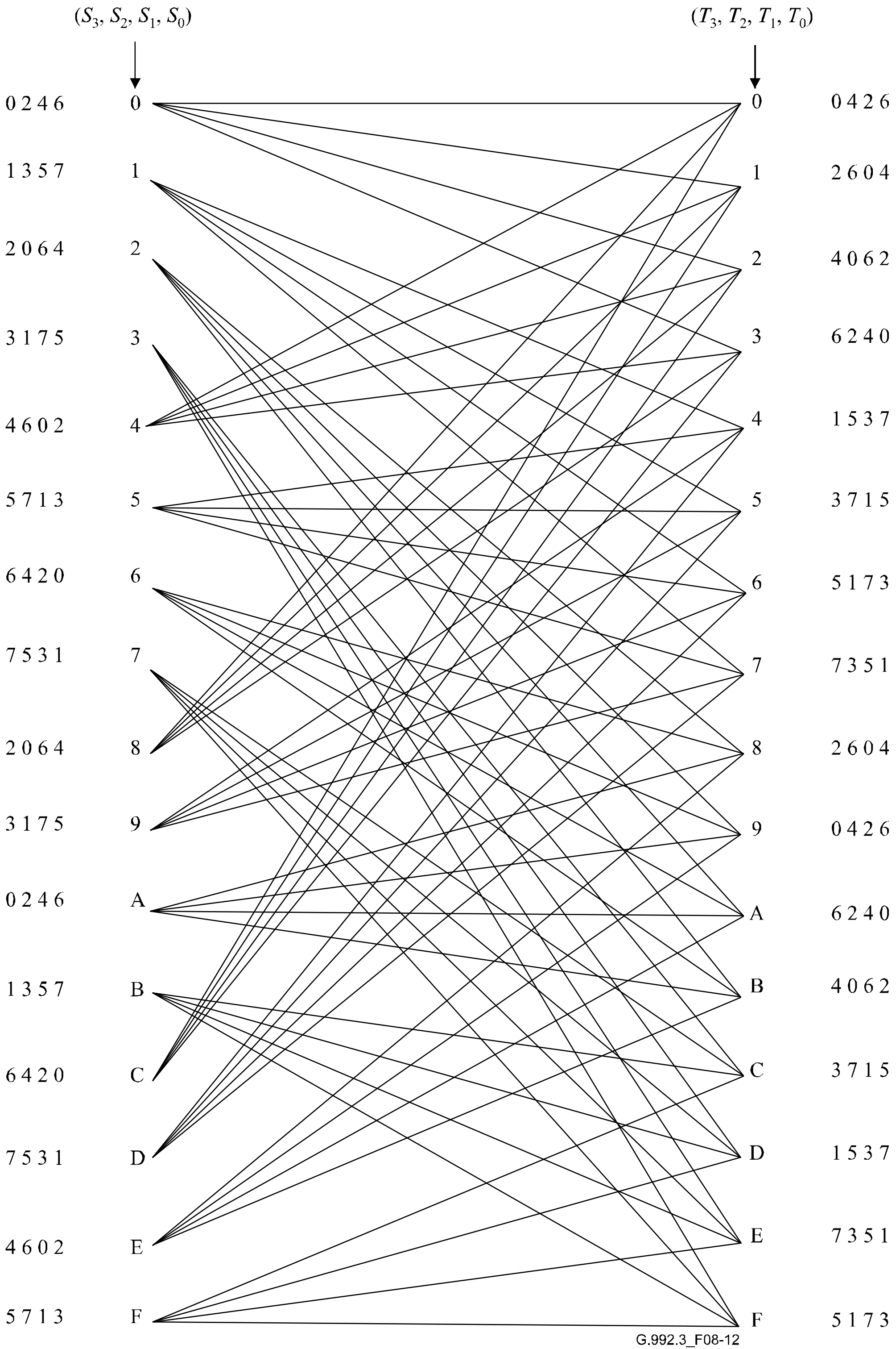


Figure 8-12 – Trellis diagram

Figure 8-12 shows the trellis diagram based on the finite state machine in Figure 8-10, and the one-to-one correspondence between (u_2, u_1, u_0) and the 4-dimensional cosets. In Figure 8-12, $S = (S_3, S_2, S_1, S_0)$ represents the current state, while $T = (T_3, T_2, T_1, T_0)$ represents the next state in the finite state machine. S is connected to T in the constellation diagram by a branch determined by the values of u_2 and u_1. The branch is labelled with the 4-dimensional coset specified by the values of u_2, u_1 (and $u_0 = S_0$, see Figure 8-11). To make the constellation diagram more readable, the indices of the 4-dimensional coset labels are listed next to the start and end points of the branches, rather than on the branches themselves. The leftmost label corresponds to the uppermost branch for each state. The constellation diagram is used when decoding the trellis code by the Viterbi algorithm.

8.6.3 Constellation mapper

An algorithmic constellation encoder shall be used to construct constellations with a maximum number of bits equal to *BIMAX*, where $8 \leq BIMAX \leq 15$. The data bits buffer contains $\sum b_i$ bits, which may or may not be trellis coded. Data bits from the data bits buffer and bits from a pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS) encoder shall be extracted according to the constellation mapping tone ordering table $t_i^{'}$ and the bit allocation table b_i, least significant bit first (see clause 8.6.1). The number of bits per subcarrier b_i can take any non-negative integer values not exceeding *BIMAX*.

NOTE – The constellation encoder is described so that text applies irrespective of bits being trellis coded or not and applies irrespective of the link being in the L0 or L2 power management state.

For a given subcarrier i in the MEDLEYset with $b_i > 0$, $b = b_i$ bits shall be extracted from the data bits buffer, and these bits form a binary word $\{v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \dots, v_1, v_0\}$. The first bit extracted shall be v_0, the LSB. The encoder shall select an odd-integer point (X, Y) from the square-grid constellation based on the b bits of $\{v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \dots, v_1, v_0\}$. For example, for $b = 2$, the four constellation points are labelled 0, 1, 2, 3, corresponding to $(v_1, v_0) = (0, 0), (0, 1), (1, 0), (1, 1)$, respectively.

The odd integer values of X and Y shown in the constellation diagrams are on a ±1, ±3, ±5, ... , grid. These values require appropriate scaling such that, at the output of the constellation mapper, all constellations regardless of size represent the same rms energy as a subcarrier transmitted at the reference transmit PSD level (*REFPSD*).

For a given subcarrier i in the MEDLEYset with ($b_i = 0$), no bits shall be extracted from the data bits buffer. Instead, the encoder shall extract $b = 2$ bits from the PRBS generator, and these bits form the binary word $\{v_1, v_0\}$. The first bit extracted shall be v_0, the LSB. The encoder shall select an odd-integer point (X, Y) as defined for the case $b = 2$. In case a $g_i = 0$ is applied during gain scaling, the encoder selection is effectively ignored (see clause 8.6.4).

If the ATU-R has set the *FMT_C-PILOT* bit to 1 in the R-MSG-PCB initialization message (see clause 8.13.3.2.10), then the pilot subcarrier shall not be modulated with data bits (i.e., $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} = 0$). The encoder shall extract $b = 2$ bits from the PRBS generator for the pilot subcarrier, which shall be overwritten by the modulator (see clause 8.8.1.2) with a fixed {0,0} 4-QAM constellation point (i.e., the two bits are effectively ignored).

For a given subcarrier i not in the MEDLEYset with ($b_i = 0$), no bits shall be extracted from the data bits buffer and no bits shall be extracted from the PRBS generator. Instead, the constellation mapper may select a discretionary (X, Y) point (which may change from symbol to symbol and which does not necessarily coincide with a constellation point).

The bits modulated on the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset with $b_i = 0$, shall be taken from the PRBS defined by:

$$d_n = 1 \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ to } 23; \text{and}$$
$$d_n = d_{n-18} \oplus d_{n-23} \text{ for } n > 23.$$

The PRBS sequence shall be reset at the start of showtime and at the start of the L0 power management state after each exit from the L2 to the L0 power management state. Upon reset of the PRBS, d_1 shall be the first bit to extract, followed by d_2, d_3, etc. For each data symbol, $2 \times (NCMEDLEY - NCUSED)$ bits shall be extracted from the PRBS generator, with *NCMEDLEY* the number of subcarriers in the MEDLEYset and *NCUSED* the number of subcarriers with $b_i > 0$. The number of bits per symbol extracted from the PRBS may be different during the L0 and L2 power management states. No bits shall be extracted from the PRBS generator during synchronization symbols and L2 exit symbols.

8.6.3.1 Even values of *b*

For even values of b, the integer values X and Y of the constellation point (X, Y) shall be determined from the b bits $\{v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \ldots, v_1, v_0\}$ as follows. X and Y are the odd integers with 2's-complement binary representations $(v_{b-1}, v_{b-3}, \ldots, v_1, 1)$ and $(v_{b-2}, v_{b-4}, \ldots, v_0, 1)$, respectively. The most significant bits (MSBs), v_{b-1} and v_{b-2}, are the sign bits for X and Y, respectively.

Figure 8-13 shows example constellations for $b = 2$ and $b = 4$.

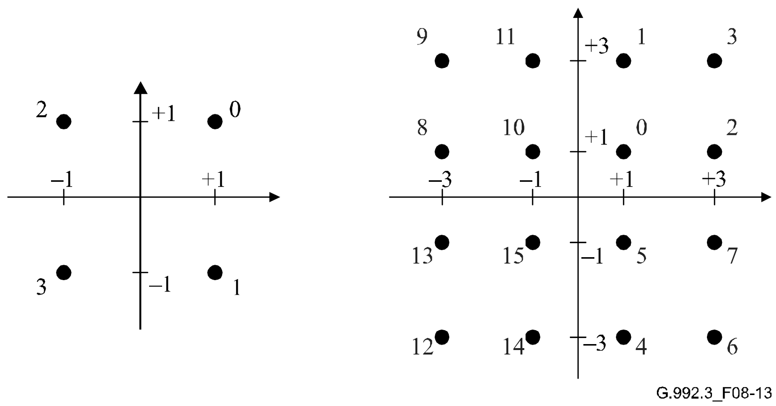


Figure 8-13 – Constellation labels for *b* = 2 and *b* = 4

The 4-bit constellation can be obtained from the 2-bit constellation by replacing each label n by a 2×2 block of labels as shown in Figure 8-14.

$4n + 1$	$4n + 3$
$4n$	$4n + 2$

Figure 8-14 – Expansion of point *n* into the next larger square constellation

The same procedure can be used to construct the larger even-bit constellations recursively.

The constellations obtained for even values of b are square in shape. The least significant bits $\{v_1, v_0\}$ represent the coset labelling of the constituent 2-dimensional cosets used in the 4-dimensional Wei trellis code.

8.6.3.2 Odd values of *b*, *b* = 1

Figure 8-15 shows the constellation for the case $b = 1$.

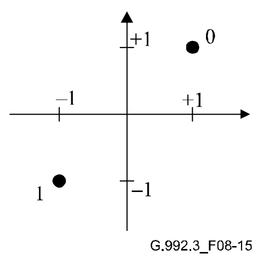


Figure 8-15 – Constellation labels for *b* = 1

In case trellis coding is used, the receiver can combine a pair of 1-bit constellations as shown in Figure 8-16 to build the 2-bit constellation generated by the trellis encoder.

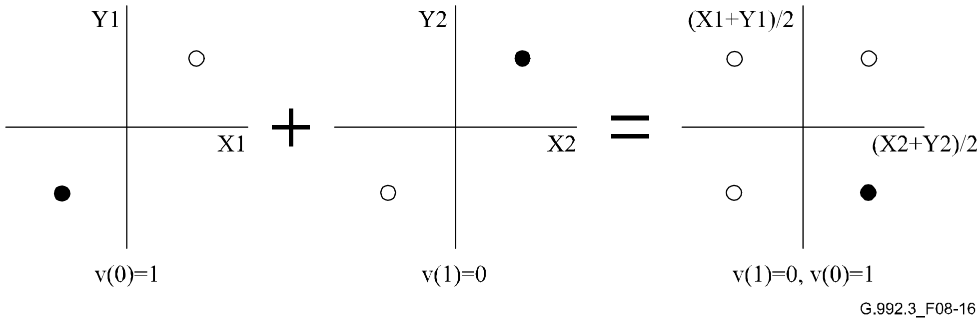


Figure 8-16 – Combination of a pair of 1-bit constellations to build a 2-bit constellation

8.6.3.3 Odd values of *b*, *b* = 3

Figure 8-17 shows the constellation for the case $b = 3$.

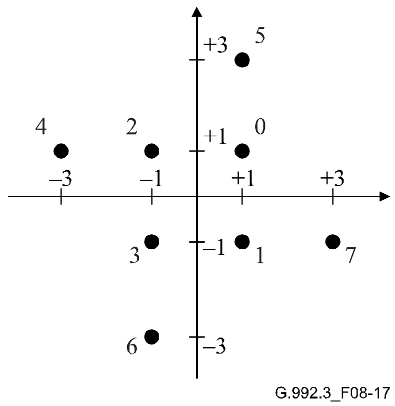


Figure 8-17 – Constellation labels for *b* = 3

8.6.3.4 Odd values of *b*, *b* > 3

If b is odd and greater than 3, the 2 MSBs of X and the 2 MSBs of Y are determined by the 5 MSBs of the b bits. Let $c = (b + 1)/2$, then X and Y have the 2's-complement binary representations (X_c, X_{c-1}, v_{b-4}, v_{b-6}, ... , v_3, v_1, 1) and (Y_c, Y_{c-1}, v_{b-5}, v_{b-7}, v_{b-9}, ... , v_2, v_0, 1), where X_c and Y_c are the sign bits of X and Y respectively. The relationship between X_c, X_{c-1}, Y_c, Y_{c-1} and v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, ... , v_{b-5} is shown in Table 8-19.

Table 8-19 – Determining the top 2 bits of *X* and *Y*

$v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \ldots, v_{b-5}$	X_c, X_{c-1}	Y_c, Y_{c-1}
0 0 0 0 0	0 0	0 0
0 0 0 0 1	0 0	0 0
0 0 0 1 0	0 0	0 0
0 0 0 1 1	0 0	0 0
0 0 1 0 0	0 0	1 1
0 0 1 0 1	0 0	1 1
0 0 1 1 0	0 0	1 1
0 0 1 1 1	0 0	1 1

$v_{b-1}, v_{b-2}, \ldots, v_{b-5}$	X_c, X_{c-1}	Y_c, Y_{c-1}
0 1 0 0 0	1 1	0 0
0 1 0 0 1	1 1	0 0
0 1 0 1 0	1 1	0 0
0 1 0 1 1	1 1	0 0
0 1 1 0 0	1 1	1 1
0 1 1 0 1	1 1	1 1
0 1 1 1 0	1 1	1 1
0 1 1 1 1	1 1	1 1
1 0 0 0 0	0 1	0 0
1 0 0 0 1	0 1	0 0
1 0 0 1 0	1 0	0 0
1 0 0 1 1	1 0	0 0
1 0 1 0 0	0 0	0 1
1 0 1 0 1	0 0	1 0
1 0 1 1 0	0 0	0 1
1 0 1 1 1	0 0	1 0
1 1 0 0 0	1 1	0 1
1 1 0 0 1	1 1	1 0
1 1 0 1 0	1 1	0 1
1 1 0 1 1	1 1	1 0
1 1 1 0 0	0 1	1 1
1 1 1 0 1	0 1	1 1
1 1 1 1 0	1 0	1 1
1 1 1 1 1	1 0	1 1

Figure 8-18 shows the constellation for the case $b = 5$.

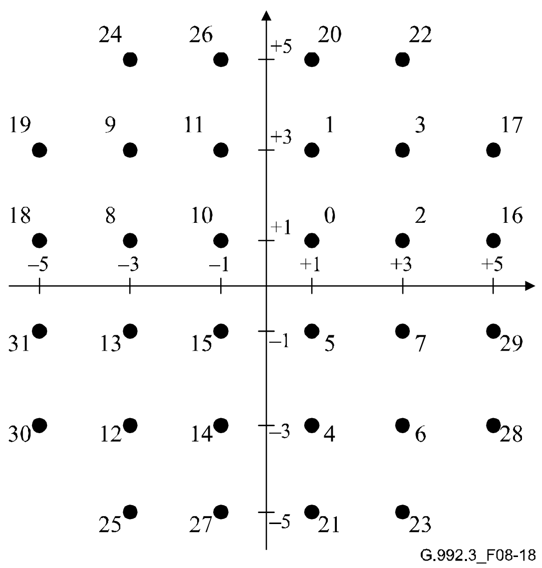


Figure 8-18 – Constellation labels for *b* = 5

The 7-bit constellation shall be obtained from the 5-bit constellation by replacing each label n by the 2 × 2 block of labels as shown in Figure 8-14.

Again, the same procedure shall be used to construct the larger odd-bit constellations recursively. Note also that the least significant bits $\{v_1, v_0\}$ represent the coset labelling of the constituent 2-dimensional cosets used in the 4-dimensional Wei trellis code.

8.6.4 Gain scaling

For subcarriers in the MEDLEYset, each constellation point, (X_i, Y_i), output from the constellation mapper, is scaled by a fine tune gain g_i and a spectrum shaping tss_i to result in a complex number Z_i, defined as:

$$Z_i = g_i \times tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$$

For the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset, the transmit PMD function shall apply spectrum shaping as indicated by the transmit PMD function in the ITU-T G.994.1 CL/CLR message (i.e., the tss_i values) and gain scaling as indicated by the receive PMD function in the bits-and-gains table (i.e., b_i and g_i values) during initialization and possibly updated during showtime via the on-line reconfiguration procedure. The transmit power level for each of these subcarriers shall be equal to that specified by the g_i and tss_i values, relative to the *REFPSD* level (e.g., $g_i = 1$ then transmit at *REFPSD* level, $g_i = 0$ then transmit no power). In the downstream direction, the tss_i values shall be in the 0 to 1 range. In the upstream direction, the tss_i values shall be equal to 1 (see clause 8.13.2.4).

The tss_i values are vendor discretionary. If the transmitter chooses all tss_i values equal to 1 for all subcarriers in the MEDLEYset (i.e., chooses not to apply spectrum shaping to those subcarriers) then the definition of the complex number Z_i, defaults to:

$$Z_i = g_i \times \left(X_i + jY_i\right)$$

For subcarriers not in the MEDLEYset, a discretionary gain scaling (which may change from symbol to symbol) may be applied, with the transmit PSD level not to exceed maximum transmit PSD level for the subcarrier. The maximum transmit PSD level is defined in clause 8.10.

The b_i and g_i values in the bits-and-gains table (as requested by the receive PMD function during initialization, or possibly updated through on-line reconfiguration) shall comply with the following requirements:

- All b_i values shall be in the [0 to *BIMAX*] (bits) range, where *BIMAX* is defined in clause 8.5.
- If trellis coding is used, the number of 1-bit subcarriers shall be even.
- If *FMT_C-PILOT* = 0 then $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} > 0$; if *FMT_C-PILOT* = 1 then $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} = 0$ (see clause 8.8.1.2).
- The *RMSGI* value shall not exceed the *EXTGI* value, where *RMSGI* and *EXTGI* are defined in clause 8.5.
- If $b_i > 0$, then g_i shall be in the [–14.5 to +2.5 + *EXTGI*] (dB) range.
- If $b_i > 0$, then g_i shall be in the [*RMSGI* – 2.5 to *RMSGI* + 2.5] (dB) range.
- If $b_i = 0$, then g_i shall be equal to 0 (linear) or in the [–14.5 to *RMSGI*] (dB) range.
- The nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*, see clause 8.5) shall not exceed the maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (*MAXNOMATP*, see clause 8.5).
- The gain scalings shall be set such that the excess margin relative to the maximum noise margin (*MAXSNRM*) is minimized.

The requirements on the b_i and g_i values in the bits-and-gains tables are illustrated in Figure 8-19.

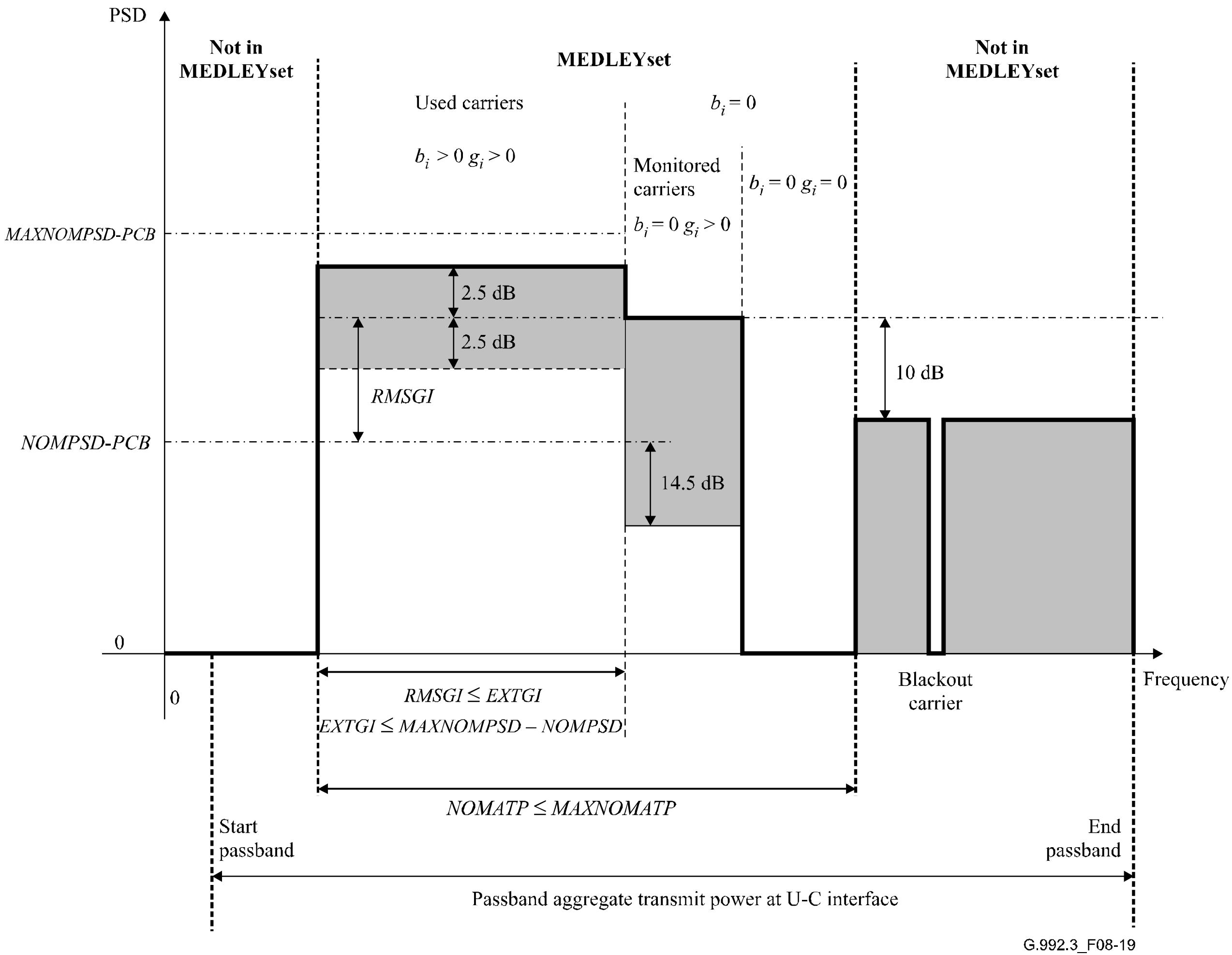


Figure 8-19 – Illustration of requirements on the bits and gains tables

The receive PMD function should not use an excessive number of monitored subcarriers (i.e., subcarriers in the MEDLEYset to which it allocates $b_i = 0$ and $g_i > 0$) to aid in the conservation of spectrum.

These requirements on the bits and gains table apply in the L0 state and at entry into the L2 state. The L2 entry grant response message indicates the gains table to be used in the L2 state (see clause 9.4.1.7). However, at entry into the L2 state, the excess margin may not be minimized. Power trimming during the L2 state may be used to minimize the excess margin. The L2 entry and trim grant response messages indicate the PCB value to be used in the L2 state (see clause 9.4.1.7). Power trimming is defined as changing the downstream power cutback (*PCBds*) level, resulting in a change of the downstream reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDds*) level. Power trimming changes the *PCBds* value used during the L2 state and does not change the g_i values determined at the time of entry into the L2 state.

The g_i values in dB shall be defined as the 20 log g_i (g_i in linear scale). A g_i value of –14.5 dB corresponds to a g_i of 0.1888 in linear scale. A g_i value of +2.5 dB corresponds to a g_i value of 1.333 in linear scale. Same relationship shall be used for the tss_i values in dB and in linear scale.

NOTE – The g_i values define a scaling of the root mean square (rms) subcarrier power levels relative to the *REFPSD* level (see clause 8.13.5). They are independent of any methods that manufacturers may use to simplify implementation (e.g., constellation nesting).

8.7 Constellation encoder for synchronization and L2 exit symbols

The constellation encoder for the synchronization and L2 exit symbols is shown as part of the transmit PMD function in Figure 8-5. A synchronization or L2 exit symbol shall either be an SS-REVERB symbol or an SS-SEGUE symbol.

Clauses 8.7.1 and 8.7.2 define, respectively, the constellation mapper and gain scaling for an SS-REVERB symbol. An SS-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of an SS-REVERB symbol (i.e., an SS-SEGUE symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The transmit PMD function transports the following types of PMD.Synchflag.request primitives (as received from the transmit PMS-TC function) for synchronization of:

- on-line reconfiguration during the L0 state (see clause 8.7.3);
- entry from the L0 into the L2 power management state (see clause 8.7.4);
- exit from the L2 power management into the L0 state (see clause 8.7.6);
- power trimming during the L2 state (see clause 8.7.5).

8.7.1 Constellation mapper

For the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset, the REVERB PRBS data pattern shall be mapped on the SS-REVERB symbols in the same way as it is mapped on the REVERB symbols during the REVERB1 state (see clause 8.13.4.1.1). Two bits are mapped on each of the subcarriers, generating a 4-QAM constellation point for each of the subcarriers, i.e., X_i and Y_i for index $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$.

The values of X and Y of the 4-QAM constellation points as shown in the constellation diagrams are on a ±1 grid. These values require appropriate scaling such that, at the output of the constellation mapper, all constellations represent the same rms energy as a subcarrier transmitted at the reference transmit PSD level (*REFPSD*).

For the subcarriers not in the MEDLEYset, the constellation mapper may select a discretionary (X, Y) point (which may change from symbol to symbol and which does not necessarily coincide with a constellation point).

8.7.2 Gain scaling

In the L0 state, gain scaling shall be applied to synchronization symbols in the same way as it is applied to data symbols in the L0 state (see clause 8.6.4).

In the L2 state, gain scaling shall be applied to synchronization symbols in the same way as it is applied to data symbols in the L2 state (see clause 8.6.4).

In the L2 state, gain scaling shall be applied to L2 exit symbols, as indicated in the L2 entry or L2 90 trim grant response message related to the last previously transmitted PMD.Synchflag primitive (see clause 9.4.1.7). The L2 entry grant response message indicates whether the L0 or L2 state gain scaling table is to be used with the L2 exit symbols. The L2 entry and L2 trim grant response messages indicate the *PCBds* value to be used with the L2 exit symbols (see clause 9.4.1.7).

8.7.3 On-line reconfiguration during the L0 state

The PMD transmit function inserts a synchronization symbol every 68 data symbols, as defined in clause 8.4. The synchronization symbols shall be transmitted at symbolcount 68, and:

- permit the PMD receive function to recover the PMS-TC frame boundary after micro-interruptions that might otherwise force re-initialization;
- provide a time marker for the on-line reconfiguration during the L0 state.

Every time the transmit PMD function receives a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive (related to on-line reconfiguration during the L0 state) from the transmit PMS-TC layer, the phase of the first next inserted synchronization symbol shall be inverted, and remain inverted until the next PMD.Synchflag.request primitive is to be carried. At the start of showtime, the first synchronization symbol transmitted shall be an SS-REVERB symbol.

8.7.4 Entry from the L0 into the L2 power management state

Every time the transmit PMD function receives a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive (related to entry from the L0 into the L2 power management state) from the transmit PMS-TC layer, the phase of the first next inserted synchronization symbol shall be inverted, and remain inverted until the next PMD.Synchflag.request primitive is to be carried.

Prior to entry from the L0 into the L2 power management state, the ATU shall store the downstream control parameters which need to be restored at exit from the L2 into the L0 power management state.

The receive PMD function can distinguish PMD.Synchflag primitives related to entry from the L0 into the L2 power management from those related to on-line reconfiguration and those related to L2 power trimming based on previously exchanged information between the management entities.

8.7.5 Power trimming during the L2 state

Every time the transmit PMD function receives a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive (related to power trimming during the L2 state) from the transmit PMS-TC layer, the phase of the first next inserted synchronization symbol shall be inverted, and remain inverted until the next PMD.Synchflag.request primitive is to be carried.

The receive PMD function can distinguish PMD.Synchflag primitives related to L2 power trimming from those related to L0 on-line reconfiguration and those related to entry from the L0 into the L2 power management based on previously exchanged information between the management entities.

8.7.6 Exit from the L2 power management into the L0 state

Every time the transmit PMD function receives a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive (related to entry from the L2 power management state into the L0 state) from the transmit PMS-TC layer, the next two symbols transmitted with symbolcount in the 0 to 67 range shall be modulated as two L2 exit symbols. The first L2 exit symbol shall be an SS-REVERB symbol. The second L2 exit symbol shall be an SS-SEGUE symbol.

The SS-REVERB symbol may be transmitted at any symbolcount from 0 to 67. The PMD.Synchflag.request primitive may be adjacent to the synchronization symbol in the following cases:

- When the SS-REVERB symbol is transmitted at symbolcount 66, the SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted at symbolcount 67. The synchronization symbol following SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted with the gain scaling and power cutback values as applicable in the L0 power management state.
- When the SS-REVERB symbol is transmitted at symbolcount 67, the SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted at symbolcount 0. The synchronization symbol in between the SS-REVERB and SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted with the gain scaling and power cutback values as applicable in the L2 power management state.
- When the SS-REVERB symbol is transmitted at symbolcount 0, the SS-SEGUE symbol shall be transmitted at symbolcount 1. The synchronization symbol preceding the SS-REVERB symbol shall be transmitted with the gain scaling and power cutback values as applicable in the L2 power management state.

The SS-REVERB symbol may be the first symbol transmitted in the L2 state. Then, the number of data symbols transmitted in the L2 state is effectively 0.

The last data symbol before and the first data symbol after the two L2 exit symbols shall carry dataframes which are consecutive in time, as received from the PMS-TC layer, i.e., no data errors shall be introduced at the PMS-TC layer by the transmission of the L2 exit symbols at the PMD layer.

8.8 Modulation

The modulator shall modulate a constellation encoder output data frame or sync frame (containing $NSC - 1$ complex values Z_i, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$) into a DMT symbol. The data frame can be taken from the data symbol constellation encoder (68 per superframe) as defined in clause 8.6. The sync frame can be taken from the synchronization symbol constellation encoder (1 per superframe) as defined in clause 8.7. For (short) initialization and diagnostics mode signals, the frame is defined in clauses 8.13, 8.14 and 8.15.

8.8.1 Subcarriers

A DMT symbol consists of a set of subcarriers, with index $i = 0$ to NSC. The DMT subcarriers spacing Δf, shall be 4.3125 kHz, with a tolerance of ±50 ppm. The subcarrier frequencies shall be $f_i = i \times \Delta f$, $i = 0$ to NSC.

8.8.1.1 Data subcarriers

The channel analysis (see clause 8.13.5) allows for a maximum of ($NSC - 1$) data carriers to be used (i.e., $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$). The lower limit of usable i depends on both the duplexing and service options selected. For example, for ADSL above POTS service option as defined in Annex A, if overlapped spectrum is used to separate downstream and upstream signals, then the lower downstream limit on i is determined by the POTS splitting filters; if non-overlapped spectrum with frequency-division multiplexing (FDM) is used, the downstream lower limit on i is set by the downstream-upstream separation filters.

In all cases, the cut-off frequencies of these filters are completely at the discretion of the manufacturer, and the range of usable i is determined during the channel estimation in transceiver training (see clause 8.13.4). Implementations should, however, be designed such that, when interworking with implementations of other manufacturers, the resulting range of usable i enables the performance requirements to be met.

8.8.1.2 Pilot (only applies for downstream direction)

During initialization, the ATU-R receive PMD function selects the subcarrier index of the downstream pilot tone (see clause 8.13.3.2.11). The downstream pilot tone shall be at subcarrier with index *C-PILOT* (transmitted at 4.3125 × *C-PILOT* kHz).

If the ATU-R has set the *FMT_C-PILOT* bit to 0 in the R-MSG-FMT initialization message (see clause 8.13.3.2.10), then:

- During initialization, the pilot tone shall be transmitted as defined for each of the ATU-C initialization states in clause 8.13.
- During showtime (data and sync symbols), the pilot tone shall be modulated with data bits (i.e., $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} > 0$). The pilot subcarrier shall be transmitted as defined for data subcarriers.

If the ATU-R has set the *FMT_C-PILOT* bit to 1 in the R-MSG-FMT initialization message (see clause 8.13.3.2.10), then:

- During initialization, the pilot tone defined in clause 8.13 shall be overwritten with a fixed {0,0} 4-QAM constellation point in all the ATU-C initialization states following the C-TREF1 state, except the C-ECT and C-QUIET states. The pilot tone shall be transmitted at the ATU-C reference transmit PSD level (*REFPSDds*), including spectral shaping for that subcarrier.
- During showtime (data and sync symbols), the pilot subcarrier shall not be modulated with data bits (i.e., $b_{C\text{-}PILOT} = 0$). The pilot subcarrier defined in clauses 8.6 and 8.7, shall be overwritten with a fixed {0,0} 4-QAM constellation point. The pilot tone shall be

transmitted at a transmit PSD level as defined for unused subcarriers, i.e., at the *REFPSDds* transmit PSD level, with gain scaling according to the $g_{C\text{-}PILOT}$ value.

Use of the pilot tone allows resolution of receive PMD function sample timing modulo ($2 \times NSC/C\text{-}PILOT$) samples. Therefore, a gross timing error that is an integer multiple of this number of samples could still persist after a micro-interruption (e.g., a temporary short-circuit, open circuit or severe line hit); correction of such timing errors is made possible by the use of the synchronization symbol defined in clause 8.7.

8.8.1.3 Sampling frequency

The sampling frequency f_s shall be defined as $2 \times NSC \times \Delta f$.

8.8.1.4 Nyquist frequency

The Nyquist frequency shall be defined as half of the sampling frequency f_s. The subcarrier at the Nyquist frequency (subcarrier index *NSC*) shall not be used to transmit the data frame and shall be real valued (i.e., Z_{NSC} shall be a real value).

If the transmit PMD function uses an oversampled IDFT with zero fill (see clause 8.8.2) then, during the initialization transceiver training phase, the Z_{NSC} value shall be as defined by the initialization symbols encoder (see Figure 8-5 and clause 8.13.4); other possible uses are for further study.

8.8.1.5 DC

The subcarrier at DC (subcarrier index 0) shall not be used, and shall contain no energy (i.e., $Z_0 = 0$).

8.8.2 Inverse discrete fourier transform (IDFT)

The IDFT is used to modulate a constellation encoder output data frame onto the DMT subcarriers. It converts from frequency domain representation (complex values Z_i, $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$) to time domain representation (real values x_n, $n = 0$ to $2N - 1$). The conversion shall be performed with a $2N$ point IDFT, with $N \geq NSC$, as:

$$x_n = \sum_{i=0}^{2N-1} \exp\left(j \cdot 2 \cdot \pi \cdot \frac{n \cdot i}{2 \cdot N} \right) \cdot Z_i \qquad \text{for } n = 0 \text{ to } 2N-1$$

In order to generate real values of x_n, the input values (Z_i, $i = 0$ to N) shall be augmented so that the vector Z has Hermitian symmetry. That is:

$$Z_i = \text{conj}(Z_{2N-i}) \quad \text{for } i = N+1 \text{ to } 2N-1$$

The modulation onto DMT subcarriers may be implemented using an oversampled IDFT, i.e., an $2N$-point IDFT with $N>NSC$ points, generating $2N$ x_n values per DMT symbol. The constellation encoder generates only $NSC - 1$ complex values of Z_i (for $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$), with addition of a zero Z_0 at DC and a real value Z_{NSC} at the Nyquist frequency. The additional Z_i values (for $i = NSC + 1$ to N) are discretionary. However, different values result in different transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency. Knowledge of how the transmit PMD function defines the additional Z_i values allows the receive PMD function to better estimate the channel during transceiver training in initialization. Therefore, the transmit PMD function shall indicate during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization how many independent Z_i values are input into the IDFT (i.e., the N value) and how the additional Z_i values (for $i = NSC + 1$ to $N - 1$) are defined. The following representation shall be used to define the additional Z_i values (for $i = NSC + 1$ to $N - 1$) (see clause 8.13.2):

- 4-bit indication of N value:
  - values 1 to 15 indicate the N value as 2^1 to 2^{15}, respectively;
  - value 0 indicates the N value is not a power of 2;

- 2-bit indication of additional Z_i values definition:
  - As the complex conjugate of the baseband signal, defined as:
    - $Z_i = \text{conj}\ (Z_{2\times NSC-i})$ for all i with $NSC + 1 \le i \le 2 \times NSC - 1$;
    - $Z_i = Z_{i\ MOD\ 2\times NSC}$ for all $i \ge 2 \times NSC$.
  - As zero fill, defined as (see Figure 8-5 and clause 8.13.4):
    - During the initialization transceiver training phase:
      - Z_i as generated by the initialization symbols encoder for all $NSC + 1 \le i \le 2 \times NSC - 1$;
      - $Z_i = 0$ for all $i \ge 2 \times NSC$.
    - Outside the initialization transceiver training phase:
      - $Z_i = 0$ for all $i \ge NSC + 1$.

  Other (none of the above).

The indication given in the ITU-T G.994.1 codepoint shall apply to all initialization signals (except those during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase), thus including REVERB and MEDLEY signals, as well as the showtime signal.

If a non-oversampled IDFT is used, the transmit PMD function shall indicate that $N = NSC$ and that the transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency are the complex conjugate of the baseband signal.

8.8.3 Cyclic prefix

With a data symbol rate of 4 kHz, a DMT subcarriers spacing of $\Delta f = 4.3125$ kHz and an IDFT size of $2 \times NSC$, a cyclic prefix of $(2 \times NSC \times 5/64)$ samples could be used. That is,

$(2 \times NSC + 2 \times NSC \times 5/64) \times 4.0\text{ kHz} = (2 \times NSC) \times 4.3125\text{ kHz} = f_s$ (the sample frequency)

The cyclic prefix shall, however, be shortened to $(2 \times NSC \times 4/64 = NSC/8)$ samples, and a synchronization symbol (with a length of $2 \times NSC \times 68/64$ samples) is inserted after every 68 data symbols. That is,

$$(2 \times NSC \times 4/64 + 2 \times NSC) \times 69 = (2 \times NSC \times 5/64 + 2 \times \text{NSC}) \times 68$$

For symbols with cyclic prefix, the last $NSC/8$ samples of output of the IDFT (x_n for $n = 2 \times NSC - NSC/8$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$) shall be prepended to the block of $2 \times NSC$ samples, to form a block of $(2 \times NSC \times 17/16)$ samples. Symbols with cyclic prefix are transmitted at a symbol rate of $4.3125 \times 16/17 \approx 4.059$ kHz.

The cyclic prefix shall be used for all symbols transmitted starting from the channel analysis phase of the initialization sequence (see clause 8.13.5). Before the channel analysis phase, all symbols shall be transmitted without cyclic prefix. Symbols transmitted without cyclic prefix are transmitted at a symbol rate of 4.3125 kHz.

If an oversampled IDFT is used (i.e., $N > NSC$, see clause 8.8.2), the number of cyclic prefix samples shall be adapted accordingly. For symbols with cyclic prefix, the last $N/8$ samples of output of the IDFT (x_n for $n = 2 \times N - N/8$ to $2 \times \text{N} - 1$) shall be prepended to the block of $2 \times N$ samples, to form a block of $(2 \times N \times 17/16)$ samples.

8.8.4 Parallel/serial convertor

The block of x_n samples ($n = 0$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$) shall be read out to the digital-to-analogue convertor (DAC) in sequence.

If no cyclic prefix is used, the DAC samples y_n in sequence are:

$$y_n = x_n \text{ for } n = 0 \text{ to } 2 \times NSC - 1$$

If a cyclic prefix is used, the DAC samples y_n in sequence are (see Figure 8-5):

$y_n = x_n + (2 \times NSC - NSC/8)$ for $n = 0$ to $NSC/8 - 1$

$y_n = x_n - (NSC/8)$ for $n = NSC/8$ to $(17/16) \times 2 \times NSC - 1$

Filtering may be applied to the sample sequence going into the DAC.

8.8.5 DAC and AFE

The DAC produces an analogue signal that is passed through the analogue front end (AFE) and transmitted across the digital subscriber line (DSL).

If the transmit PMD function is configured in the L3 idle state, then a zero output voltage shall be transmitted at the U-C2 (for ATU-C) and the U-R2 (for ATU-R) reference point (see reference model in clause 5.4). The analogue front end may include filtering.

8.9 Transmitter dynamic range

The transmitter includes all analogue transmitter functions: the DAC, the anti-aliasing filter, the hybrid circuitry and the high-pass part of the POTS or ISDN splitter. The transmitted signal shall conform to the frequency requirements as described in clause 8.8.1 for frequency spacing.

8.9.1 Maximum clipping rate

The maximum output signal of the transmitter shall be such that the signal shall be clipped no more than 0.00001% of the time. The clipping requirement is specified as a percentage of time, measured in the continuous time domain.

8.9.2 Noise/distortion floor

The signal-to-noise plus distortion ratio of the transmitted signal in a given subcarrier is specified as the ratio of the rms value of the tone at that subcarrier frequency to the rms sum of all the non-tone signals in the 4.3125 kHz frequency band centred on the subcarrier frequency. This ratio is measured for each subcarrier used for transmission using a multitone power ratio (MTPR) test as shown in Figure 8-20, with the comb of Δf-spaced tones at the nominal transmit PSD level defined in the annex corresponding to the selected application option.

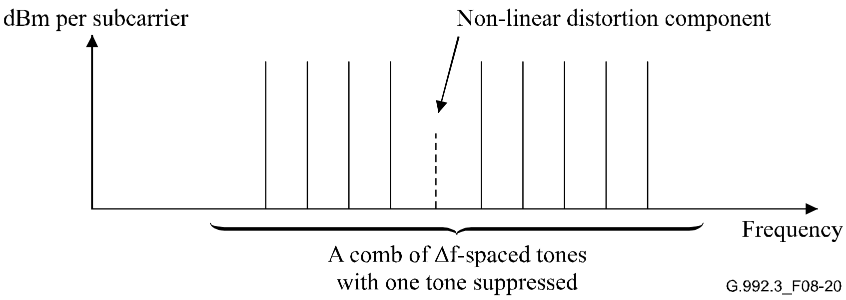


Figure 8-20 – MTPR test

Over the transmission frequency band, the MTPR of the transmitter in any subcarrier shall be no less than ($3 \times BIMAX + 20$) dB, where *BIMAX* is defined as the maximum constellation size supported by the transmit PMD function as conveyed to the receive PMD function during initialization). The minimum transmitter MTPR shall be at least 44 dB (corresponding to a *BIMAX* of 8) for any subcarrier.

NOTE – Signals transmitted during normal initialization and data transmission cannot be used for this test because the DMT symbols have a cyclic prefix appended, and the PSD of a non-repetitive signal does not have nulls at any subcarrier frequencies. A gated FFT-based analyser could be used, but this would measure both the non-linear distortion and the linear distortion introduced by the transmit filter. Therefore, this test will require that the transmitter be programmed with special software, probably to be used during development only. The subject of an MTPR test that can be applied to a production modem is for further study.

8.10 Transmitter spectral masks

Spectral masks for the different service options are defined in the corresponding annexes. The spectral mask defines the maximum passband PSD, maximum stopband PSD and maximum aggregate transmit power.

Annex A: ADSL system operating in the frequency band above POTS:

- A.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation;
- A.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;
- A.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

Annex B: ADSL system operating in the frequency band above ISDN:

- B.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation;
- B.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;
- B.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

Annex C.A: Specific requirements for an Annex C-based ADSL system operating with a downstream bandwidth of 1104 kHz and an upstream bandwidth of 138 kHz:

- C.A.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation;
- C.A.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;
- C.A.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

Annex I: All-digital mode ADSL with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over POTS:

- I.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation;
- I.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;
- I.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

Annex J: All-digital mode ADSL with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over ISDN:

- J.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation;
- J.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;
- J.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

Annex L: Specific requirements for a Reach Extended ADSL2 (READSL2) system operating in the frequency band above POTS:

- L.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation;
- L.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation;
- L.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask 1 for reach-extended operation.
- L.2.3 ATU-R transmit spectral mask 2 for reach-extended operation.

Annex M: Specific requirements for an ADSL system with extended upstream bandwidth, operating in the frequency band above POTS:

- M.1.2 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation;
- M.1.3 ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation;
- M.2.2 ATU-R transmit spectral mask.

The peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth for all service options, unless specified otherwise in the corresponding annex. In frequency bands where the annex specifies a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth, a resolution bandwidth of less than 10 kHz but not less than 1 kHz may be used to show compliance with the PSD mask in transition bands (i.e., the junction of the passband with the noise floor).

In addition to the maximum PSD and maximum aggregate transmit power over the whole passband (defined in the corresponding annexes), the following requirements on fine tuning of passband PSD and aggregate transmit power shall apply during showtime (data symbols and sync symbols). Three subcarrier sets are defined:

a) For the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset with $b_i > 0$ (i.e., the used subcarriers), the ATU shall transmit at PSD levels as defined by the gain scaling (see clauses 8.6.4 and 8.7.2). Gain scaling is performed relative to the *REFPSD* level. The aggregate transmit power on this set of subcarriers shall not exceed the aggregate power transmitted on the same set of subcarriers during MEDLEY by more than *RMSGI* dB (see gain scaling requirements in clause 8.6.4).

b) For the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset with $b_i = 0$, the ATU shall transmit at PSD levels as defined by the gain scaling (see clauses 8.6.4 and 8.7.2). Gain scaling is performed relative to the *REFPSD* level. The aggregate transmit power on this set of subcarriers shall not exceed the aggregate power transmitted on the same set of subcarriers during MEDLEY by more than *RMSGI* dB (see gain scaling requirements in clause 8.6.4).

c) For the subcarriers not in the MEDLEYset, the ATU shall transmit no power on the subcarrier (i.e., $Z_i = 0$, see clause 8.8.2) if the subcarrier is below the first used subcarrier index or if the subcarrier is in the SUPPORTEDset and in the BLACKOUTset. Otherwise, the ATU may transmit at a discretionary transmit PSD level on the subcarrier (which may change from symbol to symbol), not to exceed the maximum transmit PSD level for these subcarriers. The maximum transmit PSD level for each of these subcarriers shall be defined as 10 dB below the reference transmit PSD level, fine tuned by the tss_i values (as applied during transceiver training on the subcarriers included in the SUPPORTEDset and on the subcarriers not included in the SUPPORTEDset) and fine tuned by the *RMSGI* dB (see clause 8.5) and limited to the transmit spectral mask.

During initialization, discretionary transmit PSD levels are allowed only when explicitly stated in clause 8.13.

8.11 Control plane procedures

As a control plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the PMD function. However, the PMD function passes and receives control signals that are transported in the control plane to and from the far-end PMD using TPS-TC transport functions, as depicted in Figure 8-2; e.g., for on-line reconfiguration as described in clause 8.16 or power management transitions as described in clause 8.17.

8.12 Management plane procedures

The PMD receive function provides management primitive indications to the near-end management entity within the ATU. These management primitive indications result in control signals that are transported in the control plane using TPS-TC transport functions, as depicted in Figure 8-3, and as specified in the management entity in clause 9.

8.12.1 ADSL line-related primitives

The receive PMD function has five near-end ADSL line-related defects/anomalies defined. These near-end defects shall be passed to the near-end management entity using the Management.Prim.indicate primitive.

Loss-of-signal (LOS) defect: A reference power is established by averaging the ADSL power over a 0.1 s period and over a subset of subcarriers after the start of steady state data transmission (i.e., after each transition to the L0 or L2 power management state), and a threshold shall be set at 6 dB below this. A LOS defect occurs when the level of the received ADSL power, averaged over a 0.1 s period and over the same subset of subcarriers, is lower than the threshold, and terminates when it is at or above the threshold when measured in the same way . The subset of subcarriers, over which the ADSL power is averaged, is implementation discretionary and may be restricted at the ATU-R to only the downstream pilot tone.

Severely errored frame (SEF) defect: An SEF defect occurs when the content of two consecutively received ADSL synchronization symbols does not correlate with the expected content over a subset of the subcarriers. An SEF defect terminates when the content of two consecutively received ADSL synchronization symbols correlates with the expected content over the same subset of the subcarriers. The correlation method, the selected subset of subcarriers and the threshold for declaring these defect conditions are implementation discretionary.

Loss-of-margin (LOM) defect: An LOM defect occurs when the signal-to-noise ratio margin (SNRM, see clause 8.12.3.6) observed by the near-end receiver is below the minimum signal-to-noise ratio margin (*MINSNRM*, see clause 8.5) and an increase of signal-to-noise ratio margin is no longer possible within the far-end maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (*MAXNOMATP*, see clause 8.5) and maximum nominal transmit PSD level (*MAXNOMPSD*, see clause 8.5). An LOM defect terminates when the signal-to-noise ratio margin is above the minimum signal-to-noise ratio noise margin.

Rate adaptation upshift (RAU) anomaly: An RAU anomaly occurs in seamless rate adaptation mode when the signal-to-noise ratio margin (SNRM) observed by the near-end receiver is above the rate upshift margin for a period longer than the time interval for upshift rate adaptation. An RAU anomaly terminates when the RAU anomaly occurrence condition terminates.

Rate adaptation downshift (RAD) anomaly: An RAD anomaly occurs in seamless rate adaptation mode when the signal-to-noise ratio margin (SNRM) observed by the near-end receiver is below the rate upshift margin for a period longer than the time interval for downshift rate adaptation. An RAD anomaly terminates when the RAD anomaly occurrence condition terminates.

The transmit PMD function has the following far-end ADSL line-related defects, defined as:

Far-end loss-of-signal (LOS-FE) defect: A far-end LOS defect is a LOS defect detected at the far-end and reported by the LOS indicator bit once per 15 to 20 ms (see Tables 7-8 and 7-15). The LOS indicator bit shall be coded 1 to indicate that no LOS defect is being reported and shall be coded 0 for the next 6 LOS indicator bit transmissions to indicate that a LOS defect is being reported. A far-end LOS defect occurs when 4 or more out of 6 consecutively received LOS indicator bit values are set to 0. A far-end LOS defect terminates when 4 or more out of 6 consecutively received LOS indicator bit values are set to 1.

Remote defect indication (RDI): An RDI defect is an SEF defect detected at the far-end and is reported by the RDI indicator bit once per 15 to 20 ms (see Tables 7-8 and 7-15). The RDI indicator bit shall be coded 1 to indicate that no SEF defect has occurred and shall be coded 0 to indicate that an SEF defect has occurred since the last previous RDI indicator bit transmission. An RDI defect occurs when a received RDI indicator bit is set to 0. An RDI defect terminates when a received RDI indicator bit is set to 1.

Far-end loss-of-margin (LOM-FE) defect: A far-end LOM defect occurs when the signal-to-noise ratio margin (SNRM, see clause 8.12.3.6) at the far-end receiver, retrieved through test parameter overhead messages by the near-end transmitter (see clause 9.4.1.10), is below the minimum signal-to-noise ratio margin (MINSNRM, see clause 8.5) and an increase of signal-to-noise ratio margin is no longer possible within the near-end maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (MAXNOMATP, see clause 8.5) and maximum nominal transmit PSD level (MAXNOMPSD, see clause 8.5). An LOM defect terminates when the signal-to-noise ratio margin is above the minimum signal-to-noise ratio noise margin.

NOTE – In case the near-end transmitter uses the far-end LOM defect to declare a high_BER event (see Annex D), a sufficient number of updates of the far-end SNRM need to be retrieved to determine the far-end LOM defect persistency (see update test parameters command in clause 9.4.1.2.2).

Impulse noise monitoring primitives: See clause 8.12.6.3.

8.12.2 Other primitives

One other near-end primitive is defined for the ATU-R. At the ATU-R, the LPR primitive shall be passed to the near-end management entity using the Management.Prim.indicate primitive, e.g., when the electrical power has been shut off.

Loss-of-power (LPR): An LPR primitive occurs when the ATU electrical supply (mains) power drops to a level equal to or below the manufacturer-determined minimum power level required to ensure proper operation of the ATU. An LPR primitive terminates when the power level exceeds the manufacturer determined minimum power level.

One other far-end primitive is defined for the ATU-C.

Far-end loss-of-power (LPR-FE): A far-end LPR primitive is an LPR primitive detected at the far end and is reported by the LPR indicator bit. The LPR indicator bit shall be coded 1 to indicate that no LPR primitive is being reported and shall be coded 0 for the next 3 LPR indicator bit transmissions to indicate that an LPR primitive (i.e., "dying gasp") is being reported. A far-end LPR primitive occurs when 2 or more out of 3 consecutively received LPR indicator bit values are set to 0. A far-end LPR primitive terminates when, for a period of 0.5 s, the received LPR indicator bit is set to 1 and no near-end LOS defect is present.

8.12.3 Test parameters

The test parameters are measured by the PMD transmit or receive function and shall be reported on request to the near-end management entity using the Management.Defect.indicate primitive. Test parameters allow to debug possible issues with the physical loop and to check for adequate physical media performance margin at acceptance and after repair verification, or at any other time following the execution of initialization and training sequence of the ADSL system.

The following test parameters shall be passed on request from the receive PMD transmit function to the near-end management entity:

- channel characteristics function H(*f*) per subcarrier (CCFps);
- quiet line noise PSD QLN(*f*) per subcarrier (QLNps);
- signal-to-noise ratio SNR(*f*) per subcarrier (SNRps);
- line attenuation (*LATN*);
- signal attenuation (*SATN*);
- signal-to-noise margin (*SNRM*);
- attainable net data rate (*ATTNDR*);
- far-end actual aggregate transmit power (*ACTATP*); and
- far-end actual impulse noise protection for each bearer channel (INP_act_n).

The following test parameters shall be passed on request from the transmit PMD transmit function to the near-end management entity:

- near-end actual aggregate transmit power (ACTATP).

The purposes of making the above information available are:

a) H(*f*) can be used for analysing the physical copper loop condition;

b) QLN(*f*) can be used for analysing the crosstalk;

c) SNR(*f*) can be used for analysing time-dependent changes in crosstalk levels and line attenuation (such as due to moisture and temperature variations);

d) The combination of H(*f*), QLN(*f*) and SNR(*f*) can be used for trouble-shooting why the data rate cannot reach the maximum data rate of a given loop.

This enhances the ADSL service maintenance and diagnostics defined in [b-ITU-T G.992.1] by making diagnostic information available from both ends of the loop during active operation of the service. The most detailed diagnostic information, H(*f*) and QLN(*f*), would be useful during showtime; however, requesting this would place an undo computational burden on the ADSL modems. Thus, the combination of complete information on the channel (H(*f*) and QLN(*f*)) during initialization combined with initialization and showtime SNR(*f*) is provided as a reasonable compromise. This combination of data will allow greater analysis of the line conditions than traditional methods and will reduce interruptions of both the ADSL and the underlying service that traditional diagnostic methods require.

8.12.3.1 Channel characteristics function per subcarrier (CCFps)

The channel characteristics function H(*f*) is a quantity that is related to the values of the (complex) source and load impedance. A simplified definition is used in which source and load are the same and equal to a real value R_N. The channel characteristics function H(*f*) is associated with a two-port network, normalized to a chosen reference resistance R_N, shall be defined as a complex value, equal to the U2/U1 voltage ratio (see Figures 8-21 and 8-22).

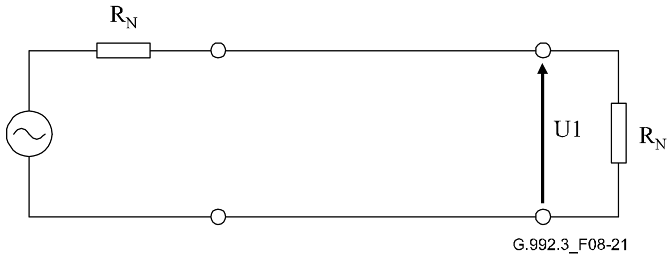


Figure 8-21 – Voltage across the load

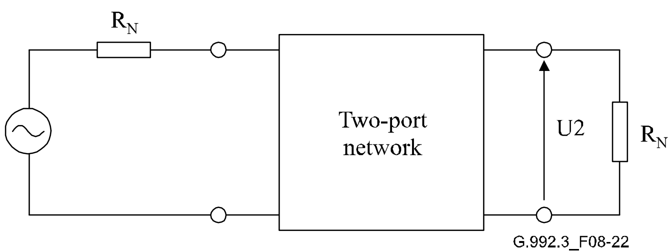


Figure 8-22 – Voltage across the load with a two-port network inserted

The channel characteristics function is the result of the cascade of three functions:

- the transmitter filter characteristics function;
- the channel characteristics function;
- the receiver filter characteristics function.

NOTE – The channel characteristics function corresponds with the $H_{channel}$(f) function used in the definition of the far-end crosstalk (see clause 7.4.1 of [ITU-T G.996.1]).

The objective is to provide means by which the channel characteristics can be accurately identified.

Therefore, it is necessary for the receive PMD function to report an estimate of the channel characteristics. This task may prove to be a difficult one given the fact that the receive PMD function only observes the cascade of all three elements of the channel. The passband part of the reported H(*f*), which is most essential to debug possible issues with the physical loop, is not expected to significantly depend upon the receiver filter characteristics (not including receiver AGC). The receive PMD function shall therefore undo the gain (AGC) it has applied to the received signal and do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end receiver filter characteristics. The result is then a best estimate of how the receiver views the passband channel characteristics plus the transmitter filter characteristics. Because the inband portion of the spectrum is also expected not to significantly depend upon the transmitter filter characteristics, this result is considered a sufficient estimate of the channel characteristics for desired loop conditioning applications.

If the channel characteristics are reported to the CO-MIB, the ATU-C shall do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end transmit filter characteristics from the channel characteristics measured at the ATU-R. If the channel characteristics are reported to the RT-MIB, the ATU-R shall do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end transmit filter characteristics from the channel characteristics measured at the ATU-C.

Two formats for the channel characteristics are defined:

- Hlin(f): A format providing complex values in linear scale.
- Hlog(f): A format providing magnitude values in a logarithmic scale.

The Hlin(f) shall be measured by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode in a REVERB transmitter state. The Hlin(f) shall be sent to the far-end management entity during diagnostics mode and shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity during diagnostics mode.

The Hlog(f) shall be measured by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode and initialization. The measurement shall not be updated during showtime. The Hlog(f) shall be sent to the far-end management entity during diagnostics mode and shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity. The near-end management entity shall send the Hlog(f) to the far-end management entity on request during showtime (see clause 9.4.1.10).

In diagnostics mode, both Hlin(f) and Hlog(f) shall be measured, because there may be a difference in the extent to which the receiver and/or transmitter filter characteristics can be undone in Hlin(f) versus Hlog(f).

The PMD receive function shall measure Hlin(f) and Hlog(f) with the PMD transmit function in a REVERB state. The Hlin(f) and Hlog(f) shall be measured over a 1-second time period in diagnostics mode. The ATU shall do a best effort attempt to optimize Hlog(f) measurement time in initialization, however, measuring over at least 256 symbols, with an indication of the measurement period to the far-end management entity (in symbols, represented as an 16-bit unsigned value), see clause 9.4.1.10).

The channel characteristics function Hlin($i \times \Delta f$), shall be represented in linear format by a *scale* factor and a normalized complex number $a(i) + j \times b(i)$, where i is the subcarrier index $i = 0$ to $NSC - 1$. The scale factor shall be coded as a 16-bit unsigned integer. Both $a(i)$ and $b(i)$ shall be coded as a 16-bit 2's-complement signed integer. The value of Hlin($i \times \Delta f$) shall be defined as Hlin($i \times \Delta f$) = $(scale/2^{15}) \times (a(i) + j \times b(i))/2^{15}$. In order to maximize precision, the *scale* factor shall be chosen such that $max(|a(i)|, |b(i)|)$ over all i is equal to $2^{15} - 1$.

This data format supports an Hlin(f) granularity of 2^{-15} and an Hlin(f) dynamic range of approximately +6 dB to –90 dB. The portion of the scale factor range above 0 dB is necessary to accommodate that short loops, due to manufacturing variations in signal path gains and filter responses, may appear to have a gain rather than a loss.

An Hlin($i \times \Delta f$) value indicated as $a(i) = b(i) = -2^{15}$ is a special value. It indicates that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) or in the BLACKOUTset (see clauses 8.13.2.4, 8.13.4.1 and 8.13.4.2) or that the attenuation is out of range to be represented.

The channel characteristics function Hlog(f) shall be represented in logarithmic format by an integer number $m(i)$, where i is the subcarrier index $i = 0$ to $NSC - 1$. The $m(i)$ shall be coded as a 10-bit unsigned integer. The value of Hlog($i \times \Delta f$) shall be defined as Hlog($i \times \Delta f$) = $6 - (m(i)/10)$.

This data format supports an Hlog(f) granularity of 0.1 dB and an Hlog(f) dynamic range of approximately +6 dB to –96 dB.

An Hlog($i \times \Delta f$) value indicated as $m(i) = 2^{10} - 1$ is a special value. It indicates that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) or in the BLACKOUTset (see clauses 8.13.2.4, 8.13.4.1 and 8.13.4.2) or that the attenuation is out of range to be represented.

8.12.3.2 Quiet line noise PSD per subcarrier (QLNps)

The quiet line noise PSD QLN(f) for a particular subcarrier is the rms level of the noise present on the line when no ADSL signals are present on the line. The received virtual noise PSD as defined in SNRM_MODE = 2 shall not be taken into account in QLN(f).

The quiet line PSD QLN(f) per subchannel shall be measured by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode and initialization. The measurement shall not (i.e., cannot) be updated during showtime. The QLN(f) shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity. The near-end management entity shall send the QLN(f) to the far-end management entity on request during showtime (see clause 9.4.1.10).

The objective is to provide means by which the quiet line PSD can be accurately identified. Therefore, it would be necessary for the receive PMD function to report an estimate of the quiet line PSD. This task may prove to be a difficult one given the fact that the receive PMD function observes the noise through the receiver filter. The passband part of the reported QLNps**,** which is most essential to debug possible issues with the physical loop, is not expected to significantly depend upon the receiver filter characteristics (not including receiver AGC). The receive PMD function shall therefore undo the gain (AGC) it has applied to the received signal and do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end receiver filter characteristics. The result is then a best estimate of how the receiver views the passband quiet line PSD. This result is considered a sufficient estimate of the quiet line PSD for desired loop conditioning applications.

The receive PMD function shall measure the QLN(f) in a time interval where no ADSL signals are present on the line (i.e., near-end and far-end transmitter inactive). The quiet line PSD QLN($i \times \Delta f$) shall be measured over a 1-second time interval in diagnostics mode. In initialization, the ATU shall do a best effort attempt to optimize QLN(f) measurement time, however measuring over at least 256 symbols, with an indication of the measurement period to the far-end management entity (in symbols, represented as 16-bit unsigned value, see clause 9.4.1.10).

The quiet line PSD QLN($i \times \Delta f$) shall be represented as an 8-bit unsigned integer $n(i)$, where i is the subcarrier index $i = 0$ to $NSC - 1$. The value of QLN($i \times \Delta f$) shall be defined as QLN($i \times \Delta f$) = $-23 - (n(i)/2)$ dBm/Hz. This data format supports a QLN(f) granularity of 0.5 dB and an QLN(f) dynamic range of –150 to –23 dBm/Hz.

An QLN($i \times \Delta f$) value indicated as $n(i) = 255$ is a special value. It indicates that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) or that the noise PSD is out of range to be represented.

8.12.3.3 Signal-to-noise ratio per subcarrier (SNRps)

The signal-to-noise ratio SNR(*f*) for a particular subcarrier is a real value which shall represent the ratio between the received signal power and the received noise power for that subcarrier. The received virtual noise PSD as defined in SNRM_MODE = 2 shall not be taken into account in SNR(*f*).

The signal-to-noise ratio SNR(*f*) per subchannel shall be measured by the receive PMD function in diagnostics mode and initialization. The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The SNR(*f*) shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity. The near-end management entity shall send the SNR(*f*) to the far-end management entity on request during showtime (see clause 9.4.1.10).

The receive PMD function shall measure the signal-to-noise ratio SNR(*f*) with the transmit PMD function in a MEDLEY or SHOWTIME state. The signal-to-noise ratio SNR(*f*) shall be measured over a 1-second time interval in diagnostics mode. In initialization and showtime, the ATU shall do a best effort attempt to optimize SNR(*f*) measurement time, however, measuring over at least 256 symbols, with an indication of the measurement period to the far-end management entity (in symbols, represented as 16-bit unsigned value, see clause 9.4.1.10).

The signal-to-noise ratio SNR($i \times \Delta f$) shall be represented as an 8-bit unsigned integer $snr(i)$, where i is the subcarrier index $i = 0$ to $NSC - 1$. The value of SNR($i \times \Delta f$) shall be defined as SNR($i \times \Delta f$) = –32 + ($snr(i)$/2) dB. This data format supports an SNR($i \times \Delta f$) granularity of 0.5 dB and an SNR($i \times \Delta f$) dynamic range of –32 to 95 dB.

An SNR($i \times \Delta f$) value indicated as $snr(i) = 255$ is a special value. It indicates that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) or that the signal-to-noise ratio is out of range to be represented.

8.12.3.4 Loop attenuation (*LATN*)

The loop attenuation (*LATN*) is the difference in dB between the power received at the near-end and that transmitted from the far-end over all subcarriers, i.e., the channel characteristics function H(*f*) (as defined in clause 8.12.3.1) averaged over all subcarriers. *LATN* shall be defined as:

$$LATN[dB] = -10 \times \log \frac{\sum_{i=0}^{NSC-1} |H(i \times \Delta f)|^2}{NSC}$$

with *NSC* the number of subcarriers (see clause 8.5) and H(*f*) represented by Hlin(f) in diagnostics mode and Hlog(f) in initialization (with conversion of log to linear values for use in the above equation).

If one or more H(*f*) values could not be measured because they are out of the PSD mask passband (as relevant to the chosen application option – see annexes) (see clause 8.12.3.1), then the *LATN* shall be calculated as an average of H(*f*) values over a number of subcarriers that is less than *NSC*.

The loop attenuation shall be calculated by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode and initialization. The calculation shall not be updated during showtime. The loop attenuation shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity. The near-end management entity shall send the *LATN* to the far-end management entity on request during showtime (see clause 9.4.1.10).

The loop attenuation *LATN* shall be represented as an 10-bit unsigned integer ***latn***, with the value of *LATN* defined as *LATN* = ***latn***/10 dB. This data format supports an *LATN* granularity of 0.1 dB and an *LATN* dynamic range of 0 to 102.2 dB.

An *LATN* value indicated as ***latn*** = 1023 is a special value. It indicates that the loop attenuation is out of range to be represented.

8.12.3.5 Signal attenuation (*SATN*)

The signal attenuation (*SATN*) is defined as the difference in dB between the power received at the near end and that transmitted from the far end.

Received signal power in dBm shall be defined as the received subcarrier power, summed over the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset. During initialization and diagnostics mode, the transmit PSD for subcarriers in the MEDLEYset is at the *REFPSD* level. Therefore, the received signal power shall be fine tuned with the g_i values for each subcarrier in the MEDLEYset to estimate the signal power that will be received during showtime. During diagnostics mode, the fine tuning shall be restricted to using g_i values 0 (for subcarriers to which no bits can be allocated) and 1 (for subcarriers to which at least one bit can be allocated).

Transmitted signal power shall be defined as the nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*), lowered by the power cutback (PCB, see clause 8.5). During diagnostics mode, only g_i values 0 (for subcarriers to which no bits can be allocated) and 1 (for subcarriers to which at least one bit can be allocated) shall be used.

The signal attenuation shall be measured by the receive PMD function during diagnostics mode and initialization (i.e., estimate the signal attenuation at the start of showtime with the negotiated control parameter settings). The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The signal attenuation shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity. The near-end management entity shall send the *SATN* to the far-end management entity on request during showtime (see clause 9.4.1.10).

The attenuation *SATN* shall be represented as a 10-bit unsigned integer ***satn***, with the value of *SATN* defined as *SATN* = ***satn***/10 dB. This data format supports an *SATN* granularity of 0.1 dB and an *SATN* dynamic range of 0 to 102.2 dB.

An *SATN* value indicated as ***satn*** = 1023 is a special value. It indicates that the signal attenuation is out of range to be represented.

8.12.3.6 Signal-to-noise ratio margin

8.12.3.6.1 General definition of signal-to-noise ratio margin

The signal-to-noise ratio margin is the maximum increase (scalar gain, in dB) of the reference noise PSD (at all relevant frequencies), such that the BER of each TPS-TC stream does not exceed the maximum BER specified for the corresponding TPS-TC stream, without any change of PMD parameters (e.g., bits and gains) and PMS-TC parameters (e.g., L_p, FEC parameters). The BER is referenced to the output of the PMS-TC function (i.e., the α/β interface).

The definition of the reference noise PSD depends on the control parameter SNRM_MODE.

8.12.3.6.1.1 SNRM_MODE = 1

SNRM_MODE = 1 is a mandatory capability for both ATUs.

The reference noise PSD equals the received current-condition external noise PSD only, as measured by the near-end transceiver (i.e., equal to the PSD of the noise measured by the near-end transceiver at the constellation decoder or other relevant internal reference point when the only noise source is the external stationary noise applied to the U interface and no internal noise sources are present).

NOTE – Mathematically this can be illustrated by:

$$\text{Received\_External\_Noise\_PSD} = |\, H_{RXfilter}(f)\, |^2 \times \text{External\_Noise\_PSD\_at\_U\_interface}$$

8.12.3.6.1.2 SNRM_MODE = 2

SNRM_MODE = 2 is an optional capability for both ATUs.

The reference noise PSD equals the maximum of the received current-condition external noise PSD (as defined in SNRM_MODE = 1) and the received virtual noise PSD, at a common internal reference point.

The received virtual noise PSD shall be determined by the transceiver as defined in the following equation:

$$\text{Received\_Virtual\_Noise\_PSD} = |\, H(f)\, |^2 \times \text{TXREFVN},$$

where TXREFVN is the transmitter-referred virtual noise PSD MIB parameter.

8.12.3.6.2 Signal-to-noise ratio margin parameter (*SNRM*)

The signal-to-noise ratio margin parameter (*SNRM*) is the signal-to-noise ratio margin (as defined in clause 8.12.3.6.1) measured over all subcarriers in a transmission direction for which $b_i > 0$. The received virtual noise PSD as defined in clause 8.12.3.6.1.2 shall be taken into account when configured in SNRM_MODE = 2.

The signal-to-noise ratio margin shall be measured by the receive PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode. The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The signal-to-noise ratio margin shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity. The near-end management entity shall send the *SNRM* to the far-end management entity on request during showtime (see clause 9.4.1.10).

To determine the signal-to-noise ratio margin (*SNRM*), the receive PMD function must be able to first determine the bits and gains table. During diagnostics mode, the receive PMD function may measure the *SNRM* value, or alternatively, may use the special value to indicate that the *SNRM* value was not measured.

The signal-to-noise ratio margin shall be represented as a 10-bit 2's-complement signed integer ***snrm***, with the value of *SNRM* defined as *SNRM* = ***snrm***/10 dB. This data format supports an *SNRM* granularity of 0.1 dB and an *SNRM* dynamic range of –51.1 to +51.1 dB.

An *SNRM* value indicated as ***snrm*** = –512 is a special value. It indicates that the signal-to-noise ratio margin is out of range to be represented. During diagnostics mode, the special value may also be used to indicate that the *SNRM* value was not measured.

8.12.3.7 Attainable net data rate (*ATTNDR*)

The attainable net data rate is the maximum net data rate that the receive PMS-TC and PMD functions are designed to support, under the following conditions:

- single frame bearer and single latency operation;
- signal-to-noise ratio margin (*SNRM*) to equal or be above the *SNR* target margin;
- BER not to exceed the highest BER configured for one (or more) of the latency paths;
- latency not to exceed the highest latency configured for one (or more) of the latency paths;
- accounting for all coding gains available (e.g., trellis coding, RS FEC) within latency bound;
- accounting for the loop characteristics at the instant of measurement;
- accounting for the received virtual noise PSD when configured in SNRM_MODE = 2.

To accurately determine the attainable net data rate (*ATTNDR*), the receive PMD function must be able to first determine the bits and gains table. Therefore, during diagnostics mode, the *ATTNDR* value shall be defined as an estimate of the line rate (without coding), calculated as:

$$ATTNDR = \left(\sum_{i=0}^{NSC-1} \left[\log_2 \left(1 + 10^{(SNR(i) - snrgap - TARSNRM)/10} \right) \right] \right) \times 4 \text{ kbit/s}$$

with $SNR(i \times \Delta f)$ in dB as defined in clause 8.12.3.3, but accounting for the received virtual noise PSD when configured in SNRM_MODE = 2, and *snrgap* = 9.75 dB (see Note). The function [x] is equal to 0 for x < 0, is equal to *BIMAX* for x > *BIMAX* and rounding to the nearest integer for 0 ≤ x ≤ *BIMAX*. The values of *BIMAX* and *TARSNRM* are defined in Table 8-48.

NOTE – The *snrgap* value is defined for a 10^{-7} bit error ratio on 4-QAM, in accordance with [b-ANSI T1.417].

The attainable net data rate shall be calculated by the receive PMS-TC and PMD functions during diagnostics mode and initialization. The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The attainable net data rate shall be sent to the far-end transmit PMD function during initialization and diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15.1) and shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity. The near-end management entity shall send the *ATTNDR* to the far-end management entity on request during showtime (see clause 9.4.1.10).

The attainable net data rate shall be represented as a 32-bit unsigned integer ***attndr***, with the value of *ATTNDR* defined as *ATTNDR* = ***attndr*** bit/s. This data format supports an *ATTNDR* granularity of 1 bit/s.

No special value is defined.

8.12.3.8 Actual aggregate transmit power (*ACTATP*)

The actual aggregate transmit power (*ACTATP*) is the total amount of output power delivered by the transmit PMD function to the U reference point at tip-and-ring (in dB), at the instant of measurement. Therefore, it would be necessary for the transmit PMD function to take into account the transmit filter function. This task may prove to be a difficult one. Because the actual aggregate transmit power is expected not to significantly depend upon the transmit filter characteristics, the transmit PMD function shall take the nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*, see clause 8.5), lowered by the power cutback (*PCB*, see clause 8.5), as a best estimate of the near-end actual aggregate transmit power and do a best effort attempt to remove the impact of the near-end transmitter filter characteristics. The *ACTATP* should also include discretionary transmit power, possibly applied during showtime to some subcarriers not in the MEDLEYset (see clause 8.10).

The receive PMD function is not aware of the far-end transmit filter characteristics, nor of the far-end discretionary power levels. Therefore, the receive PMD function shall take the nominal aggregate transmit power (*NOMATP*, see clause 8.5), lowered by the power cutback (*PCB*, see clause 8.5), as a best estimate of the far-end actual aggregate transmit power.

The near-end and far-end actual aggregate transmit power shall be calculated by the PMD function during initialization (i.e., the estimated aggregate transmit power at the start of showtime with the negotiated control parameter settings). The measurement may be updated autonomously and shall be updated on request during showtime. The near-end and far-end actual aggregate transmit power shall be sent on request to the near-end management entity. The near-end management entity shall send the near-end and far-end *ACTATP* to the far-end management entity on request during showtime (see clause 9.4.1.10).

To determine the near-end actual aggregate transmit power (*ACTATP*), the transmit PMD function must first receive the bits and gains table from the receive PMD function. Therefore, during initialization and diagnostics mode, only the far-end actual aggregate transmit power is exchanged.

The actual aggregate transmit power shall be represented as an 10-bit 2's-complement signed integer *actatp*, with the value of *ACTATP* defined as *ACTATP* = *actatp*/10 dBm. This data format supports an *ACTATP* granularity of 0.1 dB, with an ACTATP dynamic range of –31 to + 31 dBm.

An *ACTATP* value indicated as *actatp* = –512 is a special value. It indicates that the actual aggregate transmit power is out of range to be represented.

8.12.3.9 Actual impulse noise protection (*INP_act*)

The actual impulse noise protection INP_act_n of bearer channel #n is defined in clauses K.1.7, K.2.7 or K.3.7 (depending on the TPS-TC type). The value shall be represented as an 8-bit unsigned integer *inpact*, with the value of *INP_act* defined as *INP_act* = *inpact*/10 DMT symbols. This data format supports an *INP_act* granularity of 0.1 DMT symbols and an *INP_act* dynamic range of 0 to 25.4. The value *inpact* = 255 is a special value indicating an *INP_act* value higher than 25.4 DMT symbols.

8.12.4 Diagnostics mode

It is important to have the ability to exchange the diagnostic information during training because the transceivers may not be capable of reaching showtime (due to poor channel conditions). In this case, the ADSL system needs to be capable of transitioning from normal initialization into a diagnostic mode where the measured diagnostic information can be exchanged reliably even in poor channel conditions.

This can be accomplished as follows:

1) In the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization, either the ATU-C or the ATU-R requests entry into diagnostic mode by setting the diagnostics mode codepoint.
2) The transceivers proceed through the diagnostics initialization sequence with channel discovery and transceiver training. After SNR measurement in the channel analysis phase, the transceivers enter into a diagnostic exchange mode.
3) In the diagnostic exchange mode, one bit per eight symbols (REVERB/SEGUE) messaging is used to communicate the diagnostic information from one ATU to the other.

The diagnostics mode is defined in clause 8.15.

8.12.5 Accuracy of test parameters

This clause defines accuracy requirements for test parameters defined in clause 8.12.3. The accuracy requirements are expressed as a tolerance relative to a reference value. Both the reference value and the allowed tolerance are defined in this clause.

The accuracy requirements of test parameters are optional. An ATU may comply with the accuracy requirements for all or a subset of the test parameters.

NOTE – The measurement of test parameter reference values involves the use of test equipment. The accuracy requirements defined in this clause do not take into account test equipment tolerance. Test equipment tolerance is out of the scope of this Recommendation and is to be added to the tolerances defined in this clause.

8.12.5.1 Channel characteristics function per subcarrier (CCFps)

8.12.5.1.1 Channel attenuation in logarithmic format (HLOGps)

The downstream HLOGps reference value shall be defined for each subcarrier as follows:

$$\text{HLOGps\_reference\_ds}(i) = \text{PSDps\_UR2}(i) - (REFPSDds + log\_tss_i(i))$$

where PSDps_UR2(i) is the downstream PSD measured at the U-R2 reference point, after initialization of the line up to a C-REVERB state, in which state the ATU-C is frozen and the ATU-R subsequently replaced by an $R_N = 100\ \Omega$.

The upstream HLOGps reference value shall be defined for each subcarrier as follows:

$$\text{HLOGps\_reference\_us}(i) = \text{PSDps\_UC2}(i) - (REFPSDus + log\_tss_i(i))$$

where PSDps_UC2(i) is the upstream PSD measured at the U-C2 reference point, after initialization of the line up to an R-REVERB state, in which state the ATU-R is frozen and the ATU-C subsequently replaced by an R_N = 100 Ω.

NOTE 1 – The feature to freeze an ATU in a REVERB state exists solely to allow a test bed to be constructed for the purpose of measuring the HLOGps reference value. It applies only to specific transceivers serving as the "transmit transceiver" of the test environment, and is not a requirement for compliance to this Recommendation.

The receiving ATU shall measure the HLOGps values under the same loop, noise, temperature and configuration settings as are used for measuring the HLOGps reference values.

The HLOGps accuracy requirements shall apply only to those subcarriers with an SNR (as defined in clause 8.12.3.3) ≥ 12 dB, where the SNR is the SNR value measured during initialization.

The accuracy requirements for the downstream HLOGps (HLOGps_ds) shall apply only to the following subcarriers (with the corresponding frequency ranges being a part of the passband), and only if not within the downstream BLACKOUTset (see clause 8.13.2.4):

- Annexes A and I: Subcarriers 46 to 208.
- Annex L: Subcarriers 46 to 104.
- Annexes B, J and M: Subcarriers 92 to 208.

The accuracy requirements for upstream HLOGps (HLOGps_us) shall apply to the subcarriers within the following frequency ranges (defined as a part of the passband), and not within the upstream BLACKOUTset (see clause 8.13.2.4):

- Annexes A and I: Subcarriers 11 to 23.
- Annex L (mask 1): Subcarriers 11 to 17.
- Annex B: Subcarriers 36 to 53.
- Annexes J and M: Subcarriers 11 to 53.

Accuracy requirements outside these frequency ranges are for further study. Even though no accuracy requirements are specified outside the above frequency ranges, HLOGps measurements shall still be made and reported for all subcarriers as required in clause 8.12.3.1.

NOTE 2 – Having such specified ranges for accuracy requirements avoids variations due to the tolerances and effects of the filtering at the low ends of the passband and of the effects of folding at the high end of the passband.

The accuracy requirements for the downstream HLOGps (HLOGps_ds and HLOGps_us) shall apply only for those frequencies where the loop impedance (Z_{loop}) falls within the following ranges:

- impedance magnitude is between 100 Ω and 120 Ω;
- impedance imaginary component is between –20 Ω and 0 Ω.

The loop impedance (Z_{loop}) is defined as the impedance seen by the transceiver under test, looking into the loop, including the transmitting transceiver connected to the loop at the far end.

Accuracy requirements for HLOGps_ds and HLOGps_us, for frequencies where the loop impedance (Z_{loop}) falls outside this range, are for further study.

NOTE 3 – Appendix VIII provides an informative discussion of the effects on the accuracy of HLOG measurements caused by impedance mismatch between a nominal 100 Ω termination of the loop and possible termination impedances (Z_{ATU}) actually provided by a transceiver.

For each subcarrier where the HLOGps_ds accuracy requirement applies (based on its subcarrier index and SNRps_ds value only, and not considering restrictions related to its Z_{loop} value), and where HLOGps_reference_ds is above –90 dB, an HLOGps_ds value different from the special value defined in clause 8.12.3.1 shall be reported.

For each subcarrier where the HLOGps_ds accuracy requirement applies, and where HLOGps_reference_ds is above –90 dB, the absolute error (between the HLOGps_ds and the HLOGps_reference_ds) shall be equal to or smaller than 3.0 dB.

Requirements for the mean absolute error of HLOGps_ds reported values are for further study.

Accuracy requirements related to the difference over adjacent subcarriers of the absolute error (between the HLOGps_ds and the HLOGps_reference_ds) are for further study.

The HLOGps_ds accuracy requirements shall apply to HLOGps_ds measured in either initialization or in diagnostic mode.

For each subcarrier where the HLOGps_us accuracy requirement applies (based on its subcarrier index and SNRps_us value only, and not considering restrictions related to its Z_{loop} value), and where HLOGps_reference_us is above –90 dB, an HLOGps_us value different from the special value defined in clause 8.12.3.1 shall be reported.

For each subcarrier where the HLOGps_us accuracy requirement applies, and where HLOGps_reference_us is above –90 dB, the absolute error (between the HLOGps_us and the HLOGps_reference_us) shall be equal to or smaller than 3.0 dB.

Requirements for the mean absolute error of HLOGps_us reported values are for further study.

Accuracy requirements related to the difference over adjacent subcarriers of the absolute error (between the HLOGps_us and the HLOGps_reference_us) are for further study.

The HLOGps_us accuracy requirements shall apply to HLOGps_us measured in either initialization or in diagnostic mode.

8.12.5.1.2 Channel attenuation in complex format (HLINps)

The HLINps reference value and HLINps accuracy requirements are for further study.

8.12.5.2 Quiet line noise PSD per subcarrier (QLNps)

The downstream QLNps reference value shall be defined for each subcarrier as follows:

$$\text{QLNps\_reference\_ds}(i) = \text{PSDps\_UR2}(i)$$

where PSDps_UR2(i) is the downstream PSD measured at the U-R2 reference point, after initialization of the line up to a C-QUIET state, in which state the ATU-C is frozen and the ATU-R subsequently replaced by an $R_N = 100\ \Omega$.

The upstream QLNps reference value shall be defined for each subcarrier as follows:

$$\text{QLNps\_reference\_us}(i) = \text{PSDps\_UC2}(i)$$

where PSDps_UC2(i) is the upstream PSD measured at the U-C2 reference point, after initialization of the line up to an R-QUIET state, in which state the ATU-R is frozen and the ATU-C subsequently replaced by an $R_N = 100\ \Omega$.

NOTE 1 – The feature to freeze an ATU in a QUIET state exists solely to allow a test bed to be constructed for the purpose of measuring the QLNps reference value. It applies only to specific transceivers serving as the "transmit transceiver" of the test environment, and is not a requirement for compliance to this Recommendation.

The receiving ATU shall measure the QLNps values under the same loop, noise, temperature and configuration settings as are used for measuring the QLNps reference values.

The accuracy requirements for the downstream QLNps (QLNps_ds) shall apply to the subcarriers in the same frequency bands and with the same loop impedance (Z_{loop}) restrictions as where the HLOGps_ds accuracy requirements apply (see clause 8.12.5.1).

The accuracy requirements for upstream QLNps (QLNps_us) shall apply to the subcarriers in the same frequency bands and with the same loop impedance (Z_{loop}) restrictions as where the HLOGps_us accuracy requirements apply (see clause 8.12.5.1).

Accuracy requirements outside these frequency ranges are for further study. Even though no accuracy requirements are specified outside the above frequency ranges, QLNps measurements shall still be made and reported for all subcarriers as required in clause 8.12.3.1.

NOTE 2 – Having such specified ranges for accuracy requirements avoids variations due to the tolerances and effects of the filtering at the low ends of the passband and of the effects of folding at the high end of the passband.

For each subcarrier where the QLNps_ds accuracy requirement applies (based on its subcarrier index only, and not considering restrictions related to its Z_{loop} value), and where QLNps_reference_ds is above –130 dBm/Hz, a QLNps_ds value different from the special value defined in clause 8.12.3.2 shall be reported.

For each subcarrier where the QLNps_ds accuracy requirement applies, and where QLNps_reference_ds is above –130 dBm/Hz, the absolute error (between the QLNps_ds and the QLNps_reference_ds) shall be equal to or smaller than 3.0 dB. To account for sinusoidal noise sources internal to the ATU-R, this requirement does not apply to up to 5 groups of 3 adjacent subcarriers, which can selected at the ATU-R vendor's discretion.

The QLNps_ds accuracy requirements shall apply to QLNps_ds measured in either initialization or in diagnostic mode.

For each subcarrier where the QLNps_us accuracy requirement applies (based on its subcarrier index only, and not considering restrictions related to its Z_{loop} value), and where QLNps_reference_us is above –110 dBm/Hz, a QLNps_us value different from the special value defined in clause 8.12.3.2 shall be reported.

For each subcarrier where the QLNps_us accuracy requirement applies, and where QLNps_reference_us is above –110 dBm/Hz, the absolute error (between the QLNps_us and the QLNps_reference_us) shall be equal to or smaller than 3.0 dB.

The QLNps_us accuracy requirements shall apply to QLNps_us measured in either initialization or in diagnostic mode.

8.12.5.3 Signal-to-noise ratio per subcarrier (SNRps)

Noise PSD changes over time shall be reflected in the reported SNRps. This clause defines accuracy requirements for the change in SNRps over a time interval [T1, T2] relative to a reference value. The downstream and upstream reference values are defined as:

$$\Delta\text{SNRps\_reference\_ds}(i) = \text{Noise\_PSDps\_UR2\_T1}(i) - \text{Noise\_PSDps\_UR2\_T2}(i)$$

$$\Delta\text{SNRps\_reference\_us}(i) = \text{Noise\_PSDps\_UC2\_T1}(i) - \text{Noise\_PSDps\_UC2\_T2}(i)$$

where:

- Noise_PSDps_UR2_T1 is the stationary noise PSD (in dBm/Hz) present on the line at the U-R2 reference point at time instant T1, and for at least one minute before T1.
- Noise_PSDps_UR2_T2 is the stationary noise PSD (in dBm/Hz) present on the line at the U-R2 reference point at time instant T2, and for at least one minute before T2.
- Noise_PSDps_UC2_T1 is the stationary noise PSD (in dBm/Hz) present on the line at the U-C2 reference point at time instant T1, and for at least one minute before T1.

- Noise_PSDps_UC2_T2 is the stationary noise PSD (in dBm/Hz) present on the line at the U-C2 reference point at time instant T2, and for at least one minute before T2.
- These four Noise_PSDps are measured by the same method as is used to measure the QLNps_reference (see clause 8.12.5.2).

The receiving ATU shall measure the SNRps values under the same loop, noise, temperature and configuration settings as are used for measuring the SNRps reference values.

The SNRps_ds accuracy requirements shall apply to those subcarriers in the downstream passband where all of the following conditions hold:

- subcarrier is at least 50 kHz away from the lower and higher passband edges;
- bi_T1(i) > 0 and bi_T2(i) > 0;
- Noise_PSDps_UR2_T1(i) and Noise_PSDps_UR2_T2(i) are larger than –120 dBm/Hz;
- (SNRps_T1 – gi_T1) and (SNRps_T2 – gi_T2) are both smaller than 40 dB;

where:

- gi_T1(i) and gi_T2(i) are the downstream fine gains (in dB) at time instants T1 and T2;
- bi_T1(i) and bi_T2(i) are the downstream bitloadings at time instants T1 and T2;
- SNRps_T1(i) and SNRps_T2(i) are the downstream SNRps (in dBm), measured during showtime, at time instants T1 and T2.

The SNRps_us accuracy requirements shall apply to those subcarriers in the upstream passband where all of the following conditions hold:

- subcarrier is at least 50 kHz away from the lower and higher passband edge;
- bi_T1(i) > 0 and bi_T2(i) > 0;
- Noise_PSDps_UC2_T1(i) and Noise_PSDps_UC2_T2(i) are larger than –100 dBm/Hz;
- (SNRps_T1 – gi_T1) and (SNRps_T2 – gi_T2) are both smaller than 40 dB;

where:

- gi_T1(i) and gi_T2(i) are the upstream fine gains (in dB) at time instants T1 and T2;
- bi_T1(i) and bi_T2(i) are the upstream bitloadings at time instants T1 and T2;
- SNRps_T1(i) and SNRps_T2(i) are the upstream SNRps (in dBm), measured during showtime, at time instants T1 and T2, where the line does not re-initialize over the time period T1 to T2.

If the line does not re-initialize over a time period T1 to T2, the following accuracy requirements shall be met for downstream subcarriers where the SNRps_ds accuracy requirement applies:

$$|(\text{SNRps\_T2}(i) - \text{gi\_T2}(i)) - (\text{SNRps\_T1}(i) - \text{gi\_T1}(i)) - \Delta\text{SNRps\_reference\_ds}(i)| \leq 0.8 \text{ dB}$$

Accuracy requirements for downstream subcarriers where (SNRps_T1 – gi_T1) or (SNRps_T2 – gi_T2) is greater than 40 dB, are for further study.

For each downstream subcarrier where the SNRps_ds accuracy requirement applies, the statistical sample variance of SNRps_ds measurements (all samples taken over a 10-minute time interval, without line re-initialization in this time interval, and under the same loop, noise, temperature and configuration settings) shall be equal to or smaller than 0.5 dB.

If the line does not re-initialize over a time period T1 to T2, the following accuracy requirements shall be met for upstream subcarriers where the SNRps_us accuracy requirement applies:

$$|(\text{SNRps\_T2}(i) - \text{gi\_T2}(i)) - (\text{SNRps\_T1}(i) - \text{gi\_T1}(i)) - \Delta\text{SNRps\_reference\_us}(i)| \leq 0.8 \text{ dB}$$

Accuracy requirements for upstream subcarriers where (SNRps_T1 – gi_T1) or (SNRps_T2 – gi_T2) is greater than 40 dB, are for further study.

For each upstream subcarrier where the SNRps_us accuracy requirement applies, the statistical sample variance of SNRps_us measurements (all samples taken over a 10-minute time interval, without line re-initialization in this time interval, and under the same loop, noise, temperature and configuration settings) shall be equal to or smaller than 0.5 dB.

NOTE – In verification tests, noise changes should be applied gradually over time, and not simultaneously at the U-C2 and U-R2 reference point, so as not to force a re-initialization of the line.

8.12.5.4 Loop attenuation (*LATN*)

For further study.

8.12.5.5 Signal attenuation (*SATN*)

For further study.

8.12.5.6 Signal-to-noise ratio margin (*SNRM*)

For further study.

8.12.5.7 Attainable net data rate (*ATTNDR*)

For further study.

8.12.5.8 Actual aggregate transmit power (*ACTATP*)

The ATU-C near-end ACTATP reference value shall be defined as follows:

ACTATP_reference_UC2(*i*) = sum_over_all_frequencies [PSDps_UC2(*i*)]

where PSDps_UC2(*i*) is the downstream PSD measured at the U-C2 reference point, after initialization of the line up to the SHOWTIME state, in which state the ATU-C is frozen and the ATU-C subsequently connected to an R_N = 100 Ω.

The ATU-R near-end ACTATP reference value shall be defined as follows:

ACTATP_reference_UR2(*i*) = sum_over_all_frequencies [PSDps_UR2(*i*)]

where PSDps_UR2(*i*) is the upstream PSD measured at the U-R2 reference point, after initialization of the line up to the SHOWTIME state, in which state the ATU-R is frozen and the ATU-R subsequently connected to an R_N = 100 Ω.

NOTE 1 – The ACTATP should be measured first. Subsequently, the ATU should be frozen in showtime and the PSDps_Ux should then be measured without re-initialization.

NOTE 2 – The measurement of the PSDps_Ux involves freezing in showtime of the transceiver under test. Specification of special test modes for the transceiver under test is outside the scope of this Recommendation.

The absolute error between the ATU-C near-end ACTATP_ds and the ACTATP_reference_UC2 shall be equal to or smaller than 1.0 dB.

The absolute error between the ATU-R near-end ACTATP_us and the ACTATP_reference_UR2 shall be equal to or smaller than 1.0 dB.

8.12.6 Impulse noise monitoring (INM) facility

The INM facility is defined only for the ATU-R.

This clause describes the INM procedure (clause 8.12.6.1) and associated INM configuration parameters (clause 8.12.6.2) and INM primitives (clause 8.12.6.3).

8.12.6.1 Procedure of the INM facility

Figure 8-22a shows the INM facility functional block diagram.

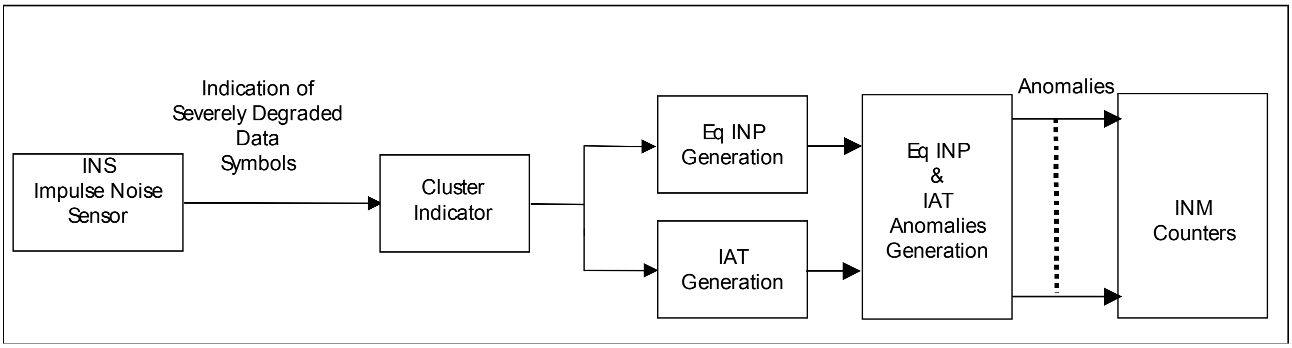


Figure 8-22a – Impulse noise monitor facility functional block diagram

The impulse noise sensor (INS) indicates whether a data symbol is severely degraded or not. A data symbol is considered to be severely degraded when it would lead to severe errors on the gamma interface when there would be no impulse noise protection (i.e., RS only used for coding gain). The implementation details for this sensor are vendor discretionary.

NOTE 1 – Performance requirements for the INS are for further study.

If a sync symbol occurs between two data symbols (severely degraded or not), the impulse noise sensor shall disregard it.

NOTE 2 – If a sync symbol occurs between two groups of respectively N1 and N2 consecutive severely degraded data symbols, the two groups will form a single group of consecutive severely degraded data symbols of length N1 + N2 data symbols.

The cluster indicator indicates short groups of severely degraded data symbols as clusters. The cluster can contain a single severely degraded data symbol, a group of consecutive severely degraded data symbols, or several groups of one or more consecutive severely degraded data symbols with gaps between the groups.

The cluster indicator shall use the following rule to identify the cluster. A gap is defined as a group of non-severely degraded data symbols in between two severely degraded data symbols. A cluster is defined as the largest group of consecutive data symbols, starting and ending with a severely degraded data symbol, containing severely degraded data symbols, separated by gaps smaller than or equal to INMCC (the cluster continuation parameter see clause 8.12.6.2.3).

As a consequence of the above definition of a cluster, each cluster starts with a severely degraded data symbol preceded by a gap larger than INMCC and ends with a severely degraded data symbol followed by a gap larger than INMCC, while gaps inside the cluster are all smaller than or equal to INMCC.

In the Eq INP generation block, the "equivalent INP" of the cluster is generated. For each cluster, the following characteristics shall be determined:

- The impulse noise cluster length (INCL), defined as the number of data symbols from the first to the last severely degraded data symbol in the cluster.
- The impulse noise cluster degraded data symbols (INCD), defined as the number of severely degraded data symbols in the cluster.
- The impulse noise cluster number of gaps (INCG), defined as the number of gaps in the cluster, with gap as defined above.

Depending on the value of the control parameter INM_INPEQ_MODE, the equivalent INP is generated as:

- INM_INPEQ_MODE = 0:

  $INP\_eq = INCL$ with INMCC = 0 (see clause 8.12.6.2.3)

- INM_INPEQ_MODE = 1:

  $INP\_eq = INCL$ with INMCC as configured (see clause 8.12.6.2.3)

- INM_INPEQ_MODE = 2:

  $INP\_eq = INCD$ with INMCC as configured (see clause 8.12.6.2.3)

- INM_INPEQ_MODE = 3:

  For INCG < (8*erasuregain) : $INP\_eq = \min\left(INCL, ceil\left[INCD * \left(\frac{1}{1 - \frac{INCG}{8 * erasuregain}}\right)\right]\right)$

  For INCG ≥ (8*erasuregain): $INP\_eq = INCL$

  with INMCC configured as described in clause 8.12.6.2.3, and

  where the erasuregain is defined as:

  $$erasuregain = \frac{INP}{INP\_no\_erasure},$$

  with INP, and INP_no_erasure as defined in clause 7.6.1.

  NOTE 3 – In case the bit "INP_no_erasure_not_required" (as defined in Table K.2 and as exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase) is set to ZERO, the erasuregain is equal to 1.

  NOTE 4 – For the case of R = 16, the INM_INPEQ_MODE = 3 formula is a lower bound of the INP_min setting required to provide error-free operation for the measured clusters. It is a good approximation for R values close to 16. Optimal choice of framing parameters typically leads to R values close to 16, even more so for large INP_min values. Choice of values R < 16 may lead to lower performance for impulse noise clusters with gaps.

- INM_INPEQ_MODE = 4:

  In this mode, the value of *INP_eq* shall correspond with the ATU-R's own estimate in the downstream direction of the INP_min setting required to provide error-free operation for the cluster, with INMCC as configured (see clause 8.12.6.2.3). The method of computation of the ATU-R's own estimate is vendor discretionary. For INM_INPEQ_MODE = 4 only, if INMCC is set to 64, the ATU-R shall use its own method for cluster indication. If INMCC < 64, the ATU-R shall use the cluster indicator as described in this clause for the INM_INPEQ_MODE = 1, 2 and 3.

Anomalies are generated for several values of *INP_eq*, as defined in clause 8.12.6.3.1. The counters of these anomalies represent the *INP_eq* histogram.

In the IAT generation block, the inter arrival time (IAT) is generated as the number of data symbols from the start of a cluster to the start of the next cluster. If sync symbols occur between two clusters, they shall not be counted in the IAT. Anomalies are generated for several ranges of inter arrival time, as defined in clause 8.12.6.3.3. The counters of these anomalies represent the IAT histogram.

For every data symbol, the total measurement count INMAME is increased by 1.

8.12.6.2 Configuration parameters of the INM facility

8.12.6.2.1 Definition of configuration parameter INMIATO

Configuration parameter INMIATO defines the INM inter arrival time offset for the IAT anomaly generation in order to determine in which bin of the inter arrival time histogram the IAT is reported (see clause 8.12.6.3.3).

The CO MIB shall provide the value for the INMIATO parameter. The parameter in the downstream direction is INMIATOds, and the parameter in the upstream direction is INMIATOus.

The valid values for INMIATO in both directions range from 3 to 511 DMT symbols in steps of 1 DMT symbol. If the ATU supports the INM facility, it shall support all valid values.

Upon entering the first showtime after power-up, the ATU-R shall use a default value of INMIATOds = 3. During showtime, this value may be overwritten by the ATU-C using an INM facility command defined in clause 9.4.1.11. A link state transition shall not affect the INMIATOds value (e.g., not reset the value to the default value).

The ATU-C shall use the current value of INMIATOus stored in the CO MIB.

8.12.6.2.2 Definition of configuration parameter INMIATS

Configuration parameter INMIATS defines the INM inter arrival time step for the IAT anomaly generation in order to determine in which bin of the inter arrival time histogram the IAT is reported (see clause 8.12.6.3.3).

The CO MIB shall provide the value for the INMIATS parameter. The parameter in the downstream direction is INMIATSds, and the parameter in the upstream direction is INMIATSus.

The valid values for INMIATS range from 0 to 7 in steps of 1. If the ATU supports the INM facility, it shall support all valid values.

Upon entering the first showtime after power-up, the ATU-R shall use a default value of INMIATSds = 0. During showtime, this value may be overwritten by the ATU-C using an INM facility command defined in clause 9.4.1.11. A link state transition shall not affect the INMIATSds value (e.g., not reset the value to the default value).

The ATU-C shall use the current value of INMIATSus stored in the CO MIB.

8.12.6.2.3 Definition of configuration parameter INMCC

Configuration parameter INMCC defines the INM cluster continuation value to be used in the cluster indication process described in clause 8.12.6.1. If INM_INPEQ_MODE = 0, INMCC is equal to zero, independent of the CO MIB setting. If INM_INPEQ_MODE > 0, the CO MIB shall provide the value for the INMCC parameter. The parameter in the downstream direction is INMCCds, and the parameter in the upstream direction is INMCCus.

The valid values for INMCC range from 0 to 64 DMT symbols in steps of 1 DMT symbol. If the ATU supports the INM facility, it shall support INMCC = 0. If the ATU supports the INM facility, and supports any INM_INPEQ_MODE > 0, it shall support all valid values.

Upon entering the first showtime after power-up, the ATU-R shall use a default value of INMCCds = 0. During showtime, this value may be overwritten by the ATU-C using an INM facility command defined in clause 9.4.1.11.

A link state transition shall not affect the INMCCds value (e.g., shall not reset the value to the default value).

The ATU-C shall use the current value of INMCCus stored in the CO MIB.

8.12.6.2.4 Definition of configuration parameter INM_INPEQ_MODE

Configuration parameter INM_INPEQ_MODE defines the means of computation of equivalent INP, as defined in clause 8.12.6.1. The CO MIB shall provide the value for the INM_INPEQ_MODE parameter. The parameter in the downstream direction is INM_INPEQ_MODEds, and the parameter in the upstream direction is INM_INPEQ_MODEus.

The valid values for INM_INPEQ_MODE are 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4. If the ATU supports the INM facility, it shall support INM_INPEQ_MODE = 0. All other modes are optional. If the ATU supports any INM_INPEQ_MODE > 0, it shall support at least INM_INPEQ_MODE = 1, 2 and 3.

Upon entering the first showtime after power-up, the ATU-R shall use a default value of INM_INPEQ_MODEds = 0. During showtime, this value may be overwritten by the ATU-C using an INM facility command defined in clause 9.4.1.11.

A link state transition shall not affect the INM_INPEQ_MODE value (e.g., not reset the value to the default value).

The ATU-C shall use the current value of INM_INPEQ_MODEus stored in the CO MIB.

8.12.6.3 Primitives of the INM facility

INM-related primitives represent anomalies related to PMD and PMS-TC sublayers.

8.12.6.3.1 Definition of INM INPEQ histogram primitives

$INMAINPEQ_1..INMAINPEQ_{16}$: Every $INMAINPEQ_i$ is a primitive detected at the near end only. This anomaly occurs when the equivalent INP (as defined in clause 8.12.6.1) is exactly *i* DMT symbols.

$INMAINPEQ_{17}$ is a primitive detected at the near end only. This anomaly occurs when the equivalent INP (as defined in clause 8.12.6.1) is strictly more than 16 DMT symbols.

8.12.6.3.2 Definition of INM total measurement primitive

INMAME is a primitive detected at the near end only. This indication occurs every time a data symbol is processed by the impulse noise sensor.

8.12.6.3.3 Definition of INM inter arrival time histogram primitives

$INMAIAT_0$ is a primitive detected at the near end only. This anomaly occurs when the reported value of IAT falls in the range from 2 to INMIATO – 1, both boundaries inclusive.

$INMAIAT_1..INMAIAT_6$: Every $INMAIAT_i$ is a primitive detected at the near end only. This anomaly occurs when the reported value of IAT falls in the range from $INMIATO + (i - 1)*(2^{INMIATS})$ to $(INMIATO - 1) + i*(2^{INMIATS})$, both boundaries inclusive.

$INMAIAT_7$ is a primitive detected at the near end only. This anomaly occurs when the reported value of IAT falls in the range from $INMIATO + 6*(2^{INMIATS})$ to infinity.

8.12.6.4 Performance requirements of the INM facility

For further study.

8.13 Initialization procedures

8.13.1 Overview

8.13.1.1 Basic functions of initialization

ADSL transceiver initialization is required in order for a physically connected ATU-R and ATU-C pair to establish a communications link. The procedures for initiating a connection are specified in [ITU-T G.994.1]. This clause specifies which parameters are exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1

phase (and how they are used thereafter) and the transceiver initialization and training procedures to follow after the ITU-T G.994.1 phase.

In order to maximize the throughput and reliability of this link, ADSL transceivers shall determine certain relevant attributes of the connecting channel and establish transmission and processing characteristics suitable to that channel. The time line of Figure 8-23 provides an overview of this process. In Figure 8-23, each receiver can determine the relevant attributes of the channel through the transceiver training and channel analysis procedures. Certain processing and transmission characteristics can also be established at each receiver during this time. During the exchange process, each receiver shares with its corresponding far-end transmitter certain transmission settings that it expects to see. Specifically, each receiver communicates to its far-end transmitter the number of bits and relative power levels to be used on each DMT subcarrier, as well as any messages and final data rates information. For highest performance, these settings should be based on the results obtained through the transceiver training and channel analysis procedures.

ATU-C

Handshake procedures (clause 8.13.2.1 and ITU-T G.994.1)	Channel discovery (clause 8.13.3.1)	Transceiver training (clause 8.13.4.1)	Channel analysis (clause 8.13.5.1)	Exchange (clause 8.13.6.1)

ATU-R

Handshake procedures (clause 8.13.2.2 and ITU-T G.994.1)	Channel discovery (clause 8.13.3.2)	Transceiver training (clause 8.13.4.2)	Channel analysis (clause 8.13.5.2)	Exchange (clause 8.13.6.2)

Time →

Figure 8-23 – Overview of initialization

Determination of channel attribute values and establishment of transmission characteristics requires that each transceiver produce, and appropriately respond to, a specific set of precisely-timed signals. This clause describes these initialization signals, along with the rules that determine the proper starting and ending time for each signal. This description is made through the definition of initialization states in which each transceiver will reside, and the definition of initialization signals that each transceiver will generate in each of those states. A state, and the signal generated while in that state have the same name which may sometimes, for clarity, be prefixed by "state" or "signal".

The sequence of generated downstream and upstream states/signals for a successful initialization procedure is shown by the time lines shown in Figures 8-26 and 8-27. The arrows indicate that the change of state in the ATU at the head of the arrow is caused by a state/signal transition of the far-end ATU as shown at the base of the arrow. For example, the ATU-C shall stay in state C-QUIET4 until the ATU-R transitions from the R-MSG-PCB to the R-REVERB1 state. Within a maximum delay from that transition, the ATU-C shall transition to C-REVERB1.

NOTE – Figures 8-26 and 8-27 show the sequence of events in a successful initialization.

An overall state diagram is specified in Annex D, including the handling of failures to detect signals, timeouts, etc.

The description of a state/signal will consist of three parts:

- The first is a statement of the required duration, expressed in DMT symbol periods, of the state. This state duration may be a constant or may depend upon the detected state of the far-end transceiver. The duration of a single DMT symbol period depends on whether the cyclic prefix is being used; some initialization signals contain a cyclic prefix and some do not. ATU signals up to and including transceiver training are transmitted without a cyclic prefix; those from channel analysis onwards are transmitted with a prefix. The duration of any signal in seconds is, therefore, the defined number of DMT symbol periods times the duration of the DMT symbol being used.

- The second part is a description of the voltage waveform that the transmitter shall produce at its output when in the corresponding state. The output voltage waveform of a given initialization signal is described using the DMT transmitter reference models shown in Figure 8-5, with constellation mapping and gain scaling for each subcarrier.
- The third part of a state's description is a statement of the rule specifying the next state.

8.13.1.2 Transparency to methods for separating upstream and downstream signals

Manufacturers may choose to implement this Recommendation using either frequency-division multiplexing (FDM) or echo cancelling (EC) to separate upstream and downstream signals. The initialization procedure described here ensures compatibility between these different implementations by specifying all upstream and downstream control signals to be in the appropriate, but narrower, frequency bands that would be used by an FDM transceiver, and by defining a time period during which an echo-cancelled transceiver can train its echo canceller.

8.13.1.3 Implementation of service options for ADSL

The initialization procedure described here is applicable to different service options. The subcarrier frequencies used for some signals vary depending upon whether the ADSL service is offered over a POTS or an ISDN service (as defined in Appendices I, II, or Appendix III of [ITU-T G.961]) or as all-digital mode without underlying service. These subcarrier frequencies are, therefore, defined over a wide enough frequency band, such that the receiver can identify the transmitter state/signal, irrespective of the service option chosen.

8.13.1.4 Resetting during initialization and data transmission

Resetting may occur if errors or malfunctions are detected, or timeout limits are exceeded at various points in the initialization sequence and showtime. An ATU executes a reset by transitioning to ITU-T G.994.1 procedures. An ATU-R detecting an error condition shall transition to R-SILENT0 (see [ITU-T G.994.1]). An ATU-C detecting an error condition shall transition to C-SILENT1 (see [ITU-T G.994.1]).

Annex D specifies the state transitions that shall occur if errors or malfunctions are detected or timeout limits are exceeded at various points in the initialization sequence. Annex D also specifies conditions for which retraining may be required during data transmission (i.e., after a successful initialization).

The initialization procedure may be used for the link state transition from the L3 state to the L0 state (see clause 9.5.3). Error recovery (during the L0 or L2 link state) is through the initialization procedure. At the start of the initialization procedure, the ADSL link state shall be changed to the L3 state. When the ATU reaches the SHOWTIME state through the initialization procedure, the ADSL link shall be in the L0 state (see Figure 9-5).

8.13.2 ITU-T G.994.1 phase

The definition, structure and usage of the ITU-T G.994.1 parameter blocks is included in this clause. However, this clause only lists the parameters exchanged in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase to configure the transmit and receive PMD functions. Parameters applicable to the TPS-TC and PMS-TC layers are defined in clauses 6 and 7, respectively.

The CL and CLR messages shall describe capabilities of the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively, and can be constrained by application requirements, service requirements, implementation choices, etc. Therefore, the capabilities indicated in the CL and CLR message are the enabled capabilities, which may be equal to or a subset of the set of capabilities supported by the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively. In any case, the MS message (and all subsequent initialization messages) shall account for all capability restrictions indicated in the CL and CLR messages.

8.13.2.1 Handshake – ATU-C

The detailed procedures for handshake at the ATU-C are defined in [ITU-T G.994.1]. An ATU-C, after power-up or on conditions shown in Figure D.1, shall enter the initial C-SILENT1 state (waiting for the ITU-T G.994.1 R-TONES-REQ signal). The ATU-C may transition to C-INIT/HS state (to send ITU-T G.994.1 C-TONES signal) under instruction from the network. From either state, operation shall proceed according to the procedures defined in [ITU-T G.994.1].

If ITU-T G.994.1 procedures select this Recommendation as the mode of operation, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-QUIET1 state (see Figure 8-26) at the conclusion of ITU-T G.994.1 operation. All subsequent signals shall be transmitted using PSD levels as defined in the remainder of this clause.

8.13.2.1.1 CL messages

An ATU-C wishing to indicate ITU-T G.992.3 capabilities in an ITU-T G.994.1 CL message shall do so by setting to ONE at least one of the standard information field {SPar(1)} ITU-T G.992.3 bits as defined in Table 11.0.2 of [ITU-T G.994.1]. For each ITU-T G.992.3 {SPar(1)} bit set to ONE, a corresponding {Par(2)} field shall also be present (see clause 9.4 of [ITU-T G.994.1]). The ITU-T G.994.1 CL message {Par(2)} fields corresponding to the {SPar(1)} bits are defined in Table 8-20.

Table 8-20 – ATU-C CL message Par(2) PMD bit definitions

NPar(2) bit	Definition
Tones 1 to 32	Applies to ISDN-related service options only (see annexes).
Diagnostics mode	When set to 1, indicates the ATU-C wants to enter diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15). When set to 0, indicates the ATU-C wants to enter initialization (see clause 8.13).
Short initialization	When set to 1, indicates the ATU-C supports the short initialization (see clause 8.14). When set to 0, indicates the ATU-C does not support the short initialization.
Support of downstream virtual noise	When set to 1, indicates that the ATU-C supports the use of the downstream virtual noise mechanism, and SNRM_MODEds = 2 When set to 0, indicates that the ATU-C does not support the use of the downstream virtual noise mechanism, or SNRM_MODEds = 1.

Table 8-20 – ATU-C CL message Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Spectrum bounds upstream	A parameter block indicating the nominal transmit PSD level, the maximum transmit PSD level and the maximum aggregate transmit power. The parameter block length shall be 6 octets. Codepoints shall be structured as: • Nominal transmit PSD level (*NOMPSD*) shall be represented as a 9-bit 2's-complement signed value in 0.1 dB steps, –25.6 to +25.5 dB, relative to the value defined in the applicable annex for the selected service option, and shall be coded in bits 3 down to 1 in octet 1, bits 6 down to 1 in octet 2. • Maximum nominal transmit PSD level (*MAXNOMPSD*) shall be represented as a 9-bit 2's-complement signed value in 0.1 dB steps, –25.6 to +25.5 dB, relative to the value defined in the applicable annex for the selected service option, and shall be coded in bits 3 down to 1 in octet 3, bits 6 down to 1 in octet 4. • Maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (*MAXNOMATP*) shall be represented as a 9-bit 2's-complement signed value in 0.1 dB steps, –25.6 to 25.5 dB, relative to the value defined for the applicable annex for the selected service option, and shall be coded in bits 3 down to 1 in octet 5, bits 6 down to 1 in octet 6.
Spectrum shaping upstream	A parameter block of pairs of a subcarrier index and the spectrum shaping log_tss_i value at that subcarrier. Pairs shall be transmitted in ascending subcarrier index order. Each pair shall be represented as 4 octets. The parameter block length shall be a multiple of 4 octets. Codepoints shall be structured as: • The subcarrier index shall be a 9-bit unsigned value, indicating subcarrier index 1 to 2 × *NSCus* – 1, coded in bits 3 and 1 in octet 1, bits 6 down to 1 in octet 2; • The indication whether the subcarrier is included in the SUPPORTEDset (indication set to 1) or not included in the SUPPORTEDset (indication set to 0). This indication is coded in bit 6 of octet 3; • The spectrum shaping log_tss_i values shall be represented in logarithmic scale as a 7-bit unsigned value in –0.5 dB steps, ranging from 0 dB (value 0) to –62.5 dB (value 125), coded in bit 1 of octet 3 and bits 6 down to 1 in octet 4. Value 127 is a special value, indicating the subcarrier is not transmitted (i.e., $tss_i = 0$ in linear scale). Value 126 is a special value indicating that the log_tss_i value on this subcarrier shall be interpolated according to clause 8.13.2.4. At least one pair (of a subcarrier index and the spectrum shaping log_tss_i value at that subcarrier) indicated as included in the SUPPORTEDset, shall have the log_tss_i value set to 0 dB.
Spectrum bounds downstream	Parameter block with same definition and structure as spectrum bounds upstream.
Spectrum shaping downstream	Parameter block with same definition and structure as spectrum shaping upstream (with breakpoint frequencies indicating subcarrier index 1 to 2 × *NSCds* – 1).

Table 8-20 – ATU-C CL message Par(2) PMD bit definitions

Transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency	A parameter block indicating the type of the transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency. The parameter block shall consist of a single octet. Codepoints shall be structured as bits 6 to 3 indicating the *N* value and bits 2 and 1 indicating the definition of the transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency (see clause 8.8.2). The coding shall be as follows: • $(b_6b_5b_4b_3) = n$, with $1 \leq n \leq 15$ indicates that $N = 2^n$. • $(b_6b_5b_4b3) = 0$ indicates that *N* is not a power of 2. • $(b_2b_1 = 01)$: Complex conjugate of the base-band signal. • $(b_2b_1 = 10)$: Zero filled. • $(b_2b_1 = 00)$: Other (none of the above). • $(b_2b_1 = 11)$: Reserved.
Number of breakpoints for downstream virtual noise PSD	A one-octet parameter block indicating the number of breakpoints for the downstream virtual noise PSD (range 2 to 16, coded in 5 bits, see clause 8.5.1.1.2). This Spar(2) bit shall be set to the same value as the NPar(2) 'support of downstream virtual noise' bit.

8.13.2.1.2 MS messages

An ATU-C selecting an ITU-T G.992.3 mode of operation in an ITU-T G.994.1 MS message shall do so by setting to ONE the appropriate standard information field {SPar(1)} ITU-T G.992.3 bits as defined in Table 11.0.2 of [ITU-T G.994.1]. For the ITU-T G.992.3 {SPar(1)} bit set to ONE, a corresponding {Par(2)} field shall also be present (see clause 9.4 of [ITU-T G.994.1]). The ITU-T G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields corresponding to the {SPar(1)} bit are defined in Table 8-21.

Table 8-21 – ATU-C MS message Par(2) PMD bit definitions

NPar(2) bit	Definition
Tones 1 to 32	Applies to ISDN-related service options only (see annexes).
Diagnostics mode	Set to 1 if the CL or the CLR message have this bit set to 1. When set to 1, indicates both ATUs shall enter diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15). When set to 0, indicates both ATUs shall enter initialization (see clause 8.13).
Short initialization	Set to 1 if, and only if, this bit was set to 1 in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. When set to 1, indicates the ATUs may use the short initialization (see clause 8.14). When set to 0, indicates the ATUs shall not use the short initialization.
Support of downstream virtual noise	Set to 1 if, and only if, this bit was set to 1 in both the last previous CL and the last previous CLR message. When set to 1, indicates that the downstream virtual noise mechanism shall be used (see clause 8.5.1.1) and that the *NBPds* value shall be as indicated in the CL message. When set to 0, indicates that the downstream virtual noise mechanism shall not be used and that the *NBPds* value shall be set to 0.

The Spar(2) bits shall be set to 0. No Npar(3) parameters shall be included in the MS message.

8.13.2.2 Handshake – ATU-R

The detailed procedures for handshake at the ATU-R are defined in [ITU-T G.994.1]. An ATU-R, after power-up or on conditions shown in Figure D.2, shall enter the initial ITU-T G.994.1 state R-SILENT0. Upon command from the host controller, the ATU-R shall initiate handshaking by transitioning from the R-SILENT0 state to the ITU-T G.994.1 R-TONES-REQ state. Operation shall then proceed according to the procedures defined in [ITU-T G.994.1].

If ITU-T G.994.1 procedures select this Recommendation as the mode of operation, the ATU-R shall transition to state R-QUIET1 (see Figure 8-26) at the conclusion of ITU-T G.994.1 operation. All subsequent signals shall be transmitted using PSD levels as defined in the remainder of this clause.

8.13.2.2.1 CLR messages

An ATU-R wishing to indicate ITU-T G.992.3 capabilities in an ITU-T G.994.1 CLR message shall do so by setting to ONE at least one of the standard information field {SPar(1)} ITU-T G.992.3 bits as defined in Table 11.0.2 of [ITU-T G.994.1]. For each ITU-T G.992.3 {SPar(1)} bit set to ONE, a corresponding {Par(2)} field shall also be present (see clause 9.4 of [ITU-T G.994.1]). The ITU-T G.994.1 CLR message {Par(2)} fields corresponding to the {SPar(1)} bits are defined in Table 8-22.

Table 8-22 – ATU-R CLR message Par(2) PMD bit definitions

NPar(2) bit	Definition
Tones 1 to 32	Applies to ISDN-related service options only (see annexes).
Diagnostics mode	When set to 1, indicates the ATU-R wants to enter diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15). When set to 0, indicates the ATU-R wants to enter initialization (see clause 8.13).
Short initialization	When set to 1, indicates the ATU-R supports the short initialization (see clause 8.14). When set to 0, indicates the ATU-R does not support the short initialization.
Support of downstream virtual noise	When set to 1, indicates that the ATU-R supports the use of the downstream virtual noise mechanism. When set to 0, indicates that the ATU-R does not support the use of the downstream virtual noise mechanism.
SPar(2) bit	**Definition of related Npar(3) bits**
Spectrum bounds upstream	Parameter block with same definition and structure as spectrum bounds upstream parameter block in CL message.
Spectrum shaping upstream	Parameter block with same definition and structure as spectrum shaping upstream parameter block in CL message.
Spectrum bounds downstream	Parameter block shall not be included. This SPar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Spectrum shaping downstream	Parameter block shall not be included. This SPar(2) bit shall be set to 0.
Transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency	Parameter block with same definition and structure as transmit signal images above the Nyquist frequency parameter block in CL message.
Number of breakpoints for downstream virtual noise PSD	Parameter block shall not be included. This SPar(2) bit shall be set to 0.

8.13.2.2.2 MS messages

An ATU-R selecting an ITU-T G.992.3 mode of operation in an ITU-T G.994.1 MS message shall do so by setting to ONE the appropriate standard information field {SPar(1)} ITU-T G.992.3 bits as defined in Table 11.0.2 of [ITU-T G.994.1]. For the ITU-T G.992.3 {SPar(1)} bit set to ONE, a corresponding {Par(2)} field shall also be present (see clause 9.4 of [ITU-T G.994.1]). The

ITU-T G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields corresponding to the {SPar(1)} bit are defined in Table 8-23.

If the ATU-R transmits an MP message (as defined in clause 7.5 of [ITU-T G.994.1]), the format of the MP message shall be the same as the format of the MS message defined in Table 8-23.

Table 8-23 – ATU-R MS message Par(2) PMD bit definitions

NPar(2) bit	Definition
Tones 1 to 32	Applies to ISDN-related service options only (see annexes).
Diagnostics mode	Set to 1 if the CL or the CLR message have this bit set to 1. When set to 1, indicates both ATUs shall enter diagnostics mode (see clause 8.15). When set to 0, indicates both ATUs shall enter initialization (see clause 8.13).
Short initialization	Set to 1 if, and only if, this bit was set to 1 in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. When set to 1, indicates the ATUs may use the short initialization (see clause 8.14). When set to 0, indicates the ATUs shall not use the short initialization.
Support of downstream virtual noise	Set to 1 if, and only if, this bit was set to 1 in both the last previous CL and the last previous CLR message. When set to 1, indicates that the downstream virtual noise mechanism shall be used (see clause 8.5.1.1) and that the *NBPds* value shall be as indicated in the CL message. When set to 0, indicates that the downstream virtual noise mechanism shall not be used and that the *NBPds* value shall be set to 0.

The Spar(2) bits shall be set to 0. No Npar(3) parameters shall be included in the MS message.

8.13.2.3 ITU-T G.994.1 transmit PSD levels

When the ATU's transition to ITU-T G.994.1 procedures is invoked outside of this Recommendation, or in order to change modes of operation, the transmit PSD levels shall be as specified in [ITU-T G.994.1]. When the ITU-T G.994.1 procedures are invoked from the procedures described in this Recommendation, the transmit PSD levels shall be applied as specified in Table 8-24.

Table 8-24 – G.994.1 transmit PSD levels

Prior ITU-T G.992.3 state	Transmit PSD level
None (ITU-T G.994.1 invoked from outside this Recommendation)	See [ITU-T G.994.1].
All states in this Recommendation	At or below the nominal transmit PSD level defined in applicable annex for the chosen service option (i.e., at or below the *NOMPSD* level, as indicated in [ITU-T G.994.1], or explicitly or implicitly through the default value, see clause 8.13.2.4).

The transmit PSD level at which the ITU-T G.994.1 signals are transmitted may be indicated in the ITU-T G.994.1 CL, CLR or MS message identification field (see Table 9.0.1 of [ITU-T G.994.1]).

8.13.2.4 Spectral bounds and shaping parameters

The CLR message may include an upstream spectrum bounds parameter block and shall not include a downstream spectrum bounds parameter block. The CL message may include a downstream spectrum bounds parameter block and may include an upstream spectrum bounds parameter block. The MS message shall not include an upstream nor a downstream spectrum bounds parameter block.

If a spectrum bounds parameter block is not included in the CL message, the downstream spectrum bounds as defined in the corresponding annex for the chosen service option shall apply.

If a spectrum bounds parameter block is not included in the CLR message, the upstream spectrum bounds as defined in the corresponding annex for the chosen service option shall apply.

If a spectrum bounds parameter block is included in the CL or CLR message, the *NOMPSD* level shall be no higher than the *MAXNOMPSD* level.

The CLR message may include an upstream spectrum shaping parameter block and shall not include a downstream spectrum shaping parameter block. The CL message may include a downstream spectrum shaping parameter block and may include an upstream spectrum shaping parameter block. The MS message shall not include an upstream nor a downstream spectrum shaping parameter block.

If a spectrum shaping parameter block is not included in the CL or CLR message, no spectral shaping shall be applied. In this case, tss_i values shall be equal to 1 for all subcarriers, index 1 to $2 \times NSC - 1$ and the SUPPORTEDset shall contain all subcarriers with index $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$.

If no CLR/CL exchange transaction is included in the ITU-T G.994.1 session, the spectrum shaping indicated in the last previous CLR/CL exchange shall apply (i.e., the downstream tss_i values contained in the last previous CL message and the upstream tss_i values contained in the last previous CLR message shall be applied). Additionally, if no CLR/CL exchange transaction is included in the ITU-T G.994.1 session, the spectrum bounds indicated in the last previous CLR/CL exchange shall apply (i.e., the downstream bounds *MAXNOMPSDds*, *NOMPSDds* and *MAXNOMATPds* contained in the last previous CL message and the upstream bounds *MAXNOMPSDus*, *NOMPSDus* and *MAXNOMATPu s* contained in the last previous CLR message shall be applied).

The spectral shaping for each subcarrier i (tss_i) shall be defined in function of the frequency breakpoints associated to spectral shaping values different from the reserved values 126, exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase for all subcarriers, index 1 to $2 \times NSC - 1$, as:

- The spectral shaping (log_tss_i, dB value) of the lowest breakpoint frequency with a spectral shaping value different from 126 if the subcarrier is below this breakpoint frequency (i.e., flat extension to lower frequencies);
- The spectral shaping (log_tss_i, dB value) of the highest breakpoint frequency with a spectral shaping value different from 126 if the subcarrier is above this breakpoint frequency (i.e., flat extension to higher frequencies);
- Otherwise interpolated between spectral shaping of the lower and higher breakpoint frequency associated to shaping value different from 126 with linear relationship between the spectral shaping (log_tss_i, dB value) and linear frequencies (Hz) (i.e., interpolation with constant dB/Hz slope). If the spectral shaping value of the lower or higher breakpoint frequency is 127, the interpolated tss_i is 0 for this subcarrier.

NOTE 1 – The special log_tss_i value of 126 is used to indicate that the breakpoint is only used for the definition of the SUPPORTEDset, and not for the definition of the log_tss_i values.

The indication (logical 0 or 1) for each subcarrier i, whether the subcarrier is in the SUPPORTEDset or not, shall be defined in function of the indications exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, for all subcarriers, index 1 to $NSC - 1$, as:

- The indication of the lowest breakpoint frequency if the subcarrier is at or below the lowest breakpoint frequency.
- The indication of the highest breakpoint frequency if the subcarrier is at or above the highest breakpoint frequency.

• Otherwise, the logical AND of the indications of the lower and higher breakpoint frequency.

Subcarriers with index in the range *NSC* to 2 × *NSC* – 1 shall not be included in the SUPPORTEDset. The above definition of log_tss_i and SUPPORTEDset indication for subcarriers not included in [ITU-T G.994.1], is illustrated in Figure 8-24.

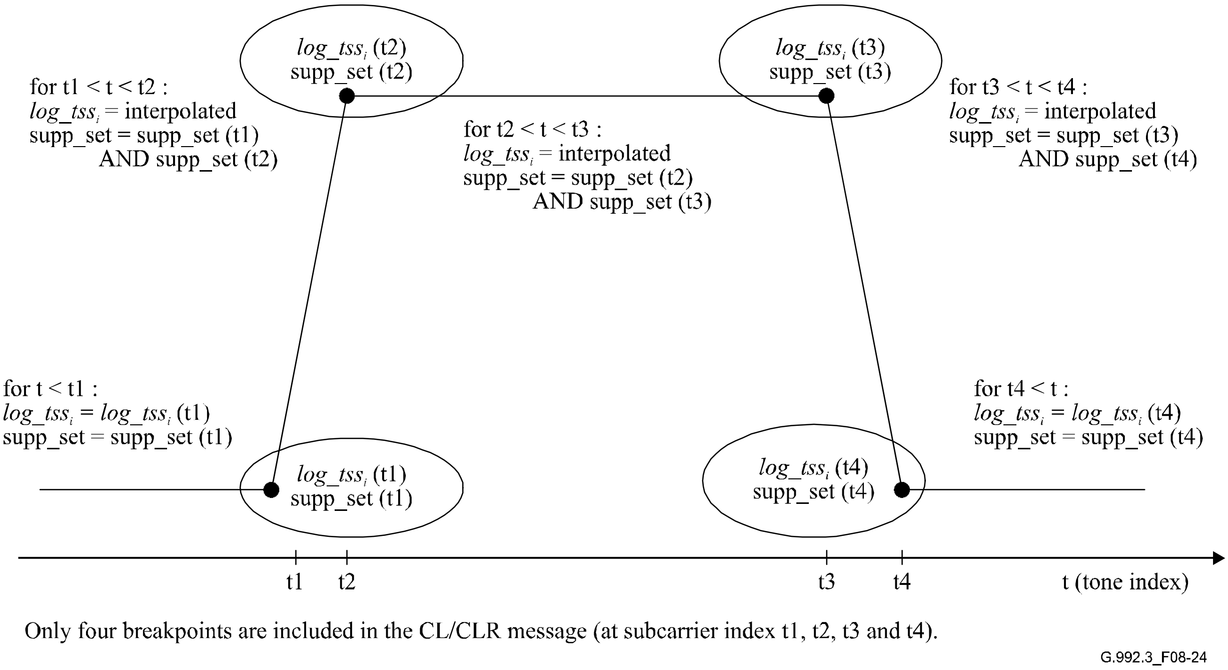


Figure 8-24 – Illustration of the interpolation of *log_tss*$_i$ and SUPPORTEDset indications

The spectral shaping values shall be converted from logarithmic scale (log_tss_i, dB values) to linear tss_i values according to:

$$tss_i = \frac{\mathrm{Round}\left(1024 \times 10^{\frac{log\_tss_i}{20}}\right)}{1024}$$

The combined accuracy of the process of the linear interpolation of log_tss_i values and the process of conversion to linear tss_i values shall be strictly less than one half LSB of the 10 bits after the decimal point format of the linear tss_i values. No error shall be introduced when log_tss_i equals 0 dB or is interpolated between log_tss_i values which equal 0 dB.

NOTE 2 – This ensures that the maximum deviation between tss_i values used by the transmitter and receiver is one LSB.

NOTE 3 – It should be remarked that the accuracy is specified as strictly <1/2 LSB. An accuracy of =1/2 LSB, will lead to inaccurate results.

The information represented in the spectrum shaping block shall be defined as follows:

• The CLR upstream spectrum shaping parameter block shall represent the spectrum shaping tss_i values for each upstream subcarrier. The format of the upstream spectrum shaping parameter block is defined in Table 8-22. The spectrum shaping tss_i values shall be used for all initialization signals as defined in Table 8-25. The upstream SUPPORTEDset is defined as the set of subcarriers with index $1 \leq i \leq NSCus - 1$, which the ATU-R intends to transmit during channel analysis. The ATU-R shall indicate in the CLR message which subcarriers are included in the SUPPORTEDset, as defined in Table 8-22. For the subcarriers in the upstream SUPPORTEDset, tss_i values shall be equal to 1 ($log\_tss_i = 0$ dB, i.e., no spectrum shaping). For the subcarriers not in the upstream SUPPORTEDset, tss_i values shall be less than or equal to 1 ($log\_tss_i \leq 0$ dB) and equal to or higher than the minimum values derived from equation 8-1. The ATU-R may reduce the number of subcarriers it intends to transmit during channel analysis to aid in the conservation of spectrum.

- The CL downstream spectrum shaping parameter block shall represent the spectrum shaping tss_i values for each downstream subcarrier. The format of the downstream spectrum shaping parameter block is defined in Table 8-20. The spectrum shaping tss_i values shall be used for all initialization signals as defined in Table 8-25. The downstream SUPPORTEDset is defined as the set of subcarriers with index $1 \leq i \leq NSCds - 1$, which the ATU-C intends to transmit during channel analysis. The ATU-C shall indicate in the CL message which subcarriers are included in the downstream SUPPORTEDset, as defined in Table 8-20. For the subcarriers in the downstream SUPPORTEDset, tss_i values shall be in the 0 to 1 range (i.e., spectrum shaping allowed). For the subcarriers not in the downstream SUPPORTEDset, tss_i values shall be less than or equal to 1 ($log\_tss_i \leq 0$ dB) and equal to or higher than the minimum values derived from equation 8-1. The ATU-C may reduce the number of subcarriers it intends to transmit during channel analysis to aid in the conservation of spectrum.
- The CL upstream spectrum shaping parameter block shall represent which subcarriers the ATU-R may include in the upstream SUPPORTEDset (SUPPORTEDset indication set to 1 and tss_i value equal to 1 in linear scale) and which subcarriers the ATU-R shall not include in the upstream SUPPORTEDset (SUPPORTEDset indication set to 0 and tss_i value equal to 0 in linear scale). The format of the upstream spectrum shaping parameter block is defined in Table 8-20 (see Note 2).

$$S(i \cdot \Delta f) \leq tss_i^2 \leq 1, \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq 2 \times NSC - 1 \qquad (8\text{-}1)$$

where

$$S(f) = \sum_n S_b\left(f - n \cdot \left(\frac{N}{NSC} \right) \cdot f_s \right)$$

$$S_b(f) = \sum_{k \in SUPPORTEDset} tss_k^2 \times \left(W^2(f - k \cdot \Delta f) + W^2(f + k \cdot \Delta f) \right)$$

(N/NSC) is the IDFT oversampling factor, with N and NSC as defined in clause 8.8.2

Δf is the subcarrier frequency spacing, i.e., = 4.3125 kHz (see clause 8.8.1)

f_s is the sampling frequency, i.e., $2 \times NSC \times \Delta f$ (see clause 8.8.1.3)

$W^2(f)$ is the Fourier transform of the autocorrelation function of a rectangular window, defined as:

$$W^2(f) = \frac{17}{16} \times \text{sinc}^2\left(\frac{f}{(16/17) \cdot \Delta f} \right)$$

NOTE 4 – The scale factor applied in $W^2(f)$ is to make the integral of $W^2(f)$ equal unity.

Figure 8-25 shows an example of the downstream tss_i values as a function of the subcarrier index i, for the case that the SUPPORTEDset contains the subcarriers with index $i = 40$ to 200 and $N = 2 \times NSC = 512$ (oversampled IDFT). At frequencies $i \times \Delta f$, with $40 \leq i \leq 200$ and $\Delta f = 4.3125$ kHz, the tss_i value equals 1 (0 dB).

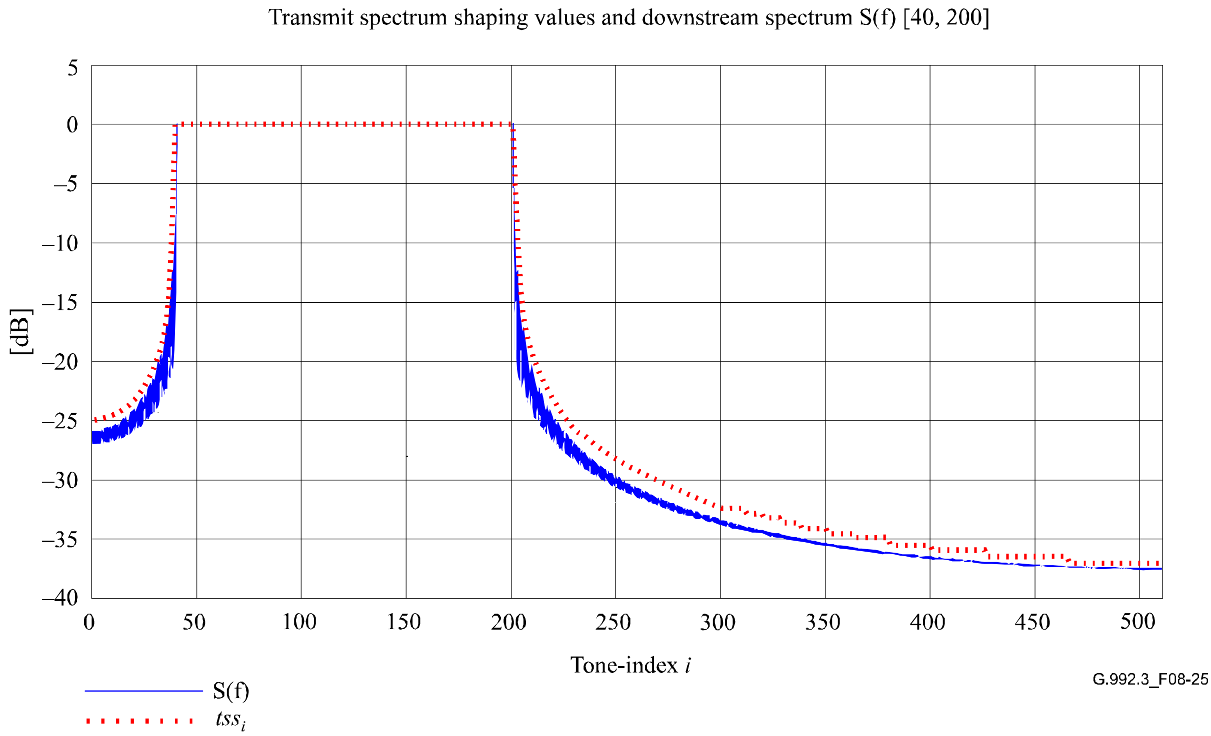


Figure 8-25 – Example of the downstream *log_tss$_i$* values (in dB) as a function of the subcarrier index

The CLR message is sent before the CL message. Therefore, at the time the ATU-R sends the CLR message, the ATU-R is not aware of restrictions contained in the CO-MIB applying to the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameter blocks. These restrictions are contained in the CL message, which the ATU-C sends in response to the CLR message. Therefore, after the ATU-R sends the ACK message to terminate the CLR/CL exchange transaction, the ATU-R shall verify consistency of CL and CLR messages as follows:

- The *NOMPSDus*, *MAXNOMPSDus* and *MAXNOMATPus* levels in the CLR message shall be no higher than the corresponding levels in the CL message.
- All subcarriers indicated in the CLR message as being included in the upstream SUPPORTEDset shall be indicated in the CL message as subcarriers which the ATU-R may include in the upstream SUPPORTEDset.

If the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters contained in the CLR and CL message are found to be consistent, the ATU-R shall apply spectrum bounds and shaping as contained in the CLR message. Otherwise, if the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters contained in the CLR and CL message are found to be inconsistent, then the ATU-R shall do either of the following:

- The ATU-R sends an MS message indicating that it is not prepared to select a mode at this time (according to clause 10.1.1 of [ITU-T G.994.1]). After termination of the ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R calculates new upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters offline, taking into account the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters specified by the ATU-C in the CL message of the previous ITU-T G.994.1 session. In a subsequent ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R sends a CLR message including the new spectrum bounds and shaping parameters.
- The ATU-R calculates new upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters on-line, taking into account the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters specified by the ATU-C in the CL message of the previous ITU-T G.994.1 session. In the same ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R repeats the CLR/CL exchange transaction with a CLR message including the new spectrum bounds and shaping parameters.

NOTE 5 – For the downstream direction, the CO-MIB contains a per-subcarrier indication whether the subcarrier is or is not allowed to be sent starting from the initialization channel analysis phase. From this information, and taking into account its own capabilities, the ATU-C selects the downstream SUPPORTEDset of subcarriers and computes the CL downstream spectrum shaping parameter block information.

NOTE 6 – For the upstream direction, the CO-MIB contains a per-subcarrier indication whether the subcarrier is or is not allowed to be sent starting from the initialization channel analysis phase. This information is conveyed to the ATU-R in the CL upstream spectrum shaping parameter block (through SUPPORTEDset indications and only using tss_i values 0 and 1 in linear scale). From this information, and taking into account its own capabilities, the ATU-R selects the upstream SUPPORTEDset of subcarriers and computes the CLR upstream spectrum shaping parameter block information.

NOTE 7 – With the tss_i values contained in the different spectrum shaping blocks, the ATU indicates which subcarriers the ATU intends to transmit (subcarriers in the SUPPORTEDset) and which ones the ATU does not intend to transmit (subcarriers not in the SUPPORTEDset) during channel analysis for both the upstream and downstream directions. This is needed to make sure the ATU-R can select a C-TREF pilot tone which will be transmitted starting from the channel analysis phase. This also facilitates the selection by the PMD receive function of unused subcarriers for SNR monitoring and the selection of subcarriers to modulate the PARAMS messages.

During the channel discovery phase, the receive PMD function may include the *BLACKOUT* bits (i.e., $BLACKOUT_i$ for $i = 1$ to $NSC - 1$) in the MSG-PCB message. These contain a per-subcarrier indication of whether the subcarrier may ($BLACKOUT_i = 0$) and which subcarriers shall not ($BLACKOUT_i = 1$) be transmitted by the transmit PMD function during initialization, starting from the transceiver training phase (see Table 8-25). The downstream *BLACKOUT*set is defined as the set of downstream subcarriers the ATU-R has indicated for blackout. The upstream *BLACKOUT*set is defined as the set of upstream subcarriers the ATU-C has indicated for blackout.

If the *BLACKOUT* bits are not included in the MSG-PCB message and the initialization contains an ITU-T G.994.1 phase, the transmit PMD function shall assume all *BLACKOUT* bits are set to 0. If the *BLACKOUT* bits are not included in the MSG-PCB message and the initialization does not contains an ITU-T G.994.1 phase, the transmit PMD function shall assume the *BLACKOUT* bits conveyed in the last previous MSG-PCB message are still valid.

Disabling of subchannels during initialization and showtime allows the receive PMD function to estimate the characteristics of the RFI ingress signals. Based on these estimates, a receive PMD function can perform adaptive signal processing algorithms for RFI ingress cancellation and/or mitigation with the goal of providing improved performance in the presence of RFI ingress.

The downstream MEDLEYset is defined as the set of subcarriers contained in the downstream SUPPORTEDset, with removal of the subcarriers contained in the downstream *BLACKOUT*set. The upstream MEDLEYset is defined as the set of subcarriers contained in the upstream SUPPORTEDset, with removal of the subcarriers contained in the upstream *BLACKOUT*set.

The initialization symbols encoder is the concatenation of first the constellation mapping, and second the spectral shaping and subcarrier blackout for symbols transmitted during the initialization phase. The constellation mapping defines the X_i and Y_i values for the channel discovery, transceiver training, channel analysis and exchange phases of initialization (see clauses 8.13.3, 8.13.4, 8.13.5 and 8.13.6, respectively) for subcarriers $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$.

The spectrum shaping and subcarrier blackout shall be applied to all subcarriers in the various initialization phases as defined in Table 8-25.

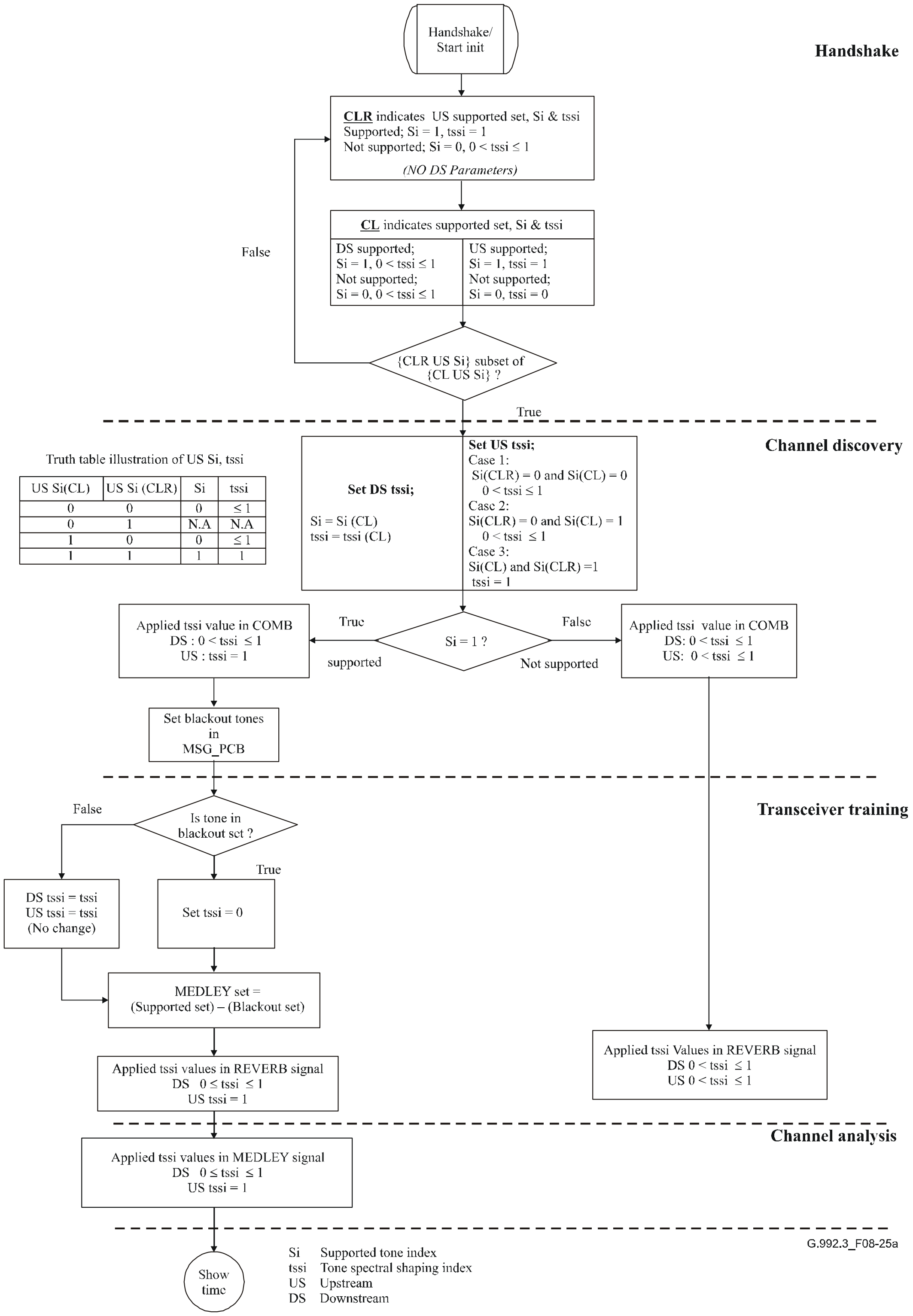
The values Z_i (for $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSC - 1$) are input to the modulation function (see Figure 8-5). The Z_i values for subcarrier index $i \geq \mathrm{MIN}(N, 2 \times NSC)$ are effectively ignored. The Z_i values for subcarrier index $i = NSC$ to $\mathrm{MIN}(N, 2 \times NSC) - 1$ are used by the modulation function only during transceiver training and only if an oversampled IDFT is used with zero fill (see clause 8.8.2). Otherwise, these values are effectively ignored.

Table 8-25 – Application of spectrum shaping and subcarrier blackout during initialization

Initialization phase	Spectrum shaping and subcarrier blackout application
ITU-T G.994.1 phase (clause 8.13.2)	No spectrum shaping and no blackout applied
Channel discovery (clause 8.13.3)	$Z_i = tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$ No blackout applied Non-zero $(X_i + jY_i)$ shall be scaled to the *NOMPSD* level
Transceiver training (clause 8.13.4)	$Z_i = tssi \times (X_i + jY_i)$ if $BLACKOUT_i = 0$ $Z_i = 0$ if $BLACKOUT_i = 1$ Non-zero $(X_i + jY_i)$ shall be scaled to the *REFPSD* level
Channel analysis (clause 8.13.5)	$Z_i = tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$ if subcarrier in MEDLEYset $Z_i = 0$ if subcarrier not in MEDLEYset Non-zero $(X_i + jY_i)$ shall be scaled to the *REFPSD* level
Exchange (clause 8.13.6)	$Z_i = tss_i \times (X_i + jY_i)$ if subcarrier in MEDLEYset $Z_i = 0$ if subcarrier not in MEDLEYset Non-zero $(X_i + jY_i)$ shall be scaled to the *REFPSD* level

In the downstream direction, the tss_i values applied to the subcarriers in the MEDLEYset during the channel analysis and exchange phases shall be in the 0 to 1 range. In the upstream direction, these tss_i values shall be equal to 1.

Figure 8-25a illustrates the flowchart for the implementation of the tss_i values.



NOTE – For the operating modes according to Annexes J and M, if the ITU-T G.994.1 MS message has the Npar(2) PSD_Shape_support bit set to 1, then the downstream tss_i value restrictions shown in this figure shall also apply to the upstream tss_i values. The upstream tss_i value restrictions shown in this figure shall not apply.

Figure 8-25a – Flowchart for implementation of tss_i values

8.13.3 Channel discovery phase

The ATU-x may perform a coarse timing recovery, channel probing and power cutback in this phase. The ATU-x may perform a line probe to determine a cutback based on hook status. The ATU-R can also identify a subcarrier suitable for timing reference during transceiver training.

8.13.3.1 ATU-C channel discovery

The reference clock of the ATU-C transmit PMD function shall not change during and after the channel discovery phase. However, the reference clock used during the channel discovery phase may be different from the reference clock used during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase.

In the channel discovery phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with X_i and Y_i non-zero) shall be transmitted at the nominal transmit PSD (*NOMPSDds*) level including spectral shaping.

8.13.3.1.1 C-QUIET1

Upon the ATU-C terminating the ITU-T G.994.1 session (see clause 11.3 of [ITU-T G.994.1]), the ATU-C shall transition to the C-QUIET1 state.

The C-QUIET1 state is of variable length. In the C-QUIET1 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 512 and a maximum of 4204 C-QUIET symbols. The minimum duration of the C-QUIET1 state allows for a quiet line noise PSD measurement period of at least 512 symbols (see clause 8.12.3.2).

A C-QUIET symbol shall be defined as a zero output voltage at the U-C2 reference point (see reference model in clause 5.4). All subcarriers in the C-QUIET symbol shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The ATU-C may transition to the C-QUIET1 state before or after the ATU-R transitions to the R-QUIET1 state. If the ATU-C transitions first, the ATU-C shall remain in the C-QUIET1 state until after the ATU-R transitions to the R-QUIET1 state. Within 512 to 2048 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET1 state or the ATU-R transitioning to the R-QUIET1 state (whichever occurs later), the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-QUIET1 state shall be followed by the C-COMB1 state.

NOTE – The maximum duration of the C-QUIET1 state corresponds to 500 ms difference between the ATU-C and the ATU-R terminating the ITU-T G.994.1 phase (4312/2 symbols) plus 2048 symbols for ATU-C transition from the ITU-T G.994.1 to the channel discovery phase.

8.13.3.1.2 C-COMB1

The duration of the C-COMB1 state is of fixed length. In the C-COMB1 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 128 C-COMB symbols.

During this state, the ATU-R performs timing recovery and measures some characteristics of the downstream channel for C-TREF pilot tone selection and for the estimation of the required ATU-R minimum upstream power cutback and ATU-R minimum downstream power cutback. These functions can be continued during C-COMB2.

The C-COMB symbol shall be defined as a wideband multi-tone symbol containing the 16 subcarriers with index 11, 23, 35, 47, 59, 64, 71, 83, 95, 107, 119, 143, 179, 203, 227 and 251. The subcarrier spacing has been selected to minimize audible interference into the POTS band prior to applying cutbacks that may be required in the presence of an off-hook POTS terminal and to limit aggregate transmit power to 8.4 dBm (i.e., the 12 dB power cutback level).

The subcarriers contained in the C-COMB symbol shall modulate the same data bits that are used for the C-REVERB symbols, in such a way that same subcarrier indices modulate the same data bits with the same 4-QAM constellation, as defined in clause 8.13.4.1.1. The subcarriers not contained in the C-COMB symbol shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The C-COMB1 state shall be followed by the C-QUIET2 state.

8.13.3.1.3 C-QUIET2

The C-QUIET2 state is of fixed duration. During the C-QUIET2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 256 C-QUIET symbols.

The C-QUIET2 state shall be followed by the C-COMB2 state.

8.13.3.1.4 C-COMB2

The C-COMB2 state is of fixed length. During the C-COMB2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_C-COMB2* C-COMB symbols. Whenever the initialization is invoked from showtime as a fast error recovery procedure (see clause 8.14), the value *LEN_C-COMB2* shall be set to 1024 symbols. The value *LEN_C-COMB2* shall be set to either 1024 or 3872 symbols otherwise.

During C-COMB2, the ATU-R performs timing recovery and measures some characteristics of the downstream channel for C-TREF pilot tone selection and for the estimation of the required ATU-R minimum upstream power cutback and ATU-R minimum downstream power cutback.

The C-COMB2 state shall be followed by the C-ICOMB1 state if the ATU-C desires to use the C-LINEPROBE state. Otherwise the C-COMB2 state shall be followed by the C-QUIET3 state.

8.13.3.1.5 C-ICOMB1

The C-ICOMB1 state is of fixed length. In the C-ICOMB1 state, the ATU-C shall transmit ten C-ICOMB symbols.

A C-ICOMB symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of a C-COMB symbol (i.e., a C-ICOMB symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The C-ICOMB1 state shall be followed by the C-LINEPROBE state.

8.13.3.1.6 C-LINEPROBE

The C-LINEPROBE state is of fixed length. In the C-LINEPROBE state, the ATU-C shall transmit a vendor-discretionary signal with a duration of 512 symbol periods.

The C-LINEPROBE state shall be followed by the C-QUIET3 state.

8.13.3.1.7 C-QUIET3

The C-QUIET3 state is of variable length. In the C-QUIET3 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 256 and a maximum of 906 C-QUIET symbols. The ATU-C may do an upstream channel attenuation measurement during this state (while the ATU-R is in the R-COMB2 state).

The ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-QUIET3 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-QUIET3 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-QUIET3 state shall be followed by the C-COMB3 state.

8.13.3.1.8 C-COMB3

The C-COMB3 state is of fixed length. In the C-COMB3 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 64 C-COMB symbols.

The C-COMB3 state shall be followed by the C-ICOMB2 state. The transition to the C-ICOMB2 state provides a time marker for the C-MSG-FMT state.

8.13.3.1.9 C-ICOMB2

The C-ICOMB2 state is of fixed length. In the C-ICOMB2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit ten C-ICOMB symbols.

The C-ICOMB2 state shall be followed by the C-MSG-FMT state.

8.13.3.1.10 C-MSG-FMT

The C-MSG-FMT state is of fixed length. In the C-MSG-FMT state, the ATU-C shall transmit 96 symbols of C-COMB or C-ICOMB to modulate the C-MSG-FMT message and CRC. The C-MSG-FMT message conveys information about the presence, format and length of subsequent ATU-C and ATU-R messages.

The C-MSG-FMT message m is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{15}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

Bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-26.

Table 8-26 – Bit definition for the C-MSG-FMT message

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
0	*FMT_R-REVERB1* (value 0 or 1)	Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-C requests an extended duration of the R-REVERB1 state. Set to 0 indicates it does not.
1		Reserved, set to 0.
2	*FMT_C-REVERB4* (value 0 or 1)	Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-C requests an extended duration of the C-REVERB4 state. Set to 0 indicates it does not.
7…3	*FMT_R-QUIET4* (value 0 to 31)	The (0 to 31) value mapped in these bits indicates the duration of the R-QUIET4 state. The MSB shall be mapped on the higher message bit index.
8	*FMT_C-MSG-PCB*	Set to 1 indicates that the C-MSG-PCB message shall include the C-BLACKOUT bits. Set to 0 indicates it shall not.
15…9		Reserved, set to 0.

The 16 bits m_0-m_{15} shall be transmitted in 48-symbol periods (m_0 first and m_{15} last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive C-COMB symbols. A one bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive C-ICOMB symbols.

After the C-MSG-FMT message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the 16 message m bits using the equation:

$$c(D) = a(D)D^{16} \text{modulo}\, g(D)$$

where:

$$a(D) = m_0 D^{15} + m_1 D^{14} \ldots + m_{15}$$

is the message polynomial formed from the 16 bits of the C-MSG-FMT message, with m_0 the least significant bit of the first octet of the C-MSG-FMT message;

$$g(D) = D^{16} + D^{12} + D^5 + 1$$

is the CRC generator polynomial, and:

$$c(D) = c_0 D^{15} + c_1 D^{14} \ldots\ldots + c_{14} D + c_{15}$$

is the CRC check polynomial.

The 16 bits c_0-c_{15} shall be transmitted in 48-symbol periods (c_0 first and c_{15} last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message m.

The C-MSG-FMT state shall be followed by the C-MSG-PCB state.

8.13.3.1.11 C-MSG-PCB

In each direction, the transmit power will be reduced by a power cutback which is the highest of the power cutback values determined by the ATU-R and the ATU-C. The ATU-C can consider its receiver dynamic range as determined by observing R-COMB2, the local line conditions determined by the optional C-LINEPROBE, and policy matters such as spectral limits when determining its cutback levels.

In order to provide non-reciprocal FEXT control, the ATU-C shall request an upstream transmit power cutback in the C-MSG-PCB message, such that the power received at the ATU-C is no higher than the maximum level indicated by MAXRXPWR as specified in the CO-MIB (see clause 8.5.1). The power received at the ATU-C shall be measured over three subcarriers: subcarriers 12, 18 and 24 for Annexes A and I and subcarriers 36, 42 and 48 for Annexes B and J.

NOTE 1 – The ATU-C should take into account the spectrum shaping on these subcarriers when determining the required upstream power cutback (PCBus) value.

The C-MSG-PCB state is of fixed length. In the C-MSG-PCB state, the ATU-C shall transmit 96+72 × *NBPds* or 96+3 × *NSCus*+72 × *NBPds* symbols of C-COMB or C-ICOMB to modulate the C-MSG-PCB message and CRC, depending on whether the C-BLACKOUT bits are included or not. The C-MSG-PCB message conveys the ATU-C-determined power cutback levels for both the upstream and downstream directions, the hook status as known by the ATU-C, the upstream BLACKOUT bits, and the *NBPds* breakpoints for the downstream virtual noise PSD (see clause 8.5.1.1.2).

The ATU-C shall indicate in the C-MSG-FMT message whether the C-MSG-PCB message includes the C-BLACKOUT bits or not. If the C-MSG-PCB does not include the C-BLACKOUT bits, the C-MSG-PCB message m is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{15+24\times NBPds}, \ \dots \ , m_0\},$$

and bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-27a.

Table 8-27a – Bit definition for the C-MSG-PCB message without BLACKOUT

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
5…0	*C-MIN_PCB_DS*	ATU-C minimum downstream power cutback (6 bit value with MSB in bit 5 and LSB in bit 0)
11…6	*C-MIN_PCB_US*	ATU-C minimum upstream power cutback (6 bit value with MSB in bit 11 and LSB in bit 6)
13…12	*HOOK_STATUS*	Hook status (2 bit value with MSB in bit 13 and LSB in bit 12)
15…14		Reserved, set to 0.
15+24×*NBPds*…16	*TXREFVNds*	*NBPds* breakpoints for downstream virtual noise PSD (24 bits per breakpoint, as defined in clause 8.5.1.1.2)

If the C-MSG-PCB includes the C-BLACKOUT bits, the C-MSG-PCB message, m, is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{15+NSCus+24\times NBPds}, \ \dots , m_0\},$$

and bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-27b.

Table 8-27b – Bit definition for the C-MSG-PCB message

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
5…0	*C-MIN_PCB_DS*	ATU-C minimum downstream power cutback (6 bit value with MSB in bit 5 and LSB in bit 0)
11…6	*C-MIN_PCB_US*	ATU-C minimum upstream power cutback (6 bit value with MSB in bit 11 and LSB in bit 6)
13…12	*HOOK_STATUS*	Hook status (2 bit value with MSB in bit 13 and LSB in bit 12)
15…14		Reserved, set to 0.
15 + *NSCus*…16	*C-BLACKOUT*	Blackout indication per subcarrier (subcarrier *NSCus* – 1 in bit 15 + *NSCus*, subcarrier 0 in bit 16). Bit 16 shall be set to 0 (i.e., no blackout of DC subcarrier).
15+*NSCus*+24×*NBPds* … 16 + *NSCus*	*TXREFVNds*	*NBPds* breakpoints for downstream virtual noise PSD (24 bits per breakpoint, as defined in clause 8.5.1.1.2)

The ATU-C minimum downstream power cutback level shall be coded as defined in Table 8-28.

Table 8-28 – ATU-C minimum downstream power cutback

Value (6 bits)	ATU-C minimum downstream power cutback (dB)
0	0
1	1
…	…
40	40
41-63	Reserved

The ATU-C minimum upstream power cutback level shall be coded as defined in Table 8-29.

Table 8-29 – ATU-C minimum upstream power cutback

Value (6 bits)	ATU-C minimum upstream power cutback (dB)
0	0
1	1
…	…
40	40
41-63	Reserved

The POTS hook status shall be coded as defined in Table 8-30. The hook state "unknown" is intended to be indicated by a device that normally indicates the on- or off-hook state. The state "not capable to detect" is intended to be indicated by a device that never indicates the on- or off-hook state (e.g., is not capable or disabled to detect the hook state).

Table 8-30 – Hook status

Value (2 bits)	Hook status
0	Unknown
1	On-hook
2	Off-hook
3	Not capable to detect

The POTS hook status shall be coded as "unknown" when operating without underlying service (i.e., Annexes I and J).

NOTE 2 – The POTS hook status may be indicated when operating with underlying service (i.e., Annexes A and B). In the case of Annex B, the ADSL signal allows for an underlying ISDN service; however, it may actually be operated with an underlying POTS service.

The C-BLACKOUT bits shall contain the C-BLACKOUT bit settings for each of the subcarriers 1 to $NSCus - 1$. The C-BLACKOUT bit set to 0 for a particular subcarrier indicates that the ATU-R shall transmit that subcarrier at the ATU-R reference transmit PSD level (*REFPDSus*) level, and including spectral shaping, for the remainder of initialization starting from the transceiver training phase. The C-BLACKOUT bit be set to 1 indicates that the ATU-R shall transmit no power ("blackout") on that subcarrier, for the remainder of initialization starting from the transceiver training phase.

A C-MSG-PCB message containing $16 + 24 \times NBPds$ bits $m_{15 + 24 \times NBPds} - m_0$ shall be transmitted in $48 + 72 \times NBPds$ symbol periods (m_0 first and $m_{15 + 24 \times NBPds}$ last). A C-MSG-PCB message containing $16 + NSCus + 24 \times NBPds$ bits $m_{15 + NSCus + 24 \times NBPds} - m_0$ shall be transmitted in $48 + 3 \times NSCus + 72 \times NBPds$ symbol periods (m_0 first and $m_{15 + NSCus + 24 \times NBPds}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive C-COMB symbols. A one bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive C-ICOMB symbols.

After the C-MSG-PCB message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed in the same way as for the C-MSG-FMT message.

The 16 bits c_0-c_{15} shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods (c_0 first and c_{15} last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message m.

The C-MSG-PCB state shall be followed by the C-QUIET4 state.

8.13.3.1.12 C-QUIET4

The C-QUIET4 state is of variable length. In the C-QUIET4 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 314 and a maximum of $474 + 3 \times NSCds$ C-QUIET symbols.

The ATU-C shall receive and decode the content of the messages R-MSG-FMT and R-MSG-PBC during this state.

The ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB1 state. Within 80 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB1 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-QUIET4 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB1 state.

8.13.3.2 ATU-R channel discovery

In the channel discovery phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with X_i and Y_i non-zero) shall be transmitted at the nominal transmit PSD (*NOMPSDus*) level including spectral shaping.

8.13.3.2.1 R-QUIET1

Upon the ATU-R terminating the ITU-T G.994.1 session (see clause 11.3 of [ITU-T G.994.1]), the ATU-R shall transition to the R-QUIET1 state.

The R-QUIET1 state is of variable length. In the R-QUIET state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 640 and a maximum of 4396 R-QUIET symbols. The minimum duration of the R-QUIET1 state allows for a quiet line noise PSD measurement period of at least 512 symbols (see clause 8.12.3.2). During this state, the ATU-R may do timing recovery and downstream channel measurements (while the ATU-C is in the C-COMB1 state).

An R-QUIET symbol shall be defined as a zero output voltage at the U-R2 reference point (see reference model in clause 5.4). All subcarriers in the R-QUIET symbol shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET2 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET2 state, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The R-QUIET1 state shall be followed by the R-COMB1 state.

NOTE – The maximum duration of the R-QUIET1 state corresponds to 500 ms difference between the ATU-C and the ATU-R terminating the ITU-T G.994.1 phase (4312/2 symbols) plus 2048 symbols allowing for ATU-R transition from the ITU-T G.994.1 to the channel discovery phase plus 128 symbols to receive C-COMB1 plus 64 symbols to transition to R-COMB1.

8.13.3.2.2 R-COMB1

The R-COMB1 state is of fixed length. In the R-COMB1 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 128 R-COMB symbols.

The R-COMB symbol shall be defined as a wideband multi-tone symbol containing all subcarriers with index being a multiple of 6 and in the 1 to $NSCus - 1$ range. The spacing has been selected to minimize audible interference into the POTS band prior to applying cutbacks that may be required in the presence of an off-hook POTS terminal.

The subcarriers contained in the R-COMB symbol shall modulate the same data bits that are used for the R-REVERB symbols in such a way that same subcarrier indices modulate the same data bits with the same 4-QAM constellation, as defined in clause 8.13.4.2.1. The subcarriers not contained in the R-COMB symbol shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The R-COMB1 state shall be followed by the R-QUIET2 state.

8.13.3.2.3 R-QUIET2

The R-QUIET2 state is of variable length. In the R-QUIET2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of ($64 + LEN\_C\text{-}COMB2$) and a maximum of ($714 + LEN\_C\text{-}COMB2$) R-QUIET symbols. The value *LEN_C-COMB2* is defined in clause 8.13.3.1.4.

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET3 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-QUIET3 state, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The ATU-R terminates the transmission of R-QUIET symbols under either of the two following conditions:

- The ATU-C makes a transition from the C-COMB2 to the C-QUIET3 state. In this case, within 64 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to C-QUIET3, the ATU-R transitions to the next state.

- The ATU-C makes a transition from the C-COMB2 to the C-ICOMB1 and C-LINEPROBE state. In this case, the ATU-R ignores the C-LINEPROBE signal and within 522 to 586 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to C-ICOMB1, the ATU-R transitions to the next state.

The R-QUIET2 state shall be followed by the R-COMB2 state.

8.13.3.2.4 R-COMB2

Before entering the R-COMB2 state, the ATU-R shall perform timing recovery. The clock frequency at the ATU-R transmitter at the beginning of the R-COMB2 state shall be within a 5 ppm accuracy from the clock frequency at the ATU-C transmitter. This is necessary as, while the ATU-R is in the R-COMB2 state, the ATU-C needs to perform an upstream channel estimation in order to properly detect the R-MSG-FMT and R-MSG-PCB state. This estimate may not be accurate enough when performed in the presence of coarse timing at the ATU-R transmitter.

The R-COMB2 state is of fixed length. In the R-COMB2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 256 R-COMB symbols. During this state, the ATU-C may measure some characteristics of the upstream channel as attenuation and noise power to be used to estimate the required ATU-C minimum upstream power cutback and ATU-C minimum downstream power cutback.

The R-COMB2 state shall be followed by the R-ICOMB1 state if the ATU-R desires to use the R-LINEPROBE state. Otherwise the R-COMB2 state shall be followed by the R-QUIET3 state.

8.13.3.2.5 R-ICOMB1

The R-ICOMB1 state is of fixed length. In the R-COMB1 state, the ATU-R shall transmit ten R-ICOMB symbols.

The R-ICOMB symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of an R-COMB symbol (i.e., an R-ICOMB symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The R-ICOMB1 state shall be followed by the R-LINEPROBE state.

8.13.3.2.6 R-LINEPROBE

The R-LINEPROBE state is of fixed length. In the R-LINEPROBE state, the ATU-R shall transmit a vendor-discretionary signal with a duration of 512 symbol periods.

The R-LINEPROBE state shall be followed by the R-COMB3 state.

8.13.3.2.7 R-QUIET3

The R-QUIET3 state is of variable length. In the R-QUIET3 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 266 and a maximum of $410 + 3 \times NSCus$ R-QUIET symbols.

The ATU-R shall receive and decode the content of the messages C-MSG-FMT and C-MSG-PBC during this state.

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-QUIET symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to C-QUIET4. Within 80 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to C-QUIET4, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The R-QUIET3 state shall be followed by the R-COMB3 state.

8.13.3.2.8 R-COMB3

The R-COMB3 state is of fixed length. In the R-COMB3 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 64 R-COMB symbols.

The R-COMB3 state shall be followed by the R-ICOMB2 state. The transition to the R-ICOMB2 state provides a time marker for the R-MSG-FMT and R-MSG-PCB state.

8.13.3.2.9 R-ICOMB2

The R-ICOMB2 state is of fixed length. In the R-ICOMB2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit ten R-ICOMB symbols.

The R-ICOMB2 state shall be followed by the R-MSG-FMT state.

8.13.3.2.10 R-MSG-FMT

The R-MSG-FMT state is of fixed length. In the R-MSG-FMT state, the ATU-R shall transmit 96 symbols of R-COMB or R-ICOMB to modulate the R-MSG-FMT message and CRC. The R-MSG-FMT message conveys information about the presence, format and length of subsequent ATU-C and ATU-R messages.

The R-MSG-FMT message m is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{15}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

Bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-31.

Table 8-31 – Bit definition for the R-MSG-FMT message

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
0	*FMT-R-REVERB1* (value 0 or 1)	Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-R requests an extended duration of the R-REVERB1 state. Set to 0 indicates it does not.
1		Reserved, set to 0.
2	*FMT-C-REVERB4* (value 0 or 1)	Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-R requests an extended duration of the C-REVERB4 state. Set to 0 indicates it does not.
6…3	*FMT-C-TREF1* (value 1 to 15)	The value mapped in these bits indicates the minimum duration of the C-TREF1 state. The MSB shall be mapped on the higher message bit index.
7	*FMT-R-MSG-PCB* (value 0 or 1)	Set to 1 indicates that the R-MSG-PCB message shall include the R-BLACKOUT bits. Set to 0 indicates it shall not.
8	*FMT-C-TREF2* (value 0 or 1)	Indicates that the ATU-R requests the ATU-C to transmit C-TREF symbols (if set to 1) or C-QUIET symbols (if set to 0) during R-ECT.
9	*FMT-C-PILOT* (value 0 or 1)	Set to 1 indicates that the ATU-R requests the ATU-C to transmit a fixed 4-QAM constellation point on the C-TREF pilot tone. Set to 0 indicates it does not.
15…10		Reserved, set to 0.

The 16 bits m_0-m_{15} shall be transmitted in 48-symbol periods (m_0 first and m_{15} last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive R-COMB symbols. A one bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive R-ICOMB symbols.

After the R-MSG-FMT message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed in the same way as for the C-MSG-FMT message. The 16 bits c_0-c_{15} shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods (c_0 first and c_{15} last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message m.

The R-MSG-FMT state shall be followed by the R-MSG-PCB state.

8.13.3.2.11 R-MSG-PCB

In each direction, the transmit power will be reduced by a power cutback which is the highest of the power cutback values determined by the ATU-R and the ATU-C. The ATU-R can consider its receiver dynamic range as determined by observing C-COMB1, and the local line conditions determined by the optional R-LINEPROBE when determining its cutback levels.

The R-MSG-PCB state is of fixed length. In the R-MSG-PCB state, the ATU-R shall transmit 144 or 144 + 3 × *NSCds* symbols of R-COMB or R-ICOMB to modulate the R-MSG-PCB message and CRC, depending on whether the R-BLACKOUT bits are included or not. The R-MSG-PCB message conveys the ATU-R determined power cutback levels for both the upstream and downstream directions, the hook status as known by the ATU-R, the signal used for timing recovery during different states and the downstream BLACKOUT bits.

The ATU-R shall indicate in the R-MSG-FMT message whether or not the R-MSG-PCB message includes the R-BLACKOUT bits. If the R-MSG-PCB does not include the R-BLACKOUT bits, the R-MSG-PCB message m is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{31}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

If the R-MSG-PCB includes the R-BLACKOUT bits, the R-MSG-PCB message m is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{31+NSCds}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

Bits shall be defined as shown in Table 8-32.

Table 8-32 – Bit definition for the R-MSG-PCB message

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
5…0	*R-MIN_PCB_DS*	ATU-R minimum downstream power cutback (6-bit value with MSB in bit 5 and LSB in bit 0)
11…6	*R-MIN_PCB_US*	ATU-R minimum upstream power cutback (6-bit value with MSB in bit 11 and LSB in bit 6)
13…12	*HOOK_STATUS*	Hook status (2-bit value with MSB in bit 13 and LSB in bit 12)
15…14		Reserved, set to 0
23…16	*C-PILOT*	Subcarrier index of downstream pilot tone (8-bit value with MSB in bit 23 and LSB in bit 16)
31…24		Reserved, set to 0
31 + *NSCds*…32	*R-BLACKOUT*	Blackout indication per subcarrier (subcarrier *NSCds* – 1 in bit 31 + *NSCds*, subcarrier 0 in bit 32). Bit 32 shall be set to 0 (i.e., no blackout of DC subcarrier).

The ATU-R minimum downstream power cutback level shall be coded as defined in Table 8-33.

Table 8-33 – ATU-R minimum downstream power cutback

Value (6 bits)	ATU-R minimum downstream power cutback (dB)
0	0
1	1
...	...
40	40
41-63	Reserved

The ATU-R minimum upstream power cutback level shall be coded as defined in Table 8-34.

Table 8-34 – ATU-R minimum upstream power cutback

Value (6 bits)	ATU-R minimum upstream power cutback (dB)
0	0
1	1
...	...
40	40
41-63	Reserved

The hook status shall be coded as defined in Table 8-35. The hook state "unknown" is intended to be indicated by a device that normally indicates the on- or off-hook state. The state "not capable to detect" is intended to be indicated by a device that never sets the on- or on-hook state (e.g., is not capable or disabled to detect the hook state).

Table 8-35 – Hook status

Value (2 bits)	Hook status
0	Unknown
1	On-hook
2	Off-hook
3	Not capable to detect

The C-PILOT value shall indicate the index of the C-TREF pilot subcarrier to be used by the ATU-C for the C-TREF timing reference and to be used by the ATU-R during C-TREF1/C-TREF2 for timing recovery. The spectral shaping information exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase and the BLACKOUT information exchanged in R-MSG-PCB allows the ATU-R to determine the set of subcarriers the ATU-C will transmit in and after the channel analysis phase (i.e., to determine the MEDLEYset, see clause 8.13.2.4). The ATU-R shall select a C-TREF pilot subcarrier from the MEDLEYset.

The R-BLACKOUT bits shall contain the R-BLACKOUT bit settings for each of the subcarriers 1 to $NSCds - 1$. The R-BLACKOUT bit set to 0 for a particular subcarrier indicates that the ATU-C shall transmit that subcarrier at the ATU-C reference transmit PSD level (*REFPDSds*) level, and including spectral shaping, for the remainder of initialization starting from the transceiver training phase. The R-BLACKOUT bit be set to 1 indicates that the ATU-C shall transmit no power ("blackout") on that subcarrier, for the remainder of initialization starting from the transceiver training phase.

An R-MSG-PCB message containing 32 bits m_{31}-m_0 shall be transmitted in 96 symbol periods (m_0 first and m_{31} last). An R-MSG-PCB message containing $32 + NSCds$ bits $m_{31+NSCds} - \mathrm{m}_0$ shall be transmitted in $96 + 3 \times NSCds$ symbol periods (m_0 first and $m_{31+NSCds}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive R-COMB symbols. A one bit shall be transmitted as three consecutive R-ICOMB symbols.

After the R-MSG-PCB message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the 32 or $32 + NSCds$ message m bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-FMT message.

The 16 bits c_0-c_{15} shall be transmitted in 48 symbol periods (c_0 first and c_{15} last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message m.

The R-MSG-PCB state shall be followed by the R-REVERB1 state.

8.13.4 Transceiver training phase

8.13.4.1 ATU-C transceiver training

In the transceiver training phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with X_i and Y_i non-zero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDds*) level including spectral shaping and subcarrier BLACKOUT. The subcarriers with downstream $BLACKOUT_i$ equal to 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the X_i and Y_i defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

8.13.4.1.1 C-REVERB1

The C-REVERB1 state is of fixed length. During the C-REVERB1 state the ATU-C shall transmit (*LEN_R-REVERB1* + *LEN_R-QUIET4* – 80) C-REVERB symbols. The values *LEN_R-REVERB1* and *LEN_R-QUIET4* are defined in clause 8.13.4.2.1 and clause 8.13.4.2.2, respectively.

This state allows the ATU-C and ATU-R receiver to adjust its automatic gain control (AGC) to an appropriate level.

The data pattern modulated on a C-REVERB symbol shall be the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS), d_n for $n = 1$ to $4 \times NSCds$, defined as follows:

$$
d_n \begin{cases} = 1 & \text{for } n = 1 \text{ to } 9; \\ = d_{n-4} \oplus d_{n-9} & \text{for } n = 10 \text{ to } 2 \times NSCds; \\ = d_{n-2\times NSCds} & \text{for } n = 2\times NSCds + 1 \text{ to } 2\times NSCds + 2; \\ = d_{4\times NSCds+2-n} & \text{for } n = 2\times NSCds + 3 \text{ to } 4\times NSCds\ (n \text{ odd}); \\ = 1 \oplus d_{4\times NSCds+4-n} & \text{for } n = 2\times NSCds + 3 \text{ to } 4\times NSCds\ (n \text{ even}); \end{cases}
$$

The bits shall be used as follows: the first pair of bits (d_1 and d_2) is used for the DC subcarrier (so the bits are effectively ignored); then the first and second bits of subsequent pairs are used to define the X_i and Y_i for $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSCds – 1$ as defined in Table 8-36. At the Nyquist subcarrier ($i = NSCds$), the X_i value shall be overwritten with the value $\sqrt{X_i^2 + Y_i^2}$ and the Y_i value shall be overwritten with the value 0 (to make a real valued $X_i + jY_i$, see clause 8.8.1.4).

NOTE – The PRBS sequence is constructed such that the $X_i + jY_i$ values above the Nyquist subcarrier are the mirrored complex conjugate of the values below the Nyquist subcarrier.

Table 8-36 – Mapping of two data bits into a 4-QAM constellation

d_{2i+1}	d_{2i+2}	X_i Y_i
0	0	+ +
0	1	+ –
1	0	– +
1	1	– –

During this state, the ATU-C may fine-tune its AGC (while the ATU-R is in the R-REVERB1 state) and do adaptive AFE algorithms.

The C-REVERB1 state shall be followed by the C-TREF1 state.

8.13.4.1.2 C-TREF1

The C-TREF1 state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of *LEN_C-TREF1* and a maximum of 15872 C-TREF symbols. The value *LEN_C-TREF1* shall be defined as 512 times the *FMT_C-TREF1* value (1 to 15) indicated by the ATU-R in the

R-MSG-FMT message. The number of symbols transmitted in the C-TREF1 state shall be a multiple of 512 symbols.

A C-TREF symbol shall be defined as a single tone symbol. Only the subcarrier specified by the ATU-R in the R-MSG-PCB message (i.e., the C-TREF pilot tone) shall be transmitted at the ATU-C reference transmit PSD level (*REFPSDds*). The C-TREF pilot tone shall modulate the 4-QAM {0,0} constellation point. No power shall be transmitted on the other subcarriers (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

During this state, the ATU-R may perform downstream timing recovery and other adaptive AFE algorithms. At the ATU-R, downstream timing recovery and other adaptive AFE algorithms shall be performed from symbolcount 0 to *LEN_C-TREF1* – 513 of the C-TREF1 state. The ATU-C may perform an upstream channel estimate starting from symbolcount *LEN_C-TREF1* – 512 of the C-TREF1 state. The ATU-C ends the C-TREF1 state, e.g., when the ATU-C has completed the channel estimation. The first symbol transmitted in the C-TREF1 state shall have a symbolcount equal to zero. For the case where *LEN_C-TREF1* equals the maximum value of 7680, this means that 7168 C-TREF1 symbols are available to the ATU-R for timing recovery and up to 8704 R-REVERB symbols are available to the ATU-C to perform an upstream channel estimation.

The C-TREF1 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB2 state.

If the ATU-R has set the FMT_C-PILOT bit to 1 in the R-MSG-FMT message (see clause 8.13.3.2.10), the ATU-C shall modulate the 4-QAM {0,0} constellation point on the C-TREF subcarrier, in all the ATU-C initialization states following the C-TREF1 state, except C-ECT and C-QUIET states. This is logically modelled by the modulation function overwriting the pilot subcarrier modulation defined in the initialization procedures (see clause 8.8.1.2).

8.13.4.1.3 C-REVERB2

The C-REVERB2 state is of fixed length. During the C-REVERB2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 64 C-REVERB symbols.

It is used to signal that the ATU-C has completed its upstream channel estimate and also provides a time marker for the C-ECT state.

The C-REVERB2 state shall be followed by the C-ECT state.

8.13.4.1.4 C-ECT

The C-ECT state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit a vendor-discretionary signal with a duration of 512 symbol periods.

During this state, the ATU-C may train its echo canceller, if one is present.

The C-ECT state shall be followed by the C-REVERB3 state.

8.13.4.1.5 C-REVERB3

The C-REVERB3 state is of variable length. In the C-REVERB3 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 448 and a maximum of 15936 C-REVERB symbols.

The ATU-R may perform a downstream channel estimation during C-REVERB3.

The ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB3 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB3 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

In case the ATU-R has indicated in the R-MSG-FMT message that it requires the ATU-C to transmit C-TREF symbols during the R-ECT state, the C-REVERB3 state shall be followed by the C-TREF2 state. In case the ATU-R has indicated that it requires the ATU-C to transmit

C-QUIET symbols during the R-ECT state, the C-REVERB1 state shall be followed by the C-QUIET5 state.

8.13.4.1.6 C-TREF2

The C-TREF2 state is of fixed length. In the C-TREF2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 576 C-TREF symbols.

During this state, the ATU-R may perform timing recovery. The ATU-C shall ignore the signal transmitted by the ATU-R during the R-ECT state.

The C-TREF1 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB4 state.

8.13.4.1.7 C-QUIET5

The C-QUIET5 state is of fixed length. In the C-QUIET5 state, the ATU-C shall transmit 576 C-QUIET symbols.

The C-QUIET5 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB4 state.

8.13.4.1.8 C-REVERB4

The C-REVERB4 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_C-REVERB4* C-REVERB symbols. The value *LEN_C-REVERB4* shall be equal to 1024 if the ATU-C or the ATU-R (or both) have set *FMT_C-REVERB4* to 1 in the C-MSG-FMT or R-MSG-FMT message respectively. The value *LEN_C-REVERB4* shall be equal to 256 otherwise.

The C-REVERB4 state shall be followed by the C-SEGUE1 state. The transition from the C-REVERB4 state to the C-SEGUE1 state is a time marker for the C-MSG1 and for the introduction of the cyclic prefix.

8.13.4.1.9 C-SEGUE1

The C-SEGUE1 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit ten C-SEGUE symbols.

The C-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of a C-REVERB symbol (i.e., a C-SEGUE symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The C-SEGUE1 state shall be followed by the C-MSG1 state.

8.13.4.2 ATU-R transceiver training

In the transceiver training phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with X_i and Y_i non-zero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDus*) level including spectral shaping and subcarrier BLACKOUT. The subcarriers with upstream $BLACKOUT_i$ equal to 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the X_i and Y_i defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

8.13.4.2.1 R-REVERB1

The R-REVERB1 state is of fixed length. In the R-REVERB1 state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_R-REVERB1* R-REVERB symbols. The value *LEN_R-REVERB1* shall be equal to 592 if the ATU-C or the ATU-R (or both) have set *FMT_R-REVERB1* to 1 in the C-MSG-FMT or R-MSG-FMT message respectively. The value *LEN_R-REVERB1* shall be equal to 272 otherwise.

The data pattern modulated on an R-REVERB symbol shall be the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS), d_n for $n = 1$ to $4 \times NSCus$, defined as follows:

$$d_n = \begin{cases} = 1 & \text{for } n = 1 \text{ to } 6; \\ = d_{n-5} \oplus d_{n-6} & \text{for } n = 7 \text{ to } 2 \times NSCus; \\ = d_{n-2\times NSCus} & \text{for } n = 2 \times NSCus + 1 \text{ to } 2 \times NSCus + 2; \\ = d_{4\times NSCus+2-n} & \text{for } n = 2 \times NSCus + 3 \text{ to } 4 \times NSCus \ (n \text{ odd}); \\ = 1 \oplus d_{4\times NSCus+4-n} & \text{for } n = 2 \times NSCus + 3 \text{ to } 4 \times NSCus \ (n \text{ even}); \end{cases}$$

The bits shall be used as follows: the first pair of bits (d_1 and d_2) is used for the DC subcarrier (so the bits are effectively ignored); then the first and second bits of subsequent pairs are used to define the X_i and Y_i for $i = 1$ to $2 \times NSCus - 1$ as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols. At the Nyquist subcarrier ($i = NSCus$), the X_i value shall be overwritten with the value $\sqrt{X_i^2 + Y_i^2}$ and the Y_i value shall be overwritten with the value 0 (to make a real valued $X_i + jY_i$, see clause 8.8.1.4).

NOTE – The PRBS sequence is constructed such that the $X_i + jY_i$ values above the Nyquist subcarrier are the mirrored complex conjugate of the values below the Nyquist subcarrier.

During this state, the ATU-R may fine-tune its AGC (while the ATU-C is in the C-REVERB1 state), do timing recovery and other adaptive AFE algorithms.

The R-REVERB1 state shall be followed by the R-QUIET4 state.

8.13.4.2.2 R-QUIET4

The R-QUIET4 state is of fixed length. In the R-QUIET4 state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_R-QUIET4* R-QUIET symbols. The value *LEN_R-QUIET4* shall be defined as 512 times the *FMT_R-QUIET4* value (0 to 31) indicated by the ATU-C in the C-MSG-FMT message, resulting in a length of the R-QUIET4 state between 0 and 15872 symbols. In case *LEN_R-QUIET4* is 0, then the ATU-R effectively transitions from the R-REVERB1 to the R-REVERB2 state.

The R-QUIET4 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB2 state.

8.13.4.2.3 R-REVERB2

The R-REVERB2 state is of variable length. In the R-REVERB2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 432 and a maximum of 15888 R-REVERB symbols.

During this state, the ATU-R shall do timing recovery and loop timing and may do other adaptive AFE algorithms. Loop timing is defined as the combination of the slaving of the ATU-R ADC clock to the received signal (i.e., to the ATU-C DAC clock), and tying the ATU-R DAC and ADC clocks together. Loop timing shall be acquired before symbolcount *LEN_C-TREF1* – 512 of the C-TREF1 state. The ATU-C may perform a channel estimate during the last 512 symbols of the C-TREF1 state. Such channel estimation requires sufficient sampling clock stability at the ATU-R transmitter. Loop timing shall be maintained in all subsequent states, except for R-ECT when the ATU-R requested C-QUIET5. In the latter case, loop timing shall be reacquired in R-REVERB4.

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB2 state. Within 64 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB2 state, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The R-REVERB2 state shall be followed by the R-QUIET5 state.

8.13.4.2.4 R-QUIET5

The R-QUIET5 state is of variable length. In the R-QUIET5 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 1024 and a maximum of 16384 R-QUIET symbols. The number of symbols transmitted in the R-QUIET5 state shall be a multiple of 512 symbols. However, the last R-QUIET symbol transmitted in the R-QUIET5 state may be shortened by any integer number of samples (at the sample clock frequency f_s, as defined in clause 8.8.1.3) to accommodate transmitter-to-receiver frame alignment.

During this state, the ATU-R shall ignore the signal transmitted by the ATU-C during the C-ECT state. The ATU-R may perform timing recovery, measure the downstream channel frequency response and train its equalizer (while the ATU-C is in the C-REVERB3 state). The ATU-R transitions to the next state when it has completed its receive signal processing algorithms.

The R-QUIET5 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB3 state.

8.13.4.2.5 R-REVERB3

The R-REVERB3 state is of fixed length. In the R-REVERB3 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 64 R-REVERB symbols.

This state indicates that the ATU-R has completed its training. It also provides a time marker for the R-ECT state.

The R-REVERB3 state shall be followed by the R-ECT state.

8.13.4.2.6 R-ECT

The R-ECT state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit a vendor-discretionary signal with a duration of 512 symbol periods.

During this state, the ATU-R may train its echo canceller, if one is present.

The R-ECT state shall be followed by the R-REVERB4 state.

8.13.4.2.7 R-REVERB4

The R-REVERB4 state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of *LEN_C-REVERB4* and a maximum of *LEN_C-REVERB4* + 80 R-REVERB symbols, where LEN_C-REVERB4 is defined in clause 8.13.4.1.8.

The length of the R-REVERB4 state may be determined in such a manner that the ends of C-SEGUE1 and R-SEGUE1 coincide at the ATU-R.

If the ATU-R requested the ATU-C to transmit C-QUIET symbols during R-ECT (i.e., set the FMT-C-TREF2 bit to 0 in the R-MSG-FMT message), then the ATU-R shall request an extended duration of the C-REVERB4 state (i.e., set the FMT-C-REVERB4 bit to 1 in the R-MSG-FMT message) and the ATU-R shall reacquire loop timing within 512 symbols from the start of the C-REVERB4 state.

The R-REVERB4 state shall be followed by the R-SEGUE1 state. The transition from the R-REVERB4 state to the R-SEGUE1 state is a time marker for the R-MSG1 and for the introduction of the cyclic prefix.

8.13.4.2.8 R-SEGUE1

The R-SEGUE1 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit ten R-SEGUE symbols.

The R-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as a subcarrier-by-subcarrier 180 degrees phase reversal of an R-REVERB symbol (i.e., an R-SEGUE symbol modulates the bitwise inverted REVERB PRBS data pattern).

The R-SEGUE1 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB5 state.

8.13.5 Channel analysis phase

In this phase, the ATU-C and ATU-R may perform further training and SNR estimation. Based on the requirements exchanged in the C/R-MSG1 states, transmitter configurations on either side are decided upon.

8.13.5.1 ATU-C channel analysis

In the channel analysis phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with X_i and Y_i non-zero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDds*) level including spectral shaping and subcarrier BLACKOUT. The subcarriers with spectral shaping tss_i value less than 1 or downstream $BLACKOUT_i$ equal to 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the X_i and Y_i defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

Starting from the channel analysis phase (and continuing in the exchange phase and in showtime), the ATU-C shall transmit the cyclic prefix as defined in clause 8.8.3.

8.13.5.1.1 C-MSG1

The C-MSG1 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_C-MSG1* C-REVERB or C-SEGUE symbols to modulate the C-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC. The C-MSG1 state shall be the first state in which the ATU-C transmits the cyclic prefix.

The C-MSG1 prefix p is defined by:

$$p = \{p_{31}, \ldots , p_0\} = \{ \text{ 01010101 01010101 01010101 01010101 } \}$$

The 32 bits p_0 to p_{31} shall be transmitted in 32 symbol periods (p_0 first and p_{31} last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as a C-REVERB symbol. A one bit shall be transmitted as a C-SEGUE symbol.

The value *LEN_C-MSG1* shall be defined as the length of the C-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC in bits. Table 8-37 lists the length of the C-MSG1 message summed over TPC-TC, PMS-TC and PMD layers. The TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD bits each correspond to an even number of octets.

Table 8-37 – C-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC length

Part of message	Length (bits or symbols)
Prefix	32
Npmd	160
Npms	32
Ntps	0
Nmsg	192
CRC	16
LEN_C-MSG1 (symbols)	240

The C-MSG1 message m is defined by:

$$m = \{tps_{Ntps-1}, \ldots , tps_0, pms_{Npms-1}, \ldots , pms_0, pmd_{Npmd-1}, \ldots , pmd_0\} = \{m_{Nmsg-1}, \ldots , m_0\}$$

The C-MSG1 message conveys 3 sets of parameters, related to TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD configuration. TPS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits tps_{Ntps-1} to tps_0 and are defined in clause 6. PMS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits pms_{Npms-1} to pms_0 and are defined in clause 7. PMD parameters are conveyed in the bits pmd_{Npmd-1} to pmd_0 and are defined in clause 8.

The *Nmsg* bits m_0-m_{Nmsg-1} shall be transmitted in *Nmsg* symbol periods (m_0 first and m_{Nmsg-1} last), immediately following the prefix, and using the same modulation as used to transmit the prefix p.

After the C-MSG1 message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the *Nmsg* message *m* bits (thus not including the prefix) in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-PCB message.

The 16 bits c_0-c_{15} shall be transmitted in 16 symbol periods (c_0 first and c_{15} last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message *m*.

The C-MSG1 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB5 state.

8.13.5.1.2 C-REVERB5

The C-REVERB5 state is of variable length. In the C-REVERB5 state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 10 and a maximum of (218 + *LEN_R-MSG1*) C-REVERB symbols.

The ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-MEDLEY state. Within 80 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-MEDLEY state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-REVERB5 state shall be followed by the C-SEGUE2 state. The transition from the C-REVERB5 to the C-SEGUE2 state provides a time marker for the start of the C-MEDLEY state.

8.13.5.1.3 C-SEGUE2

The C-SEGUE2 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit ten C-SEGUE symbols.

The C-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as the phase-inverted C-REVERB symbol.

The C-SEGUE2 state shall be followed by the C-MEDLEY state.

8.13.5.1.4 C-MEDLEY

The C-MEDLEY state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_MEDLEY* symbols. The value *LEN_MEDLEY* shall be the maximum of the *CA-MEDLEYus* and *CA-MEDLEYds* values indicated by the ATU-C and the ATU-R in the C-MSG1 and R-MSG1 messages respectively. The value *LEN_MEDLEY* shall be a multiple of 512 and shall be less than or equal to 32256. The number of symbols transmitted in the C-MEDLEY state shall be equal to the number of symbols transmitted by the ATU-R in the R-MEDLEY state.

A C-MEDLEY symbol shall be defined depending on its symbolcount within the C-MEDLEY state. The first symbol transmitted in the C-MEDLEY state shall have symbolcount equal to zero. For each symbol transmitted in the C-MEDLEY state, the symbolcount shall be incremented.

The data pattern modulated onto each C-MEDLEY symbol shall be taken from the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS) defined by:

$$d_n = 1 \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ to } 9 \text{ and}$$

$$d_n = d_{n-4} \oplus d_{n-9} \text{ for } n > 9$$

The C-MEDLEY symbol with symbolcount *i* shall modulate the 512 bits $d_{512\times i+1}$ to $d_{512\times(i+1)}$.

Bits shall be extracted from the PRBS in pairs. For each symbol transmitted in the C-MEDLEY state, 256 pairs (512 bits) shall be extracted from the PRBS generator. The first extracted pair shall be modulated onto subcarrier 0 (so the bits are effectively ignored). The subsequent pairs are used to define the X_i and Y_i components for the subcarriers $i = 1$ to $NSCds - 1$, as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols. For the subcarriers $i = NSCds$ to $2 \times NSCds - 1$, the $X_i = Y_i = 0$.

NOTE – 256 bit pairs per symbol are extracted from the PRBS. If *NSCds* is less than 256 (as in [b-ITU-T G.992.4]), then the last (256 – *NSCds*) bit pairs are effectively ignored.

While the ATU-C is in the C-MEDLEY state, the ATU-C and ATU-R may perform further training and SNR estimation.

The C-MEDLEY state shall be followed by the C-EXCHMARKER state.

8.13.5.1.5 C-EXCHMARKER

The C-EXCHMARKER state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit 64 C-REVERB symbols or 64 C-SEGUE symbols. If the initialization contains an ITU-T G.994.1 phase, the ATU-C shall transmit C-REVERB symbols. If the initialization does not contain an ITU-T G.994.1 phase, the ATU-C may transmit C-SEGUE symbols.

By transmitting C-REVERB symbols, the ATU-C indicates that the states C-REVERB6, C-SEGUE3 and C-PARAMS will be included. By transmitting C-SEGUE symbols, the ATU-C indicates that the states C-REVERB6, C-SEGUE3 and C-PARAMS will be skipped.

In case the C-PARAMS message is skipped during the initialization exchange phase, the last previous L0 state trellis setting, bits and gains table (possibly updated through on-line reconfiguration since the last previous C-PARAMS message exchange) and tone ordering table (see Tables 8-14 and 8-15) shall be used to enter the SHOWTIME state (see clause 8.14).

The C-EXCHMARKER state shall be followed by the C-MSG2 state.

8.13.5.2 ATU-R channel analysis

In the channel analysis phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with X_i and Y_i non-zero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDus*) level including spectral shaping. The subcarriers with spectral shaping tss_i value less than 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the X_i and Y_i defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

Starting from the channel analysis phase (and continuing in the exchange phase and in showtime), the ATU-R shall transmit the cyclic prefix as defined in clause 8.8.3.

8.13.5.2.1 R-REVERB5

The R-REVERB5 state is of variable length. In the R-REVERB5 state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 10 and a maximum of (192 + *LEN_C-MSG1*) R-REVERB symbols. The R-REVERB5 state shall be the first state in which the ATU-R transmits the cyclic prefix.

During this state, the ATU-R shall decode the information contained in the C-MSG1 state.

The ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB5 state. Within 128 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB5 state, the ATU-R shall transition to the next state.

The R-REVERB5 state shall be followed by the R-SEGUE2 state.

8.13.5.2.2 R-SEGUE2

The R-SEGUE2 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit ten R-SEGUE symbols.

The R-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as the phase-inverted R-REVERB symbol.

The R-SEGUE2 state shall be followed by the R-MSG1 state.

8.13.5.2.3 R-MSG1

The R-MSG1 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_R-MSG1* R-REVERB or R-SEGUE symbols to modulate the R-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC.

The R-MSG1 prefix p is defined by:

$$p = \{p31, ... , p0\} = \{ 01010101\ 01010101\ 01010101\ 01010101 \}$$

The 32 bits p_0 to p_{31} shall be transmitted in 32 symbol periods (p_0 first and p_{31} last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as an R-REVERB symbol. A one bit shall be transmitted as an R-SEGUE symbol.

The value *LEN_R-MSG1* shall be defined as the length of the R-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC in bits. The length of the R-MSG1 message depends on selections made during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase (i.e., the appropriate annex and TPS-TC type). Table 8-38 lists the possible lengths of the R-MSG1 message summed over TPC-TC, PMS-TC and PMD layers. The TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD bits each correspond to an even number of octets.

Table 8-38 – R-MSG1 prefix, message and CRC length

Part of message	Length (bits or symbols)
Prefix	32
Npmd	32
Npms	0
Ntps	0
Nmsg	32
CRC	16
LEN_R-MSG1 (symbols)	80

The R-MSG1 message *m* is defined by:

$$m = \{tps_{Ntps-1}, \ldots, tps_0, pms_{Npms-1}, \ldots, pms_0, pmd_{Npmd-1}, \ldots, pmd_0\} = \{m_{Nmsg-1}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

The R-MSG1 message conveys 3 sets of parameters, related to TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD configuration. TPS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits tps_{Ntps-1} to tps_0 and are defined in clause 6. PMS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits pms_{Npms-1} to pms_0 and are defined in clause 7. PMD parameters are conveyed in the bits pmd_{Npmd-1} to pmd_0 and are defined in clause 8.

The *Nmsg* bits m_0-m_{Nmsg-1} shall be transmitted in *Nmsg* symbol periods (m_0 first and m_{Nmsg-1} last), immediately following the prefix, and using the same modulation as used to transmit the prefix *p*.

After the R-MSG1 message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the *Nmsg* message *m* bits (thus not including the prefix) in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-PCB message.

The 16 bits c_0-c_{15} shall be transmitted in 16 symbol periods (c_0 first and c_{15} last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message *m*.

The R-MSG1 state shall be followed by the R-MEDLEY state.

8.13.5.2.4 R-MEDLEY

The R-MEDLEY state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_MEDLEY* symbols. The value *LEN_MEDLEY* shall be the maximum of the *CA-MEDLEYus* and *CA-MEDLEYds* values indicated by the ATU-C and the ATU-R in the C-MSG1 and R-MSG1 messages, respectively. The value *LEN_MEDLEY* shall be a multiple of 512 and shall be less than or equal to 32256. The number of symbols transmitted in the R-MEDLEY state shall be equal to the number of symbols transmitted by the ATU-C in the C-MEDLEY state.

An R-MEDLEY symbol shall be defined depending on its symbol count within the R-MEDLEY state. The first symbol transmitted in the R-MEDLEY state shall have symbolcount equal to zero. For each symbol transmitted in the R-MEDLEY state, the symbol count shall be incremented.

The data pattern modulated onto each R-MEDLEY symbol shall be taken from the pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS) defined by:

$$d_n = 1 \text{ for } n = 1 \text{ to } 23; \text{and}$$
$$d_n = d_{n-18} \oplus d_{n-23} \text{ for } n > 23.$$

The R-MEDLEY symbol with symbolcount i shall modulate the bits $d_{2 \times NSCus \times i+1}$ to $d_{2 \times NSCus \times (i+1)}$. The value of *NSC* (the number of upstream subcarriers) is defined in the annexes.

Bits shall be extracted from the PRBS in pairs. For each symbol transmitted in the R-MEDLEY state, *NSCus* pairs (2 × *NSCus* bits) shall be extracted from the PRBS generator. The first extracted pair shall be modulated onto subcarrier 0 (so the bits are effectively ignored). The subsequent pairs are used to define the X_i and Y_i components for the subcarriers $i = 1$ to $NSCus - 1$, as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols. For the subcarriers $i = NSCus$ to $2 \times NSCus - 1$, $X_i = 0$ and $Y_i = 0$.

While the ATU-R is in the R-MEDLEY state, the ATU-C and ATU-R may perform further training and SNR estimation.

The R-MEDLEY state shall be followed by the R-EXCHMARKER state.

8.13.5.2.5 R-EXCHMARKER

The R-EXCHMARKER state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit 64 R-REVERB symbols or 64 R-SEGUE symbols. If the initialization contains an ITU-T G.994.1 phase, the ATU-R shall transmit C-REVERB symbols. If the initialization does not contain an ITU-T G.994.1 phase, the ATU-R may transmit R-SEGUE symbols.

By transmitting R-REVERB symbols, the ATU-R indicates that the states R-REVERB6, R-SEGUE3 and R-PARAMS will be included. By transmitting R-SEGUE symbols, the ATU-R indicates that the states R-REVERB6, R-SEGUE3 and R-PARAMS will be skipped.

In case the R-PARAMS message is skipped during the initialization exchange phase, the last previous L0 state trellis setting, bits and gains table (possibly updated through on-line reconfiguration since the last previous R-PARAMS message exchange) and tone ordering table (see Tables 8-14 and 8-15) shall be used to enter the SHOWTIME state (see clause 8.14).

The R-EXCHMARKER state shall be followed by the R-MSG2 state.

8.13.6 Exchange phase

8.13.6.1 ATU-C exchange phase

In the exchange phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with X_i and Y_i non-zero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDds*) level including spectral shaping and subcarrier *BLACKOUT*. The subcarriers with spectral shaping tss_i value less than 1 or downstream $BLACKOUT_i$ equal to 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the X_i and Y_i defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

8.13.6.1.1 C-MSG2

The C-MSG2 state is of fixed length. In the C-MSG2 state, the ATU-C shall transmit (*NSCus* + 16) C-REVERB or C-SEGUE symbols to modulate the C-MSG2 message and CRC.

The C-MSG2 message *m* is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{NSCus-1}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

The bit m_i shall be set to 1 to indicate that the ATU-R shall use subcarrier index i to modulate the R-PARAMS message. The bit m_i shall be set to 0 to indicate that the ATU-R shall not use subcarrier index i to modulate the R-PARAMS message. At least 4 subcarriers shall be used for modulation of the R-PARAMS message. The R-PARAMS message will be transmitted at about

8 kbit/s times the number of subcarriers used for modulation of the message.

The bits m_0-$m_{NSCus-1}$ shall be transmitted in *NSC* symbol periods (m_0 first and $m_{NSCus-1}$ last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as a C-REVERB symbol. A one bit shall be transmitted as a C-SEGUE symbol.

After the C-MSG2 message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the *NSCus* message *m* bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-FMT message.

The 16 bits c_0-c_{15} shall be transmitted in 16 symbol periods (c_0 first and c_{15} last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message *m*.

If the ATU-C has transmitted C-REVERB symbols during the C-EXCHMARKER state, the C-MSG2 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB6 state. If the ATU-C has transmitted C-SEGUE symbols during the C-EXCHMARKER state, the C-MSG2 state shall be followed by the C-REVERB7 state.

8.13.6.1.2 C-REVERB6

The C-REVERB6 state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of (246 – *NSCus*) and a maximum of (2246 – *NSCus*) C-REVERB symbols.

This state is a filler state to allow the ATU-C to receive (and decode) the complete R-MSG2 message.

If the ATU-R has transmitted R-REVERB symbols during the R-EXCHMARKER state, the ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB6 state. Within 80 to 2000 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB6 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

If the ATU-R has transmitted R-SEGUE symbols during the R-EXCHMARKER state, the ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB7 state. Within 80 to 2000 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB7 state, the ATU-C shall transition to the next state.

The C-REVERB6 state shall be followed by the C-SEGUE3 state.

8.13.6.1.3 C-SEGUE3

The C-SEGUE3 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit ten C-SEGUE symbols.

The C-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as the phase-inverted C-REVERB symbol.

The C-SEGUE3 state shall be followed by the C-PARAMS state.

8.13.6.1.4 C-PARAMS

The C-PARAMS state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit *LEN_C-PARAMS* C-PARAMS symbols to modulate the C-PARAMS message and CRC at (2 × *NSC_C-PARAMS*) bits per symbol. The value *NSC_C-PARAMS* shall be defined as the number of subcarriers to be used for modulation of the C-PARAMS message as indicated by the ATU-R in the R-MSG2 message. The value *LEN_C-PARAMS* shall be defined as (length of the C-PARAMS message and CRC in bits) divided by (2 × *NSC_C-PARAMS*) and rounded to the higher integer.

Table 8-39 lists the length of the C-PARAMS message summed over TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD layers. The TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD bits each correspond to an even number of octets.

Table 8-39 – C-PARAMS message and CRC length

Part of message	Length (bits or symbols)
Npmd	$96 + 24 \times NSCus$
Npms	224
Ntps	0
Nmsg	$320 + 24 \times NSCus$
CRC	16
LEN_C-PARAMS (state length in symbols)	$\left\lceil \frac{336 + 24 \times NSCus}{2 \times NSC\_C\text{-}PARAMS} \right\rceil$
NOTE – $\lceil x \rceil$ denotes rounding to the higher integer.	

The C-PARAMS message *m* is defined by:

$$m = \{tps_{Ntps-1}, \dots , tps_0, pms_{Npms-1}, \dots , pms_0, pmd_{Npmd-1}, \dots , pmd_0\} = \{m_{Nmsg-1}, \dots , m_0\}$$

The C-PARAMS message conveys 3 sets of parameters, related to TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD configuration. TPS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits tps_{Ntps-1} to tps_0 and are defined in clause 6. PMS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits pms_{Npms-1} to pms_0 and are defined in clause 7. PMD parameters are conveyed in the bits pmd_{Npmd-1} to pmd_0 and are defined in clause 8.

PMS-TC parameters include the framer configuration parameters. PMD parameters include the bits and gains table for the upstream subcarriers.

A CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the *Nmsg* message *m* bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-FMT message.

If the number of message and CRC bits to be transmitted is not an integer multiple of the number of bits per symbol (i.e., not a multiple of 2 × *NSC_C-PARAMS*), then the message and CRC bits shall be further padded with zero bits such that the overall number of bits to be transmitted is equal to (2 × *NSC_C-PARAMS* × *LEN_C-PARAMS*).

The C-PARAMS message bits (along with the CRC bits and the padding bits) shall be scrambled using the following equation:

$$d'_n = d_n \oplus d'_{n-18} \oplus d'_{n-23}$$

where d_n is the *n*-th input to the scrambler (first input is d_1);

and d'_n is the *n*-th output from the scrambler (first output is d'_1);

and the scrambler is initialized to $d'_n = 1$ for $n < 1$.

The bits to be transmitted shall be input into the scrambler equation least significant bit first (m_0 first and m_{Nmsg-1} last, followed by c_0 first and c_{15} last, followed by padding bits, if present). By construction of the scrambler, the scrambler output bits d'_n to d'_{18} are equal to m_0 to m_{17}, respectively.

The output of the scrambler shall be transmitted at (2 × *NSC_C-PARAMS*) bits per C-PARAMS symbol (the first bit output of the scrambler is transmitted first, and so on). Bit pairs shall be mapped onto subcarriers in ascending order of subcarrier index and using the same 4-QAM modulation as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols.

The C-PARAMS symbol shall contain only the *NSC_C-PARAMS* subcarriers (carrying the message bits) and the C-TREF pilot tone. The other subcarriers shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The C-TREF pilot may be part of the set of *NSC-PARAMS* subcarriers (carrying the message bits). In this case, the C-TREF pilot shall be modulated with message bits. Otherwise, it shall be modulated with the fixed {0,0} 4-QAM constellation point.

The C-PARAMS state shall be followed by the C-REVERB7 state.

8.13.6.1.5 C-REVERB7

The C-REVERB7 state is of variable length.

The ATU-C may transition to C-REVERB7 before or after the ATU-R transitions to R-REVERB7 (depending on the presence and length of the PARAMS and REVERB6 states).

If the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state before the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state, then the ATU-C shall continue to transmit C-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state. The ATU-C shall transition to the next state within 128 to 2048 symbols after the ATU-R transitioning to the R-REVERB7 state.

If the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state after the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state, then the ATU-C shall transmit a minimum of 128 and a maximum of 2048 C-REVERB symbols in the C-REVERB7 state.

The C-REVERB7 state shall be followed by the C-SEGUE4 state. The transition from the C-REVERB7 state to the C-SEGUE4 state provides a time marker for the transition to the C-SHOWTIME state.

8.13.6.1.6 C-SEGUE4

The C-SEGUE4 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-C shall transmit ten C-SEGUE symbols.

The C-SEGUE4 state shall be followed by the C-SHOWTIME state.

8.13.6.2 ATU-R exchange phase

In the exchange phase, the modulated subcarriers (i.e., with X_i and Y_i non-zero) shall be transmitted at the reference transmit PSD (*REFPSDus*) level including spectral shaping. The subcarriers with spectral shaping tss_i value less than 1 shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $Z_i = 0$). For those subcarriers, the X_i and Y_i defined in this clause are effectively ignored.

8.13.6.2.1 R-MSG2

The R-MSG2 state is of fixed length. In the R-MSG2 state, the ATU-R shall transmit 272 R-REVERB or R-SEGUE symbols to modulate the R-MSG2 message and CRC.

The R-MSG2 message m is defined by:

$$m = \{m_{225}, \ldots, m_0\}$$

The bit m_i shall be set to 1 to indicate that the ATU-C shall use subcarrier index i to modulate the C-PARAMS message. The bit m_i shall be set to 0 to indicate that the ATU-C shall not use subcarrier index i to modulate the C-PARAMS message. At least 4 subcarriers shall be used for modulation of the C-PARAMS message. The C-PARAMS message will be transmitted at about 8 kbit/s times the number of subcarriers used for modulation of the message.

NOTE – The R-MSG2 message length is 256 bits (1 bit per subcarrier). If *NSCds* is less than 256 (as in [b-ITU-T G.992.4]), then the last (256 – *NSCds*) bits m_{255} to m_{NSCds} are set to 0.

If the ATU-R has set the R-MSG-FMT message bit FMT-C-PILOT to 1, then the ATU-C modulates the C-TREF pilot tone with a fixed constellation point. In this case, the ATU-R shall not use the C-TREF pilot tone for modulation of the C-PARAMS message.

The bits m_0-m_{255} shall be transmitted in 256 symbol periods (m_0 first and m_{255} last). A zero bit shall be transmitted as an R-REVERB symbol. A one bit shall be transmitted as an R-SEGUE symbol.

After the R-MSG2 message has been transmitted, a CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the 256 message *m* bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-PCB message.

The 16 bits c_0-c_{15} shall be transmitted in 16 symbol periods (c_0 first and c_{15} last) using the same modulation as used to transmit the message *m*.

If the ATU-R has transmitted R-REVERB symbols during the R-EXCHMARKER state, the R-MSG2 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB6 state. If the ATU-R has transmitted R-SEGUE symbols during the R-EXCHMARKER state, the R-MSG2 state shall be followed by the R-REVERB7 state.

8.13.6.2.2 R-REVERB6

The R-REVERB6 state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 80 and a maximum of 2000 R-REVERB symbols.

This state is a filler state to allow the ATU-R to receive (and decode) the complete C-MSG2 message.

The R-REVERB6 state shall be followed by the R-SEGUE3 state.

8.13.6.2.3 R-SEGUE3

The R-SEGUE3 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit ten R-SEGUE symbols.

The R-SEGUE symbol shall be defined as the phase-inverted R-REVERB symbol.

The R-SEGUE3 state shall be followed by the R-PARAMS state.

8.13.6.2.4 R-PARAMS

The R-PARAMS state is of variable length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit *LEN_R-PARAMS* symbols to modulate the R-PARAMS message and CRC at (2 × *NSC_R-PARAMS*) bits per symbol.

The value *NSC_R-PARAMS* shall be defined as the number of subcarriers to be used for modulation of the R-PARAMS message as indicated by the ATU-C in the C-MSG2 message. The value *LEN_R-PARAMS* shall be defined as (length of the R-PARAMS message and CRC in bits) divided by (2 × *NSC_R-PARAMS*) and rounded to the higher integer.

Table 8-40 lists the length of the R-PARAMS message summed over TPC-TC, PMS-TC and PMD layers. The TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD bits each correspond to an even number of octets.

Table 8-40 – R-PARAMS message and CRC length

Part of message	Length in bits
Npmd	96 + 24 × *NSCds*
Npms	224
Ntps	0
Nmsg	320 + 24 × *NSCds*
CRC	16
LEN_R-PARAMS (state length in symbols)	$\left\lceil \frac{336+24\times NSCds}{2\times NSC\_R\text{-}PARAMS} \right\rceil$
NOTE – $\lceil x \rceil$ denotes rounding to the higher integer.	

The R-PARAMS message m is defined by:

$$m = \{tps_{Ntps-1}, \ldots , tps_0, pms_{Npms-1}, \ldots , pms_0, pmd_{Npmd-1}, \ldots , pmd_0\} = \{m_{Nmsg}, \ldots , m_0\}$$

The R-PARAMS message conveys 3 sets of parameters, related to TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD configuration. TPS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits tps_{Ntps-1} to tps_0 and are defined in clause 6. PMS-TC parameters are conveyed in the bits pms_{Npms-1} to pms_0 and are defined in clause 7. PMD parameters are conveyed in the bits pmd_{Npmd-1} to pmd_0 and are defined in clause 8.

PMS-TC parameters include the framer configuration parameters. PMD parameters include the bits and gains table for the downstream subcarriers.

A CRC shall be appended to the message. The 16 CRC bits shall be computed from the *Nmsg* message *m* bits in the same way as the CRC bits are calculated for the C-MSG-FMT message.

If the number of message and CRC bits to be transmitted is not an integer multiple of the number of bits per symbol (i.e., not a multiple of 2 × *NSC_R-PARAMS*), then the message and CRC bits shall be further padded with zero bits such that the overall number of bits to be transmitted is equal to (2 × *NSC_R-PARAMS* × *LEN_R-PARAMS*).

The R-PARAMS message bits (along with the CRC bits and the padding bits) shall be scrambled in the same way as defined for the C-PARAMS message. The bits to be transmitted shall be input into the scrambler equation least significant bit first (m_0 first and m_{Nmsg-1} last, followed by c_0 first and c_{15} last, followed by padding bits, if present).

The output of the scrambler shall be transmitted at (2 × *NSC_R-PARAMS*) bits per R-PARAMS symbol (the first bit output of the scrambler is transmitted first, and so on). Bit pairs shall be mapped onto subcarriers in ascending order of subcarrier index and using the same 4-QAM modulation as defined in Table 8-36 for C-REVERB symbols.

The R-PARAMS symbol shall contain only the *NSC_R-PARAMS* subcarriers (carrying the message bits). The other subcarriers shall be transmitted at no power (i.e., $X_i = Y_i = 0$).

The R-PARAMS state shall be followed by the R-REVERB7 state.

8.13.6.2.5 R-REVERB7

The R-REVERB7 state is of variable length.

The ATU-R may transition to R-REVERB7 before or after the ATU-C transitions to C-REVERB7 (depending on the presence and length of the PARAMS and REVERB6 states).

If the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state before the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state, then the ATU-R shall continue to transmit R-REVERB symbols until after the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state. The ATU-R shall transition to the next state within 128 to 2048 symbols after the ATU-C transitioning to the C-REVERB7 state.

If the ATU-R transitions to the R-REVERB7 state after the ATU-C transitions to the C-REVERB7 state, then the ATU-R shall transmit a minimum of 128 and a maximum of 2048 R-REVERB symbols in the R-REVERB7 state.

The R-REVERB7 state shall be followed by the R-SEGUE4 state. The transition from the R-REVERB7 state to the R-SEGUE4 state provides a time marker for the transition to the R-SHOWTIME state.

8.13.6.2.6 R-SEGUE4

The R-SEGUE4 state is of fixed length. In this state, the ATU-R shall transmit ten R-SEGUE symbols.

The R-SEGUE4 state shall be followed by the R-SHOWTIME state.

8.13.7 Timing diagram of the initialization procedures

Figure 8-26 shows the timing diagram of the first part of the initialization procedures, from the ITU-T G.994.1 phase up to the start of the channel analysis phase. Figures 8-27 to 8-30 show the second part of the initialization procedures, from the end of the channel analysis phase up to showtime. These four timing diagrams represent the four cases resulting from whether or not the C-PARAMS and/or R-PARAMS states are included.

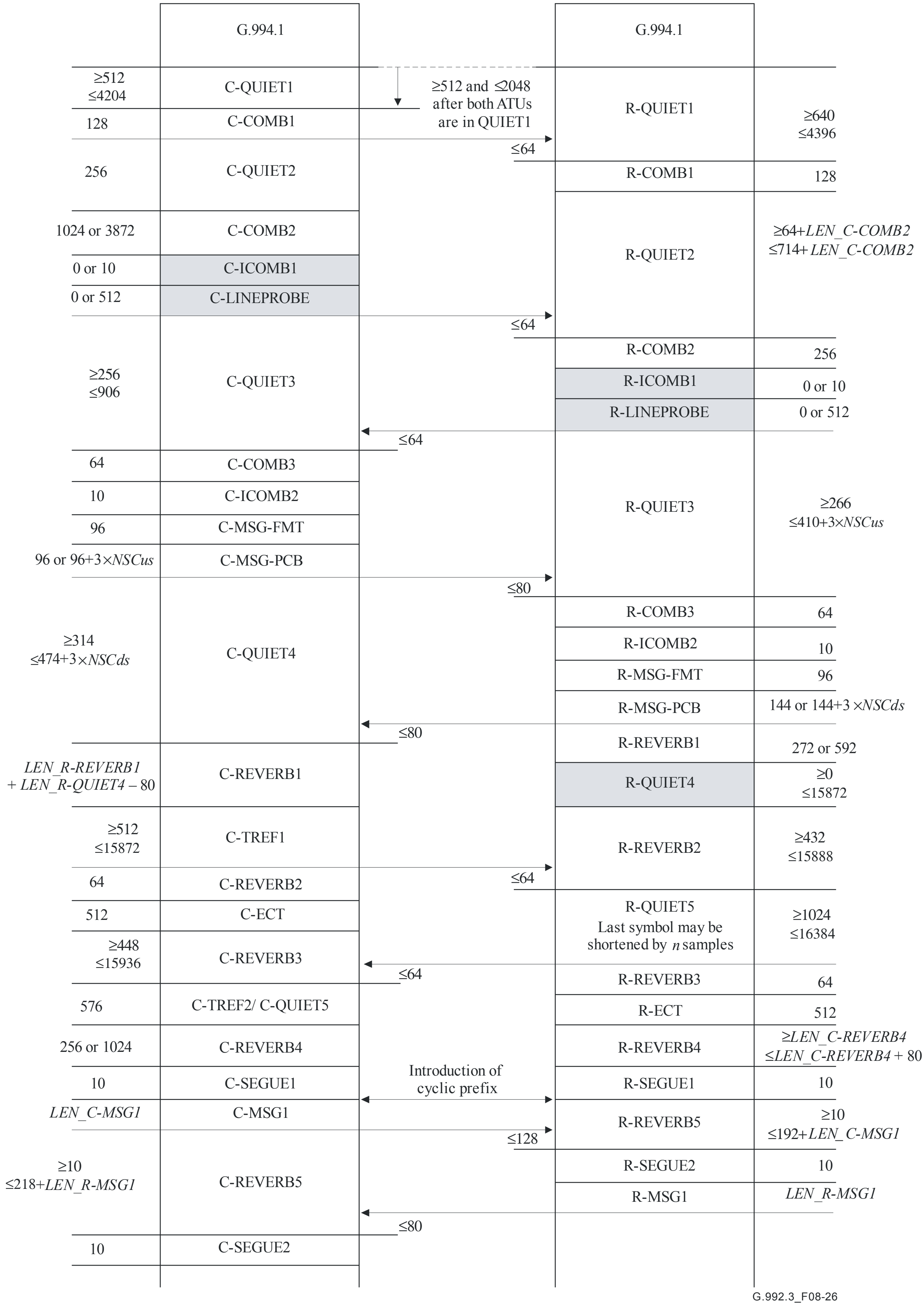


Figure 8-26 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 1)

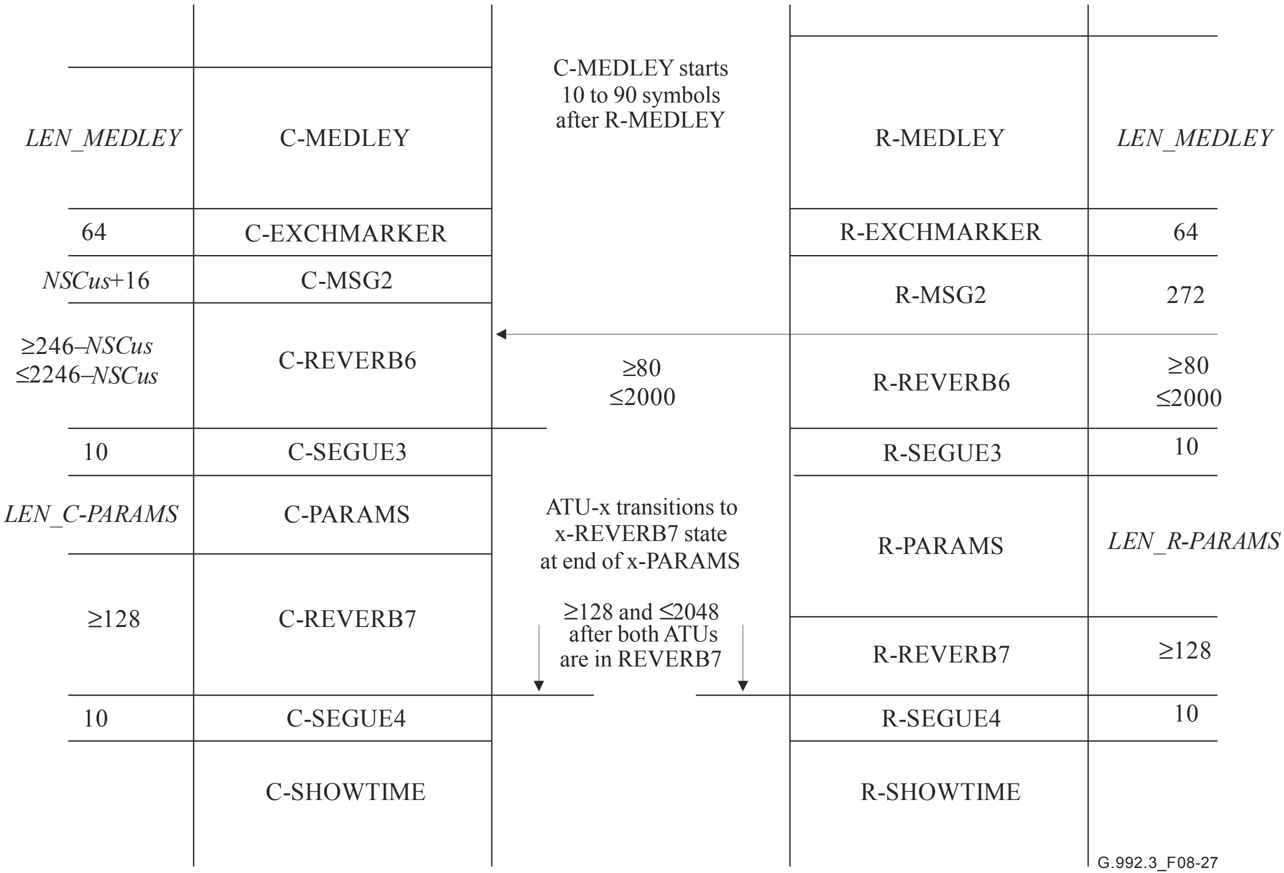


Figure 8-27 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 2) with C-PARAMS and with R-PARAMS states

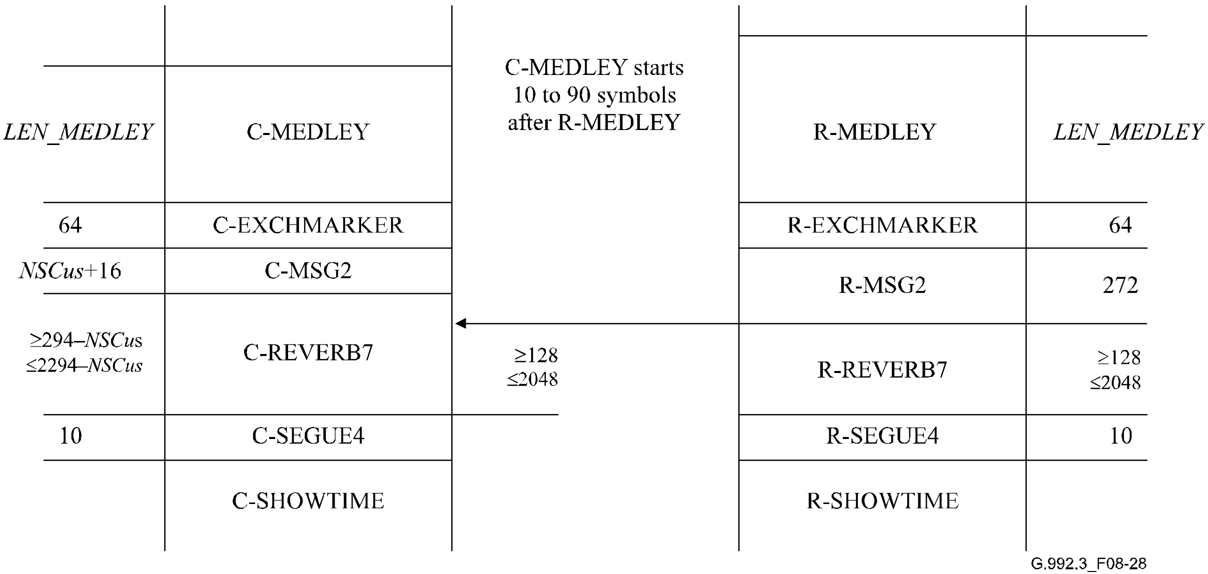


Figure 8-28 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 2) without C-PARAMS and without R-PARAMS states

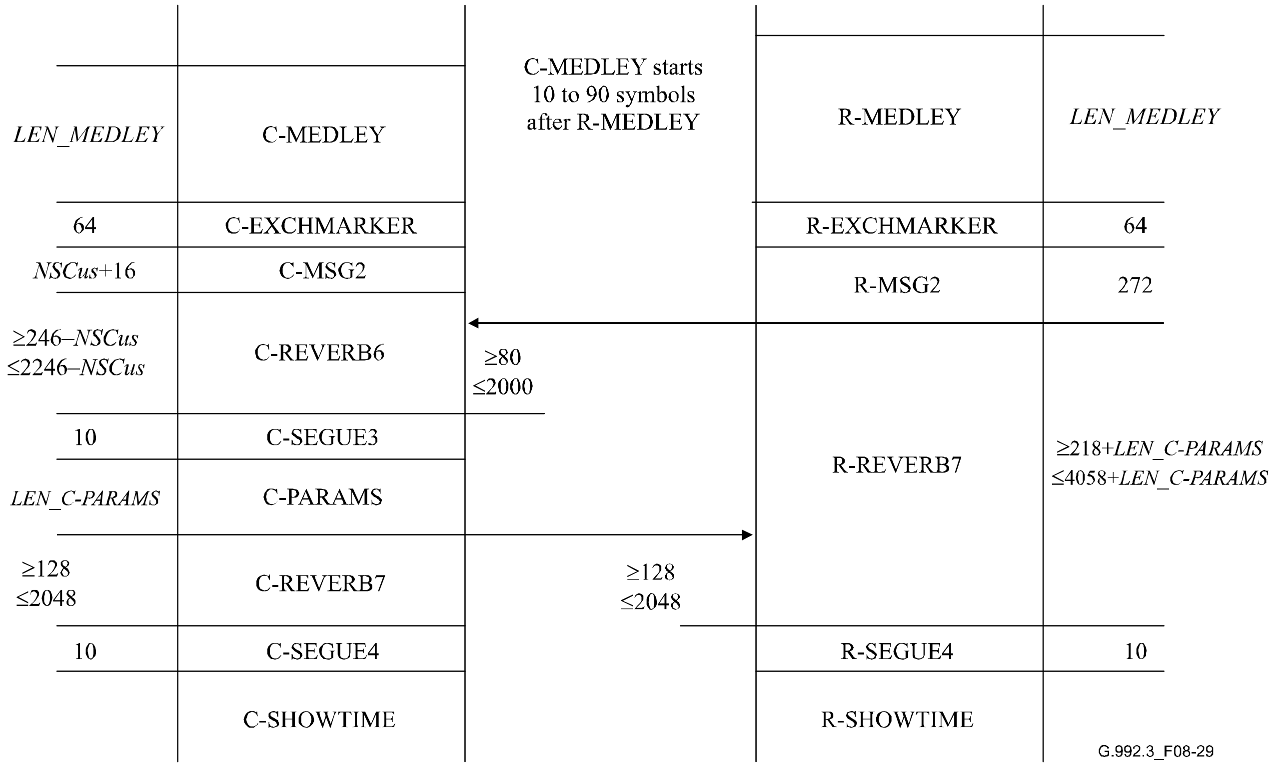


Figure 8-29 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 2) with C-PARAMS and without R-PARAMS states

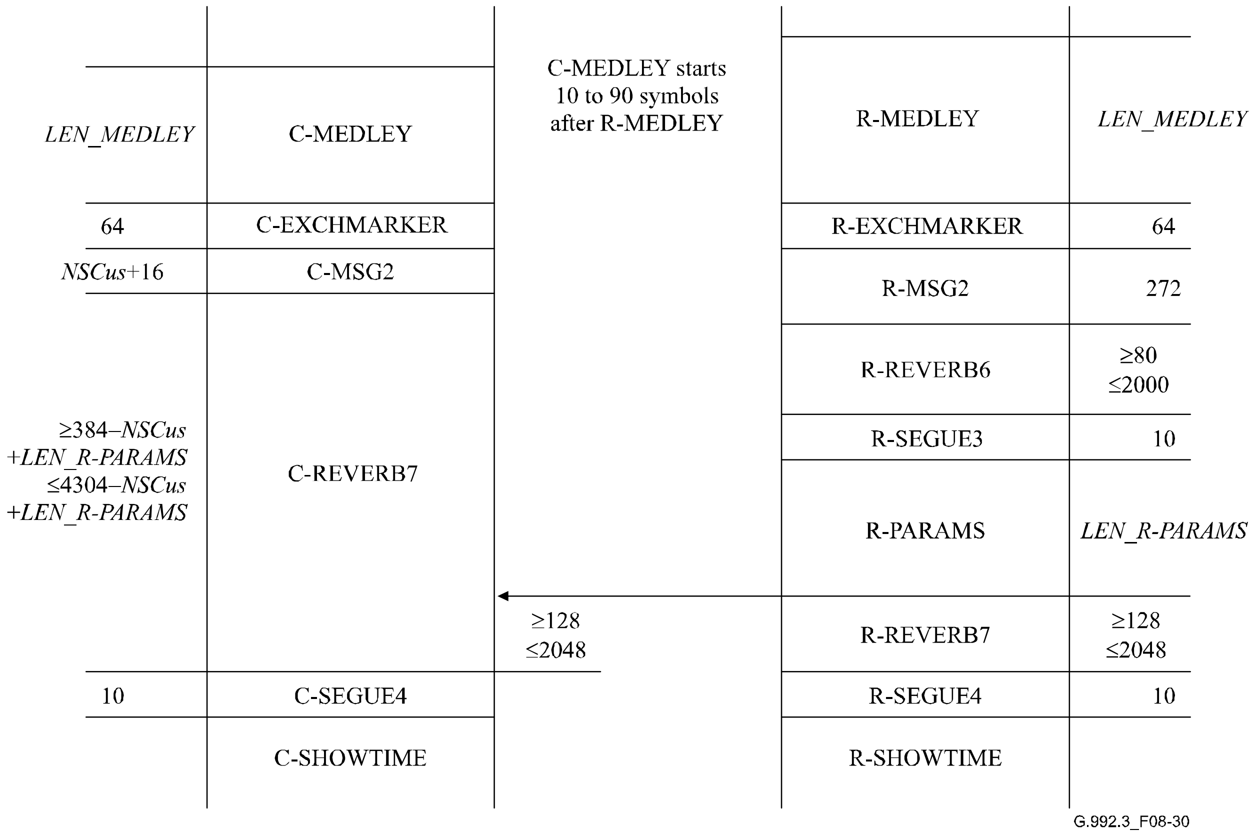


Figure 8-30 – Timing diagram of the initialization procedure (part 2) without C-PARAMS and with R-PARAMS states

8.14 Short initialization procedures

A short initialization sequence is defined to allow the ATUs to quickly enter showtime from an L3 power management state or as a fast recovery procedure from changing of line conditions during showtime. The short initialization sequence shall be optional for both ATU-C and ATU-R (with indication in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2). If the short initialization sequence is supported, the ATU should also support unbalanced bitswap (i.e., type 3 on-line reconfiguration with restriction to change b_i, g_i and L_p only, see clause 9.4.1.1).

The state diagram of the short sequence shall be the same as the one shown in Figures 8-26 to 8-30, with the exception of the entry procedures which shall be as depicted in Figures 8-31 and 8-32. Figure 8-31 shows the entry procedure for an ATU-C-initiated short initialization. The ATU-C shall keep transmitting 128 symbols of C-COMB1 followed by 256 symbols of silence (C-QUIET2) until either the ATU-R responds with R-COMB1 during one of the C-QUIET2 states or a vendor-discretionary timeout C-T1 is reached. If the short initialization is used as a fast recovery procedure from showtime, the ATU-R should reply to the first transmission of the C-COMB initialization signal.

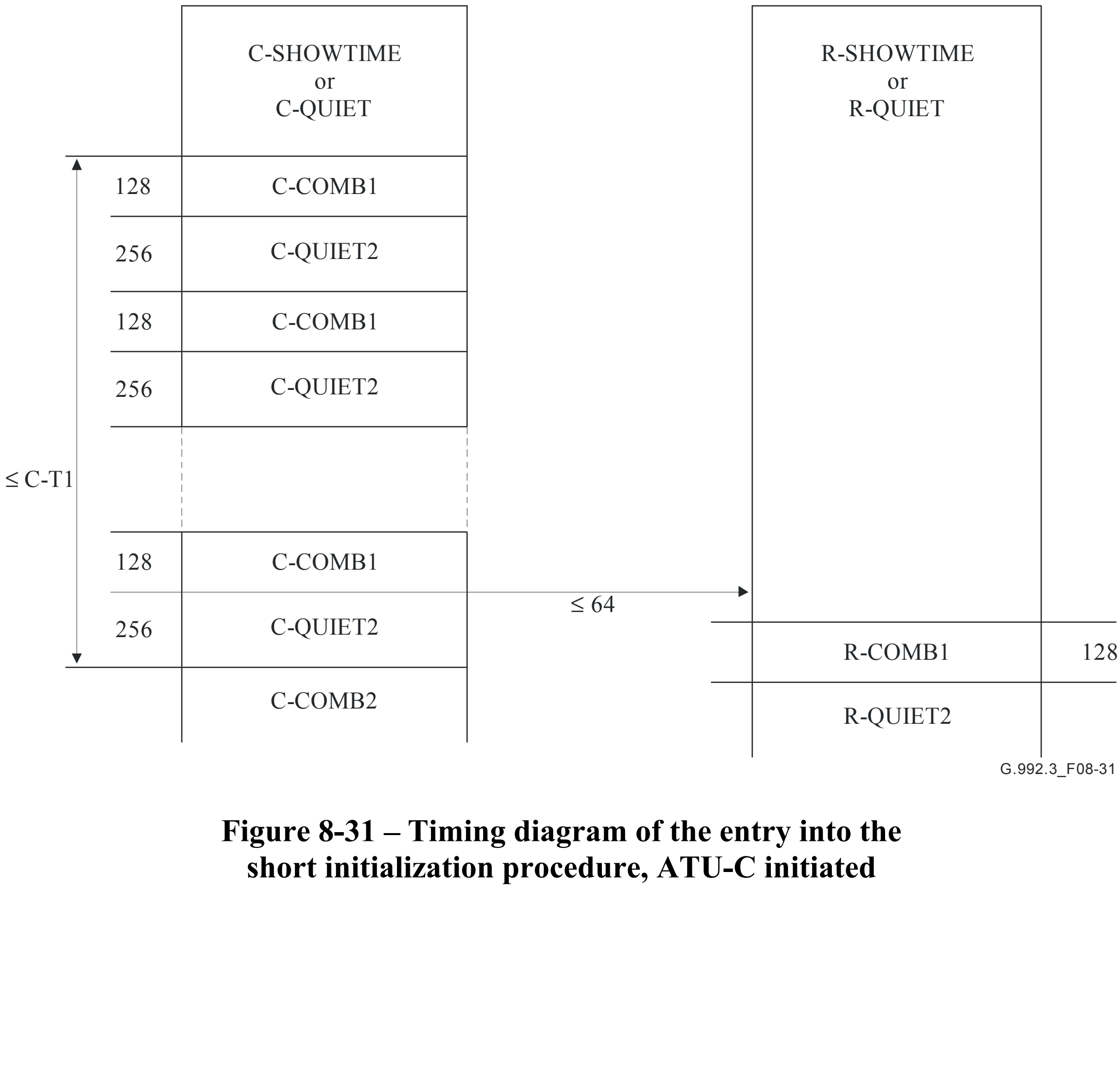


Figure 8-31 – Timing diagram of the entry into the short initialization procedure, ATU-C initiated

Figure 8-32 shows the entry procedure for an ATU-R-initiated short initialization. The ATU-R shall keep transmitting 128 symbols of R-COMB1 followed by 256 symbols of silence (R-QUIET2) until either the ATU-C responds with C-COMB2 during one of the R-QUIET2 states or a vendor-discretionary timeout R-T1 is reached. If the short initialization is used as a fast recovery procedure from showtime, the ATU-C should reply to the first transmission of the R-COMB initialization signal.

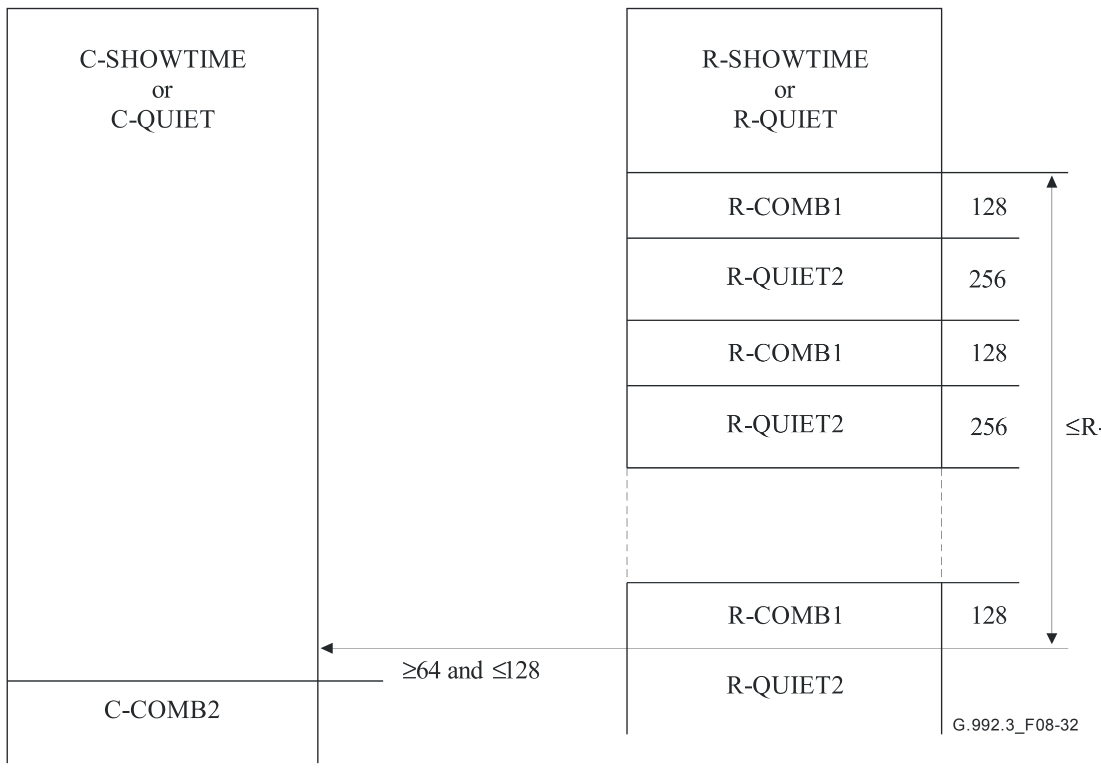


Figure 8-32 – Timing diagram of the entry into the short initialization procedure, ATU-R initiated

The short initialization procedure may be used for the link state transition from the L3 state to the L0 state (see clause 9.5.3). Fast error recovery (during the L0 or L2 link state) is through the short initialization procedure. At the start of the short initialization procedure, the ADSL link state shall be changed to the L3 state. When the ATU reaches the SHOWTIME state through the short initialization procedure, the ADSL link shall be in the L0 state (see Figure 9-5).

The short initialization procedure should be completed within 3 s. However, to meet this requirement, proper time budget balancing between the ATU-C and ATU-R is required. Table 8-41 lists recommended time budgets for the variable portions of each ATU initialization sequence. Figures 8-33 and 8-34 show the recommended timing diagram for the short initialization procedure.

Table 8-41 – Recommended duration for variable portions of the initialization sequence

ATU state	Recommended duration (symbols)	Note
C-MSG-PCB	= 96	No C-BLACKOUT bits included (last previous exchanged BLACKOUT bits remain valid).
R-MSG-PCB	= 144	No R-BLACKOUT bits included (last previous exchanged BLACKOUT bits remain valid).
R-REVERB1	= 272	
R-QUIET4	= 0	ATU-C hybrid fine tuning state is skipped.
C-TREF1	≤ 1024	Faster upstream channel estimation, less precise timing and no ATU-R hybrid fine tuning.
R-QUIET5	= 1024	
C-REVERB3	= 512 ± 64	Faster downstream channel estimation and equalizer training.
C-REVERB4	= 256	
C-MEDLEY	≤ 1024	Less accurate SNR estimation.
R-MEDLEY	≤ 1024	Less accurate SNR estimation.
C-REVERB6	≤ 120	Limit through faster and simpler bit allocation algorithm.
R-REVERB6	≤ 120	Limit through faster and simpler bit allocation algorithm.

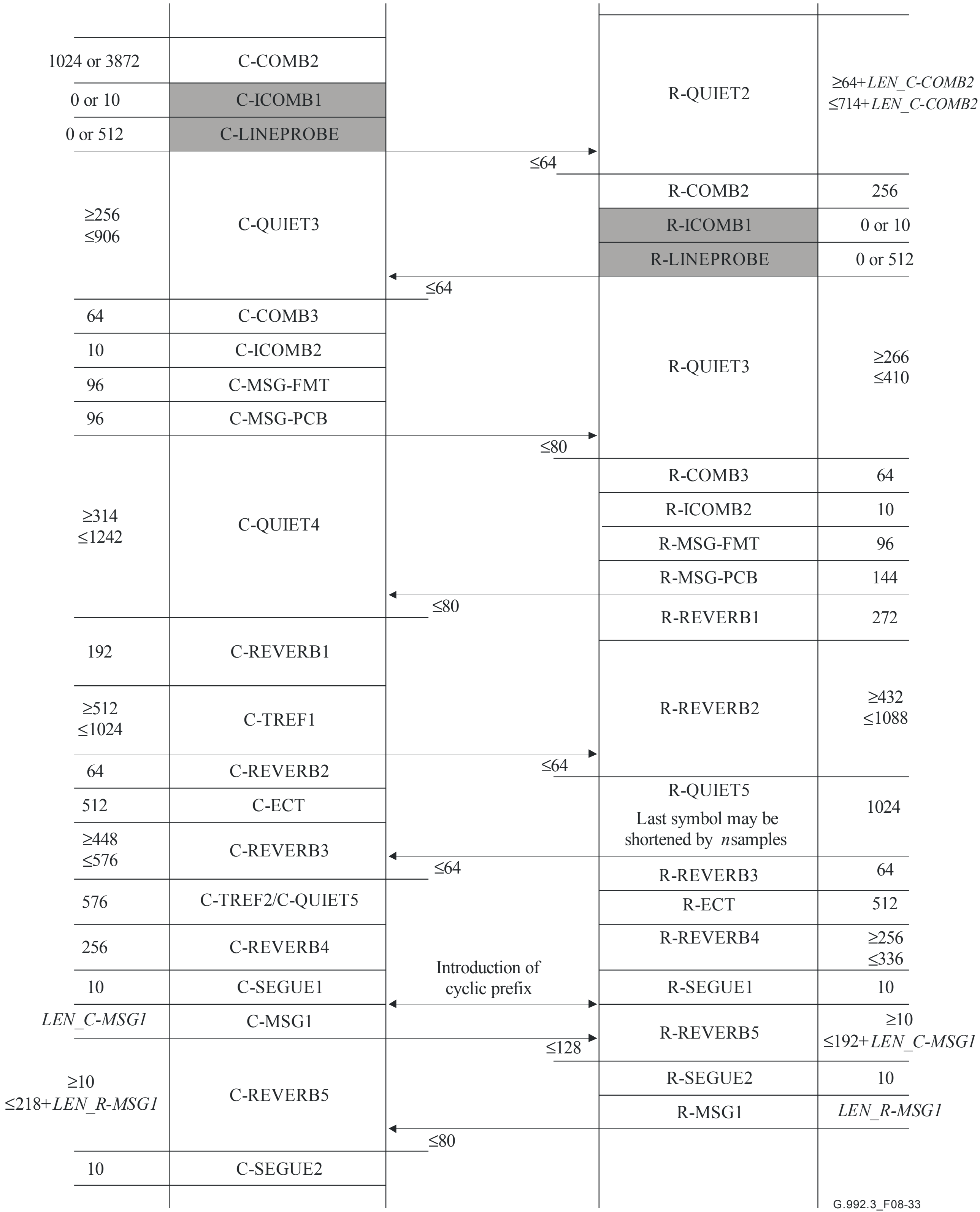


Figure 8-33 – Timing diagram of the short initialization procedure (part 1)

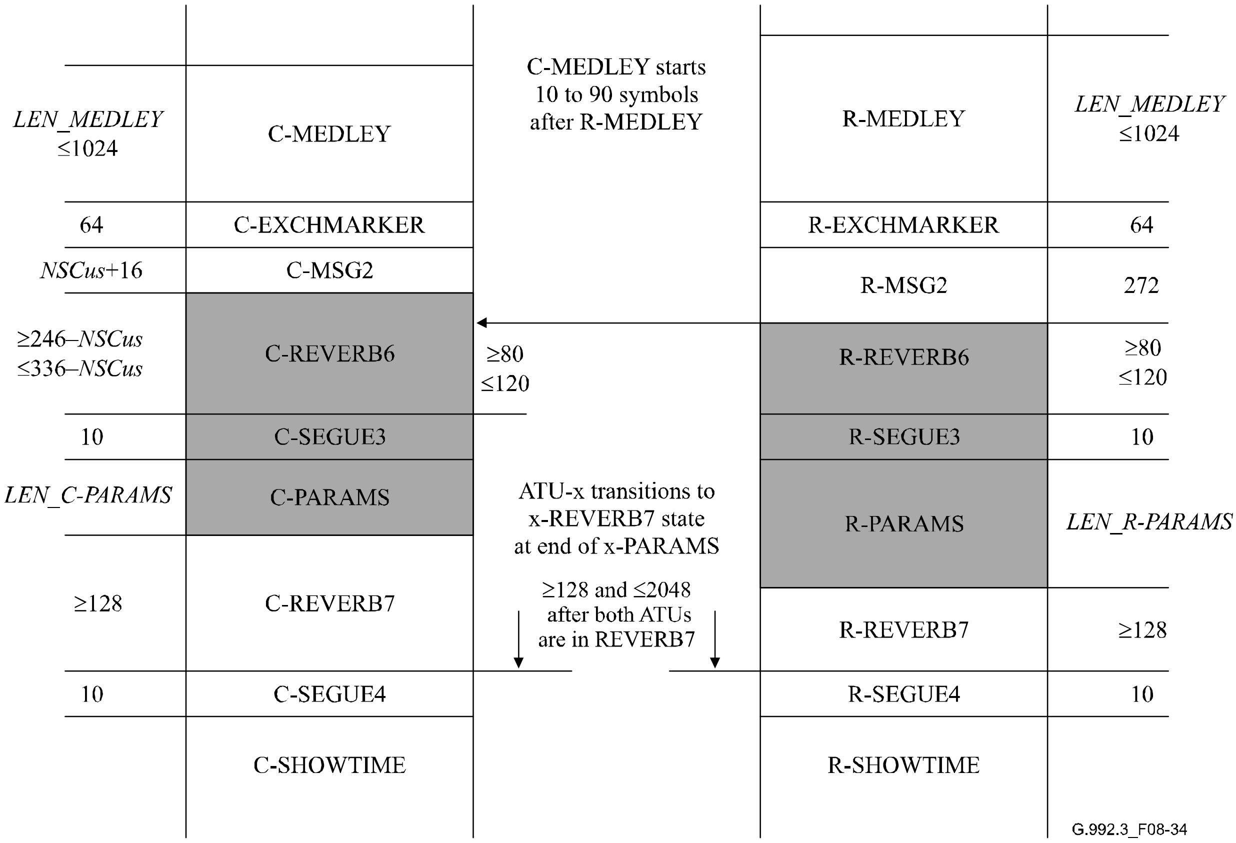


Figure 8-34 – Timing diagram of the short initialization procedure (part 2)

8.15 Loop diagnostics mode procedures

8.15.1 Overview

The built-in loop diagnostic function defined in this clause enables the immediate measurement of line conditions at both ends of the line without dispatching maintenance technicians to attach test equipment to the line. The resulting information helps to isolate the location (inside the premises, near the customer end of the line, or near the network end of the line) and the sources (crosstalk, radio frequency interference, and bridged tap) of impairments.

The loop diagnostics mode (defined in clause 8.15) shall be entered from the ITU-T G.994.1 initialization phase when the loop diagnostic mode codepoint in the MS message is set (see clause 8.13.2). Either ATU may request to enter loop diagnostics mode. Both ATU-C and ATU-R shall support the loop diagnostics mode.

The sequence of states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13), up to the MEDLEY state. Each variable length state of the initialization sequence shall have a fixed duration in loop diagnostics mode, equal to the maximum duration of the state, with the exception of R-QUIET1.

After the C-EXCHMARKER and R-EXCHMARKER states, the ATUs shall enter a Loop diagnostic mode-specific sequence of states. During these states, some channel information that has been gathered during the previous initialization states is exchanged. Specifically, the test parameters listed in Table 8-42 and defined in clause 8.12.3 are exchanged.

Table 8-42 – Test parameters exchanged in line diagnostics mode

Abbreviation	Name
Hlin(i × Δ*f*)	Channel characteristics per subcarrier, linear
Hlog(i × Δ*f*)	Channel characteristics per subcarrier, log
QLN(i × Δ*f*)	Quiet line noise per subcarrier
SNR(i × Δ*f*)	Signal-to-noise ratio per subcarrier
LATN	Loop attenuation
SATN	Signal attenuation
SNRM	Signal-to-noise ratio margin
ATTNDR	Attainable net data rate
ACTATP	Actual aggregate transmit power (far-end)

The test parameters are mapped into messages using an integer number of octets per parameter value. In case the parameter value as defined in clause 8.12.3 is represented with a number of bits that is not an integer number of octets, the parameter value shall be mapped into the least significant bits of the message octets. Unused more significant bits shall be set to 0 for unsigned parameter values and shall be set to the sign bit for signed parameter values.

After the exchange of the test parameters listed in Table 8-42, the ATUs shall transition to the L3 state.

8.15.2 Channel discovery phase

8.15.2.1 ATU-C channel discovery phase

The sequence of states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13.3.1). Each state shall have a fixed duration in loop diagnostics mode, as shown in the loop diagnostics mode timing diagram in Figure 8-35.

The signals transmitted during each of the states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13.3.1).

The states C-ICOMB1, C-LINEPROBE and the C-BLACKOUT bits shall be included during an initialization in loop diagnostic mode.

The C-MSG-FMT message shall be as defined in Table 8-43.

Table 8-43 – Bit definition for the C-MSG-FMT message

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
15 ... 0		Reserved, set to 0

The C-MSG-PCB message shall be as defined in Table 8-44.

Table 8-44 – Bit definition for the C-MSG-PCB message

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
5 ... 0	*C-MIN_PCB_DS*	See Table 8-27
11 ... 6	*C-MIN_PCB_US*	See Table 8-27
13 ... 12	*HOOK_STATUS*	See Table 8-27
15 ... 14		Reserved, set to 0
NSCus + 15 ... 16	*C_BLACKOUT*	See Table 8-27
NSCus + 23 ... *NSCus* + 16	Pass/fail	Success or failure cause indication of last previous initialization
NSCus + 31...*NSCus* + 24	*Last_TX_State*	Last transmitted state of last previous initialization

The pass/fail bits shall contain a success or failure cause indication. The possible indications and their coding shall be as defined in Table 8-45. If the initialization in loop diagnostics mode is immediately following the ATU-C power-up, information about the last previous initialization may not be available. In that case, a successful last previous initialization shall be indicated.

Table 8-45 – Success and failure cause indications

Value (higher bit index left)	Definition
1111 1111	Successful
0001 0001	Failed – Insufficient capacity
0010 0010	Failed – CRC error in one of the received messages
0100 0100	Failed – Timeout exceeded
1000 1000	Failed – Unexpected received message content
0000 0000	Failed – Cause unknown
Other	Reserved

The *Last_TX_State* bits shall contain the index of the last ATU-C state that was successfully transmitted during the last previous initialization. The index of the ATU-C state shall be represented by an 8-bit integer value from 0 (ITU-T G.994.1 phase) and 1 (C-QUIET1) to 31 (C-SEGUE4) and 32 (C-SHOWTIME). The states shall be numbered in the order transmitted in time, as shown in the timing diagrams in Figures 8-35 and 8-36. The states that can be optionally omitted shall also be counted when calculating the index of a state. For example, the index of C-QUIET3 shall always be 7 regardless of whether or not the C-ICOMB1 and C-LINE-PROBE states are included. In case the first octet of C-MSG-PCB indicates a successful initialization, this second octet shall encode the index of the last state, i.e., the index of C-SHOWTIME.

An addition of a CRC and the bit transmission order for the C-MSG-FMT and C-MSG-PCB messages shall be as defined for the initialization sequence in clause 8.13.3.1. However, the message and CRC bits shall be transmitted with 8 symbols per bit modulation, where a zero bit shall be transmitted as 8 consecutive C-COMB symbols, and a one bit shall be transmitted as 8 consecutive C-ICOMB symbols. This will make the transmission more robust against misdetection of the time marker transitions that precede these messages.

8.15.2.2 ATU-R channel discovery phase

The sequence of states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13.3.2). Each state shall have a fixed duration in loop diagnostics mode, as shown in the loop diagnostics mode timing diagram in Figure 8-35.

The signals transmitted during each of the states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13.3.2).

The states R-ICOMB1 and R-LINEPROBE states and the R-BLACKOUT bits shall be included during an initialization in loop diagnostic mode.

The R-MSG-FMT message shall be as defined in Table 8-46.

Table 8-46 – Bit definition for the R-MSG-FMT message

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
7…0		Reserved, set to 0
8	*FMT-C-TREF2*	See Table 8-31
9	*FMT-C-PILOT*	See Table 8-31
15…10		Reserved, set to 0

The R-MSG-PCB message shall be as defined in Table 8-47.

Table 8-47 – Bit definition for the R-MSG-PCB message

Bit index	Parameter	Definition
5…0	*R-MIN_PCB_DS*	See Table 8-32
11…6	*R-MIN_PCB_US*	See Table 8-32
13…12	*HOOK_STATUS*	See Table 8-32
15…14		Reserved, set to 0
23…16	*C-PILOT*	See Table 8-32
31…24		Reserved, set to 0
31 + *NSCds*…32	*R-BLACKOUT*	See Table 8-32
287…32 + *NSCds*		Reserved, set to 0 (see Note)
295…288	Pass/fail	Success or failure cause indication of last previous initialization
303…296	*Last_TX_State*	Last transmitted state of last previous initialization
NOTE – These reserved bits are present only if *NSCds* < 256 (as in [b-ITU-T G.992.4]).		

The pass/fail bits shall contain a success or failure cause indication. The possible indications and their coding shall be as defined for the ATU-C in Table 8-45. If the initialization in loop diagnostics mode is immediately following the ATU-R power-up or self test, information about the last previous initialization may not be available. In that case, a successful last previous initialization shall be indicated.

The *Last_TX_State* bits shall contain the index of the last ATU-R state that was successfully transmitted during the last previous initialization. The index of the ATU-R state shall be represented by an 8-bit integer value from 0 (ITU-T G.994.1 phase) and 1 (R-QUIET1) to 30 (R-SEGUE4) and 31 (R-SHOWTIME). The states shall be numbered in the order transmitted in time, as shown in the timing diagrams in Figures 8-35 and 8-36. The states that can be optionally omitted shall also be counted when calculating the index of a state. For example, the index of R-QUIET3 shall always be 7 regardless of whether or not the R-ICOMB1 and R-LINE-PROBE states are included. In case the first octet of the C-MSG-PCB message indicates a successful initialization, this second octet shall encode the index of the last state, i.e., the index of R-SHOWTIME.

The addition of a 16-bit CRC and the bit transmission order for the R-MSG-FMT and R-MSG-PCB messages shall be as defined for the initialization sequence in clause 8.13.3.2. However, the bits shall be transmitted with 8 symbols per bit modulation, where a zero bit shall be transmitted as 8 consecutive R-COMB symbols, and a one bit shall be transmitted as 8 consecutive R-ICOMB symbols. This will make the transmission more robust against misdetection of the time marker transitions that precede these messages.

8.15.3 Transceiver training phase

The sequence of states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13.4). Each state shall have fixed duration in loop diagnostics mode, as shown in the loop diagnostics mode timing diagram in Figure 8-35.

The signals transmitted during each of the states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13.4).

The ATU-R shall include the R-QUIET4 state.

8.15.4 Channel analysis phase

The sequence of states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13.5). Each state shall have a fixed duration in loop diagnostics mode, as shown in the loop diagnostics mode timing diagram in Figures 8-35 and 8-36.

The signals transmitted during each of the states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be the same as for the initialization sequence (defined in clause 8.13.5).

The ATU-C shall not transmit the C-MSG1 message.

The ATU-R shall not transmit the R-MSG1 message.

The PMD control parameters exchanged in the MSG1 messages during initialization (see clauses 8.5.1 and 8.5.3.2) shall take the default values defined in Table 8-48 for use during diagnostics mode.

Table 8-48 – Default values for PMD control parameters

PMD control parameter	Default value
TARSNRM	6 dB
MAXSNRM	Infinite
EXTGI	*MAXNOMPSD – NOMPSD*
BIMAX	15

During the EXCHMARKER state, the ATU shall transmit REVERB symbols.

During the loop diagnostic mode, the symbol counter that was initialized at the start of the R-MEDLEY state is kept counting throughout the remainder of the initialization in loop diagnostics mode. Any state transition after the R-MEDLEY state shall occur at multiples of 64 as per this counter value.

8.15.5 Exchange phase

8.15.5.1 ATU-C exchange phase

The sequence of states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be as shown in the loop diagnostics mode timing diagram in Figures 8-35 and 8-36. Every time the ATU-C successfully receives a message from the ATU-R, the ATU-C passes through the C-ACK-LD state to send an acknowledgement to the ATU-R. Every time the ATU-C passes through the C-MSGx-LD state, one message containing loop diagnostics information is sent to the ATU-R.

The C-SEGUE-LD state shall consist of 64 C-SEGUE symbols and shall precede each message as a time marker.

In the C-ACK-LD, C-SEGUE-LD and C-MSGx-LD state, the ATU-C transmits C-REVERB or C-SEGUE symbols. When not in the C-ACK-LD, C-SEGUE-LD or C-MSGx-LD state, the ATU-C shall send a filler signal which shall consist of C-TREF symbols. The C-REVERB, C-SEGUE and C-TREF symbols shall be defined as for the initialization sequence in clause 8.13.

8.15.5.1.1 Channel information bearing messages

In the loop diagnostics mode, the ATU-C shall send five messages to the ATU-R: C-MSG1-LD to C-MSG5-LD. These messages contain the upstream test parameters defined in clause 8.15.1.

The information fields of the different messages shall be as shown in Tables 8-49 to 8-53.

Table 8-49 – Format of the C-MSG1-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0001 0001]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlin scale (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlin scale (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
4	*LATN* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	*LATN* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
6	*SATN* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
7	*SATN* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
8	*SNRM* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
9	*SNRM* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
10	*ATTNDR* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
11	*ATTNDR*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
12	*ATTNDR*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 23 to 16
13	*ATTNDR* (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 31 to 24
14	Far-end *ACTATP* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
15	Far-end *ACTATP* (MSB)	[ssss ssxx], bit 9 and 8

Table 8-50 – Format of the C-MSG2-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0010 0010]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlin(0) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlin(0) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
4	Hlin(0) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	Hlin(0) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
…..	…..	…..
4 × *NSCus* – 2	Hlin(*NSCus* – 1) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
4 × *NSCus* – 1	Hlin(*NSCus* – 1) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
4 × *NSCus*	Hlin(*NSCus* – 1) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
4 × *NSCus* + 1	Hlin(*NSCus* – 1) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8

Table 8-51 – Format of the C-MSG3-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0011 0011]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlog(0) (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlog(0) (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
…..	…..	…..
2 × *NSCus*	Hlog(*NSCus* – 1) (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
2 × *NSCus* + 1	Hlog(*NSCus* – 1) (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8

Table 8-52 – Format of the C-MSG4-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0100 0100]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	QLN(0)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
…..	…..	…..
NSCus + 1	QLN(*NSCus* – 1)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0

Table 8-53 – Format of the C-MSG5-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0101 0101]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	SNR(0)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
…..	…..	…..
NSCus + 1	SNR(*NSCus* – 1)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0

The value *NSCus* represents the number of upstream subcarriers used and is defined in the annex corresponding to the chosen application option.

The messages shall be transmitted in order of ascending octet number (i.e., the sequence number shall be transmitted first) and each octet shall be transmitted LSB first.

The addition of a 16-bit CRC and the bit transmission order for the C-MSGx-LD messages shall be as defined for the initialization sequence in clause 8.13. However, the message and CRC bits shall be transmitted with an 8 symbols per bit modulation, where a zero bit shall be transmitted as eight consecutive C-REVERB symbols and a one bit shall be transmitted as eight consecutive C-SEGUE symbols. The resulting state duration (needed to transmit the message and CRC) is shown in Table 8-54.

Table 8-54 – ATU-C loop diagnostics state durations

State	Duration (symbols)	*NSCus* = 32	*NSCus* = 64
C-MSG1-LD	1152	1152	1152
C-MSG2-LD	256 + 256 × *NSCus*	8448	16640
C-MSG3-LD	256 + 128 × *NSCus*	4352	8448
C-MSG4-LD	256 + 64 × *NSCus*	2304	4352
C-MSG5-LD	256 + 64 × *NSCus*	2304	4352

8.15.5.1.2 Message flow, acknowledgement and retransmission

At the start of the exchange phase, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-TREF1-LD state (in which C-TREF symbols shall be transmitted until the first R-MSGx-LD message is received).

If the ATU-C receives an R-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-ACK or C-NACK state within 128 symbols from the end of the R-MSGx-LD state. If the R-MSGx-LD message is successfully received, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-ACK state (in which a positive acknowledgment C-ACK message shall be transmitted). Instead, if a decoding error occurs (i.e., the CRC locally computed at the ATU-C does not correspond to the CRC transmitted by the ATU-R), the ATU-C shall transition to the C-NACK state.

The C-ACK message shall be represented by the "01010101" octet and shall be transmitted over 64 symbol periods using the same modulation technique as the loop diagnostics information bearing messages. No CRC shall be added to the C-ACK message. In the C-NACK state, the ATU-C shall transmit 64 C-TREF symbols. Note that from the ATU-R's perspective, this is equivalent to the ATU-C not responding to the R-MSGx-LD message.

At the end of the C-ACK or C-NACK state, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-TREF2-LD state (in which 256 C-TREF symbols shall be transmitted). During the C-TREF2-LD state, the ATU-R transitions to the R-QUIET2-LD state (because the R-ACK message is successfully received and no more R-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted) or the ATU-R transitions to the

R-SEGUE-LD state (because no, or a corrupted, C-ACK message is received or more R-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted). At the end of the C-TREF2-LD state, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-SEGUE-LD state (if the ATU-R has transitioned to the R-QUIET2-LD state) or shall return to the C-TREF1-LD state (if the ATU-R has returned to the R-SEGUE-LD state).

Note that, as a result of a corrupted C-ACK message, the ATU-C could successfully receive the same message twice. In this case, the ATU-C shall ignore the second identical (same sequence number) message.

The C-SEGUE-LD state (in which 64 C-SEGUE symbols shall be transmitted) shall be followed by the first C-MSGx-LD state (in which the first R-MSGx-LD message shall be transmitted).

After transmitting a C-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-TREF3-LD state (in which 256 C-TREF symbols shall be transmitted). During the C-TREF3-LD state, the ATU-C may or may not receive an R-ACK message. At the end of the C-TREF3-LD state, the ATU-C shall return to the C-SEGUE-LD state to resend the last previously transmitted C-MSGx-LD message (if no or a corrupted R-ACK message was received) or to transmit the next C-MSGx-LD message (if an R-ACK message was successfully received and more C-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted). The number of times a message is resent before the ATU-C invokes the initialization reset procedure, is vendor discretionary.

At the end of the C-TREF3-LD state, after successfully receiving the last R-ACK message in response to the last R-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-C shall transition to the C-IDLE state (see Annex D) and the ADSL link state shall be changed to the L3 state.

The L3 state is defined in clause 9.5.1.3.

8.15.5.2 ATU-R exchange phase

The sequence of states in the loop diagnostics mode shall be as shown in the loop diagnostics mode timing diagram in Figures 8-35 and 8-36. Every time the ATU-R successfully receives a message from the ATU-C, the ATU-R passes through the R-ACK-LD state to send an acknowledgement to the ATU-C. Every time the ATU-R passes through the R-MSGx-LD state, one message containing loop diagnostics information is sent to the ATU-C.

The R-SEGUE-LD state shall consist of 64 R-SEGUE symbols and shall precede each message as a time marker.

In the R-ACK-LD, R-SEGUE-LD and R-MSGx-LD state, the ATU-R transmits R-REVERB or R-SEGUE symbols. When not in the R-ACK-LD, R-SEGUE-LD or R-MSGx-LD state, the ATU-R shall send a filler signal, which shall consist of R-QUIET symbols. The R-REVERB, R-SEGUE and R-QUIET symbols shall be defined as for the initialization sequence in clause 8.13.

8.15.5.2.1 Channel information bearing messages

In the loop diagnostics mode, the ATU-R shall send nine messages to the ATU-C: R-MSG1-LD to R-MSG9-LD. These messages contain the downstream test parameters defined in clause 8.15.1.

The information fields of the different messages shall be as shown in Tables 8-55 to 8-63.

Table 8-55 – Format of the R-MSG1-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0001 0001]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlin scale (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlin scale (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
4	*LATN* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	*LATN* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
6	*SATN* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
7	*SATN* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
8	*SNRM* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
9	*SNRM* (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
10	*ATTNDR* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
11	*ATTNDR*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
12	*ATTNDR*	[xxxx xxxx], bit 23 to 16
13	*ATTNDR* (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 31 to 24
14	Far-end *ACTATP* (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
15	Far-end *ACTATP* (MSB)	[ssss ssxx], bit 9 and 8

Table 8-56 – Format of the R-MSG2-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0010 0010]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlin(0) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlin(0) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
4	Hlin(0) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	Hlin(0) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
…..	…..	…..
254	Hlin(63) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
255	Hlin(63) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
256	Hlin(63) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
257	Hlin(63) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8

Table 8-57 – Format of the R-MSG3-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0011 0011]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlin(64) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlin(64) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
4	Hlin(64) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	Hlin(64) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
…..	…..	…..
254	Hlin(127) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
255	Hlin(127) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
256	Hlin(127) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
257	Hlin(127) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8

Table 8-58 – Format of the R-MSG4-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0100 0100]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlin(128) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlin(128) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
4	Hlin(128) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	Hlin(128) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
…..	…..	…..
254	Hlin(191) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
255	Hlin(191) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
256	Hlin(191) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
257	Hlin(191) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8

Table 8-59 – Format of the R-MSG5-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0101 0101]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlin(192) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlin(192) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
4	Hlin(192) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
5	Hlin(192) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
…..	…..	…..
254	Hlin(255) real (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
255	Hlin(255) real (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8
256	Hlin(255) imag (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
257	Hlin(255) imag (MSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 15 to 8

Table 8-60 – Format of the R-MSG6-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0110 0110]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlog(0) (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlog(0) (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
…..	…..	…..
256	Hlog(127) (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
257	Hlog(127) (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8

Table 8-61 – Format of the R-MSG7-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[0111 0111]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	Hlog(128) (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
3	Hlog(128) (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8
…..	…..	…..
256	Hlog(255) (LSB)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
257	Hlog(255) (MSB)	[0000 00xx], bit 9 and 8

Table 8-62 – Format of the R-MSG8-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[1000 1000]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	QLN(0)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
…..	…..	…..
257	QLN(255)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0

Table 8-63 – Format of the R-MSG9-LD message

Octet Nr [i]	Information	Format message bits [8 × i + 7 to 8 × i + 0]
0	Sequence number	[1001 1001]
1	Reserved	[0000 0000]
2	SNR(0)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
…..	…..	…..
257	SNR(255)	[xxxx xxxx], bit 7 to 0
NOTE – In the case where the *NSCds* < 256 (as in [b-ITU-T G.992.4]), all line diagnostics messages are transmitted. However, in the messages carrying per-subcarrier information, the special value defined in clause 8.12.3 may be used to indicate that no measurement could be done for this subcarrier because it is out of the PSD mask passband.		

The messages shall be transmitted in order of ascending octet number (i.e., the sequence number shall be transmitted first) and each octet shall be transmitted LSB first.

The addition of a 16-bit CRC and the bit transmission order for the R-MSGx-LD messages shall be as defined for the initialization sequence in clause 8.13. However, the message and CRC bits shall be transmitted with an 8 symbols per bit modulation, where a zero bit shall be transmitted as eight consecutive R-REVERB symbols and a one bit shall be transmitted as eight consecutive R-SEGUE symbols. The resulting state duration (needed to transmit the message and CRC) is shown in Table 8-64.

Table 8-64 –ATU-R loop diagnostics state durations

State	Duration (symbols)
R-MSG1-LD	1152
R-MSG2-LD	16640
R-MSG3-LD	16640
R-MSG4-LD	16640
R-MSG5-LD	16640
R-MSG6-LD	16640
R-MSG7-LD	16640
R-MSG8-LD	16640
R-MSG9-LD	16640

The resulting number of symbols needed to transmit each of the messages and CRC is shown in the loop diagnostics timing diagrams in Figures 8-35 and 8-36.

8.15.5.2.2 Message flow, acknowledgement and retransmission

At the start of the exchange phase, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-SEGUE-LD state (in which 64 R-SEGUE symbols shall be transmitted), followed by the first R-MSGx-LD state (in which the first R-MSGx-LD message shall be transmitted).

After transmitting an R-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-QUIET1-LD state (in which 256 R-QUIET symbols shall be transmitted). During the R-QUIET1-LD state, the ATU-R may or may not receive a C-ACK message. At the end of the R-QUIET1-LD state, the ATU-R shall return to the R-SEGUE-LD state to resend the last previously transmitted R-MSGx-LD message (if no, or a corrupted C-ACK, message was received) or to transmit the next R-MSGx-LD message (if a C-ACK message was successfully received and more R-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted). The number of times a message is resent before the ATU-R invokes the initialization reset procedure, is vendor discretionary.

At the end of the R-QUIET1-LD state, after successfully receiving the last C-ACK message in response to the last R-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-QUIET2-LD state (in which R-QUIET symbols shall be transmitted until the first C-MSGx-LD message is received).

If the ATU-R receives a C-MSGx-LD message, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-ACK or R-NACK state within 128 symbols from the end of the C-MSGx-LD state. If the C-MSGx-LD message is successfully received, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-ACK state (in which a positive acknowledgment R-ACK message shall be transmitted). Instead, if a decoding error occurs (i.e., the CRC locally computed at the ATU-R does not correspond to the CRC transmitted by the ATU-C), the ATU-R shall transition to the R-NACK state.

The R-ACK message shall be represented by the "01010101" octet and shall be transmitted over 64 symbol periods using the same modulation technique as the loop diagnostics information bearing messages. No CRC shall be added to the R-ACK message. In the R-NACK state, the ATU-R shall transmit 64 R-QUIET symbols. Note that from the ATU-C's perspective, this is equivalent to the ATU-R not responding to the C-MSGx-LD message.

At the end of the R-ACK or R-NACK state, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-QUIET3-LD state (in which 256 R-QUIET symbols shall be transmitted). During the R-QUIET3-LD state, the ATU-C transitions to the C-IDLE state (because the R-ACK message is successfully received and no more C-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted) or the ATU-C transitions to the C-SEGUE-LD state (because no, or a corrupted, R-ACK message is received or more C-MSGx-LD messages remain to be transmitted). At the end of the R-QUIET3-LD state, the ATU-R shall transition to the R-IDLE state (if the ATU-C has transitioned to the C-IDLE state) or shall return to the R-QUIET2-LD state (if the ATU-C has returned to the C-SEGUE-LD state). When the ATU-R transitions to the R-IDLE state (see Annex D), the ADSL link state shall be changed to the L3 state.

Note that, as a result of a corrupted R-ACK message, the ATU-R could successfully receive the same message twice. In this case, the ATU-R shall ignore the second identical (same sequence number) message.

The L3 state is defined in clause 9.5.1.3.

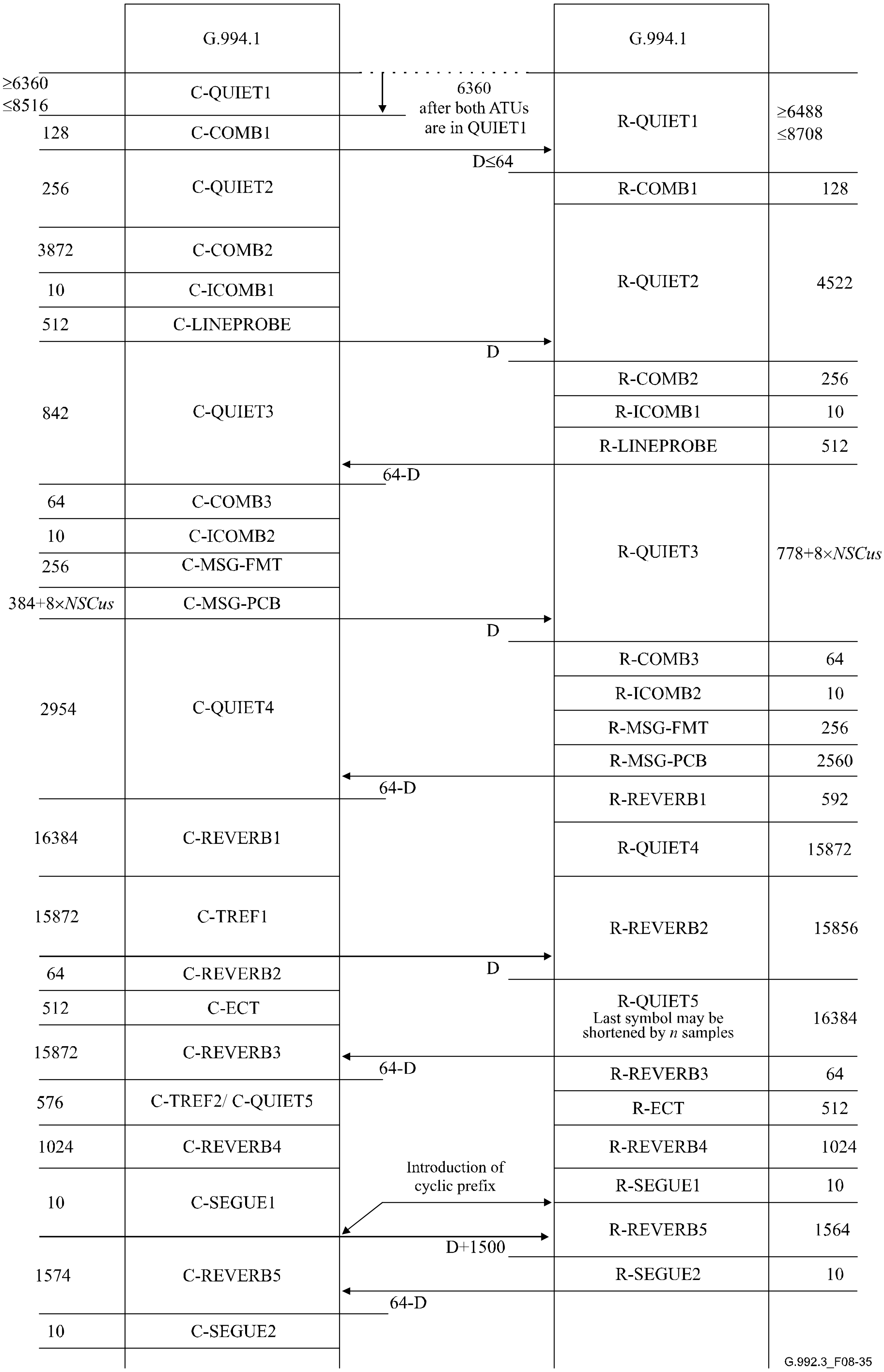


Figure 8-35 – Loop diagnostics timing diagram (part 1)

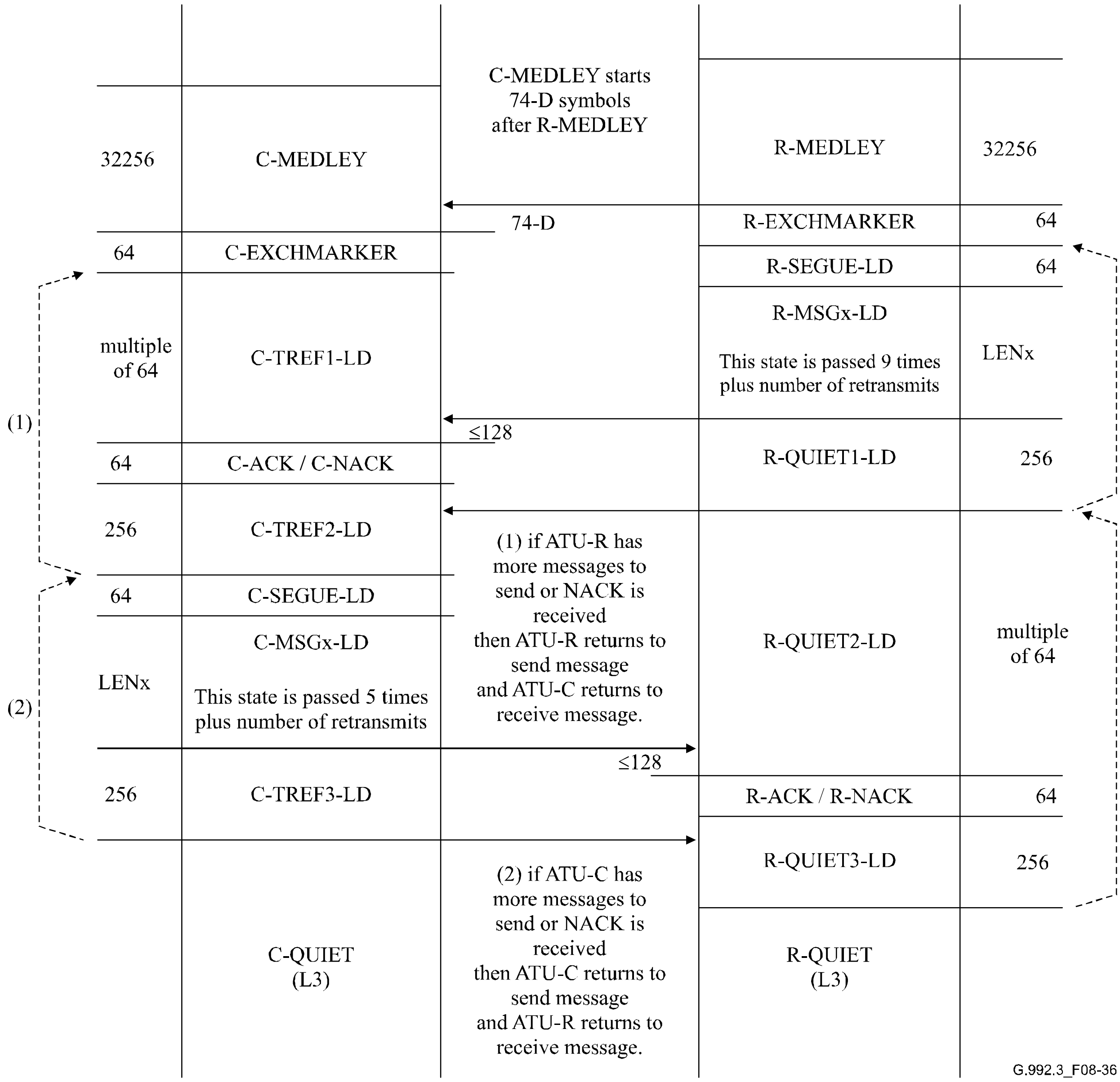


Figure 8-36 – Loop diagnostics timing diagram (part 2)

8.16 On-line reconfiguration of the PMD function

On-line reconfiguration of the PMD function is intended to allow changes in the control parameters without interruption of service and without errors (i.e., bitswap, dynamic rate repartitioning and seamless rate adaptation).

The procedures for on-line reconfiguration of the PMD function support:

- transparency to PMS-TC, TPS-TC and higher layers by providing means for configuration parameter changes that introduce no transport errors, no latency change and no interruption of service;
- changing parameters to adapt to slowly-varying line conditions; and
- changing parameters to dynamically change the data rate.

8.16.1 Control parameters

On-line reconfiguration of the PMD function is accomplished by a coordinated change to one or more of the control parameters defined in clause 8.5. The control parameters displayed in Table 8-65 may be changed through on-line reconfiguration within the limits described.

Table 8-65 – Reconfigurable control parameters of the PMD function

Parameter	Definition
b_i	The number of bits per subcarrier may be increased or decreased in the [0 ... *BIMAX*] range. A change of the b_i values may be performed with a constant L value (i.e., bitswap) or with a change of the L value (i.e., seamless rate adaptation).
g_i	The subcarrier gain scaling may be increased or decreased in the [–14.5 ... +2.5 + *EXTGI*] range.
L	The number of bits contained in a data frame (parameter derived from the b_i values).

The updated bits and gains table shall comply to the bits and gains table requirements listed in clause 8.6.4.

8.16.2 Timing of changes in subcarrier configuration

A change in the b_i and g_i values of one or more subcarriers is implemented by changing the corresponding PMD control parameter (see Table 8-4).

In the downstream direction, the reconfiguration of the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the second symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in the synchronization symbol at symbolcount 68, as defined in clause 8.7.3. Therefore, the downstream reconfiguration of the PMD function shall take effect starting with the symbol at symbolcount 1. The PMD function shall signal a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the downstream receive PMS-TC function after the PMD.bits.indicate primitive corresponding to the PMD symbol with symbolcount 0, and before the PMD.bits.indicate primitive corresponding to the PMD symbol with symbolcount 1.

In the upstream direction, the reconfiguration of the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the fifth symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in the synchronization symbol at symbolcount 68, as defined in clause 8.7.3. Therefore, the upstream reconfiguration of the PMD function shall take effect starting with the symbol at symbolcount 4. The PMD function shall signal a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the upstream receive PMS-TC function after the PMD.bits.indicate primitive corresponding to the PMD symbol with symbolcount 3, and before the PMD.bits.indicate primitive corresponding to the PMD symbol with symbolcount 4.

8.16.3 Receiver-initiated procedure

An ATU may initiate a reconfiguration of its receive PMD function. This includes the ATU changing the receive PMD function's bits and gains table with or without changing the L value. This reconfiguration may be:

- autonomously requested by the receive PMD function (to change only the bits and gains table, without changing the L value, i.e., bitswaps);
- requested by the receiving ATU's control function as part of a reconfiguration of the receive TPS-TC and/or receive PMS-TC functions, e.g., to meet changing higher layer application requirements or to make power management state transitions;
- requested by the receiving ATU's management entity, e.g., to meet DSL link performance requirements as monitored by the management entity.

The bitswapping reconfigurations involve changes of only the PMD sublayer configuration parameters. They do not change the TPS-TC and PMS-TC sublayer configuration parameters. The transmit PMD function shall support bitswaps requested by the receive PMD function.

8.16.4 Transmitter-initiated procedure

An ATU may initiate a reconfiguration of its transmit PMD function. However, this reconfiguration shall be initiated by the transmitting ATU's control function, as part of a reconfiguration of the TPS-TC functions (see clause 6) and/or PMS-TC (see clause 7) functions, e.g., to meet changing higher layer application requirements or to make power management state transitions. Reconfiguration of the transmit PMD function shall not be autonomously requested by the transmit PMD function (i.e., no transmit PMD function initiated bitswaps).

8.17 Power management in the PMD function

Power management transitions in the PMD function are intended to allow changes in the downstream control parameters without errors (i.e., seamless).

The procedures for power management in the PMD function support:

- changing parameters to minimize the aggregate transmit power;
- changing parameters to dynamically change the data rate.

8.17.1 Control parameters

Power management is accomplished by a coordinated change to the value of one or more of the control parameters defined in clause 8.5. The downstream control parameters displayed in Table 8-66 may be changed through power management transitions within the limits described.

Table 8-66 – Power management control parameters of the PMD function

Parameter	Definition
b_i	The number of bits per subcarrier may be increased or decreased in the [0 ... *BIMAXds*] range.
g_i	The subcarrier gain scaling may be increased or decreased in the [−14.5 ... +2.5 + *EXTGIds*] range.
L	The number of bits contained in a downstream data frame (parameter derived from the b_i values).

The updated downstream bits and gains table shall comply to the bits and gains table requirements listed in clause 8.6.4.

These requirements on the downstream bits and gains table apply in the L0 state and at entry into the L2 state. However, at entry into the L2 state, the excess margin may not be minimized. Power trimming during the L2 state may be used to minimize the excess margin. Power trimming is defined as a lowering of the reference transmit PSD level (through a higher downstream power cutback level). Power trimming changes the *PCBds* value used during the L2 state and does not change the g_i values determined at the time of entry into the L2 state.

8.17.2 Timing of changes in subcarrier configuration

A change in the b_i and g_i values of one or more subcarriers is implemented by changing the corresponding PMD control parameter (see Table 8-4).

8.17.2.1 Power management entry from the L0 into the L2 state

In the downstream direction, the power management transition in the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the second symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The

PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in the synchronization symbol at symbolcount 68, as defined in clause 8.7.4. Therefore, the downstream power management transition shall take effect starting with the symbol at symbolcount 1.

In the upstream direction, no power management transitions shall take place.

8.17.2.2 Power management exit from the L2 into the L0 state

In the downstream direction, the power management transition in the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the first symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in two L2 exit symbols, as defined in clause 8.7.6. Therefore, the downstream power management transition shall take effect starting with the first symbol following the second L2 exit symbol.

8.17.2.3 Power trimming in the L2 state

In the downstream direction, the power management transition in the PMD functions shall take effect starting with the second symbol that follows transport of the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The PMD shall transport the PMD.Synchflag primitive in the synchronization symbol at symbolcount 68, as defined in clause 8.7.5. Therefore, the downstream power management transition shall take effect starting with the symbol at symbolcount 1.

In the upstream direction, no power management transitions shall take place.

8.17.3 Receiver-initiated procedure

An ATU-R may initiate a power management transition in its receive PMD function to exit from L2 to L0. This includes the ATU-R changing the receive PMD function's bits and gains table. This power management transition may be:

- autonomously requested by the ATU-R receive PMD function;
- requested by the ATU-R management entity, e.g., to meet DSL link performance requirements as monitored by the ATU-R management entity.

The ATU-C transmit PMD function shall support exit from L2 to L0 requested by the ATU-R.

8.17.4 Transmitter-initiated procedure

An ATU-C may initiate a power management transition in its transmit PMD function to enter from L0 into L2, to trim power in L2 or to exit from L2 into L0. This includes the ATU-C changing the transmit PMD function's bits and gains table. This power management transition may be:

- autonomously requested by the ATU-C transmit PMD function;
- requested by the ATU-C management entity, e.g., to meet DSL link performance requirements as monitored by the ATU-C management entity.

The ATU-R receive PMD function shall support entry into L2 from L0 requested by the ATU-C.

The ATU-R receive PMD function shall support exit from L2 into L0 requested by the ATU-C.

The L2 low power trim involves changes of only the PMD sublayer configuration parameters. They do not change the TPS-TC and PMS-TC sublayer configuration parameters. The ATU-R receive PMD function shall support L2 low power trims requested by the ATU-C transmit PMD function.

9 Management protocol-specific transmission convergence (MPS-TC) functions

The ATU-R and ATU-C provide procedures to facilitate the management of the ATUs. The MPS-TC functions communicate with the ITU-T G.997.1 functions in the management plane that are described in [ITU-T G.997.1]. In particular, clear eoc messages are defined in [ITU-T G.997.1] to allow management of the ATU. [ITU-T G.997.1] also specifies the counting and processing of various ATU management defects and anomalies. All ATU management defects and anomalies are therefore provided to the functions of [ITU-T G.997.1] by the MPS-TC functions.

Additionally, several management command procedures are defined for use by the ITU-T G.997.1 functions in this clause, specifically, several reading and testing functions.

Finally, a management indication is defined by this clause to provide warning to the ITU-T G.997.1 management functions that the ATU-R is undergoing a removal of local power.

9.1 Transport functions

As a management plane element, the MPS-TC provides transport of the clear eoc and command messages and ATU-R management defects and anomalies. Management defects and anomalies originate within the TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions. Clear eoc and command messages and management primitives are transported by converting them to control signals for transport by the PMS-TC functions as depicted in Figures 9-1 and 9-2. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the clear eoc and command messages.

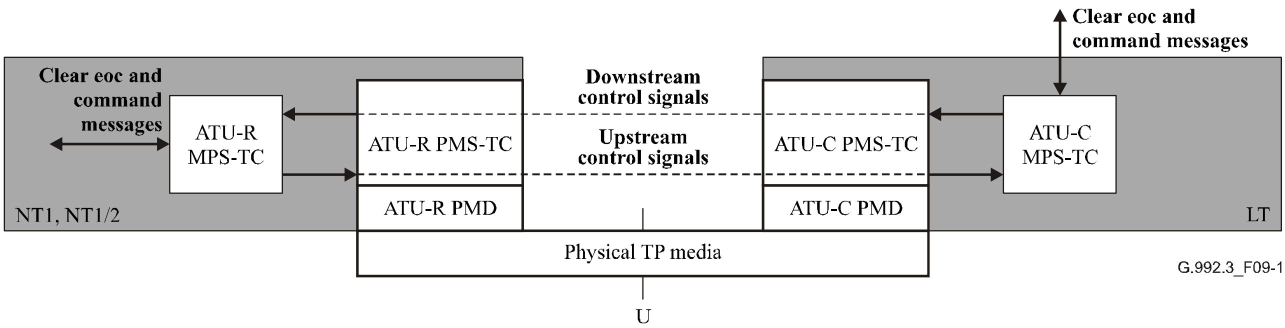


Figure 9-1 – MPS-TC clear eoc transport capabilities within the management plane

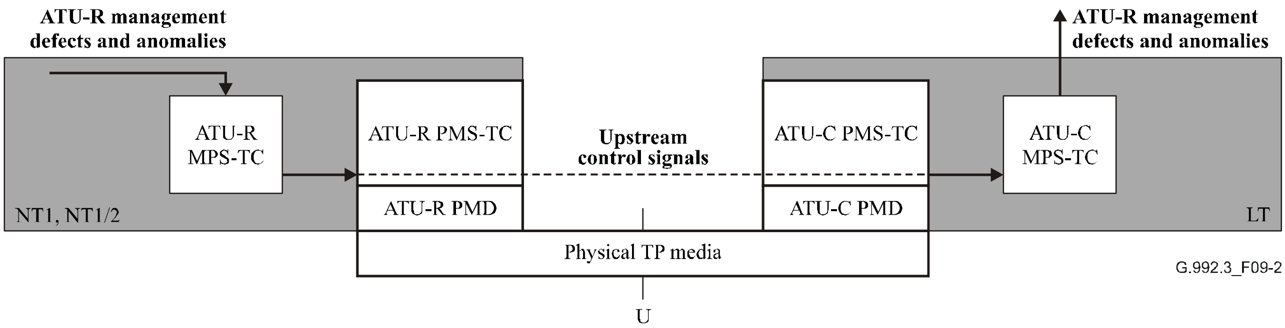


Figure 9-2 – MPS-TC defect and anomaly transport capabilities within the management plane

9.2 Additional functions

In addition to transport functions, the MPS-TC functions provide procedure for:

- dying gasp message at the ATU-R;
- power management state transitions.

9.3 Block interface signals and primitives

The ATU-C MPS-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure 9-3. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

The diagram is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the those of the upstream direction. The signals shown at the top and right edge convey primitives to management functions of [ITU-T G.997.1]. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to the PMS-TC function. The in-service performance monitoring process is shown in Figure 7-1 of [ITU-T G.997.1]. [ITU-T G.997.1] specifies the parameters for fault and performance monitoring. The defect and anomaly primitives related to the physical layer are specified in this Recommendation (see clause 8.12).

The ATU-R MPS-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure 9-4. In this figure, the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from the previous figure.

The flow of primitives, as shown in Figures 9-3 and 9-4, corresponds with the retrieval of management information from the ATU-C, and passing of that information to the ITU-T G.997.1 function at the central office end. A similar flow of primitives exists with the retrieval of management information from the ATU-R, and passing of that information to the ITU-T G.997.1 function at the remote terminal end (see Figure 5-3).

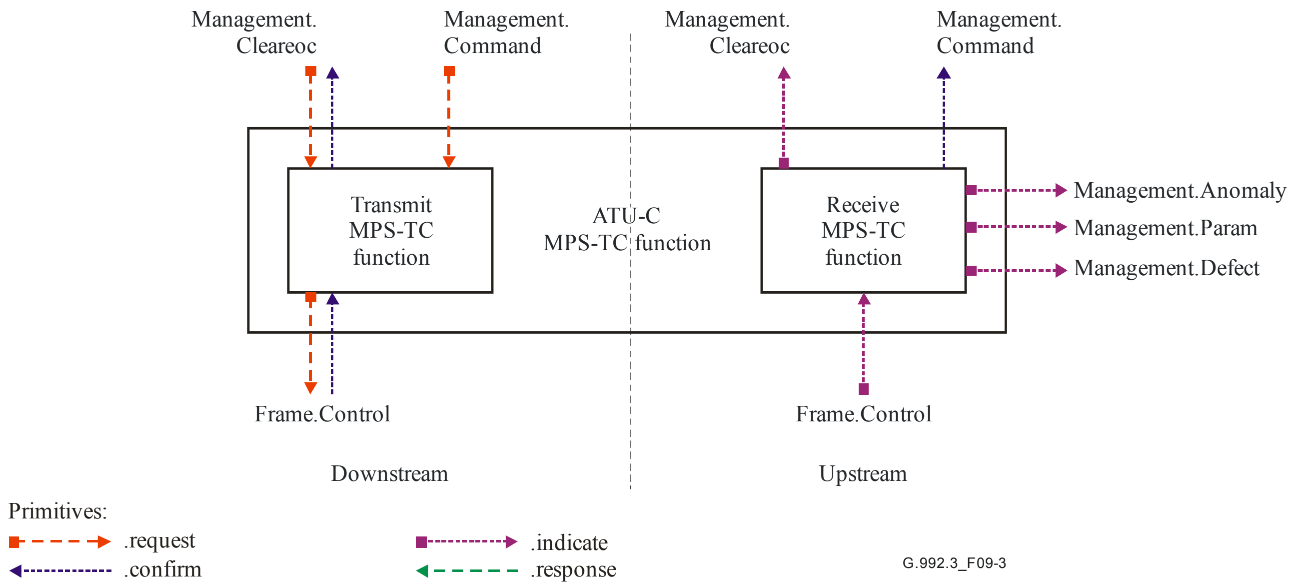


Figure 9-3 – Signals of the ATU-C MPS-TC function

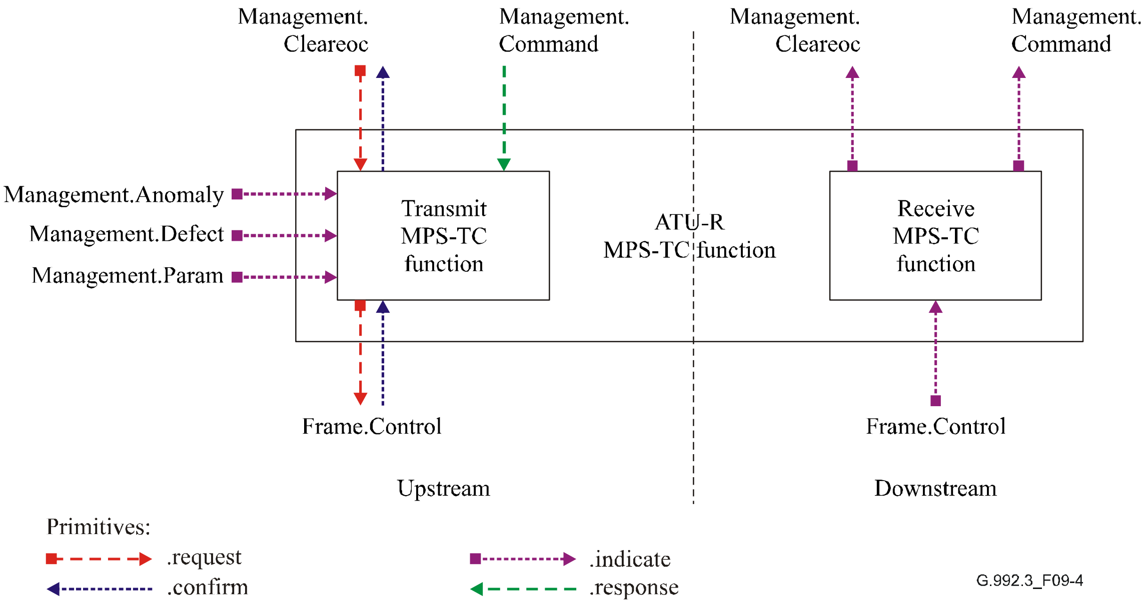


Figure 9-4 – Signals of the ATU-R MPS-TC function

The signals shown in Figures 9-3 and 9-4 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between an ITU-T G.997.1 function and an MPS-TC function are described in Table 9-1. These primitives support the exchange of clear eoc and command messages.

The primitives that are used between the MPS-TC and PMS-TC functions are defined in clause 6.2. The primitives that are used between the MPS-TC and the PMD functions are defined in clause 8.

The primitives used to signal maintenance indication primitives to the local maintenance entity are described in respective clauses for TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions (clauses 6, 7 and 8).

Table 9-1 – Signalling primitives between ITU-T G.997.1 functions and the MPS-TC function

Signal	Primitive	Description
Management. Cleareoc	.request	The transmit ITU-T G.997.1 function passes clear eoc messages to the MPS-TC function to be transported with this primitive.
	.confirm	This primitive is used by the transmit MPS-TC function to confirm receipt of a Management.Cleareoc.request primitive. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the data flow is matched to the PMS-TC configuration.
	.indicate	The receive MPS-TC function passes clear eoc messages to the receive ITU-T G.997.1 function that has been transported with this primitive.
Management. Command	.request	The transmit ITU-T G.997.1 function at the ATU-C passes a command to the ATU-C transmit MPS-TC function to be transported with this primitive.
	.confirm	This primitive is used by the ATU-C receive MPS-TC function to convey the response of the ATU-R to a command. By the interworking of the request and confirm, management data may be read from ATU-C (near end) to ATU-R (far end).
	.indicate	The receive ATU-R MPS-TC function passes a command to the local ATU-R that has been transported with this primitive.
	.response	This primitive is used by the local ATU-R to convey the response to a command for transport.

9.4 Management plane procedures

9.4.1 Commands

Commands provide for a generalized command (with or without parameters) followed by a response (with or without parameters). This provides the necessary flexibility to transport clear eoc messages and ITU-T G.997.1 MIB elements, to set and query ATU registers, and to invoke management procedures at the far-end ATU with and without return values.

All commands are categorized into three priority levels, used to determine the order of transport of messages available to the PMS-TC function. The commands are displayed in Tables 9-2, 9-3 and 9-4 in decreasing level of PMS-TC transport priority.

All ATUs should be able to transmit overhead commands and shall respond to all overhead commands as required during operation in the management plane procedures.

All commands received from Tables 9-2, 9-3 and 9-4 are mandatory, except when noted otherwise. All mandatory commands shall have a response, noting that the PMS-TC function will discard improperly framed or formatted messages. The responder shall respond within the timeout period displayed in Table 7-17 (dependent on the overhead command priority) minus 50 ms, to prevent protocol glare interaction between the ATUs. Shorter responses are allowed and may be required in some application-specific situations outside the scope of this Recommendation.

The ATU should reply with an unable-to-comply (UTC) response on the optional commands for which the ATU does not recognize the assigned message designator value. The UTC response shall include 2 octets: the first octet of the UTC shall be the same as the first octet of the received command, and the second octet shall be FF_{16}. The UTC response shall be sent as a high priority overhead message.

NOTE – If the UTC response is not supported, the command will timeout. This would reduce the efficiency of the eoc.

Table 9-2 – Highest priority overhead messages

Message and designator	Direction	Command content	Response content
On-line reconfiguration (OLR) command 0000 0001_b	From a receiver to the transmitter	New configuration including all necessary PMS-TC and PMD control values.	Followed by either a line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive (not a OLR command) or an OLR command for defer or reject.
NOTE – The UTC response shall be sent as a high priority overhead message.			

Table 9-3 – Normal priority overhead messages

Message and designator	Direction	Command content	Response content
eoc command 0100 0001_b	From ATU-C to ATU-R	Self test, update test parameters, start and stop TX corrupt CRC, start and stop receipt of corrupt CRC.	Followed by an eoc command for acknowledge.
	From ATU-R to ATU-C	Update test parameters.	Followed by an eoc command for acknowledge.
Time command 0100 0010_b	From ATU-C to ATU-R	Set or read time.	Followed by a set time command for acknowledge or the time response.
Inventory command 0100 0011_b	From either ATU to the other	Identification request, self test request, auxiliary inventory information request, PMD capabilities request, PMS-TC capabilities request, TPS-TC capabilities request.	Followed by an inventory command response that includes ATU equipment ID, auxiliary inventory information, set test results and capabilities information.
Control parameter read command 0000 0100_b	From either ATU to the other	PMD settings read, PMS-TC settings read or TPS-TC settings read.	Followed by a control parameter read command response that includes all control variables.
Management counter read command 0000 0101_b	From either ATU to the other	Null.	Followed by a management counter read response that includes all counter values.
Power management command 0000 0111_b	From one ATU to the other	Proposed new power state.	Followed by either a line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive (not a power management command) or a power management command for either reject or grant.

Table 9-3 – Normal priority overhead messages

Message and designator	Direction	Command content	Response content
Clear eoc command 0000 1000b	From one ATU to the other	Clear eoc message as defined in [ITU-T G.997.1] or other.	Followed by a clear eoc command for acknowledge.
Non-standard facility command 0011 1111b	From one ATU to the other	Non-standard identification field followed by message content.	Followed by a non-standard facility command for either acknowledge or negative acknowledge to indicate whether or not the non-standard identification field is recognized.

Table 9-4 – Low priority overhead messages

Message and designator	Direction	Comment content	Response content
PMD test parameter read command $1000\ 0001_b$	From either ATU to the other	Parameter number for single read, parameter number and subcarrier ID for multiple read, null for next multiple read.	Followed by a PMD test parameter read command response including the requested test parameters or a negative acknowledge.
INM facility command $1000\ 1001_2$ (optional)	From ATU-C to ATU-R	Set or read out the INM data.	An acknowledgment of the INM facility set command, or a response including the INM data.
Non-standard facility low priority command $1011\ 1111_b$	From one ATU to the other	Non-standard identification field followed by message content.	Followed by a non-standard facility command for either acknowledge or negative acknowledge to indicate if the non-standard identification field is recognized.

In the subclauses of clause 9.4.1 that follow, the format, protocol and function of each command is specified. For each command, a table is provided that specifies the format of the command and any associated data. To avoid repetition, the command table does not contain the full HDLC frame structure. Commands shall be mapped into the HDLC structure specified in clause 7.8.2.3, such that message length P is the number of octets as shown in the first column of the command table. Octet values shall be mapped such that the least significant bit is mapped into the LSB of the HDLC structure. Values spanning more than one octet shall be mapped with higher order octets preceding lower order octets. A vector of value shall be mapped in order of the index, from the lowest index value to highest. Arrays with two indices shall be mapped by decomposing them into a series of vectors using the first index, from the lowest index to the highest. The following example is intended to clarify the mapping from the command table to the HDLC frame structure specified in clause 7.8.2.3.

The example selected is that of a receiver sending an OLR command repartition the data rate without modification of the underlying PMD function. For this example, the configuration before and after the OLR command is shown in Table 9-5. The HDLC frame content for this message is shown in Table 9-6 and is based on the command format information in Table 9-7.

Table 9-5 – OLR example configuration

Parameter	Current configuration	Proposed configuration
Number of enabled frame bearers	$N_{BC} = 2$	$N_{BC} = 2$
Number of enabled latency path functions	$N_{LP} = 2$	$N_{LP} = 2$
Bits from each latency path function per PMD primitive	$L_0 = 408$	$L_0 = 312$
	$L_1 = 8$	$L_1 = 104$
Frame bearer octets per mux data frame in each latency paths	$B_{00} = 48$, $B_{01} = 0$	$B_{00} = 36$, $B_{01} = 0$
	$B_{10} = 0$, $B_{11} = 0$	$B_{10} = 0$, $B_{11} = 12$

Table 9-6 – OLR example HDLC frame contents

Octet #	MSB LSB
	$7E_{16}$ – Opening flag
1	Address field
2	Control field
3	$0000\ 0001_b$ (OLR command)
4	$0000\ 0010_b$ (request type 2)
5	$0000\ 0001_b$ (L_0 high octet)
6	$0011\ 1000_b$ (L_0 low octet)
7	$0000\ 0000_b$ (L_1 high octet)
8	$0110\ 1000_b$ (L_1 low octet)
9	$0010\ 0100_b$ (B_{00})
10	$0000\ 1100_b$ (B_{11})
11	$0000\ 0000_b$ (N_f) (message length $P = 9$)
12	FCS high octet
13	FCS low octet
	$7E_{16}$ – Closing flag

9.4.1.1 On-line reconfiguration command

The on-line reconfiguration commands shall be used to control certain on-line dynamic behaviour defined in this clause. Additional information is provided on this dynamic behaviour in clause 10. On-line reconfiguration commands may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-7. However, the initiator is only provided with means to effect changes in its receiver and the corresponding transmitter. The responding ATU may use the on-line reconfiguration commands shown in Table 9-8 or may positively acknowledge the initiator's request by transmitting a line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive. The on-line reconfiguration commands shall consist of multiple octets. The first octet shall be the on-line reconfiguration command designator shown in Table 9-2. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Tables 9-7, 9-8 and 9-9. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-7 – On-line reconfiguration commands transmitted by the initiating receiver

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
$3 + 3 \times N_f$	01_{16} Request type 1 followed by: 1 octet for the number of subcarriers N_f $3 \times N_f$ octets describing subcarrier parameter field for each subcarrier
$3 + 2 \times N_{LP} + N_{BC} + 3 \times N_f$	02_{16} Request type 2 followed by: $2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing new L_p values for the N_{LP}-enabled latency paths, N_{BC} octets containing new $B_{p,n}$ values for the N_{BC}-enabled frame bearers, 1 octet for the number of carriers N_f $3 \times N_f$ octets describing subcarrier parameter field for each subcarrier
$3 + 2 \times N_{LP} + N_{BC} + 3 \times N_f$	03_{16} Request type 3 followed by: $2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing new L_p values for the N_{LP}-enabled latency paths, N_{BC} octets containing new $B_{p,n}$ values for the N_{BC}-enabled frame bearers, 1 octet for the number of carriers N_f $3 \times N_f$ octets describing subcarrier parameter field for each subcarrier
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-8 – On-line reconfiguration commands transmitted by the responding transmitter

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
3	81_{16} Defer type 1 request followed by: 1 octet for reason code
3	82_{16} Reject type 2 request followed by: 1 octet for reason code
3	83_{16} Reject type 3 request followed by: 1 octet for reason code
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

An ATU may request only changes in its receiver operation. Changes may be requested concurrently by both ATUs; each transaction shall follow the procedures described in this clause. An ATU-R shall not initiate an OLR command if it has transmitted an L2 grant command and is awaiting a response.

A subcarrier parameter field contains 3 octets formatted as [cccc cccc gggg gggg gggg bbbb]. The carrier index i (8 bits), the g_i (12 bits) and the b_i (4 bits). The carrier index shall be the first octet of the subcarrier field. The g_i shall be contained in the second octet and the four most significant bits of the third octet. The least significant bits of g_i shall be contained in the third octet. The b_i shall be the least significant 4 bits of the third octet.

Type 1 and type 2 shall be sent such that the PMD parameter L is unchanged. If an ATU implements the optional short PMD initialization sequence, then the ATU should also implement type 3 OLR operations changing b_i, gi and L_p.

Reason codes associated with the OLR commands are shown in Table 9-9.

Table 9-9 – Reason codes for OLR commands

Reason	Octet value	Applicable to defer type 1	Applicable to reject type 2	Applicable to reject type 3
Busy	01_{16}	X	X	X
Invalid parameters	02_{16}	X	X	X
Not enabled	03_{16}		X	X
Not supported	04_{16}		X	X

Upon transmitting an on-line reconfiguration command, the initiator shall await a response to the command, either an on-line reconfiguration command for defer or reject, or the line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive. If the response is not received within the timeout of the high priority overhead messages displayed in Table 7-17, the initiator shall abandon the current on-line reconfiguration command. A new command may be initiated immediately, including an identical request.

Upon receipt of an on-line reconfiguration command, the responder shall respond with either an on-line reconfiguration command for defer or reject, or the line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive. In the case of sending the line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive, the ATU shall reconfigure the effected PMD, PMS-TC and TPS-TC functions as described in the reconfiguration clauses describing those functions. In the case of defer or reject, the receiver shall supply a reason code from the following: 01_{16} for busy, 02_{16} for invalid parameters, 03_{16} for not enabled and 04_{16} for not supported. The reason codes 01_{16} and 02_{16} shall be the only codes used in an on-line reconfiguration command for defer type 1 request.

Upon receipt of a line signal corresponding to the PMD.Synchflag primitive, the initiator shall reconfigure the effected PMD, PMS-TC and TPS-TC functions as described in the reconfiguration clauses describing those functions. If an on-line reconfiguration command for defer or reject is received, the initiator shall abandon the current on-line reconfiguration command. A new command may be initiated immediately, including an identical request.

9.4.1.2 eoc commands

The eoc commands shall be used to control certain in-use diagnostic capabilities defined in this clause. Most eoc commands may be initiated by the ATU-C as shown in Table 9-10. The ATU-R may only initiate the eoc commands shown in Table 9-11. The eoc command shall consist of 2 octets. The first octet shall be the eoc command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second octet shall be as shown in Tables 9-10 and 9-11. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-10 – eoc Commands transmitted by the ATU-C

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	01_{16} Perform self test
2	02_{16} Update test parameters
2	03_{16} Start TX corrupt CRC
2	04_{16} End TX corrupt CRC
2	05_{16} Start RX corrupt CRC
2	06_{16} End RX corrupt CRC
2	80_{16} ACK
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-11 – eoc Commands transmitted by the ATU-R

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	02_{16} Update test parameters
3	01_{16} Self test acknowledge followed by: a single octet that indicates the minimum time in seconds to wait before requested the self test result
2	80_{16} ACK
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

The eoc command may be transmitted any time during the on-line state, including immediately following the end of the initialization procedures.

In all cases, the receipt of the eoc command is acknowledged to the transmitter by an eoc command acknowledge (ACK) message. The receiver shall not send a negative acknowledge (NACK) eoc command.

9.4.1.2.1 Self test

Upon receipt of the eoc command for perform set test, the receiving ATU shall transmit the eoc command for self test acknowledge, including the minimum amount of time to wait until requesting the results of the self test. The receiving ATU shall then perform a self test procedure and generate a self test result. The duration and specific procedure of the self test are vendor discretionary but they shall not interfere with the functions of the ATU and the status of connections. Therefore, the self test procedure performed upon receipt of this command may differ from those performed in the SELFTEST state shown in Figures D.1 and D.2. The result of the self test shall be stored within the indicated number of seconds of transmitting the ACK message. The indicated amount of time shall be between 1 and 255 s.

The most significant octet of the self test result shall be 00_{16} if the self test passed and 01_{16} if it failed. The meaning of "failure" is vendor discretionary. The length of the self test result is 4 octets, and the syntax of all other octets is vendor discretionary.

The result of self test may be accessed using the inventory command defined in clause 9.4.1.4.

9.4.1.2.2 Update test parameters

Upon receipt of the eoc command for update test parameters, the receiving ATU shall transmit the eoc command ACK message and update the test parameter set as defined in clause 9.4.1.10. Test parameters shall be updated and stored within 10 s after the request is received. Upon receipt of the eoc command ACK message, the transmitting ATU shall wait at least 10 s after arrival of the eco command ACK message before starting the overhead commands defined in clause 9.4.1.10 to access the test parameter values.

Upon receipt of this command, the test parameter values relating to the most recent initialization procedure shall be no longer accessible through the overhead commands defined in clause 9.4.1.10 within 10 s. They may be discarded by the receiving ATU immediately upon receipt of the eoc command for update test parameters.

9.4.1.2.3 Start/end transmit corrupt CRC

Upon receipt of the eoc command for start transmit corrupt CRC, the receiving ATU PMS-TC function shall transmit the eoc command ACK message and transmit a corrupted CRC value in all latency paths until cancelled by the eoc command for end transmit corrupt CRC. A corrupt CRC is any one that does not correspond to the CRC procedure in clause 7.7.1.2. Only the CRC value is affected by this eoc command. This command may be used in conjunction with the eoc command for receive corrupt CRC (either previously or subsequently) so that both the transmit and receive CRC values are corrupted. The PMS-TC function of the transmitting ATU shall not be affected by this eoc command.

Upon receipt of the eoc command for end transmit corrupt CRC, the receiving ATU PMS-TC function shall transmit the eoc command ACK message and transmit CRC bits determined by the procedure in clause 7.7.1.2. This command may be transmitted even if the eoc command for start transmit corrupt CRC has not been transmitted. The PMS-TC function of the transmitting ATU shall not be affected by this eoc command.

9.4.1.2.4 Start/end receive corrupt CRC

Upon receipt of the eoc command for start receive corrupt CRC, the receiving ATU shall send the eoc command ACK message. Upon receipt of that eoc command ACK message, the transmitting ATU PMS-TC function shall begin transmitting corrupt CRC bits in all latency paths until cancelled by the eoc command for end receive corrupt CRC. A corrupt CRC is any one that does not correspond to the CRC procedure in clause 7.7.1.2. This command may be used in conjunction with the eoc command for transmit corrupt CRC (either previously or subsequently) so that both the transmit and receive CRC values are corrupted. The PMS-TC function of the receiving ATU shall not be affected by this eoc command.

Upon receipt of the eoc command for end receive corrupt CRC, the receiving ATU shall transmit the eoc command ACK message. Upon receipt of the eoc command ACK message, the transmitting ATU PMS-TC function shall transmit CRC bits determined by the procedure in clause 7.7.1.2. This command may be transmitted even if the eoc command for start receive corrupt CRC has not been transmitted. The PMS-TC function of the receiving ATU shall not be affected by this eoc command.

9.4.1.3 Time commands

The ATU-C and ATU-R shall each contain timers that are utilized to maintain performance monitoring counters as described in [ITU-T G.997.1]. It is common practice to correlate the counters on each of the DSL lines. To facilitate this, it is necessary to synchronize the timers on each end of the line. The set time and read time commands are provided for this purpose. The counters defined in [ITU-T G.997.1] should be updated each time the time counter contains a time value that is an integer multiple of 15 minutes (e.g., 1:00:00, 3:15:00, 15:30:00, 23:45:00).

The requirements for timer accuracy and drift are under study.

The time commands shall be used to synchronize clocks in the ATU as defined in this clause. The time command may be initiated by the ATU-C as shown in Table 9-12. The ATU-R may only reply using the commands shown in Table 9-13. The time commands shall consist of multiple octets as shown in Tables 9-12 and 9-13. The first octet shall be the time command designator shown in Table 9-3. The following octet shall be as shown in Tables 9-12 and 9-13. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-12 – Time command transmitted by the ATU-C

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
10	01_{16} Set followed by 8 octets formatted as HH:MM:SS per [ISO 8601]
2	02_{16} Read
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-13 – Time commands transmitted by the ATU-R

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	80_{16} ACK
10	82_{16} Read followed by 8 octets formatted as HH:MM:SS per [ISO 8601]
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Upon receipt of the set time command, the receiving ATU shall transmit the ACK response message. The receiving ATU shall then set its internal clock to the value contained in the message.

Upon receipt of the read time command, the receiving ATU shall transmit the response message that includes the current value of the time counter.

9.4.1.4 Inventory command

The inventory commands shall be used to determine the identification and capabilities of the far ATU as defined in this clause. The inventory commands may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-14. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-15. The inventory command shall consist of a two octets. The first octet shall be the inventory command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second octet shall be one of the values shown in Table 9-14. The inventory response command shall be multiple octets. The first octet shall be the inventory command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be the same as the received inventory command second octet, XOR 80_{16}. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-15. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-14 – Inventory commands transmitted by the initiator

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	01_{16} Identification
2	02_{16} Auxiliary identification
2	03_{16} Self test result
2	04_{16} PMD capabilities
2	05_{16} PMS-TC capabilities
2	06_{16} TPS-TC capabilities
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-15 – Inventory command transmitted by the responder

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
58	81_{16} Followed by: 8 octets of vendor ID 16 octets of version number 32 octets of serial number
Variable	82_{16} Followed by: 8 octets of vendor id and multiple octets of auxiliary inventory information
6	83_{16} Followed by: 4 octets of self test results
Variable	84_{16} Followed by: PMD capabilities information
Variable	85_{16} Followed by: PMS-TC capabilities information
Variable	86_{16} Followed by: TPS-TC capabilities information
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Upon receipt of one of the inventory commands, the receiving ATU shall transmit the corresponding response message. The function of the receiving or transmitting ATUs is not otherwise affected.

The vendor ID in the identification response shall be formatted according to the vendor ID of [ITU-T G.994.1]. The vendor ID field is used to specify the system integrator. In this context, the system integrator usually refers to the vendor of the smallest field-replaceable unit. As such, the vendor ID in this response may not be the same as the vendor ID indicated within [ITU-T G.994.1].

The version number, serial number and auxiliary inventory information shall be assigned with respect to the same system integrator as contained in the vendor ID. The syntax of these fields is vendor discretionary and may be interpreted based on the vendor ID presented.

The self test results shall be the results of the most recent self test procedure, initiated either at power-up or by the eoc command for self test. The results shall be formatted as defined in clause 9.4.1.2.1.

For a receiving ATU-C, the PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC capabilities information shall consist of the last previously transmitted ITU-T G.994.1 CL message, reduced to (respectively) PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC codepoints only. This is followed by the ($Npmd$/8) PMD, ($Npms$/8) PMS-TC or ($Ntps$/8) TPS-TC octets, respectively, included in the last previously transmitted C-MSG1 message (see Table 8-37). Codepoints related to the PMD sublayer are defined in Table 8-20. Codepoints related to the PMS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 7-18. Codepoints related to the TPS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 6-2 and Annex K. The octets shall be transmitted in the same order as they are transmitted in the CL and C-MSG1 message.

For a receiving ATU-R, the PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC capabilities information shall consist of the last previously transmitted ITU-T G.994.1 CLR message, reduced to (respectively) PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC codepoints only, as defined below. This is followed by the ($Npmd$/8) PMD, ($Npms$/8) PMS-TC or ($Ntps$/8) TPS-TC octets, respectively, included in the last previously transmitted R-MSG1 message (see Table 8-38). Codepoints related to the PMD sublayer are defined in Table 8-22. Codepoints related to the PMS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 7-18. Codepoints related to the TPS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 6-2 and Annex K. The octets shall be transmitted in the same order as they are transmitted in the CLR and R-MSG1 message.

A CL or CLR message shall be reduced to information related to a particular sublayer only, while maintaining the ITU-T G.994.1 tree structure for Par(2) block parsing by the transmitting ATU, through the following steps:

1) Take the standard information field Par(2) block, under the currently selected Spar(1).
2) Set all Npar(2) and Spar(2) codepoints not related to the sublayer to zero.
3) Delete all Npar(3) blocks for which the Spar(2) bit has been set to 0.
4) Octets at the end of any Par block that contain all ZEROs except for delimiting bits may be omitted from transmission, provided that terminating bits are correctly set for the transmitted octets (see clause 9.2.3 of [ITU-T G.994.1]).

9.4.1.5 Control value read commands

The control parameter commands shall be used to determine the current values of all control parameters within the far ATU as defined in this clause. The control parameter commands may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-16. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-17. The control parameter command shall consist of two octets. The first octet shall be control parameter command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second octet shall be one of the values shown in Table 9-16. The control parameter response command shall be multiple octets. The first octet shall be control parameter command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be the same as the received control parameter command second octet, XOR 80_{16}. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-17. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-16 – Control parameter commands transmitted by the initiator

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	01_{16} PMD control parameters
2	02_{16} PMS-TC control parameters
2	03_{16} TPS-TC control parameters
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-17 – Control parameter command transmitted by the responder

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
Variable	81_{16} Followed by: PMD control parameter values
Variable	82_{16} Followed by: PMS-TC control parameter values
Variable	83_{16} Followed by: TPS-TC control parameter values
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Upon receipt of one of the control parameter commands, the receiving ATU shall transmit the corresponding response message. The function of the receiving or transmitting ATUs is not otherwise affected.

The control parameter values contained within the PMD, PMS-TC and TPS-TC responses shall be the transmit function control parameters currently in use by the receiving ATU.

For a receiving ATU-C, the PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC control parameter values shall consist of the last previously transmitted ITU-T G.994.1 MS message, reduced to respectively PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC codepoints only. Within the PMD control parameters only, this is followed by (4 + *NSCds*/8) octets in R-MSG-PCB format (see Table 8-32, with parameters as defined below). Then follow the (*Npmd*/8) PMD, (*Npms*/8) PMS-TC or (*Ntps*/8) TPS-TC octets, respectively, included in the last previously transmitted R-PARAMS message (see Table 8-40), and possibly updated during showtime. Codepoints related to the PMD sublayer are defined in Table 8-21. Codepoints related to the PMS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 7-19. Codepoints related to the TPS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 6-2 and Annex K. The octets shall be transmitted in the same order as they are transmitted in the MS, R-MSG-PCB and R-PARAMS messages.

The ATU-C shall set the octets related to R-MSG-PCB (see Table 8-32) as follows:

- *R-MIN_PCB_DS* is set to *PCBds*;
- *R-MIN_PCB_US* is set to 0;
- *HOOK_STATUS* is set to 0;
- *C-PILOT* is set to the pilot subcarrier index currently used by the ATU-C transmit PMD function;
- *R-BLACKOUT* bits are set to the values currently used by the ATU-C transmit PMD function;
- other bits are reserved and set to 0.

For a receiving ATU-R, the PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC control parameter values shall consist of the last previously transmitted ITU-T G.994.1 MS message, reduced to respectively PMD, PMS-TC or TPS-TC codepoints only. Within the PMD control parameters only, this is followed by (2 + *NSCus*/8) octets in C-MSG-PCB format (see Table 8-27, with parameters as defined below). Then follow the (*Npmd*/8) PMD, (*Npms*/8) PMS-TC or (*Ntps*/8) TPS-TC octets, respectively, included in the last previously transmitted C-PARAMS message (see Table 8-39), and possibly updated during showtime. Codepoints related to the PMD sublayer are defined in Table 8-23. Codepoints related to the PMS-TC sublayer are defined in Table 7-19. Codepoints related to the TPS-TC sublayer are defined in Annex K. The octets shall be transmitted in the same order as they are transmitted in the MS and C-PARAMS messages.

The ATU-R shall set the octets related to C-MSG-PCB (see Table 8-27) as follows:

- *C-MIN_PCB_DS* is set to 0;
- *C-MIN_PCB_US* is set to *PCBus*;
- *HOOK_STATUS* is set to 0;
- *C-BLACKOUT* bits are set to the values currently used by the ATU-C transmit PMD function;
- other bits are reserved and set to 0.

An MS message shall be reduced to information on a particular sublayer only, while maintaining the ITU-T G.994.1 tree structure for parsing by the transmitting ATU, through the same steps as taken for reducing the CL or CLR message.

9.4.1.6 Management counter read commands

The management counter read commands shall be used to access the value of certain management counters maintained by the far ATU in accordance with [ITU-T G.997.1]. The local counter values for completed time intervals shall be retrieved as described in this clause. The management counter read command may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-18. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-19. The management counter read command shall consist of a two octets. The first octet shall be the management counter read command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second octet shall be one of the values shown in Table 9-18. The management counter read response command shall be multiple octets. The first octet shall be the management counter read command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be the same as the received management counter read command second octet, XOR 80_{16}. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-19. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-18 – Management counter read commands transmitted by the initiator

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	01_{16} All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-19 – Management counter read command transmitted by the responder

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
$2 + 4 \times (2 \times N_{LP} + 5)$ for PMS-TC and variable for TPS-TC	81_{16} followed by: all the PMS-TC counter values, followed by all the TPS-TC counter values. All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Upon receipt of one of the management counter read commands, the receiving ATU shall transmit the corresponding response message. The function of the receiving or transmitting ATUs is not otherwise affected.

The management counter values shall be derived according to [ITU-T G.997.1] from locally generated defects and anomalies defined within clauses 6, 7 and 8. The parameters are transferred in the order and format defined in Table 9-20. The TPS-TC anomaly definitions are dependent upon the TPS-TC type and are defined in the Annex K. All PMD and TPS-TC counter values are defined as 32-bit counters and are inserted in the response message most significant to least significant octet order. For latency paths and TPS-TC functions not currently enabled, no octets shall be inserted into the message.

The counters shall be reset at power-on. The counters shall not be reset with a link state transition and shall not be reset when read. The time periods when the ATU is powered but not in the SHOWTIME state shall be counted as unavailable seconds (see clause 7.2.1.1.5 of [ITU-T G.997.1]).

Table 9-20 – ATU management counter values

PMD and PMS-TC
Counter of the FEC-0 anomalies
Counter of the FEC-1 anomalies
Counter of the FEC-2 anomalies
Counter of the FEC-3 anomalies
Counter of the CRC-0 anomalies
Counter of the CRC-1 anomalies
Counter of the CRC-2 anomalies
Counter of the CRC-3 anomalies
FEC errored seconds counter
Errored seconds counter
Severely errored seconds counter
LOS errored seconds counter
Unavailable errored seconds counter
TPS-TC
Counters for TPS-TC #0
Counters for TPS-TC #1
Counters for TPS-TC #3
Counters for TPS-TC #4

NOTE – The ATU-C should respond to the request from the NMS for reading management counter values. It is left to the implementations to store and update the counters as necessary for accurate error monitoring and reporting.

9.4.1.7 Power management commands

The power management command shall be used to propose power management transitions from one link state to another as described in the power management clause 9.5. The power management command may be initiated by either ATU as prescribed in clause 9.5 as shown in Table 9-21. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-22. The power management command is variable in length. The first octet shall be the power management command designator shown in Table 9-3. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-21. The power management response commands are variable in length. The first octet shall be the power management command designator shown in Table 9-3. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-22. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-21 – Power management commands transmitted by the initiating ATU

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
3	01_{16} Simple request followed by: 1 octet for the new proposed link state
$4 + 4 \times N_{LP}$	02_{16} L2 request followed by: 1 octet for minimum *PCBds* value (dB) 1 octet for maximum *PCBds* value (dB) $2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing maximum L_p values for the N_{LP}-enabled latency paths, $2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing minimum L_p values for the N_{LP}-enabled latency paths
3	03_{16} L2 trim followed by the 1 octet for the proposed new value of *PCBds* (dB)
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-22 – Power management command transmitted by the responding ATU

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	80_{16} Grant
3	81_{16} Reject followed by: 1 octet for reason code
$6 + 2 \times N_{LP} + 3 \times N_f$	82_{16} L2 grant followed by: $2 \times N_{LP}$ octets containing new *Lp* values for the N_{LP}-enabled latency paths, 1 octet containing the actual *PCBds* value 1 octet containing the exit symbol *PCBds* value, 1 octet containing the exit symbol b_i/g_i table flag, 1 octet for the number of carriers N_f $3 \times N_f$ octets describing subcarrier parameter field for each subcarrier
3	83_{16} L2 reject followed by: 1 octet for reason code
3	84_{16} L2 trim grant followed by: 1 octet containing the exit symbol *PCBds* value
3	85_{16} L2 trim reject followed by: 1 octet for reason code
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

In the L2 request, L2 grant, L2 trim request and L2 trim grant messages, power cutback values shall be expressed as an absolute power cutback in the range of 0 to 40 dB in steps of 1 dB. The cutback is defined in terms of *PCBds*. The minimum and maximum requested values are defined in absolute terms and not relative to the current *PCBds* value. Values not inclusively within the range of the *PCBds* determined during initialization to 40 dB shall not be encoded. It is intended that up to 40 dB of absolute power cutback can be performed for the L2 link state using the *PCBds* control parameter and that the gain values can be used to additionally adjust the gain per carrier as required.

Reason codes associated with the power management commands are shown in Table 9-23.

Table 9-23 – Reason codes for power management commands

Reason	Octet value	Applicable to reject	Applicable to L2 reject	Applicable to L2 trim reject
Busy	01_{16}	X	X	
Invalid	02_{16}	X	X	X
State not desired	03_{16}	X		
Infeasible parameters	04_{16}		X	X

9.4.1.7.1 Simple request by ATU-R

Upon receipt of the power management simple request command, the responding ATU-C will transmit either the grant or reject command. The link state shall be formatted as 00_{16} and 03_{16} for L0 and L3 link states, respectively. If any other link state is received, the response shall be the reject response using reason code 02_{16}. The ATU-C shall follow procedures defined in clause 9.5.3.5 or clause 9.5.3.1, depending upon the proposed power state L0 or L3, respectively. The ATU-C may also reject a request to move to link state L3 using reason code 01_{16} because it is temporarily too busy or using code 03_{16} because it has local knowledge that the L3 state is not desired at this time. The ATUs may immediately start the protocol to request transition to the same or a different link state. The ATU-C shall not reject a request to move to link state L0.

In case the ATU-R requests exit from L2 into the L0 state, the ATU-C shall not respond with a grant command. The ATU-C shall respond with the L2 exit sequence, as defined in clause 8.7.

9.4.1.7.2 Simple request by ATU-C

Upon receipt of the power management simple request command, the responding ATU-R will transmit either the grant or reject command. The link state shall be formatted as 03_{16} for L3 link states. If any other link state is received, the response shall be the reject response using reason code 02_{16}. The ATU-R shall follow procedures defined in clause 9.5.3.1 to move to link state L3. The ATU-R may instead reject a request to move to link state L3 using reason code 01_{16} because it is temporarily too busy or 03_{16} because it has local knowledge that the L3 state is not desired at this time. The ATUs may immediately start the protocol to request transition to the same or a different link state.

9.4.1.7.3 L2 request by ATU-C

When sending the L2 request command, the ATU-C shall specify parameters describing the minimum and maximum average power cutback, defined in terms of the PMD control parameter *PCBds*. The ATU-C shall also specify the minimum and maximum L_p value for each configured PMS-TC latency path function. Values larger than the current L_p values shall not be encoded.

Upon receipt of the L2 request command, the ATU-R shall evaluate the parameters found in the L2 request message and the current operating conditions of the downstream receiver. If the parameters are invalid (i.e., not within the allowed encoding ranges), the ATU-R shall send an L2 reject command using reason code 02_{16}. If the parameters are valid but describe an operating condition that cannot be currently satisfied (e.g., because the current line and noise conditions cannot support the configuration), the ATU-R shall send an L2 reject command using reason code 04_{16}. If the parameters can be met, the ATU-R shall send an L2 grant command and follow procedures defined in clause 9.5.3.3. The L2 grant command shall contain the actual value of *PCBds* necessary modifications to the bits and gain tables to be used by the ATUs in the downstream direction. Additionally, the grant command shall describe the *PCBds* and the b_i/g_i flag value that the ATU-C shall use to transmit an L2 exit sequence as described in clause 8.7. These should be selected by the receiver to best assure reliable detection of the L2 exit sequence. A b_i/g_i flag value of zero corresponds to the L0 link state; the value of 1 corresponds to the L2 link state. The ATU-R may instead send an L2 reject command indicating it is temporarily busy using reason code 01_{16}.

The ATU-R shall send a response command to an L2 request by the ATU-C within the time period defined in Table 7-17. An ATU-R shall not send an L2 grant command if it has already sent an OLR request command and is awaiting a response.

9.4.1.7.4 L2 trim request by ATU-C

When sending the L2 Trim Request command, the ATU-C shall propose a new value of the PMD control parameter *PCBds*.

Upon receipt of the power management L2 trim request command, the ATU-R shall evaluate the parameter found in the L2 trim request message and the current operating conditions of the downstream receiver. If the parameters are invalid (i.e., not within the allowed encoding ranges), the ATU-R shall send an L2 trim reject command using reason code 02_{16}. If the parameters are valid but describe an operating condition that cannot be currently satisfied, the ATU-R shall send an L2 reject command using reason code 04_{16}. If the parameters can be met, the ATU-R shall send an L2 trim grant command and follow procedures defined in clause 9.5.3.6. The L2 trim grant command shall describe the *PCBds* value that the ATU-C shall use to transmit an L2 exit sequence.

9.4.1.8 Clear eoc messages

The clear eoc command may be used by the ITU-T G.997.1 function to transfer management octets from one ATU to another (see clause 6 of [ITU-T G.997.1]). The clear eoc command may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-24. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-25. The clear eoc command shall consist of multiple octets. The first octet shall be clear eoc command designator shown in Table 9-3. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-24. The clear eoc response commands are variable in length. The first octet shall be the clear eoc command designator shown in Table 9-3. The remaining octet(s) shall be as shown in Table 9-25. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4. The clear EOC message length shall be maximum 1024 octets.

Table 9-24 – Clear eoc commands transmitted by the initiating ATU

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
Variable	01_{16} Followed by the entire eoc message to be delivered at the far end All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-25 – Clear eoc command transmitted by the responding ATU

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	80_{16} ACK
3	81_{16} NACK followed by: 1 octet for reason code
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Upon receipt of the clear eoc command, the ATU shall respond with an acknowledgement (ACK) message. The ATU shall deliver this message to the local ITU-T G.997.1 management function. The message is delivered transparently. Whatever formatting was applied by the ITU-T G.997.1

management function at the transmitting end is conveyed at the receiving end, e.g., block-based format, variable length command format. The ATU may also reply with a NACK command with reason code "not supported" (value 04_{16}), indicating the clear eoc message cannot be delivered because the ITU-T G.997.1 function does not support transport of physical layer OAM messages through the clear eoc (see clause 6 of [ITU-T G.997.1]).

9.4.1.9 Non-standard facility overhead commands

The non-standard facility (NSF) overhead command may be used to transfer vendor-discretionary commands from one ATU to another. The NSF overhead command may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-26. The responses shall be using the command shown in Tables 9-26 and 9-27. The NSF overhead command shall consist of multiple octets. The first octet shall be NSF overhead command designator shown in Table 9-3 or Table 9-4. The command designator in Table 9-4 is for lower priority commands that should not interrupt the flow of normal priority commands in Table 9-3. The remaining octets of both standard and low priority messages shall be as shown in Table 9-26. The NSF overhead response command shall be 2 octets. The first octet shall be the NSF overhead command designator shown in Table 9-3. The second shall be as shown in Table 9-27. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-26 – Non-standard facility (NSF) overhead commands transmitted by the initiating ATU

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
Variable	01_{16} Followed by: NSF identifier field NSF message field All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-27 – Non-standard facility (NSF) overhead transmitted by the responding ATU

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
2	80_{16} ACK
2	81_{16} NACK
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Upon receipt of the NSF overhead command, the ATU shall respond with either an acknowledgement message (ACK) or a negative acknowledgement message (NACK). The ACK is used to indicate that the NSF identifier field is recognized. The NACK is used to indicate that the NSF identifier field or NSF message field is not recognized.

The combination of the NSF identifier field and NSF message field corresponds to a non-standard information block as defined in Figure 11 of [ITU-T G.994.1], without the non-standard information length octet. The NSF identifier field consists of 6 octets. The first 2 octets are a country code as defined by [b-ITU-T T.35]. The remaining 4 octets is a provider code as specified by the country identified in [b-ITU-T T.35]. The NSF message field consists of *M* octets and contains vendor-specific information. The length and syntax of the NSF message field are not specified and are dependent upon the NSF identifier.

9.4.1.10 Test parameter messages

The PMD test parameters read commands shall be used to access the value of certain PMD test parameters maintained by the far ATU in accordance with the description of the PMD function. The local parameter values shall be retrieved as described in this clause. The PMD test parameter read command may be initiated by either ATU as shown in Table 9-28. The responses shall be using the command shown in Table 9-29. The PMD test parameter read command shall consist of two to four octets. The first octet shall be the PMD test parameter command designator shown in Table 9-4. The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-28. The PMD test parameter read response command shall be multiple octets. The first octet shall be PMD test parameter read command designator shown in Table 9-4. The second shall correspond to the received PMD test parameter read command second octet, XOR 80_{16}, except for the next multiple read command (see Tables 9-28 and 9-29). The remaining octets shall be as shown in Table 9-29. The octets shall be sent using the format described in clause 7.8.2.3 and using the protocol described in clause 7.8.2.4.

Table 9-28 – PMD test parameter read commands transmitted by the initiator

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
3	01_{16} Single read followed by: 1 octet describing the test parameter ID
3	02_{16} Multiple read block followed by: 1 octet describing the subcarrier index
2	03_{16} Next multiple read
4	04_{16} Block read followed by: 1 octet describing the start subcarrier index 1 octet describing the stop subcarrier index
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.

Table 9-29 – PMD test parameter read command transmitted by the responder

Message length (octets)	Element name (command)
Variable (see Note)	81_{16} Followed by octets for the test parameter arranged for the single read format
12	82_{16} Followed by octets for the test parameters arranged for the multiple read format
2	80_{16} NACK
Variable (see Note)	84_{16} Followed by octets for the test parameter arranged for the block read format
	All other octet values are reserved by ITU-T.
NOTE – Variable length equals 2 plus length shown in Table 9-30.	

Upon receipt of one of the PMD test parameter read commands, the receiving ATU shall transmit the corresponding response message. If an unrecognized test parameter is requested, the response shall be a PMD test parameter command for NACK. The function of the receiving or transmitting ATUs is not otherwise affected.

The PMD test parameters are all derived according to the procedures in the PMD function clause of this Recommendation. Following initialization, the PMD shall maintain training test parameters until the overhead command for update test parameters is received.

The parameters are transferred in the order and format defined in Table 9-30. During a test parameter read command for single read, all information for the test parameter is transferred. If the test parameter is an aggregate parameter, only one value is transferred. If the test parameter has a value per subcarrier, then all values are transferred from subcarrier index #0 to subcarrier index #$NSC - 1$ in a single message. The format of the octets is as described in the PMD clause. Values that are formatted as multiple octets shall be inserted in the response message most significant to least significant octet order.

During a test parameter read command for multiple read or next, information for all test parameters associated with a particular subcarrier is transferred. Aggregate test parameters are not transferred with the PMD test parameter read command for multiple read or next. The subcarrier used for a PMD test parameter read command for multiple read shall be the subcarrier contained within the command. This subcarrier index shall be saved. Each subsequent PMD test parameter command for next shall increment and use the saved subcarrier index. If the subcarrier index reaches *NSC*, the response shall be a PMD test parameter command for NACK. The per-subcarrier values are inserted into the message according to the numeric order of the octet designators shown in Table 9-30. The format of the octets is as described in the PMD clause of this Recommendation. Values that are formatted as multiple octets shall be inserted in the response message most significant to least significant octet order.

During a test parameter read command for a block read, information for all test parameters associated with the specified block of subcarriers is transferred. Aggregate test parameters are not transferred with the PMD test parameter block read command. If the test parameter has a value per subcarrier, then all values are transferred from subcarrier index #start subcarrier to subcarrier index #stop subcarrier in a single message. The format of the octets is as described in the PMD clause. Values that are formatted as multiple octets shall be inserted in the response message most significant to least significant octet order.

Table 9-30 – PMD test parameter ID values

Test parameter ID	Test parameter name	Length for single read	Length for multiple read	Length for block read
01_{16}	Channel transfer function Hlog(f) per subcarrier	$2 + NSC \times 2$ octets	4 octets	2 + (stop subcarrier – start subcarrier + 1) × 2 octets
02_{16}	Reserved by ITU-T			
03_{16}	Quiet line noise PSD $QLN(f)$ per subcarrier	$2 + NSC$ octets	3 octets	2 + (stop subcarrier – start subcarrier + 1) octets
04_{16}	Signal-to-noise ratio $SNR(f)$ per subcarrier	$2 + NSC$ octets	3 octets	2 + (stop subcarrier – start subcarrier + 1) octets
05_{16}	Reserved by ITU-T			
21_{16}	Line attenuation *LATN*	2 octets	N/A	N/A
22_{16}	Signal attenuation *SATN*	2 octets	N/A	N/A
23_{16}	Signal-to-noise margin *SNRM*	2 octets	N/A	N/A
24_{16}	Attainable net data rate *ATTNDR*	4 octets	N/A	N/A

Table 9-30 – PMD test parameter ID values

Test parameter ID	Test parameter name	Length for single read	Length for multiple read	Length for block read
25_{16}	Near-end actual aggregate transmit power *ACTATP*	2 octets	N/A	N/A
26_{16}	Far-end actual aggregate transmit power *ACTATP*	2 octets	N/A	N/A
27_{16}	Far-end actual impulse noise protection (*INP_act*)	4 octets	N/A	N/A

In transferring the value of the channel transfer function Hlog(f), the measurement time shall be inserted into the message, followed by the value *m* (see clause 8.12.3.1). The measurement time is included only once in a PMD test parameter response for single read or block read. The measurement time is included in each response for multiple read or next multiple read.

In transferring the value of the quiet line noise *QLN*(*f*), the measurement time shall be inserted into the message, followed by the *n* value (see clause 8.12.3.2). The measurement time is included only once in a PMD test parameter response for single read or block read. The measurement time is included in each response for multiple read or next multiple read.

In transferring the value of the signal-to-noise ration *SNR*(*f*), the measurement time shall be inserted into the message, followed by the *snr* value (see clause 8.12.3.3). The measurement time is included only once in a PMD test parameter response for single read or block read. The measurement time is included in each response for multiple read or next multiple read.

The values for test parameters defined with fewer bits than shown in Table 9-30, shall be inserted into the message using the least significant bits of the two octets. Unused more significant bits shall be set to 0 for unsigned quantities and to the value of the sign bit for signed quantities.

In transferring the value of INP_act_n for each of the bearer channels, the INP_act_0 for bearer channel #0 shall be inserted into the message first, followed by INP_act_1, INP_act_2 and INP_act_3. The INP_act_n shall be coded as FF_{16} to indicate bearer #n is disabled. Support of the *INP_act* test parameter reporting is optional. However, if in the last previous CLR message, the ATU-R set the 'erasure decoding reporting' bit (see Table 7-19) to ONE for the selected operating mode, then the ATU-R shall support *INP_act* test parameter reporting.

9.4.1.10.1 Single read command

Aggregate test parameters shall be retrieved using a single read and response procedure. Per-subcarrier test parameters may be exchanged in a similar manner with a single read and response exchanged used to exchange all values for a test parameter, starting from subcarrier 0 to $NSC - 1$.

9.4.1.10.2 Multiple read protocol with next

Per-subcarrier exchange parameters may also be exchanged using shorter messages. The first command retrieves each test parameter for a requested subcarrier. A subsequent command retrieves all subcarrier test parameters for the next subcarrier. An invalid response is used to indicate a subcarrier index out of range or when the end of the subcarrier list has been reached.

9.4.1.10.3 Block read command

The block read command and response messages are optional. Data over a range of subcarriers may also be exchanged to allow shorter messages than the single read but still greater efficiency than the multiple read protocol with next. An invalid response is used to indicate subcarrier indices out of range.

9.4.1.11 INM facility commands and responses

Support of the INM facility commands and responses is optional.

An ATU-R that supports the INM functionality shall maintain INM counters to measure the impulse noise, as described in [ITU-T G.997.1]. The INM facility commands shall be used to update and read the INM parameters at the ATU-R.

The INM facility command shall be used also to retrieve the current value of the INM counters maintained by the far-end ATU in accordance with [ITU-T G.997.1].

The INM facility commands are described in Table 9-30a, and may only be initiated by the ATU-C. The ATU-R shall reply using one of the responses shown in Table 9-30b. The first octet of all INM facility commands and responses shall be the assigned value for the INM facility command type, as shown in Table 9-4. The remaining octets shall be as specified in Table 9-30a and Table 9-30b for commands and responses, respectively.

Table 9-30a – INM facility commands sent by the ATU-C

Name	Length (octets)	Octet number	Content
Read INM counters	2	2	02_{16}
Set INM parameters	6	2	03_{16}
		3 to 6	4 octets of INM parameters: see Table 9-30e.
Read INM parameters	2	2	04_{16}
NOTE – All other values for octet number 2 are reserved by ITU-T.			

Table 9-30b – INM facility responses sent by the ATU-R

Name	Length (Octets)	Octet number	Content
ACK	3	2	80_{16}
		3	1 octet INM acceptance code: see Table 9-30c.
NACK	2	2	81_{16}
INM counters	107	2	82_{16}
		3 to 2 + 4 × (17 + 1 + 8)	Octets for all of the INM counter values: see Table 9-30d.
		107	1 octet INMDF
INM parameters	6	2	84_{16}
		3 to 6	4 octets of INM parameters: see Table 9-30e.
NOTE – All other values for octet number 2 are reserved by ITU-T.			

Upon reception of any INM facility command, the ATU-R shall send the NACK in response, if it does not support the INM procedure or the INM command is invalid. Upon reception of an INM facility set INM parameters command, the ATU-R shall send the ACK in response if it does support the INM procedure.

In case all INM parameter values listed in the set INM parameters command are valid and supported by the ATU-R, the ATU-R shall accept all of the INM parameters contained in the command. The INM acceptance code (see Table 9-30c) will indicate that the parameters are accepted. If, for any of the INM parameters, the value in the command is different from the value in active use by the INM, the ATU-R shall activate the new INM parameter values and reset the counters less than 1 second after sending the ACK.

In case any INM parameter value listed in the set INM parameters command is valid but not supported by the ATU-R, the ATU-R shall not accept any of the INM parameters and shall not reset the counters.

Upon reception of the INM facility read INM parameters command, the ATU-R shall send the INM Parameters response that includes the current value of the ATU-R INM parameters.

Table 9-30c – ATU-R INM acceptance code

Name	Octet #	Content
ACC-INM_INPEQ_MODE	3	80_{16}: Value for INM_INPEQ_MODE accepted
NACC- INM_INPEQ_MODE	3	81_{16}: Value for INM_INPEQ_MODE not supported

Upon reception of the INM facility read INM counters command, the ATU-R shall send the INM counters response, which includes the INM default flag (INMDF). Any function of either the requesting ATU-C or the responding ATU-R shall not be affected by this command.

The INM counter values shall be derived according to [ITU-T G.997.1] from locally generated defects and anomalies defined within clause 8.12.6.3. The parameters shall be transferred in the order (top to bottom) defined in Table 9-30d. All counter values are defined as 32-bit counters and shall be mapped to the response in order of most significant to least significant octet.

The INM counters shall be reset at power-up, and shall not be reset upon any link state transition, and shall not be reset upon read. They shall be reset at activation of the new INM parameter values. The reset value is zero. The INM counters and the procedure to update the counters shall work continuously and independently of other (proprietary or non-proprietary) features, e.g., the INM shall work in the presence of OLR and without interruption.

NOTE – The ATU-C should respond to the request from the NMS to read the values of INM counters. It is left to the implementations to store and update the counters as necessary for accurate monitoring and reporting.

Table 9-30d – ATU-R INM counters

INM counters
Counter of the $INMAINPEQ_1$ anomalies
Counter of the $INMAINPEQ_2$ anomalies
..
Counter of the $INMAINPEQ_{16}$ anomalies
Counter of the $INMAINPEQ_{17}$ anomalies
Counter of the $INMAIAT_0$ anomalies
Counter of the $INMAIAT_1$ anomalies
..
Counter of the $INMAIAT_6$ anomalies
Counter of the $INMAIAT_7$ anomalies
Counter of the INMAME anomalies

The ATU-R shall set the INM default flag (INMDF) to ONE whenever all active INM parameters are equal to the default values. The ATU-R shall set the INM default flag (INMDF) to ZERO whenever any active INM parameter is different from the default value.

The INM parameter values shall be transferred in the order defined in Table 9-30e, and mapped in order of most significant to least significant octet.

Table 9-30e – ATU-R INM parameters

Octet #	INM parameter
3-4	2 octets: • The 9 LSBs are INMIATO • The 4 MSBs are INMIATS
5	1 octets: INMCC
6	1 octets: INM_INPEQ_MODE

9.5 Power management

The MPS-TC function defines a set of power management states for the ADSL link and the use of the overhead messages to coordinate power management between the ATUs. Power reduction can be achieved by minimizing the energy transmitted by the ATU onto the U-C and U-R reference points as well as by reducing the power consumed by the ATU (e.g., reducing clock speed, turning off drivers). This clause defines a set of stable ADSL link states between the ATU-R and ATU-C by specifying the signals that are active on the link in each state. In addition, link transition events and procedures are defined in this paragraph. The details of the ATU coordination with system power management functions are outside the scope of this Recommendation.

The need for transitions in link power states may be determined by receiving primitive indications from the local PMS-TC and PMD functions, as well as receiving messages from the remote MPS-TC unit. Transitions are effected by setting control variables for the local TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions as well as sending messages to the remote MPS-TC unit.

9.5.1 ADSL link states

An ATU shall support the ADSL link states shown as mandatory in Table 9-31. These states are stable states and are generally not expected to be transitory.

Table 9-31 – Power management states

State	Name	Support	Description
L0	Full on	Mandatory	The ADSL link is fully functional.
L2	Low power	Mandatory	The ADSL link is active but a low power signal conveying background data is sent from the ATU-C to the ATU-R. A normal data-carrying signal is transmitted from the ATU-R to the ATU-C.
L3	Idle	Mandatory	There is no signal transmitted at the U-C and U-R reference points. The ATU may be powered or unpowered in L3.

States L1 and L4 to L127 are reserved for use by ITU-T. States L128 to L255 are reserved for vendor-specific implementation.

9.5.1.1 Full on L0 state

During the L0 link state, the ATUs shall operate according to the power management subclauses of clauses 6, 7 and 8. In the L0 link state, the MPS-TC shall function using all procedures described in clause 9.4.

During the L0 link state, error recovery is through the initialization procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. At the start of these procedures, the ADSL link state is changed to L3.

9.5.1.2 Low power L2 state

During the L2 link state, the ATUs shall operate according to the power management subclauses of clauses 6, 7 and 8. In the L2 link state, the MPS-TC shall function using all procedures described in clause 9.4 except clause 9.4.1.1. Messages described in clause 9.4.1.1 shall not be transmitted.

During link state L2, if the ATU-R determines that a bitswapping would be needed, the ATU-R shall cause a transition back to link state L0 using the procedure described in clause 9.5.3.5. Likewise, if the ATU-C determines that a bitswapping would be needed, the ATU-C shall cause a transition back to L0 using the procedure described in clause 9.5.3.4.

In the link state L2, the ATU-C may initiate a power trim procedure described in clause 9.5.3.6. The ATU-C should monitor ATU-R test parameters through overhead messages described in clause 9.4.1.10 to know when use of the trim procedure is appropriate.

During the link state L2, the ATU-C shall monitor the TPS-TC and PMS-TC interfaces for the arrival of primitives that indicate data rates larger than the reduced data rates that must be transported to the ATU-R. When this condition is detected, the ATU-C shall use the low power exit procedure described in clause 9.5.3.4.

Error recovery is through the initialization procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. At the start of these procedures, the ADSL link state is changed for L3.

9.5.1.3 Idle L3 state

Upon the ATU completing the SELFTEST procedures, as shown in Figures D.1 and D.2, the link state is set to the idle L3 state (not upon receipt of the self test command). During the L3 link state, the ATUs shall operate according to the power management subclauses of clauses 6, 7 and 8. In the L3 link state, the MPS-TC has no specified function.

In the L3 link state, an ATU may determine to use the initialization procedure. An ATU that receives a higher layer signal to activate shall use the initialization procedure defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. An ATU that detects the signals of the initialization procedure at the U reference point, if enabled, shall respond by using the initialization procedure. If disabled, the ATU shall remain in the L3 link state.

NOTE – The idle L3 state is a link state. The idle L3 link state should not be confused with the ATU states C-IDLE or R-IDLE as shown in Figures D.1 and D.2 respectively.

9.5.2 Stationarity control mechanism

ATU-C PMD control parameters provide means to configure the minimum duration within link state L0 (before transition to a different link state) and the minimum duration within link state L2 before using the power trim procedure. This L2 minimum does not restrict the use of the fast exit power procedures. The minimum link state durations may depend on the amount of power cutback to be applied.

ATU-C PMD control parameters also provide means to configure the maximum aggregate transmit power reduction that is allowed in an L2 request and in any single L2 low power trim request, by means of the L2-ATPR control parameter.

The maximum *PCBds* in an L2 request command shall be limited by the following constraint:

$$maximum\_PCBds - PCBds(L0) \leq L2\_ATPR$$

where *maximum_PCBds* is the maximum *PCBds* value in the L2 request, and where *PCBds*(L0) is the *PCBds* value of the L0 state.

The proposed value of *PCBds* (in dB) in any L2 trim command shall be limited by the following constraint:

$$PCBds(proposed) - PCBds(current) \leq L2\_ATPR$$

where *PCBds*(*proposed*) is the *PCBds* value proposed in the L2 trim command, and where *PCBds*(*current*) is the *PCBds* value currently used in the L2 state.

ATU-C PMD control parameters also provide means to configure the total maximum aggregate transmit power reduction that is allowed in the L2 state, by means of the L2-ATPRT control parameter. All *PCBds* values in the L2 state (i.e., the maximum *PCBds* in an L2 request command, and the proposed value of *PCBds* (in dB) in any L2 trim command) shall be limited by the following constraint:

$$PCBds - PCBds(L0) \leq L2\_ATPRT$$

where *PCBds* is any *PCBds* value in the L2 state, and where *PCBds*(L0) is the *PCBds* value of the L0 state.

The L2 power state control parameters *L0-TIME*, *L2-TIME*, *L2-ATPR* and *L2-ATPRT* are illustrated in Figure 9-4a.

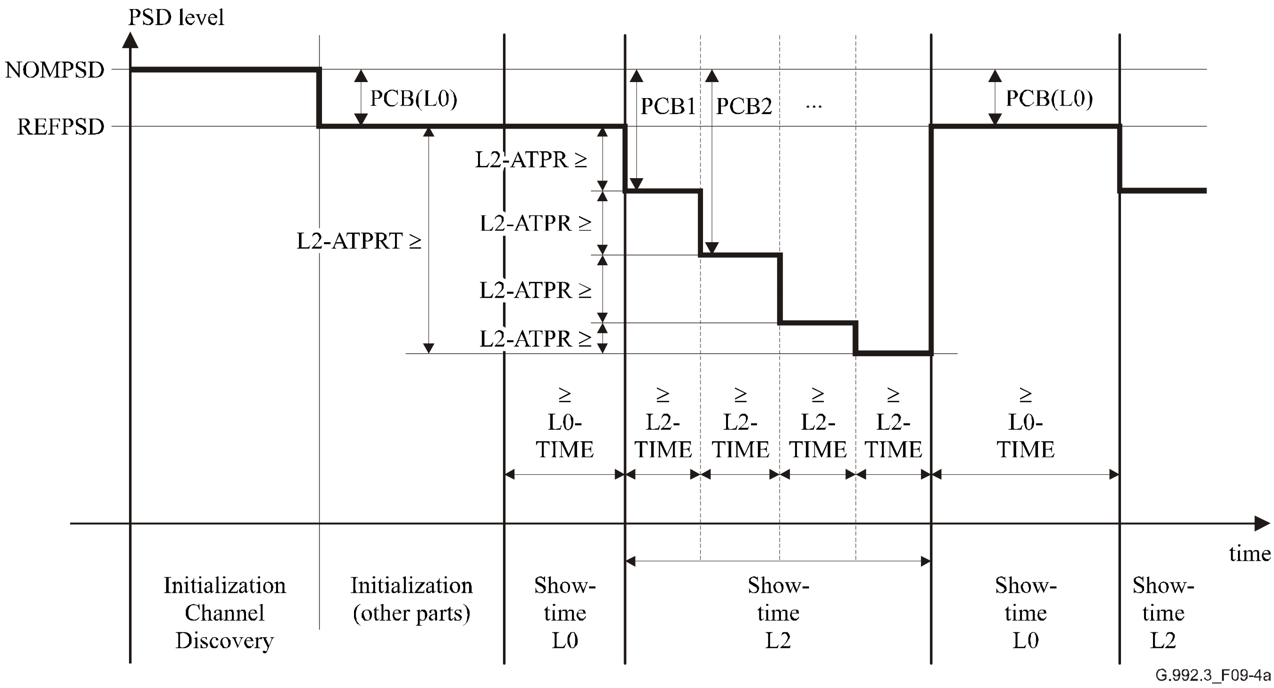


Figure 9-4a – Illustration of the L2 power state control parameters

9.5.3 Link state transitions

Link state transitions can be initiated by various primitives received within the MPS-TC. Primitives may arise from MPS-TC, TPS-TC, PMS and PMD functions specified in this Recommendation and from events outside this Recommendation's scope. Transitions may be grouped into several categories that potentially lead to link transitions:

- Local conditions – One or more primitives are received from local TPS-TC, PMS-TC or PMD function and satisfy conditions that can cause a state transition. Upon successful execution of the transition procedure, the link state is changed. An unsuccessful procedure does not result in a link state change.
- Local command – A local command from higher layer functions is received by the MPS-TC and results in an unconditional request to change states. The reason for requesting a change state is outside the scope of the Recommendation.
- Remote command – A command from a remote MPS-TC function is received and can cause a state transition. The reason for requesting the state change may be remote conditions or a remote command.

The allowed state transitions are listed in Table 9-32, and each is assigned a label string. The labelled power management transitions are shown in Figure 9-5.

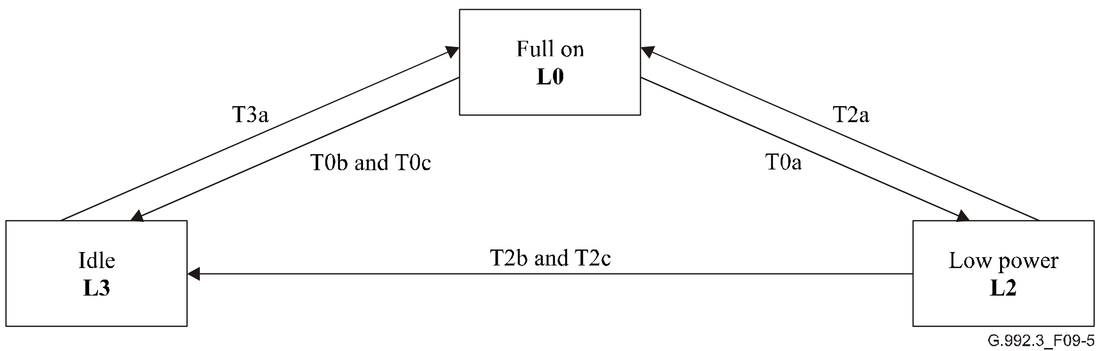


Figure 9-5 – ADSL link power management states and transitions

Table 9-32 – Power management states and transitions

Label	Starting state	Resulting state	Event	Procedure
T0a	L0	L2	Local command to ATU-C	Following this event, the ATUs shall use the procedure for entering low power state in clause 9.5.3.3.
T0b	L0	L3	Local command to either the ATU-C or ATU-R	Following this event, the ATUs shall use the orderly shutdown procedure in clause 9.5.3.1.
T0c	L0	L3	ATU-R PMD asserts lpr primitive	Following the lpr primitive at the ATU-R, the ATUs shall use the disorderly shutdown procedure in clause 9.5.3.2.
T2a	L2	L0	Local primitives at ATU-C or ATU-R	Following these local primitives, the ATUs shall use the low power exit procedure in clause 9.5.3.4.
T2b	L2	L3	ATU-R PMD asserts lpr primitive	Following the lpr primitive at the ATU-R, the ATUs shall use the disorderly shutdown procedure in clause 9.5.3.2.
T2c	L2	L3	Local command to the ATU-C	Following this event, the ATUs shall use the orderly shutdown procedure in clause 9.5.3.1.
T3a	L3	L0	Local ATU command	The ATUs shall use the initialization procedures as defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

9.5.3.1 Orderly shutdown procedure

A higher layer entity at the ATU-C or ATU-R may initiate the transition from L0 to L3 labelled T0b and the transition from L2 to L3 labelled T2c by providing a command to the MPS-TC function. This transition should be used for orderly power down procedure.

When initiated by the ATU-C, the following steps occur:

1) The ATU-C sends a power management request command message containing the proposed new link state L3.
2) The ATU-R responds with either a grant message or a reject message (including a reason code).
3) If the ATU-C receives the grant message, the ATU-C shall coordinate the transition to link state L3 using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.
4) When the ATU-R observes the stopped transmission corresponding to the link state L3, it also shall coordinate the transition to link state L3 using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

When initiated by the ATU-R, the following steps occur:

1) The ATU-R sends a power management request command message containing the proposed new link state L3.
2) The ATU-C responds with either a grant message or a reject message.
3) If the ATU-R receives the grant message, the ATU-R stops transmitting.
4) When the ATU-C observes the stopped transmission, it also stops transmitting.

9.5.3.2 Disorderly shutdown procedure

The ATU-R may initiate the transitions to L3 labelled T0c and T2b. These transitions should only be used if power is unexpectedly removed from the ATU-R.

Upon detection of the near-end loss of power (lpr) primitive by the ATU-R, it shall send the lpr indicator bit at least 3 consecutive times prior to coordinating the transition to link state L3 using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8. Upon detection of the far-end lpr primitive followed by the near-end loss-of-signal (LOS) defect, the ATU-C shall coordinate the transition to link state L3 using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

9.5.3.3 Low power entry procedure

A higher layer entity at the ATU-C may initiate the transition to L2 labelled T0a by providing a command to the MPS-TC function.

The following steps occur to successfully signal entry into the L2 link state:

1) The ATU-C sends a power management L2 request command message containing the parameters defined in Table 9-21.
2) The ATU-R shall respond with an L2 grant message containing the parameters defined in Table 9-22. The ATU-R may also respond with an L2 reject message by supplying a reason code defined in Table 9-23 (see clause 9.4.1.7.3).
3) If the ATU-C receives the L2 grant message, the ATUs shall coordinate the entry into the L2 link state using procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

9.5.3.4 ATU-C-initiated low power fast exit procedure

During the L2 link state, the ATU-C can use the low power exit procedure to signal the return to the L0 link state, labelled transition T2a. For this purpose, a PMD L2 exit sequence is defined in clause 8.7.

The following steps occur to successfully signal return to the link state L0:

1) The ATU-C shall transmit a PMD L2 exit sequence as defined in clause 8.7.
2) After transmitting the PMD L2 exit sequence, the ATU-C shall coordinate the exit from the L2 into the L0 link state using procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.
3) Upon detection of the L2 exit sequence, the ATU-R shall coordinate the exit from the L2 into the L0 link state using the procedures defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8.

9.5.3.5 ATU-R-initiated low power exit procedure

During the L2 link state, the ATU-R can use the low power exit procedure to change to the L0 link state. For this purpose, an overhead power management request command is defined.

The following steps occur to successfully signal return to the link state L0:

1) The ATU-R sends an overhead power management request message containing the request to transition to link state L0.
2) The ATU-C shall grant the request using the exit mechanism described in the ATU-C-initiated low power exit procedure in clause 9.5.3.4.

9.5.3.6 Low power trim procedure

During the L2 link state, the ATU-C can use the low power trim procedure to reduce downstream power of all bins constant power reduction value.

The following steps occur:

1) The ATU-C sends a power management L2 trim command message containing the parameters defined in Table 9-21.
2) The ATU-R shall respond with an L2 trim grant message containing the parameters defined in Table 9-22. The ATU-R may also send the L2 trim reject command by supplying a reason code defined in Table 9-23 (see clause 9.4.1.7.4).

3) If the ATU-C receives the L2 trim grant message, the ATUs shall coordinate the change to the L2 link state using procedures defined in clause 8.7.

The ATUs shall not modify the stored L0 control parameters during this procedure.

If the ATU-C needs to use the ATU-C-initiated low power exit procedure, the ATU-C shall not send the Synchflag in response to trim grant message after an L2 exit sequence is initiated (i.e., after the first L2 exit symbol is transmitted, see clause 8.7.6).

If an L2 exit sequence immediately follows the completion of the low power trim procedure, the L2 exit sequence shall be transmitted using the L0 or new L2 control values of the PMD (depending on the b_i/g_i flag defined in clauses 8.7.2 and 9.4.1.7.3).

10 Dynamic behaviour

The ATUs contain several dynamic behaviours, including initialization, on-line reconfigurations and power management transitions. The control of dynamic behaviour of ITU-T G.992.3 transceivers is not easily seen from the block diagrams of the TPS-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions (shown in Figure 5-1). However, the control flows are provided by this Recommendation to enable the following types of dynamic behaviours.

10.1 Initialization

Initialization is a special case of a power management transition and is used to enter the L0 state. The allowed procedures for moving into the L0 link state are described in clause 9.5.3. Initialization is also used as an error recovery procedure in all link states.

Transceiver initialization may be caused by higher layer functions external to the ATUs or by an error condition internal to the modems. From the perspective of the local ATU, high layer signals or commands will cause the modem to start the initialization sequence. In addition, the local ATU may start the initialization procedure in response to detection of U reference point signals.

10.2 On-line reconfiguration (OLR)

On-line reconfiguration is a powerful feature of this Recommendation. It is provided so the ATUs can autonomously maintain operation within limits set by control parameters during times when line or environment conditions are slowly changing. When the control parameters cannot be maintained through autonomous on-line reconfiguration, an error condition occurs.

On-line reconfiguration is also used to optimize ATU settings following initialization, especially when using the fast initialization sequence that requires making faster estimates during training.

In addition, higher layer data, management and control functions can make use of on-line reconfiguration. In these cases, the on-line reconfiguration is associated with various application options of ADSL.

10.2.1 Types of on-line reconfiguration

Reconfiguration takes three forms, although the designation of these forms is primarily for convenience of description. The forms of on-line reconfiguration are: bit-swapping (BS), dynamic rate repartitioning (DRR) and seamless rate adaptation (SRA).

Bit-swapping (BS) reallocates data and power (i.e., margin) among the allowed subcarriers without modification of the higher layer features of the physical layer. Bit-swapping reconfigures the bits and fine gain (b_i, g_i) parameters without changing any other PMD or PMS-TC control parameters. After a bit-swapping reconfiguration the total data rate (ΣL_p) is unchanged and that data rate on each latency path (L_p) is unchanged. Because bit-swapping is used for autonomous changes to maintain the operating conditions for the modem during changing environment conditions, BS is a mandatory feature. The procedure for BS is defined in the OLR message command clause in clause 9.4.1.1 and shall be implemented using type 1 OLR messages.

Dynamic rate repartitioning (DRR) is used to reconfigure the data rate allocation between multiple latency paths by modifying the frame multiplexor control parameters (L_p). DRR can also include modifications to the bits and fine gain (b_i, g_i) parameters, reallocating bits among the subcarriers. DRR does not modify the total data rate (ΣL_p) but does modify the individual latency path data rates (L_p). DRR can include a change in the number of octets from frame bearer #n per mux data frame on latency path #p, i.e., in $B_{p,n}$ because DRR is used in response to higher layer commands, DRR is an application option. The ability to support DRR is identified during the initialization procedure. The procedure for DRR is defined in the OLR message command clause (see clause 9.4.1.1) and shall be implemented using type 2 OLR messages.

Seamless rate adaptation (SRA) is used to reconfigure the total data rate (ΣL_p) by modifying the frame multiplexor control parameters (L_p) and modifications to the bits and fine gains (b_i, g_i) parameters. Since the total data rate is modified, at least one latency path (or more) will have a new data rate (L_p) after the SRA. The number of frame bearer octets per mux data frame can also be modified in SRA transactions. Because SRA is used in response to higher layer commands, SRA is an application option. The ability to support SRA is identified during the initialization procedure. Any ATU that implements the optional PMD short initialization procedure should implement SRA operations. The procedure for SRA is defined in the OLR message command clause (see clause 9.4.1.1) and shall be implemented using type 3 OLR messages.

10.2.2 On-line reconfiguration procedures

The procedure for reconfiguration of the PMD functions is begun by the transport of control messages between the ATU control entities over the upstream and/or downstream PMS-TC control signals. The control messages that shall be used for each of these PMD parameter reconfiguration types is defined in clause 9.4.1.1. The messages describe the requested changes to the upstream or downstream TPS-TC, PMS-TC or PMD functions. After the control messages have been sent, the transmit PMS-TC function generates a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive, resulting in the transmit PMD function transporting the Synchflag over the U interface as a time marker for when the on-line reconfiguration takes effect. Following the reconfiguration, each PMD function notifies the PMS-TC function of the reconfiguration with a PMD.Synchflag primitive; the transmit PMD function uses a .confirm primitive and the receive PMD function uses a .indicate primitive.

10.2.2.1 Receiver-initiated procedure

A successful receiver-initiated reconfiguration has the following steps (see Figure 10-1):

1) If the reconfiguration procedure is initiated by the ATU's control or management function, a PMD.Reconfig.indicate primitive is used to trigger a reconfiguration of the receive PMD function to the new L value. The receiving ATU's control or management function uses similar primitives to pass new control parameter values to the receive TPS-TC and PMS-TC functions, if these functions are involved in the reconfiguration.

2) The receive PMD function sends a PMD.Control.request primitive to the receiving ATU's control function, carrying the new values of the far-end transmit PMD function's control parameters. This primitive may be sent autonomously (with unchanged L value, i.e., receiver-initiated bitswap) or in response to a PMD.Reconfig.indicate primitive (with change of L value, i.e., receiver-initiated rate adaptation).

3) The receiving ATU's control function sends the necessary control messages describing the new values of the transmit PMD function control parameters to the transmitting ATU's control function. These messages may also include reconfiguration of TPS-TC and PMS-TC function control parameters.

4) The receiving ATU's control function sends a PMD.Control.confirm primitive to the receive PMD function, which then waits until the respective priority timeout (see clause 7.8.2.4.1) for a PMD.Synchflag to be received from the transmit PMD function.

5) When the control messages have been successfully received by the transmitting ATU's control function, the transmitting ATU's control function sends a PMD.Control.indicate primitive to the transmit PMD function, carrying the new values of the transmit PMD function control parameters. The transmitting ATU's control function uses similar primitives to pass new control parameters values to the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions, if these functions are involved in the reconfiguration.

6) The transmit TPS-TC sends a Frame.Synchflag.request primitive to the transmit PMS-TC function, which sends a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive to the transmit PMD function as an indication that the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions are ready to be reconfigured.

7) The transmit PMD function transmits the PMD.Synchflag primitive on the line as defined in clause 8.7 as a time marker for the instant where the reconfiguration will take place. The PMD.Synchflag primitive is received by the receive PMD function. This primitive may be sent autonomously by the transmit PMD function if the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions are not involved in the reconfiguration.

8) At the instant the reconfiguration takes place (see clause 8.16.2), the transmit PMD function sends a PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive to the transmit PMS-TC function, which sends a Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive to the transmit TPS-TC function as a time marker for the instant where the reconfiguration takes place. For the transmit PMD function, this is the symbol boundary where the size of data frames received from the PMS-TC (with the PMD.Bits.confirm primitive) changes.

9) At the instant the reconfiguration takes place (see clause 8.16.2), the receive PMD function sends a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the receive PMS-TC function, which sends a Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the receive TPS-TC function as a time marker for the instant where the reconfiguration takes place. For the receive PMD function, this is the symbol boundary where the size of data frames delivered to the PMS-TC (with the PMD.Bits.indicate primitive) changes.

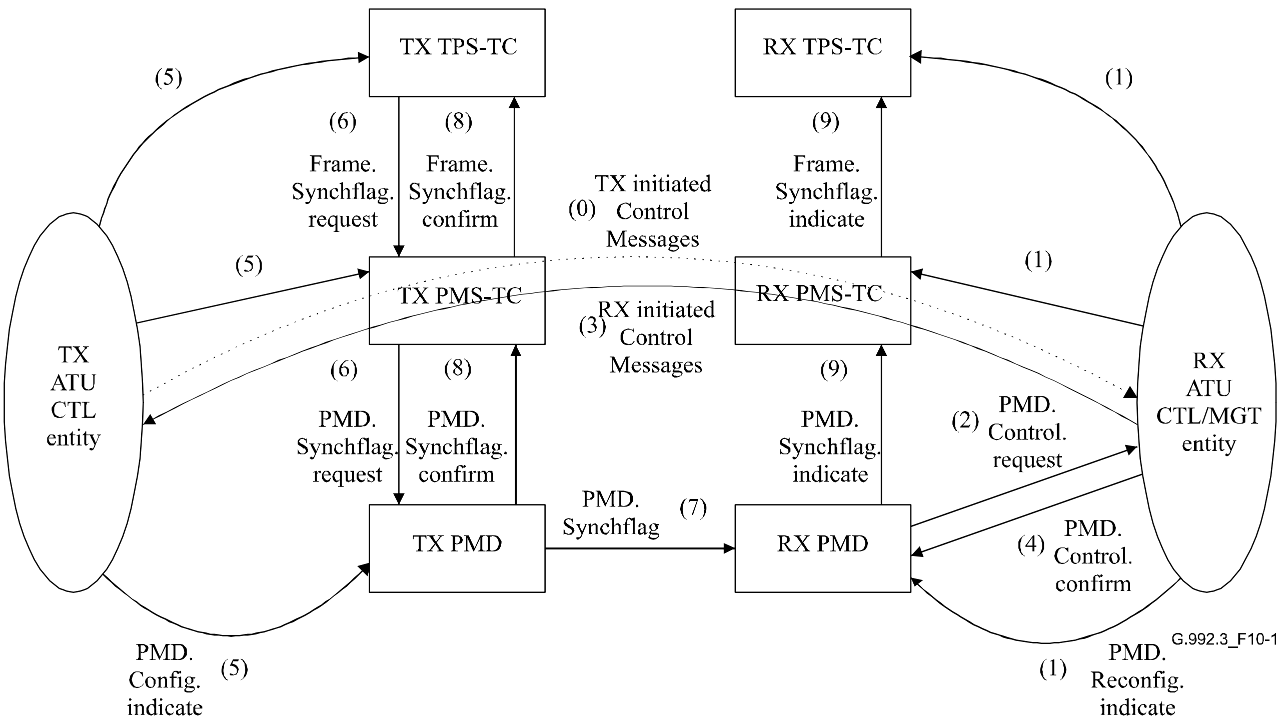


Figure 10-1 – Steps involved in the receiver-initiated on-line reconfiguration

10.2.2.2 Transmitter-initiated procedure

A successful transmitter-initiated reconfiguration has the following steps (see Figure 10-1):

1) The transmitting ATU's control or management function sends all necessary control messages describing the new boundary conditions for the TPS-TC and/or PMS-TC function control parameters to the receiving ATU's control function (shown as step 0 in Figure 10-1).

2) The reconfiguration is initiated from the receiving ATU's control function (shown as steps 1 to 9 in Figure 10-1).

This Recommendation supports receiver-initiated OLR only. It does not provide for overhead messages to accomplish step 1. Other Recommendations may provide a mechanism to convey the necessary control information from the transmitter to the receiver to accomplish step 1, which then may be followed by step 2 according to the procedures defined in this Recommendation.

10.3 Power management

Power management includes several dynamic behaviours. All of the transitions for power management are defined in clause 9.5. Many of the behaviours are caused by local or remove higher layer signals and commands. A few of the transitions are caused by local conditions and can occur autonomously without intervention of higher layers.

10.3.1 Types of power management transitions

Clause 9.5 identifies power management link state transitions:

- entry into low power state L2 from L0 state, which changes the b_i and/or g_i values and the L value;
- exit from low power state L2 into L0 state, which changes the b_i and/or g_i values and the L value;
- L2 low power trim (while in low power L2 state), which changes the *PCBds* value, without changing the b_i value and the L value.

10.3.2 Power management procedures

The procedure for a power management transition is begun by the transport of control messages between the ATU control entities, over the upstream and/or downstream PMS-TC control signals. The control messages that shall be used for a power management transition are defined in clause 9.4.1.7. The messages describe the requested changes to the downstream TPS-TC, PMS-TC or PMD functions. After the control messages have been sent, the transmit PMS-TC function generates a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive, resulting in the transmit PMD function transporting the synchflag over the U interface as a time marker for when the power management transition takes effect (see clause 8.17.2). Following the power management transition in the PMD sublayer, each PMD function notifies the PMS-TC function of the power management transition with a PMD.Synchflag primitive; the transmit PMD function uses a .confirm primitive and the receive PMD function uses a .indicate primitive.

10.3.2.1 Receiver-initiated procedure

A successful receiver-initiated power management transition has the following steps (see Figure 10-2):

1) If the procedure for a power management transition is initiated by the ATU's control or management function, a PMD.Reconfig.indicate primitive is used to trigger a power management transition of the receive PMD function. The receiving ATU's control or management function uses similar primitives to pass new control parameters values to the receive TPS-TC and PMS-TC functions, if these functions are involved in the power management transition.
2) The receive PMD function sends a PMD.Control.request primitive to the receiving ATU's control function, carrying the new values of the far-end transmit PMD function's control parameters. This primitive may be sent autonomously (L2 exit to allow for subsequent receiver-initiated bitswap) or in response to a PMD.Reconfig.indicate primitive (L2 exit to allow for subsequent receiver-initiated rate adaptation or L2 entry or L2 trim).
3) The receiving ATU's control function sends the necessary control messages describing the new values of the transmit PMD function control parameters to the transmitting ATU's control function. These messages may also include reconfiguration of TPS-TC and PMS-TC function control parameters.
4) The receiving ATU's control function sends a PMD.Control.confirm primitive to the receive PMD function, which then waits until the respective priority timeout (see clause 7.8.2.4.1) for a PMD.Synchflag to be received from the transmit PMD function.
5) When the control messages have been successfully received by the transmitting ATU's control function, the transmitting ATU's control function sends a PMD.Control.indicate primitive to the transmit PMD function, carrying the new values of the transmit PMD function control parameters. The transmitting ATU's control function uses similar primitives to pass new control parameters values to the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions, if these functions are involved in the power management transition.
6) The transmit TPS-TC sends a Frame.Synchflag.request primitive to the transmit PMS-TC function, which sends a PMD.Synchflag.request primitive to the transmit PMD function as an indication that the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions are ready to be reconfigured.
7) The transmit PMD function transmits the PMD.Synchflag primitive on the line as defined in clause 8.7, as a time marker for the instant where the power management transition will take place. The PMD.Synchflag primitive is received by the receive PMD function. This primitive may be sent autonomously by the transmit PMD function if the TPS-TC and PMS-TC transmit functions are not involved in the power management transition.
8) At the instant the power management transition takes place (see clause 8.17.2), the transmit PMD function sends a PMD.Synchflag.confirm primitive to the transmit PMS-TC function,

which sends a Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive to the transmit TPS-TC function as a time marker for the instant where the power management transition takes place. For the transmit PMD function, this is the symbol boundary where the size of data frames received from the PMS-TC (with the PMD.Bits.confirm primitive) changes.

9) At the instant the power management transition takes place (see clause 8.17.2), the receive PMD function sends a PMD.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the receive PMS-TC function, which sends a Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive to the receive TPS-TC function as a time marker for the instant where the power management transition takes place. For the receive PMD function, this is the symbol boundary where the size of data frames delivered to the PMS-TC (with the PMD.Bits.indicate primitive) changes.

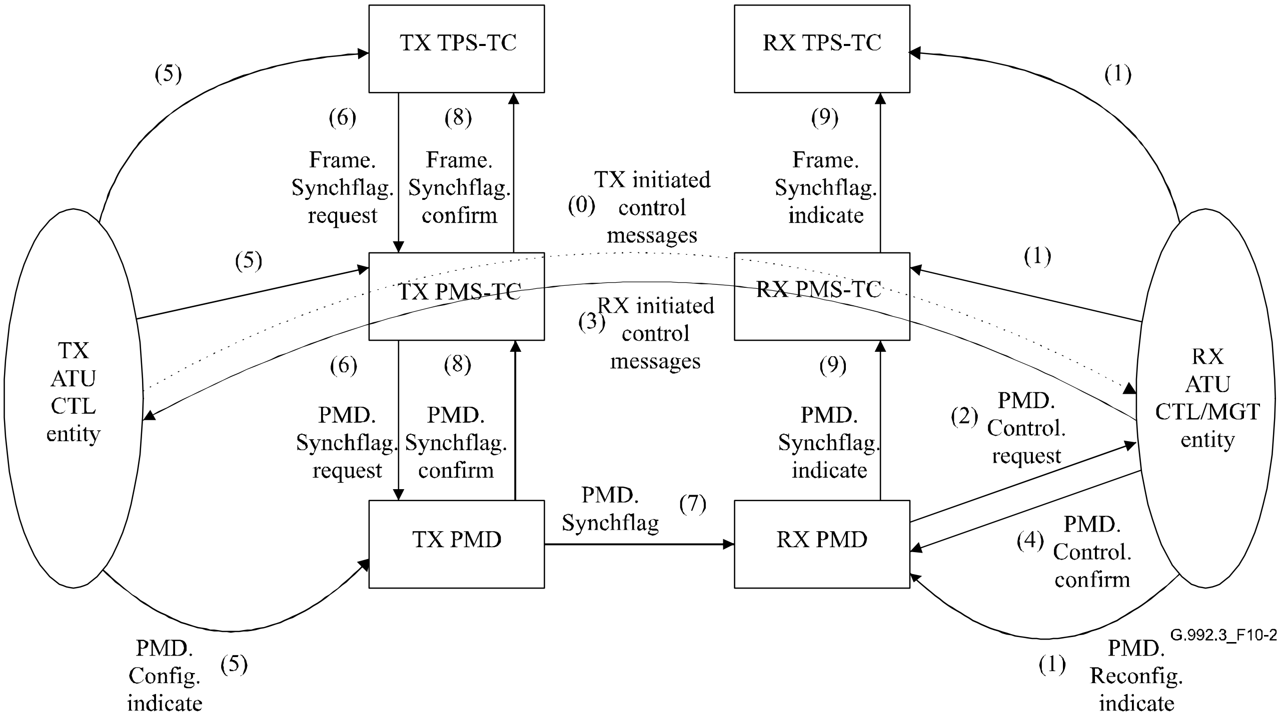


Figure 10-2 – Steps involved in the receiver-initiated power management transition

10.3.2.2 Transmitter-initiated procedure

A successful transmitter-initiated power management transition has the following steps:

1) The transmitting ATU's control or management function sends all necessary control messages describing the new boundary conditions for the PMS-TC and/or PMD function control parameters to the receiving ATU's control function (shown as step 0 in Figure 10-2).

2) The power management transition is initiated from the receiving ATU's control function (shown as steps 1 to 9 in Figure 10-2).

When entering the L2 state, the ATU-C and ATU-R shall store the L0 state control parameter values. An ATU-C-initiated exit from L2 into L0 involves only the steps 5 to 9 shown in Figure 10-2.

Annex A

Specific requirements for an ADSL system operating in the frequency band above POTS

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

This annex defines those parameters of the ADSL system that have been left undefined in the main body of this Recommendation because they are unique to an ADSL service that is frequency-division duplexed with POTS.

A.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

A.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C control parameter settings, to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table A.1. Control Parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

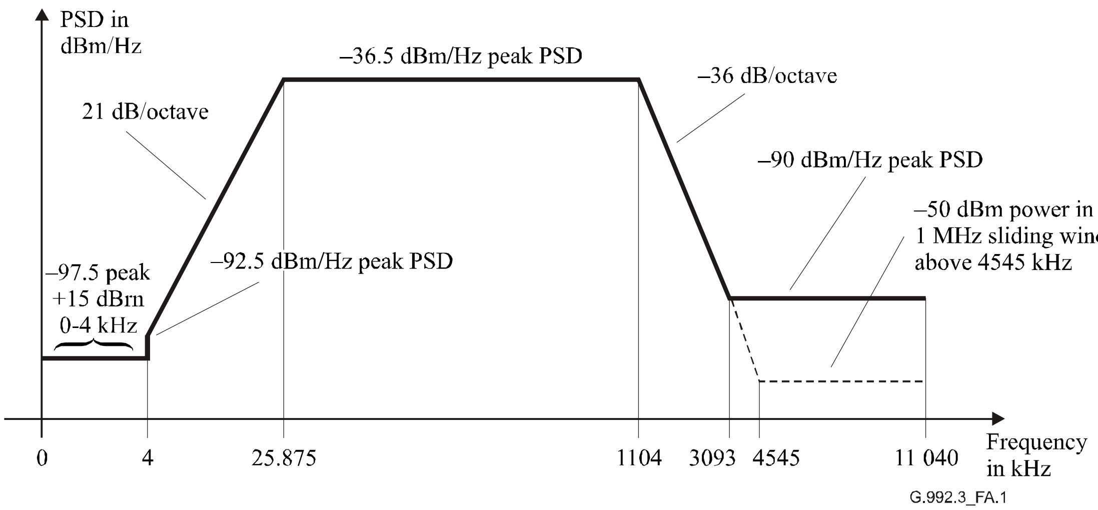
Table A.1 – ATU-C control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCds	256	
NOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPds	20.4 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

A.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., for ADSL over POTS implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure A.1 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz and includes the POTS band, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.



Frequency band f (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–97.5, with max power in the in 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f \leq 25.875$	$-92.5 + 21 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$25.875 < f \leq 1104$	–36.5
$1104 < f \leq 3093$	$-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$
$3093 < f \leq 4545$	–90 peak, with max power in the [f, f + 1 MHz] window of ($-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60$) dBm
$4545 < f \leq 11\,040$	–90 peak, with max power in the [f, f + 1 MHz] window of –50 dBm
NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω. NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate. NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth. NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency. NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect ITU-T V.90 performance. Originally, the PSD mask continued the 21 dB/octave slope below 4 kHz hitting a floor of –97.5 dBm/Hz at 3400 Hz. It was recognized that this might impact ITU-T V.90 performance, and so the floor was extended to 4 kHz. NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.	

Figure A.1 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for overlapped spectrum operation

A.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDds* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the channel discovery phase;
- *REFPSDds* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the transceiver training phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDds* – *PCBds* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum passband transmit PSD level allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is −40 dBm/Hz.

A.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see clause A.1.2.1). In all cases:

- the aggregate transmit power in the voiceband, measured at the U-C interface, and that is delivered to the public switched telephone network (PSTN) interface, shall not exceed +15 dBrn (see [ITU-T G.996.1] for method of measurement);
- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed ($MAXNOMATPds - PCBds$) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 20.9 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band shall not exceed ($MAXNOMATPds - PCBds$) by more than 0.9 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stopbands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-C is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

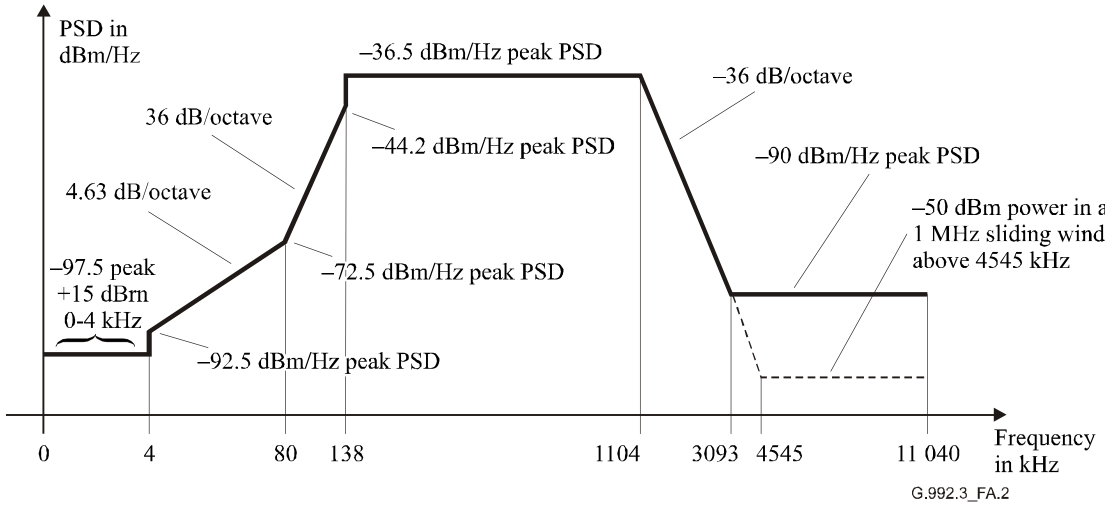
For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 20.4 dBm.

A.1.3 ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

Figure A.2 defines the spectral mask for the ATU-C transmitted signal, which results in reduced NEXT into the ADSL upstream band, relative to the mask in clause A.1.2. Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in clause A.1.2 only in the band from 4 kHz to 138 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 138 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 138 kHz and includes the POTS band, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.



Frequency band f (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–97.5, with max power in the in 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f \leq 80$	$-92.5 + 4.63 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$80 < f \leq 138$	$-72.5 + 36 \times \log_2(f/80)$
$138 < f \leq 1104$	–36.5
$1104 < f \leq 3093$	$-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$
$3093 < f \leq 4545$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f \leq 11\,040$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.
NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.
NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.
NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.
NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect ITU-T V.90 performance (see Figure A.1).
NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

Figure A.2 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation

A.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause A.1.2.1.

A.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause A.1.2.2. In addition, for non-overlapped spectrum operation, the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed 20.4 dBm.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 19.9 dBm.

A.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

A.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R control parameter settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table A.2. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

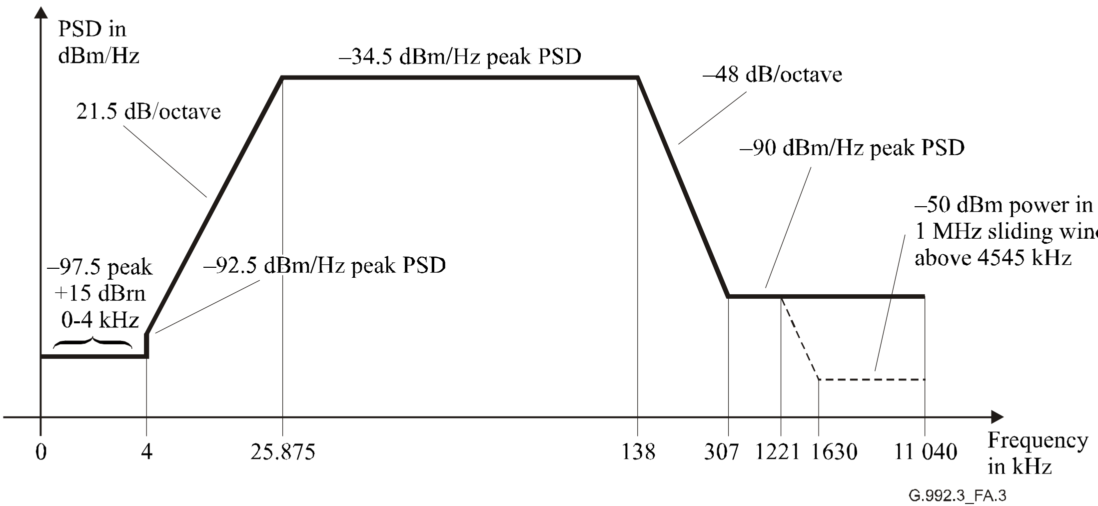
Table A.2 – ATU-R control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCus	32	
NOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPus	12.5 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

A.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements clause 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 to 138 kHz and is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

Figure A.3 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz and includes the POTS band (see also Figure A.1), the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 138 kHz.



Frequency band f (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–97.5, with max power in the in 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f \leq 25.875$	$-92.5 + 21.5 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$25.875 < f \leq 138$	–34.5
$138 < f \leq 307$	$-34.5 - 48 \times \log_2(f/138)$
$307 < f \leq 1221$	–90
$1221 < f \leq 1630$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1\text{ MHz}]$ window of $(-90 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1221) + 60)$ dBm
$1630 < f \leq 11\,040$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1\text{ MHz}]$ window of –50 dBm

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.

NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.

NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.

NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.

NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect ITU-T V.90 performance. Originally, the PSD mask continued the 21.5 dB/octave slope below 4 kHz hitting a floor of –97.5 dBm/Hz at 3400 Hz. It was recognized that this might impact ITU-T V.90 performance, and so the floor was extended to 4 kHz.

NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-R interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

Figure A.3 – ATU-R transmitter PSD mask

A.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDus* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the channel discovery phase;
- *REFPSDus* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the transceiver training phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDus* – *PCBus* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 μs.

The maximum transmit PSD level allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is −38 dBm/Hz.

A.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see clause A.2.2.1). In all cases:

- the aggregate transmit power in the voiceband, measured at the U-R interface, and that which is delivered to the plain old telephone service (POTS) interface, shall not exceed +15 dBrn (see [ITU-T G.996.1] for method of measurement);
- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.0 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stopbands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 12.5 dBm.

A.3 Initialization

For this annex, no additional requirements apply (relative to the main body of this Recommendation).

A.4 Electrical characteristics

This clause specifies the combination of ATU-x and high-pass filter, as shown in Figures 5-4 and 5-5; further information about the low-pass filter is specified in Annex E.

A.4.1 Definition of impedance states

The source and load impedances of the ATU-R shall comply with the following, where Z_S and Z_L are the source and the load impedances in the active state and $Z_{S\text{-}hi}$ and $Z_{L\text{-}hi}$, the source and load impedances in the high impedance state, shall be greater than Z_S and Z_L, respectively. Vendors are encouraged to select $Z_{S\text{-}hi}$ and $Z_{L\text{-}hi}$ to be significantly higher than Z_S and Z_L.

The following requirements on the ATU-R allow for multiple ATU-R installations on the same pair of lines, although only a single ATU-R should be active at any given time. The definitions of these parameters and test procedures are defined in clause A.4.4.

In each of the four ATU-R impedance states defined in Table A.3, the ATU-R transmitter shall meet the ATU-R transmit PSD mask defined in clause A.2.

Table A.3 – ATU-R impedance states

ATU-R state	Source impedance	Load impedance
Unpowered	$Z_{S\text{-}hi}$	$Z_{L\text{-}hi}$
Disabled (powered with transmitter and receiver inactive)	$Z_{S\text{-}hi}$	$Z_{L\text{-}hi}$
Inactive (powered with transmitter inactive and receiver active to detect C-TONES)	$Z_{S\text{-}hi}$	$Z_{L\text{-}hi}$
Active (powered with transmitter and receiver active and initializing or in showtime)	Z_S	Z_L

The applicability of these impedance states and related requirements to a "gateway device" (i.e., one which is the single device between the access network and the home wiring) is under study.

A.4.2 POTS current and voltage specification

All electrical characteristics shall be met in the presence of all POTS loop currents from 0 mA to 100 mA, and differential loop voltages as follows:

- DC voltages of 0 V to –60 V.
- Ringing signals no larger than 103 V rms at any frequency from 20 to 30 Hz with a DC component in the range from 0 V to –60 V.

A.4.3 Electrical characteristics for the ATU-C and for the ATU-R in the active state

A.4.3.1 DC characteristics

The input DC resistance of the ATU-x at the U-x interface shall be greater than or equal to 5 MΩ.

NOTE – The most common implementation of the splitter filters is with the low-pass and high-pass connected in parallel at the U-x port. In this arrangement the high-pass filter will typically block DC with capacitors.

A.4.3.2 Voiceband characteristics

A.4.3.2.1 Input impedance

The imaginary part of the ATU-x input impedance, as measured at the U-x interface, over the 0-4 kHz frequency range, shall be equivalent to a 20-34 nF capacitor (approximately 1.1-2.0 kΩ at 4 kHz) for the ATU-R and the ATU-C that has an integrated splitter high-pass function (e.g., integrated 120 nF DC blocking capacitors) shall be equivalent to 30-78 nF (approximately 0.5-1.4 kΩ at 4 kHz) for the ATU-C designed to be used with an external splitter high-pass function (e.g., external 120 nF DC blocking capacitors).

NOTE – Depending on vendor-discretionary performance related trade-offs, the actual transceiver input capacitance may be any value in this range.

A.4.3.3 ADSL band characteristics

A.4.3.3.1 Longitudinal balance

The ATU-C shall have a longitudinal conversion loss (LCL) of at least 50 dB in the frequency range from 30 kHz to 138 kHz and at least 40 dB in the frequency range from 138 kHz to 1104 kHz.

The ATU-R shall have a longitudinal conversion loss (LCL) of at least 50 dB in the frequency range from 30 kHz to 1104 kHz.

If only the HPF part of the POTS splitter is integrated in the ATU, the measurement of the longitudinal balance in the specified band shall be performed as shown in Figure A.4. If both the LPF and the HPF parts of the POTS splitter are integrated in the ATU, the measurement of the longitudinal balance in the specified band shall be performed with the POTS interfaces terminated with ZTR, as shown in Figure A.5.

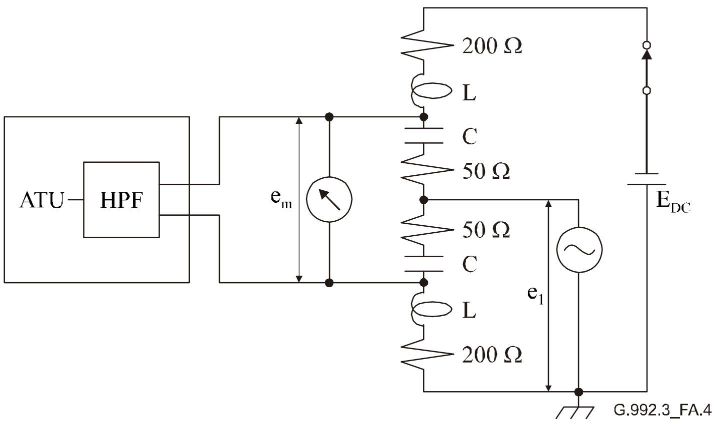


Figure A.4 – Longitudinal balance above 30 kHz measurement method (only HPF integrated)

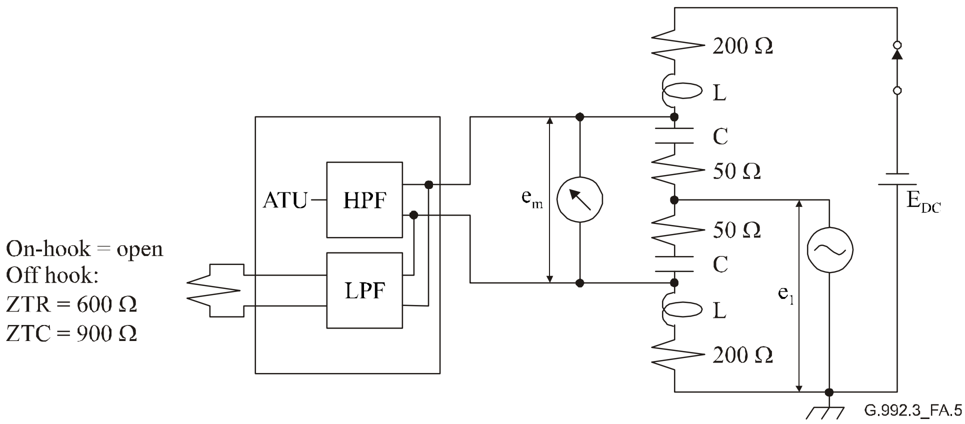


Figure A.5 – Longitudinal balance above 30 kHz measurement method (HPF and LPF integrated)

The balance shall be measured both in the presence and absence of a DC bias voltage, with the modem under test powered, active and quiet. In some jurisdictions and at some instances, the amount of DC bias may be greater or smaller than this value, however, this level should be sufficient to indicate if any DC bias-related balance problems exist. The bias voltage shall be connected using well-matched inductors. The impedance of the inductors shall be ≥5000j Ω over the frequency range. The 200 Ω resistors have been included for safety reasons.

Capacitors are included in the test set-up to prevent large DC current through the 50 Ω resistors. Their impedance should be ≤ | – 0.5j Ω | over the frequency range.

The inductors and capacitors included in the set-up need to be matched so as not to affect the results. When larger ratios of the impedance of the inductors and capacitors to the 50 Ω resistors are used, less matching is required in these devices. Inductor matching is typically easier to achieve if a bifilar winding on a single core is used to create the matched pair. Adequate care should be taken to ensure no resonance occurs within the measurement frequency range. This may require the use of two inductors in series (of different size) to meet this requirement when the measurement is broadband. It is also important to ensure that in tests that have DC current flowing, no saturation occurs in the inductors. It should also be noted that some types of capacitors vary in value with applied voltage, in general high quality plastic types should be suitable.

Longitudinal balance (*LBal*) is defined by the equation:

$$LBal = 20\log\left|\frac{e_1}{e_m}\right|\text{dB}$$

where:

e_1 = the applied longitudinal voltage (referenced to the building or green wire ground of the ATU)

e_m = the resultant metallic voltage appearing across a terminating resistor

The test circuit should ideally exhibit 20 dB better balance than is required of the device under test (if less is achieved, a greater error will be present in the measurement). To ensure this has been met, the device under test should be replaced by two 50 Ω resistors and suitable blocking capacitors to ground, as shown in Figure A.6. The test circuit is suitably balanced if it exceeds the balance requirements by 20 dB when tip and ring are connected in either configuration (tip to A with ring to B, and tip to B with ring to A) to the calibration impedance. Failure to reach this balance indicates an imbalance in either the test circuitry or the calibration impedance. An additional resistor is needed in the calibration circuit when the device under test has the HPF and LPF integrated as in Figure A.5. This resistor provides a DC current path, thus testing that the test circuit inductors are not saturated by the DC currents that flow under these test conditions.

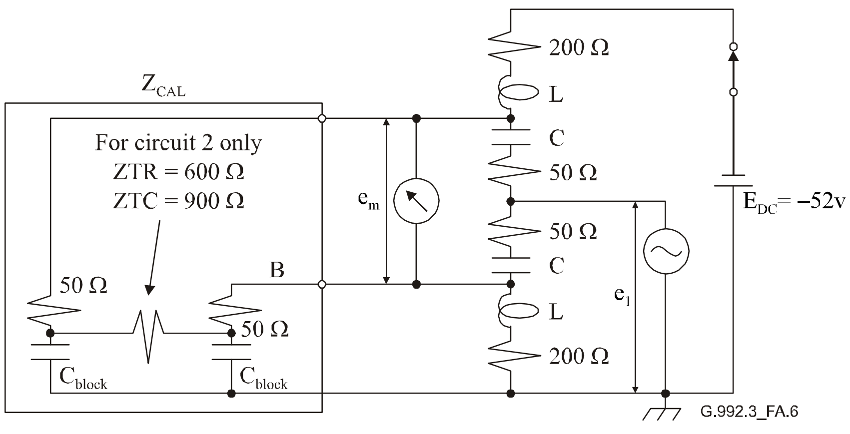


Figure A.6 – Calibration circuit

A.4.4 Electrical characteristics for the ATU-R in the high impedance state

The high impedance state shall consist of the unpowered, the disabled and the inactive impedance states, as defined in Table A.3.

NOTE – The electrical characteristics for the ATU-R in the high impedance state are specified for a single ATU-R, with the intent to allow up to three ATU-Rs in the high impedance state to be connected to the line in parallel, in addition to an ATU-R in the active state at any given time.

A.4.4.1 DC characteristics

The input DC resistance of the ATU-R at the U-x interface shall be greater than or equal to 5 MΩ.

A.4.4.2 Voiceband characteristics

A.4.4.2.1 Insertion (bridging) loss

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss in the high impedance state shall be less than 0.33 dB at 3.4 kHz, and shall be less than 1 dB at 12 and 16 kHz. This is to facilitate the insertion loss of three ATU-Rs on the same line to be less than 1 dB at 3.4 kHz, and to be less than 3 dB at 12 and 16 kHz.

A.4.4.2.2 Insertion (bridging) loss distortion

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss distortion in the high impedance state, as referred to the insertion loss at 3.4 kHz, shall be less than ±0.33 dB over the 200 to 4000 Hz frequency range. This is to facilitate insertion loss distortion of three ATU-Rs in the 200 to 4000 Hz frequency range to be less than ±1dB.

A.4.4.2.3 Intermodulation distortion

A 4-tone set as specified in [ITU-T O.42], at a level of –9 dBm, when applied to the ATU-R in the high impedance state, shall produce second and third order intermodulation distortion products at least 80 dB and 85 dB, respectively, below the received signal level.

A.4.4.3 ADSL band characteristics

A.4.4.3.1 Insertion (bridging) loss

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss in the high impedance state for the signal received by the active ATU-C shall be less than 0.33 dB at 100 kHz (a frequency in the active ATU-R transmit band).

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss in the high impedance state for the signal received by the active ATU-R shall be less than 0.33 dB at 500 kHz (a frequency in the active ATU-R receive band).

A.4.4.3.2 Insertion (bridging) loss distortion

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss distortion in the high impedance state for the signal transmitted by the active ATU-R shall be less than ±0.33 dB, over the 25 to 1104 kHz frequency range.

A.4.4.4 Characteristics above the ADSL band

A.4.4.4.1 Insertion (bridging) loss

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss in the high impedance state shall be less than 0.33 dB at 5 MHz and at 9 MHz.

A.4.4.4.2 Insertion loss (bridging) distortion

The ATU-R insertion (bridging) loss distortion shall be less than ±0.33 dB over the 4 to 10 MHz frequency range.

Annex B

Specific requirements for an ADSL system operating in the frequency band above ISDN as defined in Appendices I and II of Recommendation ITU-T G.961

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

This annex defines those parameters of the ADSL system that have been left undefined in the main body of this Recommendation because they are unique to an ADSL service that is frequency-division duplexed with ISDN basic access on the same digital subscriber line. The scope is to establish viable ways enabling the simultaneous deployment of ADSL and 160 kbit/s (2B + D) basic rate access with the constraint to use existing transmission technologies as those specified in Appendices I and II of [ITU-T G.961].

B.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

B.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C control parameter settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table B.1. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

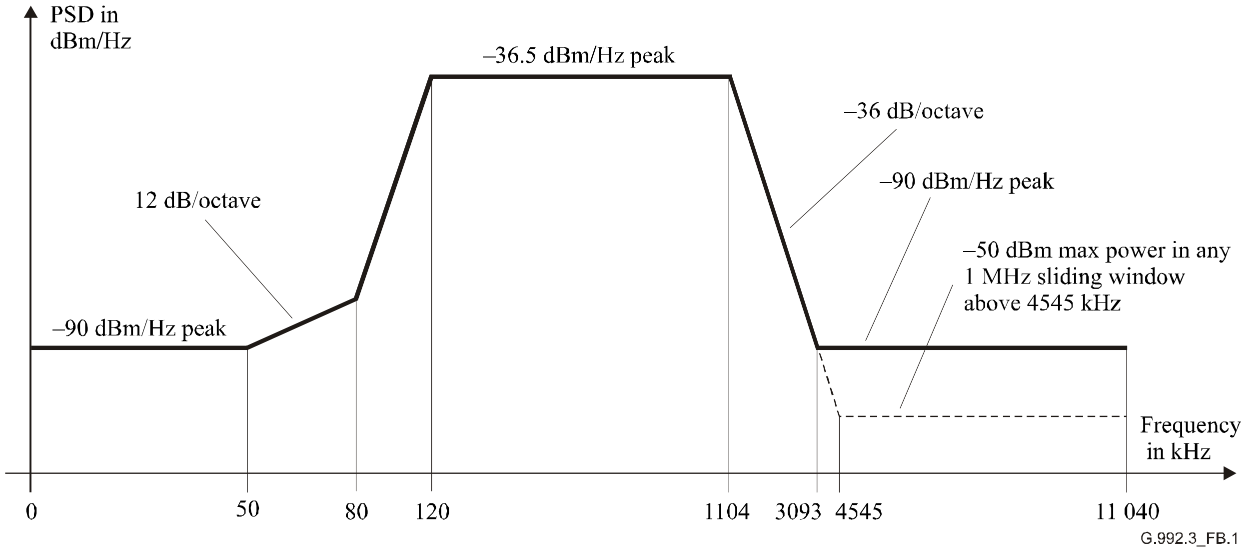
Table B.1 – ATU-C control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCds	256	
NOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPds	19.9 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

B.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 120 kHz (see Figure B.1) to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., for ADSL over ISDN implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure B.1 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is the ISDN band and is defined as frequencies below 120 kHz (see Figure B.1), the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.



Frequency band *f* (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 50$	–90
$50 < f \leq 80$	$-90 + 12 \times \log_2(f/50)$
$80 < f \leq 120$	$-81.8 + 77.4 \times \log_2(f/80)$
$120 < f \leq 1104$	–36.5
$1104 < f \leq 3093$	$-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$
$3093 < f \leq 4545$	–90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz] window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f \leq 11\,040$	–90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz] window of –50 dBm

Figure B.1 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for overlapped spectrum operation

All PSD measurements made at the line port of the ISDN splitter shall measure the spectral power into a resistive load having the same value as the design impedance for ADSL (i.e., 100 Ω).

The ISDN port of the ISDN splitter shall be terminated with the appropriate 2B1Q or 4B3T design impedance for ISDN-BA as defined in [ETSI TS 102 080].

It is intended that the degradation impact on the ISDN-BA line system performance be no more than 4.5 dB and 4 dB, for 2B1Q and 4B3T line codes, respectively, at the insertion loss reference frequency.

B.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDds* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the channel discovery phase;
- *REFPSDds* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the transceiver training phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDds* – *PCBds* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 μs.

The maximum transmit PSD allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is −40 dBm/Hz.

B.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see clause B.1.2.1). In all cases,

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds* – *PCBds*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 20.4 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds* – *PCBds*) by more than 0.9 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stopbands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-C is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

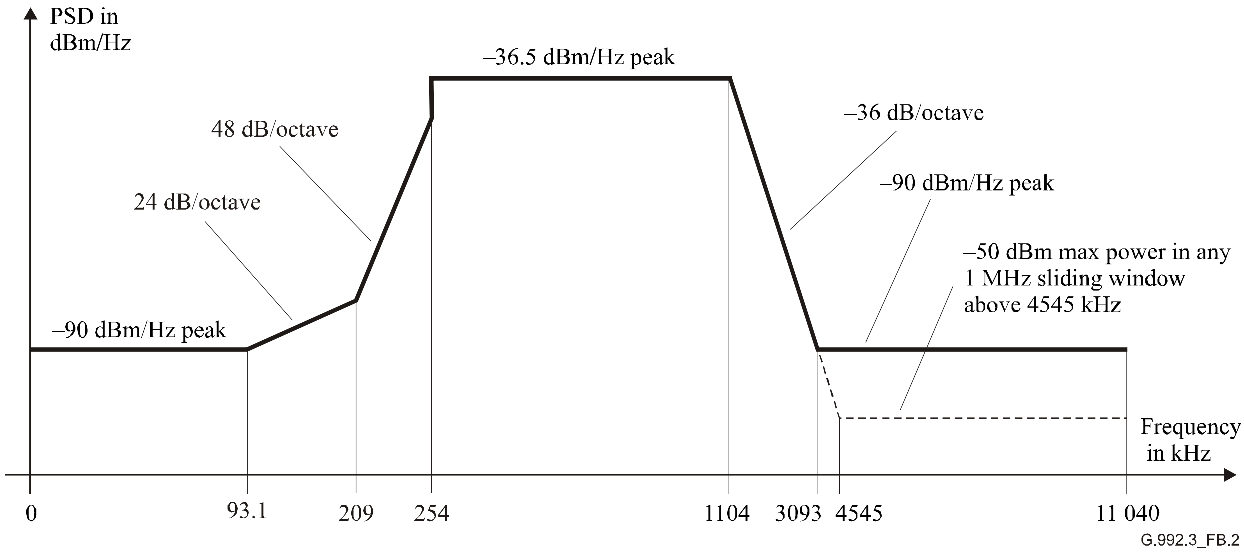
For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 19.9 dBm.

B.1.3 ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

Figure B.2 defines the spectral mask for the ATU-C transmitted signal, which results in reduced NEXT into the ADSL upstream band, relative to the mask in clause B.1.2. Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in clause B.1.2 only in the band from 50 kHz to 254 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 254 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 254 kHz and includes the ISDN band; the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.



Frequency band (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 93.1$	–90
$93.1 < f \leq 209$	$-90 + 24 \times \log_2(f/93.1)$
$209 < f \leq 254$	$-62 + 48 \times \log_2(f/209)$
$254 < f \leq 1104$	–36.5
$1104 < f \leq 3093$	$-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$
$3093 < f \leq 4545$	–90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1\text{ MHz}]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f \leq 11\,040$	–90 peak, with maximum power in the $[f, f + 1\text{ MHz}]$ window of –50 dBm

Figure B.2 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation

All PSD measurements made at the line port of the ISDN splitter shall measure the spectral power into a resistive load having the same value as the design impedance for ADSL (i.e., 100 Ω).

The ISDN port of the ISDN splitter shall be terminated with the appropriate 2B1Q or 4B3T design impedance for ISDN-BA as defined in [ETSI TS 102 080].

It is intended that the degradation impact on the ISDN-BA line system performance be no more than 4.5 dB and 4 dB, for 2B1Q and 4B3T line codes, respectively, at the insertion loss reference frequency.

B.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause B.1.2.1.

B.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause B.1.2.2. In addition, for non-overlapped spectrum operation, the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed 19.8 dBm.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 19.3 dBm.

B.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

B.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R control parameter settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table B.2. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

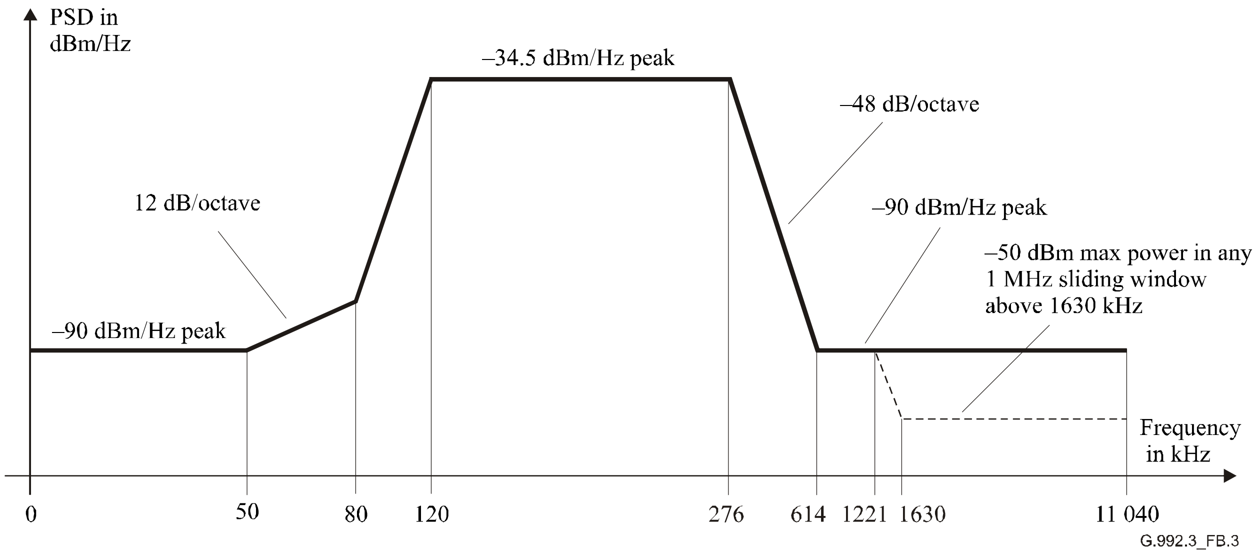
Table B.2 – ATU-R control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCus	64	
NOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPus	13.3 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
Tones 1 to 32	Enabled/disabled	Signifies that the transmission of upstream tones 1 to 32 (or a subset thereof) is enabled/disabled. Negotiated in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase (see clause B.3).

B.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements clause 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 120 kHz (see Figure B.3) to 276 kHz and is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

Figure B.3 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is the ISDN band and is defined as frequencies below 120 kHz (see Figure B.3), the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 276 kHz.



Frequency band *f* (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 50$	–90
$50 < f \leq 80$	$-90 + 12 \times \log_2(f/50)$
$80 < f \leq 120$	$-81.8 + 80.9 \times \log_2(f/80)$
$120 < f \leq 276$	–34.5
$276 < f \leq 614$	$-34.5 - 48 \times \log_2(f/276)$
$614 < f \leq 1221$	–90
$1221 < f \leq 1630$	–90 peak, with maximum power in the [$f, f + 1$ MHz] window of ($-90 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1221) + 60$) dBm
$1630 < f \leq 11\,040$	–90 peak, with maximum power in the [$f, f + 1$ MHz] window of –50 dBm

NOTE – The upstream PSD mask is intended for use with ISDN 2B1Q and ISDN 4B3T. However, some deployments have reported field issues with ISDN 4B3T NT activation when operating with ADSL overlay. ISDN passband versus ADSL passband trade-off and ISDN splitter characteristics need further study. A result thereof could be a limitation of the ADSL transmit power below 138 kHz when operation is over ISDN 4B3T. Such transmit power limitation can be achieved through frequency domain masking of the tones below tone index 33 (if the ATU-R transmitter supports tones 1 to 32) or through time domain filtering with filter rolloff from 138 kHz (if the ATU-R transmitter does not support tones 1 to 32).

Figure B.3 – ATU-R transmitter PSD mask

All PSD measurements made at the line port of the ISDN splitter shall measure the spectral power into a resistive load having the same value as the design impedance for ADSL (i.e., 100 Ω).

The ISDN port of the ISDN splitter shall be terminated with the appropriate 2B1Q or 4B3T design impedance for ISDN-BA as defined in [ETSI TS 102 080].

It is intended that the degradation impact on the ISDN-BA line system performance be no more than 4.5 dB and 4 dB, for 2B1Q and 4B3T line codes, respectively, at the insertion loss reference frequency.

B.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDus* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the channel discovery phase;
- *REFPSDus* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the transceiver training phase;

- *MAXNOMPSDus* – *PCBus* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum transmit PSD allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is −38 dBm/Hz.

B.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see clause B.2.2.1). In all cases:

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.8 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stopbands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 13.3 dBm.

B.2.3 Data subcarriers (replaces clause 8.8.1.1)

The channel analysis (see clause 8.13.5) allows for a maximum of 63 data carriers to be used (i.e., $i = 1$ to 63). However, the use of carriers $i = 1$ to 32 is optional and their use is negotiated through ITU-T G.994.1 (see clause B.3). The lower limit on i is partly determined by the ISDN/ADSL splitting filters. If FDM is used to separate the upstream and downstream ADSL signals, the upper limit is set by down-up splitting filters.

In all cases, the cut-off frequencies of these filters are completely at the discretion of the manufacturer, and the range of usable i is determined during the channel estimation in transceiver training (see clause 8.13.4). Implementations should, however, be designed such that, when interworking with implementations of other manufacturers, the resulting range of usable i enables the performance requirements to be met.

B.2.4 Modulation by the inverse discrete Fourier transform (supplements clause 8.8.2)

If the use of tones 1 to 32 is enabled (i.e., ITU-T G.994.1 MS codepoint = 1), modulation by the IDFT shall apply as defined in clause 8.8.2.

If the use of tones 1 to 32 is disabled (i.e., ITU-T G.994.1 MS codepoint = 0), the modulation by the IDFT shall apply as defined in clause 8.8.2, with the additional requirement that:

$Z_i = 0$, for $i = 1$ to 32, if the ATU-R has set the ITU-T G.994.1 CLR codepoint = 1;

or,

$Z_i = \mathrm{conj}(Z_{64-i})$, for $i = 1$ to 31 and $Z_{32} = 0$, if the ATU-R has set the ITU-T G.994.1 CLR codepoint = 0;

NOTE – The modulation (demodulation) by the IDFT (DFT) allows for implementation with a mirrored complex conjugate transmitter (receiver). In this case, the tones 1 to 32 cannot be used. This is indicated by the transmitter (receiver) by setting the ITU-T G.994.1 CLR (CL) codepoint to 0.

B.3 Initialization

B.3.1 Handshake – ATU-C (supplements clause 8.13.2.1)

B.3.1.1 CL messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.1.1)

See Table B.3.

Table B.3 – ATU-C CL message NPar(2) bit definitions

NPar(2) bit	Definition
Tones 1 to 32	If set to ONE, signifies that the ATU-C is capable of receiving upstream tones 1 to 32.

B.3.1.2 MS messages (supplements 8.13.2.1.2)

See Table B.4.

Table B.4 – ATU-C MS message NPar(2) bit definitions

NPar(2) bit	Definition
Tones 1 to 32	Set to ONE if, and only if, this bit was set to ONE in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. Signifies that the transmission of upstream tones 1 to 32 (or a subset thereof) is enabled (set to 1) or disabled (set to 0).

B.3.2 Handshake – ATU-R (supplements clause 8.13.2.2)

B.3.2.1 CLR messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.2.1)

See Table B.5.

Table B.5 – ATU-R CLR message NPar(2) bit definitions for Annex B

NPar(2) bit	Definition
Tones 1 to 32	If set to ONE, signifies that the ATU-R is capable of transmitting upstream tones 1 to 32.

B.3.2.2 MS messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.2.2)

See Table B.6.

Table B.6 – ATU-R MS message NPar(2) bit definitions for Annex B

NPar(2) bit	Definition
Tones 1 to 32	Set to ONE if, and only if, this bit was set to ONE in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. Signifies that the transmission of upstream tones 1 to 32 (or a subset thereof) is enabled (set to 1) or disabled (set to 0).

B.3.3 Spectrum bounds and shaping parameters

Spectrum bounds and shaping parameters shall apply for the upstream subcarriers as defined in clause 8.13.2.4 (with $NSCus$ = 64, see Table B.2).

For implementations using a mirrored complex conjugate transmitter, an IDFT size of 32 shall be indicated in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase (see clause 8.13.2). The minimum tss_i values shall be calculated according to equation 8-1 (see clause 8.13.2.4) with SUPPORTEDset evidently limited to subcarriers in the 33 to 63 range, N = 32, NSC = 64 and fs = 552 kHz. This results in an $S(f)$ which is periodic with 276 kHz. Because of this periodicity, and in order to avoid redundant tss_i information in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, spectrum shaping parameters shall be defined only on subcarriers 32 and above in the ITU-T G.994.1 CLR message (i.e., the first breakpoint frequency in the CLR message shall be at subcarrier index 32 or higher).

B.4 Electrical characteristics

This clause specifies the combination of ATU-x and high-pass filter, as shown in Figures 5-4 and 5-5; further information about the low-pass filter is specified in Annex E.

All electrical characteristics shall be met in the presence of all of the ISDN signals, as defined in Appendices I and II of [ITU-T G.961] (as applicable to the ISDN service).

B.4.1 Electrical characteristics for the ATU-C and for the ATU-R in the active state

B.4.1.1 DC characteristics

The input DC resistance of the ATU-x at the U-x interface shall be greater than or equal to 5 MΩ.

NOTE – The most common implementation of the splitter filters is with the low-pass and high-pass connected in parallel at the U-x port. In this arrangement, the high-pass filter will typically block DC with capacitors.

B.4.1.2 ISDN band characteristics

B.4.1.2.1 ADSL noise interference into the ISDN circuit

This is the specification for the lower stopband PSD of the ATU-C and ATU-R (see clauses B.1.2 and B.2.2, respectively).

B.4.1.2.2 Input impedance

The imaginary part of the ATU-x input impedance, as measured at the U-x interface, over the 0-30 kHz frequency range, shall be equivalent to a 6-11 nF capacitor (approximately 480-880 Ω at 30 kHz) for the ATU-R and the ATU-C that has an integrated splitter high-pass function (e.g., integrated 27 nF DC blocking capacitors) shall be equivalent to 10.8-59 nF (approximately 90-490 Ω at 30 kHz) for the ATU-C designed to be used with an external splitter high-pass function (e.g., external 27 nF DC blocking capacitors).

NOTE – Depending on vendor-discretionary performance-related trade-offs, the actual transceiver input capacitance may be any value in this range.

The input capacitance range defined for ADSL over ISDN transceivers shall also apply for ADSL transceivers with PSD starting around 138 kHz (which can have either ISDN or POTS as underlying service, and is referred to as the "universal" ADSL transceiver).

B.4.1.3 ADSL band characteristics

B.4.1.3.1 Longitudinal balance

The ATU-C shall have a longitudinal conversion loss (LCL) of at least 50 dB in the frequency range from 120 kHz to 276 kHz and at least 40 dB in the frequency range from 276 kHz to 1104 kHz.

The ATU-R shall have a longitudinal conversion loss (LCL) of at least 50 dB in the frequency range from 120 kHz to 1104 kHz.

The method of measurement shall be identical to the method defined for ADSL over POTS in clause A.4.3.3.1.

Annex C

Specific requirements for an ADSL system operating in the same cable as ISDN as defined in Appendix III of Recommendation ITU-T G.961

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

Annex C to this Recommendation has been published independently due to its size and its specific structure.

Annex D

ATU-C and ATU-R state diagrams

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

D.1 Introduction

This annex provides state diagrams for the ATU-C and ATU-R, some portions of which are mandatory, to guarantee interworking between different manufacturers' units, some portions of which are optional.

D.2 Definitions

The following terms and abbreviations are used in this annex. Where states or events have been defined elsewhere in this Recommendation, the definitions are referenced here for convenience.

D.2.1 LOS failure: An LOS failure is declared after 2.5 ± 0.5 s of contiguous LOS defect, or, if LOS defect is present when the criteria for LOF failure declaration have been met (see LOF failure definition below). An LOS failure is cleared after 10 ± 0.5 s of no LOS defect.

D.2.2 LOF failure: An LOF failure is declared after 2.5 ± 0.5 s of contiguous SEF defect, except when an LOS defect or failure is present (see LOS failure definition above). An LOF failure is cleared when LOS failure is declared, or after 10 ± 0.5 s of no SEF defect.

D.2.3 persistent LOF failure: Persistent LOF failure is declared after 2.5 ± 0.5 s of near-end LOF failure with SEF defect still present. LOF failure and SEF defect are defined for operations and maintenance in clauses D.2.2 and 8.12.1.

D.2.4 persistent LOS failure: Persistent LOS is declared after 2.5 ± 0.5 s of near-end LOS failure with LOS defect still present. LOS failure and LOS defect are defined for operations and maintenance in clauses D.2.1 and 8.12.1.

D.2.5 high_BER-ss: High bit error ratio in received data, showtime (re)sync event. This event occurs when some algorithm, which may be vendor-specific, determines that a resync attempt (on the showtime signal being received) is required. This event is (but is not required to be) related to the SEF (severely errored frame) defect defined for operations and maintenance (see clause 8.12.1).

D.2.6 high_BER-st: High bit error ratio in received data, showtime (re)train event. This event occurs when some algorithm, which may be vendor-specific, determines that a retrain attempt (on the showtime signal being received) is required. This event is (but is not required to be) related to a high level of near-end LCD, CRC or FEC anomalies over some period of time or to the SEF (severely errored frame) or LOM (loss-of-margin) defect (see clause 8.12.1).

D.2.7 high_BER-hs: High bit error ratio in received data, re-initialize through an ITU-T G.994.1 event. This event occurs when some algorithm, which may be vendor-specific, determines that a full re-initialization (including an ITU-T G.994.1 session) is required. This event is (but is not required to be) related to a high level of near-end LCD, CRC or FEC anomalies over some period of time or the SEF (severely errored frame) or LOM (loss-of-margin) defect (see clause 8.12.1). It may also relate to far-end performance primitives.

D.2.8 high_BER-si: High bit error ratio in received data, re-initialize through short initialization event. This event occurs when some algorithm, which may be vendor-specific, determines that a short re-initialization (not including an ITU-T G.994.1 session) is required. This event is (but is not required to be) related to a high level of near-end LCD, CRC or FEC anomalies over some period of time or the SEF (severely errored frame) or LOM (loss-of-margin) defect (see clause 8.12.1). It may also relate to far-end performance primitives.

D.2.9 host control channel: For the ATU-C, this is a configuration control channel from some host controller, such as a network management system (NMS) outside or a management entity within the access node. For the ATU-R, this is a personal computer (PC) outside or a management entity within the network termination, which controls one or more ATU-C line units.

D.3 State diagrams

State diagrams are given in Figure D.1 for the ATU-C, and in Figure D.2 for the ATU-R. States are indicated by ovals, with the name of the state given within the oval. The states are defined in Table D.1 for the ATU-C and in Table D.2 for the ATU-R. Transitions between states are indicated by arrows, with the event causing the transition listed next to the arrow. For some events, the source of the event is indicated with letter(s) and a colon preceding the event name; a key to the source events is provided at the bottom of each figure. All states except retrain and resync are mandatory.

In the state diagram for the ATU-C, a C-IDLE state would be desired to guarantee a quiet mode, which may be useful prior to provisioning, to allow certain tests (e.g., metallic loop testing (MELT)), or to discontinue service. A self test function is desirable, but it may be a vendor/customer option to define when self test occurs (e.g., always at power-up or only under CO control), and which transition to take after successfully completing self test (e.g., enter C-IDLE, or enter C-SILENT1 (see [ITU-T G.994.1]), or enter C-INIT/TRAIN).

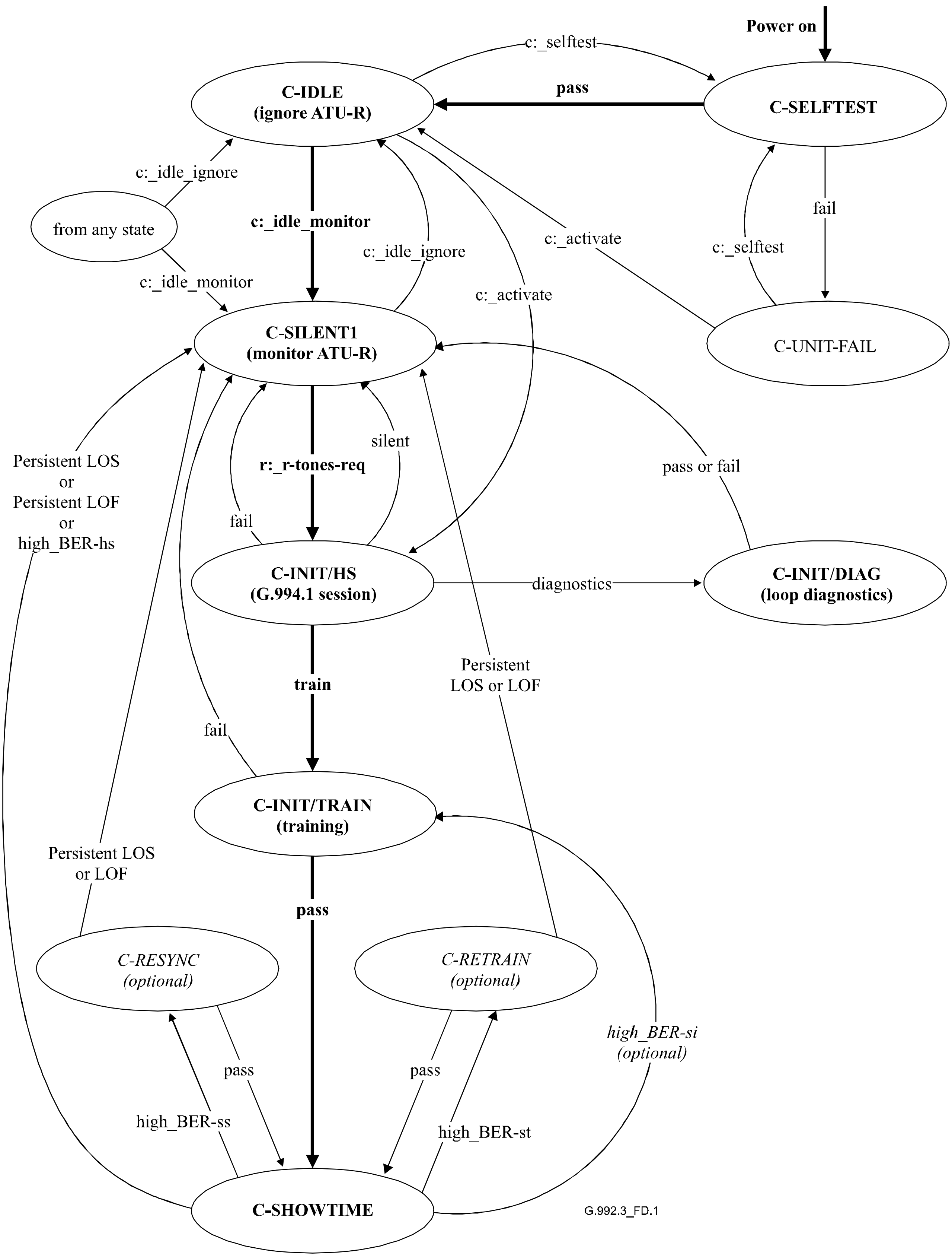
A variety of "host controller" commands (events preceded by "c:_") are shown as non-mandatory in the ATU-C state diagram to provide example events and transitions between states. The way in which these events are implemented is left to the vendor since many options are possible (e.g., separate host controller port on the ATU-C, switches or other front-panel controls, fixed options).

The receiving ATU shall transition state upon persistent LOS and/or LOF failure. This implies that:

- If no high_BER-hs or high_BER-is events cause the receiving ATU to transition state earlier, then the persistency allows the transmitting ATU to detect the LOS or LOF failure condition through the indicator bits, before the receiving ATU transitions state (i.e., removes the showtime signal from the line).
- If the ATU-C transitions from C-SHOWTIME to C-SILENT1, then the ATU-R shall detect a persistent LOS failure, shall transition to R-SILENT0 followed by R-INIT/TRAIN and shall transmit R-TONES-REQ within a maximum of 6 s after the ATU-C transitioning to C-SILENT.

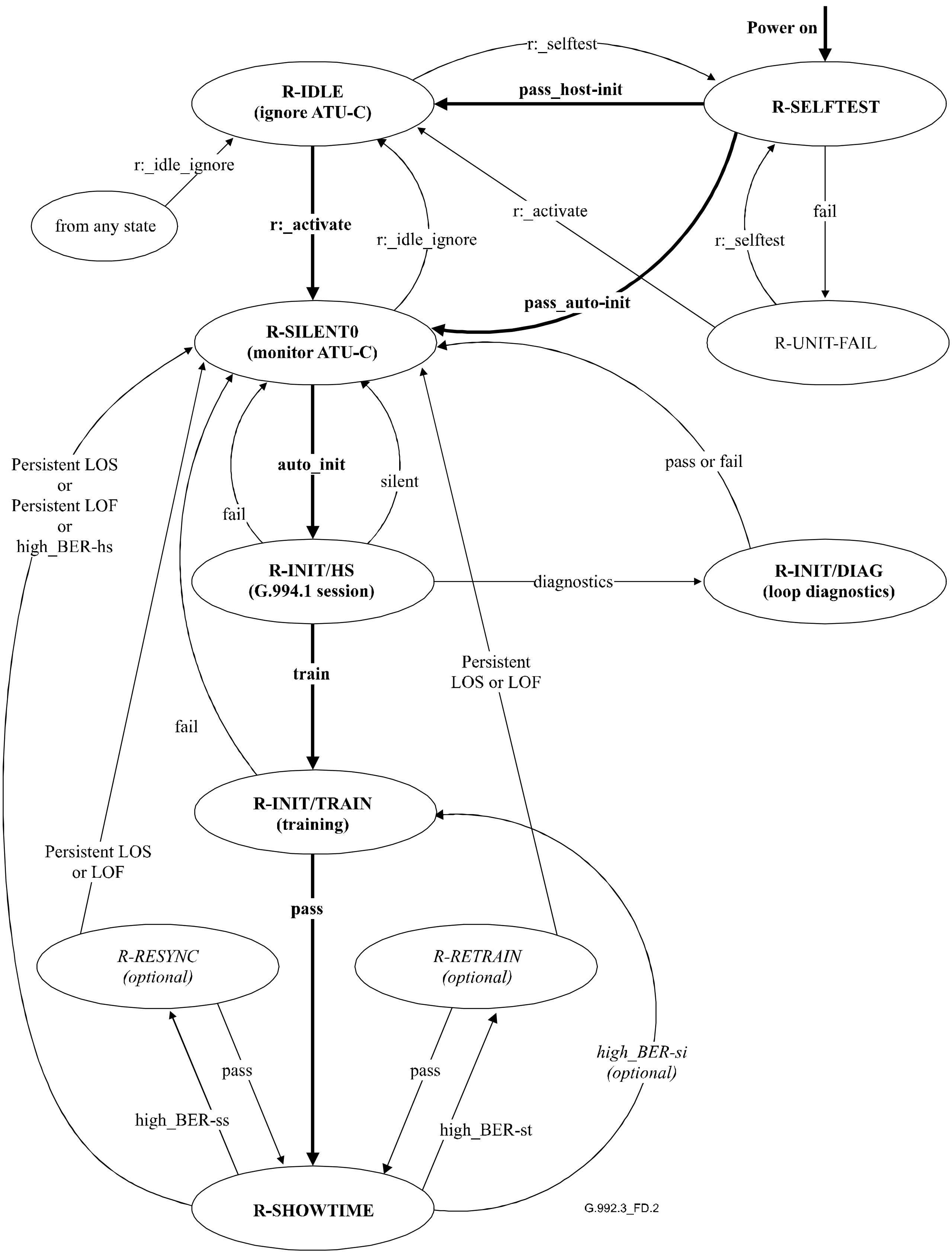
The receiving ATU also transitions state upon a high_BER event. These events are vendor-specific and are (but are not required to be) related to near-end and/or far-end performance primitives (see clause D.2). As an example, the ATU may define an high_BER event as 30 s of persistent near-end or far-end LOM defect. The ATU should trade-off the persistency in the high_BER events to, on the one hand, quickly recover data integrity but, on the other hand, not to unnecessarily interrupt data transmission. This trade-off may be enhanced if the ATU is able to detect and quantify instantaneous changes in line conditions (e.g., is able to detect hook state changes or the impact thereof, see clauses 8.13.3.1.11 and 8.13.3.2.11).

A retrain state and a resync state (both without interruption of the showtime signal) are optional in both state diagrams. Vendor proprietary algorithms may be used to restore frame and data integrity. An optional short initialization (with interruption of the showtime signal) is defined in clause 8.14, which omits the ITU-T G.994.1 session from the initialization and attempts to minimize the durations of the variable length states of the initialization performed in the INIT/TRAIN state.



NOTE 1 – Events are received from the ATU-C host controller (c:_) or from the ATU-R (r:_).
NOTE 2 – The main sequence of states is shown in **bold**.
NOTE 3 – Optional (vendor proprietary) states and transitions are shown in *italics.*
NOTE 4 – States are defined in Table D.1 and definitions in D.2.

Figure D.1 – State diagram for the ATU-C



NOTE 1 – Events are received from the ATU-C host controller (c:_) or from the ATU-R (r:_).
NOTE 2 – The main sequence of states is shown in **bold**.
NOTE 3 – Optional (vendor proprietary) states and transitions are shown in *italics*.
NOTE 4 – States are defined in Table D.2 and definitions in D.2.

Figure D.2 – State diagram for the ATU-R

Table D.1 – ATU-C state definitions

State name	Description
C-SELFTEST (mandatory)	• Temporary state entered after power-up in which the ATU performs a self test. • Transmitter off (QUIET at U-C interface). • Receiver off (no response to R-TONES-REQ). • No response to host control channel. • If self test pass then transition to C-IDLE. • If self test fail then transition to C-UNIT-FAIL.
C-UNIT-FAIL (mandatory)	• Steady state entered after an unsuccessful ATU self test. • Transmitter off (QUIET at U-C interface). • Receiver off (no response to R-TONES-REQ). • Monitor host control channel if possible (allows the host controller to retrieve self test results).
C-IDLE (mandatory)	• Steady state entered after successful self test. • Transmitter off (QUIET at U-C interface). • Receiver off (no response to R-TONES-REQ). • Monitor host control channel.
C-SILENT1 (mandatory)	• Steady state defined in [ITU-T G.994.1], entered upon host controller command. • Transmitter off (QUIET at U-C interface). • Receiver on (monitor for R-TONES-REQ, if detected, transition to C-INIT/HS state). • Monitor host control channel.
C-INIT/HS (mandatory)	• Temporary state entered to perform the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization. • Transmitter on (start with transmitting C-TONES). • Receiver on (start with monitoring for R-SILENT0). • Monitor host control channel. • If silent period then transition to C-SILENT1. • If loop diagnostics mode then transition to C-DIAGNOSTICS. • Else transition to C-INIT/TRAIN.
C-INIT/TRAIN (mandatory)	• Temporary state entered to perform other phases of initialization. • Transmitter on (start with C-QUIET/C-COMB). • Receiver on (start with monitoring for R-QUIET/R-COMB). • If init pass then transition to C-SHOWTIME. • If init fail then transition to C-SILENT1. • Monitor host control channel.
C-INIT/DIAG (mandatory)	• Temporary state entered to perform other phases of initialization in loop diagnostics mode. • Transmitter on (start with C-QUIET/C-COMB). • Receiver on (start with monitoring for R-QUIET/R-COMB). • Transition to C-SILENT1. • Monitor host control channel.
C-SHOWTIME (mandatory)	• Steady state entered to perform bit pump functions (frame bearers active). • On-line reconfigurations and transitions into and from the low power state occur within this state. • If persistent LOS or LOF failure then transition to C-SILENT1. • If (vendor discretionary) high_BER-ss, high_BER-st, high_BER-hs or high_BER-si event then transition to respectively C-RESYNC, C-RETRAIN, C-SILENT1 or C-INIT/TRAIN. • Monitor host control channel.

Table D.1 – ATU-C state definitions

State name	Description
C-RESYNC (optional state and vendor proprietary resync procedure)	• Temporary state entered upon high_BER-ss event (see clause D.2), in which ATU tries to recover frame integrity from received showtime signal (e.g., from the synchronization symbols). • Transmitter and receiver on with showtime signal. • Declare SEF defect. • If resync pass then clear SEF defect and transition to C-SHOWTIME. • If resync fail then timeout on persistent LOF (or LOS) failure and transition to C-SILENT1. • Monitor host control channel.
C-RETRAIN (optional state and vendor proprietary retrain procedure)	• Temporary state entered upon high_BER-st event (see clause D.2), in which ATU tries to recover data integrity from received showtime signal. • Transmitter and receiver on with showtime signal. • Declare SEF defect. • If retrain pass then clear SEF defect and transition to C-SHOWTIME. • If retrain fail then timeout on persistent LOF (or LOS) failure and transition to C-SILENT1. • Monitor host control channel.

Table D.2 – ATU-R state definitions

State name	Description
R-SELFTEST (mandatory)	• Temporary state entered after power-up in which the ATU performs a self test. • Transmitter off (QUIET at U-R interface). • Receiver off (no response to C-TONES). • No response to host control channel. • If self test pass then transition to R-IDLE if ATU is under host control or transition to R-SILENT0 if ATU is in automatic training mode. • If self test fail then transition to R-UNIT-FAIL.
R-UNIT-FAIL (mandatory)	• Steady state entered after an unsuccessful ATU self test. • Transmitter off (QUIET at U-R interface). • Receiver off (no response to C-TONES). • Monitor host control channel if possible (allows the host controller to retrieve self test results).
R-IDLE (mandatory)	• Steady state entered after successful self test if ATU is under host control. • Transmitter off (QUIET at U-R interface). • Receiver off (no response to C-TONES). • Monitor host control channel.
R-SILENT0 (mandatory)	• Temporary state defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] entered after self test pass if ATU is in automatic training mode or with host controller command. • Transmitter off (transmit R-SILENT0). • Receiver on (monitor for C-TONES, if detected, transition to R-INIT/HS state). • Automatic training: immediate transition to R-INIT/HS (unless delayed for silent period). • Monitor host control channel.

Table D.2 – ATU-R state definitions

State name	Description
R-INIT/HS (mandatory)	• Temporary state entered to perform the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization. • Transmitter on (start with transmitting R-TONES-REQ). • Receiver on (start with monitoring for C-TONES). • Monitor host control channel. • If silent period then transition to R-SILENT0. • If loop diagnostics mode then transition to R-DIAGNOSTICS. • Else transition to R-INIT/TRAIN.
R-INIT/TRAIN (mandatory)	• Temporary state entered to perform other phases of initialization; • Transmitter on (start with R-QUIET/R-COMB). • Receiver on (start with monitoring for C-QUIET/C-COMB). • If init pass then transition to R-SHOWTIME. • If init fail then transition to R-SILENT0. • Monitor host control channel.
R-INIT/DIAG (mandatory)	• Temporary state entered to perform other phases of initialization in loop diagnostics mode. • Transmitter on (start with R-QUIET/R-COMB). • Receiver on (start with monitoring for C-QUIET/C-COMB). • Transition to R-SILENT0. • Monitor host control channel.
R-SHOWTIME (mandatory)	• Steady state entered to perform bit pump functions (frame bearers active). • On-line reconfigurations and transitions into and from the low power state occur within this state. • If persistent LOS or LOF failure then transition to R-SILENT0. • If (vendor discretionary) high_BER-ss, high_BER-st, high_BER-hs or high_BER-si event, transition to respectively R-RESYNC, R-RETRAIN, R-SILENT0 or R-INIT/TRAIN state. • Monitor host control channel.
R-RESYNC (optional state and vendor proprietary resync procedure)	• Temporary state entered upon high_BER-ss event (see clause D.2), in which ATU tries to recover frame integrity from received showtime signal (e.g., from the synchronization symbols). • Transmitter and receiver on with showtime signal. • Declare SEF defect. • If resync pass then clear SEF defect and transition to R-SHOWTIME. • If retrain fail then timeout on persistent LOF (or LOS) failure and transition to R-SILENT0. • Monitor host control channel.
R-RETRAIN (optional state and vendor proprietary retrain procedure)	• Temporary state entered upon high_BER-st event (see D.2), in which ATU tries to recover data integrity from received showtime signal. • Transmitter and receiver on with showtime signal. • Declare SEF defect. • If retrain pass then clear SEF defect and transition to R-SHOWTIME. • If retrain fail then timeout on persistent LOF (or LOS) failure and transition to R-SILENT0. • Monitor host control channel.

Annex E

POTS and ISDN basic access splitters

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

The purpose of the POTS splitter is twofold. For ADSL signals, protection from the high-frequency transients and impedance effects that occur during POTS operation, ringing transients, ring trip transients, and off-hook transients and impedance changes, is provided. For POTS voiceband service, the low-pass filters provide protection from ADSL signals which may impact, through non-linear or other effects, remote devices (handset, fax, voiceband, modem, etc.) and central office operation. This filtering should be performed while maintaining the quality of the end-to-end voiceband connection (i.e., between the POTS and PSTN interfaces).

Likewise, the ISDN basic access splitter is also twofold.

E.1 Type 1 – POTS splitter – Europe

ADSL/POTS splitters shall comply with [ETSI TS 101 952-1]. The relevant sub-parts are the following:

- Sub-part 1-1: Generic specification of the low pass part of DSL over POTS splitters including dedicated annexes for specific xDSL variants.
- Sub-part 1-2: Specification of the high pass part of ADSL/POTS splitters.

E.1.1 Phoneline networking equipment isolation

To allow phoneline networking terminals (i.e., [b-ITU-T G.9951] and [b-ITU-T G.9952]) to operate without compromise from bridging loss caused by a low impedance at the remote splitter POTS port, an impedance range at the remote splitter POTS port is defined for frequencies in the 2 to 10 MHz band.

E.1.1.1 Remote splitter POTS port shunt impedance

The total (across tip and ring at the POTS port) impedance in the 2 to 10 MHz frequency band should be at least 160 Ω.

The inclusion of series components to meet this specification shall not affect the other specified parameters such as DC resistance, longitudinal balance, tip to ring capacitance measurements under 200 Hz, or return loss requirements.

E.2 Type 2 – POTS splitter – North America

The central office POTS splitter shall comply with [ANSI T1.TRQ.10].

The customer premises POTS splitter shall comply with [ATIS-0600016].

E.3 Type 3 – ISDN (ITU-T G.961 Appendix I or II) splitter – Europe

ADSL/ISDN splitters shall comply with [ETSI TS 101 952-1]. The relevant sub-part is the following:

- Sub-part 1-3: Specification of ADSL/ISDN splitters.

E.4 Type 4 – POTS splitter – Japan

This clause describes specifications and testing methods for a POTS splitter appropriate to Japan. Both a central office (CO) POTS splitter and a remote POTS splitter shall conform to them.

E.4.1 Introduction

E.4.1.1 Frequencies and level of voiceband signal

The frequencies and level of the voiceband signal provided by the local switch (LS) are as follows:

- Signal frequency: 0.2-4.0 kHz.
- Signal level: Maximum of +3 dBm.

A signal of +36 dBm at 400 Hz is also used as a howler signal.

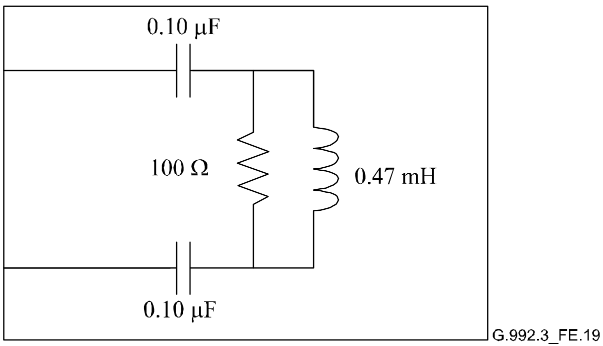
E.4.1.2 DC blocking capacitor for external POTS splitter

The external POTS splitter, either CO or remote, may be located some distance from the ATU-C or ATU-R modem. To protect against DC faults, DC blocking capacitors of 0.12 μF per wire (as shown in Figures E.2 and E.3) should be included in the xDSL port of the external POTS splitter. These capacitors configure parts of the input to the xDSL HPF function, so they shall be incorporated in the input capacitance specified in clause E.4.2.6.1.

The DC blocking capacitors are only for the external POTS splitter. When the POTS splitter, either CO or remote, is included entirely within the ATU-C or ATU-R modem, the DC blocking capacitors are not necessary for the internal POTS splitter.

E.4.1.3 ZHP definition

To facilitate testing of the POTS splitter independently of the actual modem, a ZHP is defined to allow proper termination of the xDSL port during voiceband testing. The ZHP is valid only for voiceband frequencies. It shall be as shown in Figure E.1.



NOTE – Component Tolerances: Capacitors: 2.5%, Resistors: 1%, Coils: 5%.

Figure E.1 – ZHP definitions

E.4.2 DC characteristics

This clause contains the DC specifications, such as the loop DC current, the ringing, the L1-to-L2 DC voltage, the loop DC resistance, the isolation resistance, the L1-to-L2 capacitance and the capacitance to ground, and the methods for measuring them.

All requirements shall be met in the presence of all POTS loop currents ranging from 0 to 130 mA.

E.4.2.1 Loop DC current

The POTS splitter shall ensure normal operation for loop DC currents ranging from 0 to 130 mA.

E.4.2.2 Ringing

The POTS splitter shall accept the following ringing signals:

- ringing frequency: 15-20 Hz;
- ringing AC (superimposed on DC): 83 Vrms max;
- DC: 53 V max.

E.4.2.3 L1-to-L2 DC voltage

The POTS splitter shall accept POTS L1-to-L2 DC voltages of 0 to ±53 V. In addition, it shall be able to withstand a POTS L1-to-L2 voltage of up to 120 V for at least 10 s.

NOTE – In addition, the resistibility of the POTS splitter to overvoltages and overcurrents should be compliant to the requirements and test procedures specified in [b-ITU-T K.20] for equipments installed in a telecommunication centre and in [b-ITU-T K.21] for equipments installed in customer premises.

E.4.2.4 DC resistance

The L1-to-L2 DC resistance, at the PSTN port with the line port shorted, or at the POTS port with the line port shorted, shall be less than or equal to 40 Ω.

E.4.2.5 Isolation resistance

The isolation resistance of the POTS splitter shall remain intact under the following conditions.

E.4.2.5.1 L1-to-L2 isolation resistance

The L1-to-L2 isolation resistance at the PSTN port with the line port opened, or at the POTS port with the line port opened, shall be greater than or equal to 10 MΩ.

E.4.2.5.2 Isolation resistance to ground

The isolation resistance to ground at the PSTN port with the line port opened, or at the POTS port with the line port opened, shall be greater than or equal to 10 MΩ.

E.4.2.6 Capacitance

The capacitance of the POTS splitter and modem shall satisfy the following requirements.

E.4.2.6.1 L1-to-L2 capacitance

The L1-to-L2 capacitance at the PSTN or POTS port and the modem input allowance shall be as shown in Table E.1.

Table E.1 – L1-to-L2 capacitance

POTS splitter, either CO or remote, without the modem connected	250 nF max (DC-30 Hz)
Modem input allowance, including the DC blocking capacitors built into the POTS splitter	35 nF max (DC-30 Hz)
Modem with internal POTS splitter is the sum of the above	285 nF max (DC-30 Hz)
Modem input allowance, excluding the DC blocking capacitors built in the POTS splitter (see Note)	84 nF max (DC-30 Hz)
NOTE – The capacitance, summing up the ATU-R and the external remote POTS splitter, is allowed up to 334 nF max in a case that the ATU-R is connected to the line directly without passing the external remote POTS splitter and a phone only is connected at the POTS port without the ATU-R connected at the xDSL port of the external remote POTS splitter.	

E.4.2.6.2 Capacitance to ground

The capacitance to ground at the PSTN port with the line port opened, or at the POTS port with the line port opened, shall be less than or equal to 1.0 nF.

E.4.3 AC characteristics

This clause contains the AC specifications of the voiceband, such as the insertion loss, the attenuation variation, the delay distortion, the return loss, the longitudinal balance, the distortion caused by harmonics and the termination, and the methods for measuring them. In addition, it contains specifications and measurement methods for the out band and the ADSL band.

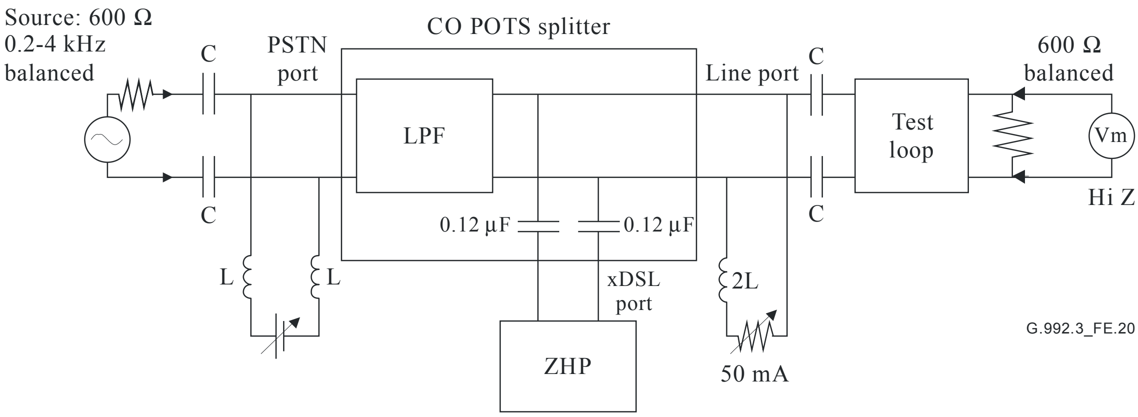
E.4.3.1 Voiceband

This clause describes the AC characteristics in the voiceband.

E.4.3.1.1 Insertion loss (at 1 kHz)

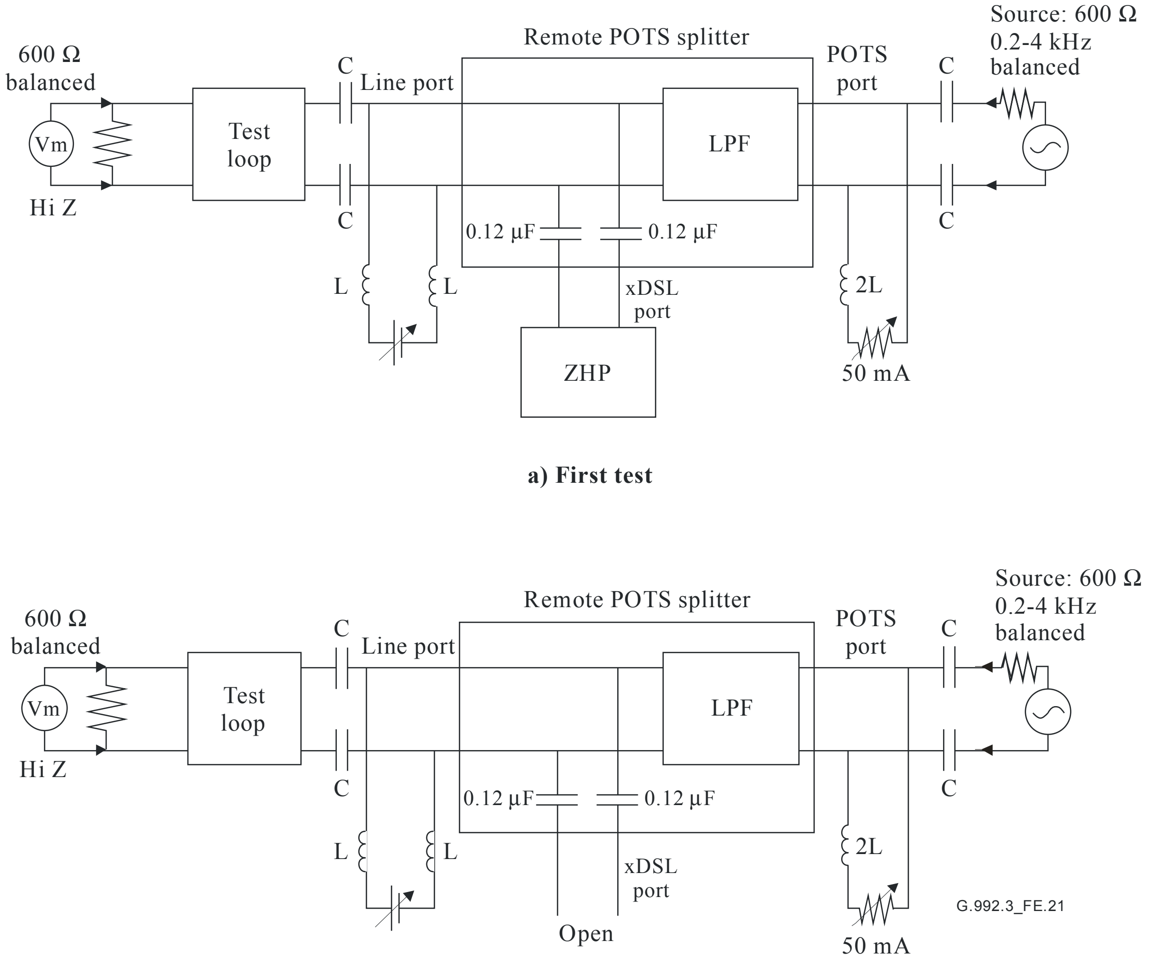
The insertion loss of the POTS splitter shall be less than or equal to ±1.0 dB at 1 kHz. Using the test set-up shown in Figures E.2 and E.3, the insertion loss from the source to termination shall be measured with and without the POTS splitter and the xDSL port terminal impedance combination inserted, and with an input level of 0 dBm (600 Ω). For the CO POTS splitter test in Figure E.2, the terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP. For the remote POTS splitter tests, the terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP for a first test in Figure E.3a and open impedance unconnecting ZHP for a second test in Figure E.3b.

A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. The C and L in Figures E.2 and E.3 are for superimposing the DC bias current. Proper values of C and L should be set for testing voiceband frequencies ranging from 0.2 kHz to 4 kHz, and C ≥ 20 µF and L ≥ 15 H may be among the proper values.



NOTE – The test loop is specified in Figure E.4.

Figure E.2 – Transmission measurements in the voiceband for the CO POTS splitter

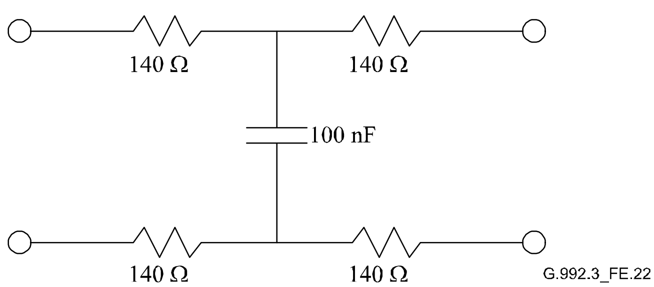


a) First test

b) Second test

NOTE – The test loop is specified in Figure E.4.

Figure E.3 – Transmission measurements in the voiceband for the remote POTS splitter



NOTE – This test loop model is valid only for voiceband frequencies.

Figure E.4 – Test loop definition

E.4.3.1.2 Attenuation distortion in voiceband variation

The variation of insertion loss value from that measured with 1 kHz shall be measured using the test set-up in Figures E.2 and E.3, and with an input level of 0 dBm (600 Ω). The increase in attenuation distortion, relative to the 1 kHz insertion loss, caused by the POTS splitter with the ZHP (or modem) load attached using the test loop defined by Figure E.4, between 0.2 and 3.4 kHz shall be less than ±1.0 dB and between 3.4 kHz and 4.0 kHz shall be less than ±1.5 dB.

A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of C and L should be set for testing voiceband frequencies ranging from 0.2 kHz to 4 kHz, and C ≥ 20 µF and L ≥ 15 H may be among the proper values.

E.4.3.1.3 Absolute group delay and group delay distortion

The absolute group delay of the POTS splitter at the frequency of minimum group delay shall not exceed 150 µs. The group delay distortion of the POTS splitter shall lie within the limits shown below, where the group delay distortion is defined as the increase from the minimum value of absolute group delay:

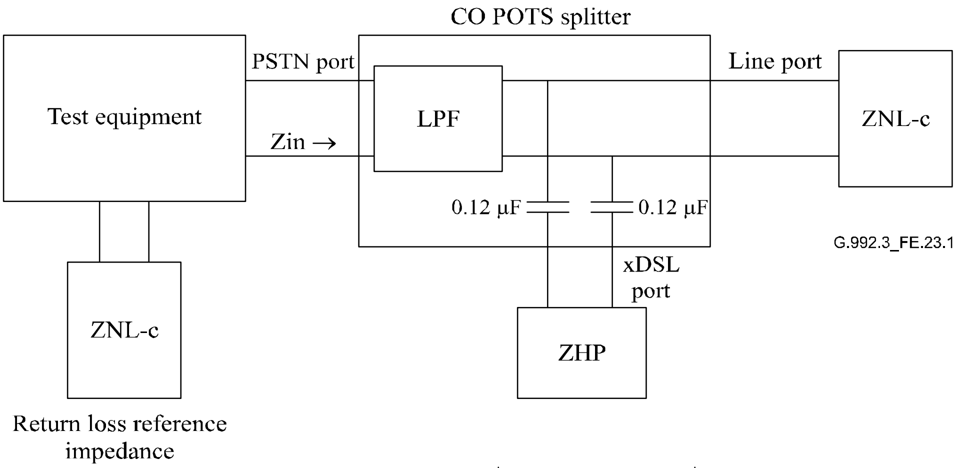
- 0.2-0.6 kHz: Maximum of 250 µs.
- 0.6-3.2 kHz: Maximum of 200 µs.
- 3.2-4.0 kHz: Maximum of 250 µs.

The absolute group delay and group delay distortion of the POTS splitter shall be measured using the test set-up and conditions defined in Figures E.2 and E.3.

E.4.3.1.4 Return loss

Figure E.5-1 defines the test configuration and the values of the test components that shall be used for impedance measurements in the voiceband for CO splitters. The terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP. Figures E.5-2 and E.5-3 define the test configuration and the values of the test components that shall be used for impedance measurements in the voiceband for the remote POTS splitter. The terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP for a first test (in Figure E.5-2), and open impedance unconnecting ZHP for a second test (in Figure E.5-3). The return loss of each splitter under the specified conditions shall be as follows:

- 11 dB (0.2-1.5 kHz);
- 10 dB (1.5-2.0 kHz);
- 9 dB (2.0-3.4 kHz).



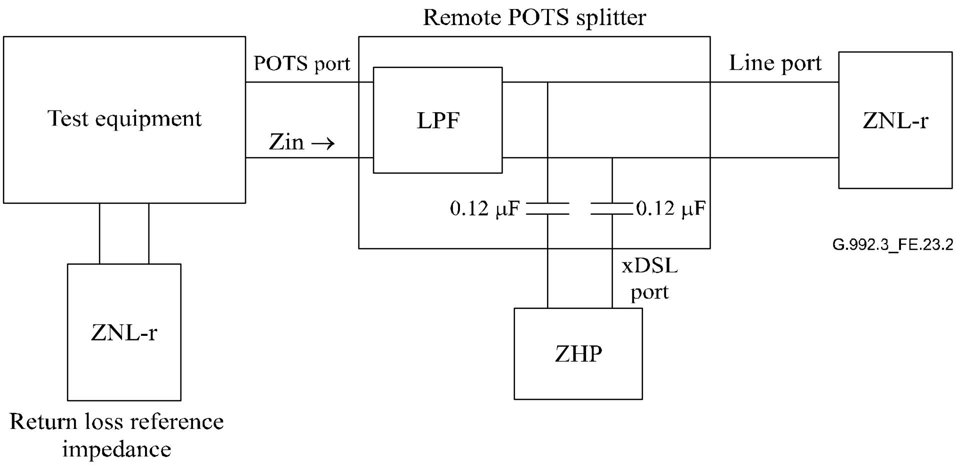
$$\text{ReturnLoss} = -20\ \text{Log}\left|\frac{\text{ZNL-c} - \text{Zin}}{\text{Zin} + \text{ZNL-c}}\right|\ \text{dB}$$

Where:

ZNL-c = 150 Ω + (830 Ω // 72 nF)

NOTE – The ZNL-c is valid only for voiceband frequencies.

Figure E.5-1 – Impedance measurements in the voiceband for the CO POTS splitter



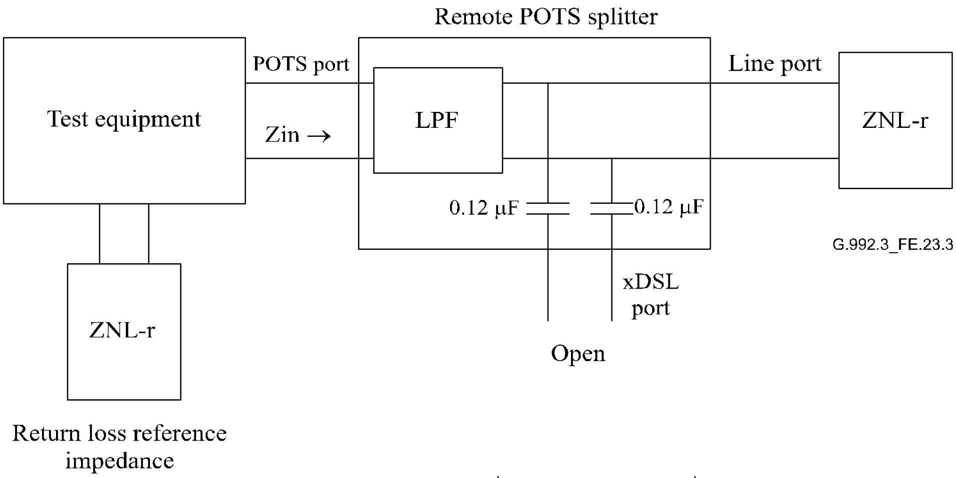
$$\text{ReturnLoss} = -20\ \text{Log}\left|\frac{\text{ZNL-r} - \text{Zin}}{\text{Zin} + \text{ZNL-r}}\right|\ \text{dB}$$

Where:

ZNL-r = 150 Ω + (72 nF // (830 Ω + 1 μF))

NOTE – The ZNL-r is valid only for voiceband frequencies.

Figure E.5-2 – Impedance measurements in the voiceband for the remote POTS splitter (first test)



$$\text{ReturnLoss} = -20\ \text{Log}\left|\frac{\text{ZNL-r} - \text{Zin}}{\text{Zin} + \text{ZNL-r}}\right|\ \text{dB}$$

Where:

ZNL-r = 150 Ω + (72 nF // (830 Ω + 1 μF))

NOTE – The ZNL-r is valid only for voiceband frequencies.

Figure E.5-3 – Impedance measurements in the voiceband for the remote POTS splitter (Second test)

E.4.3.1.5 Non-linear distortion

The distortion contributed by the low-pass filter shall be measured using the test configurations in Figures E.2 and E.3, and the null loop.

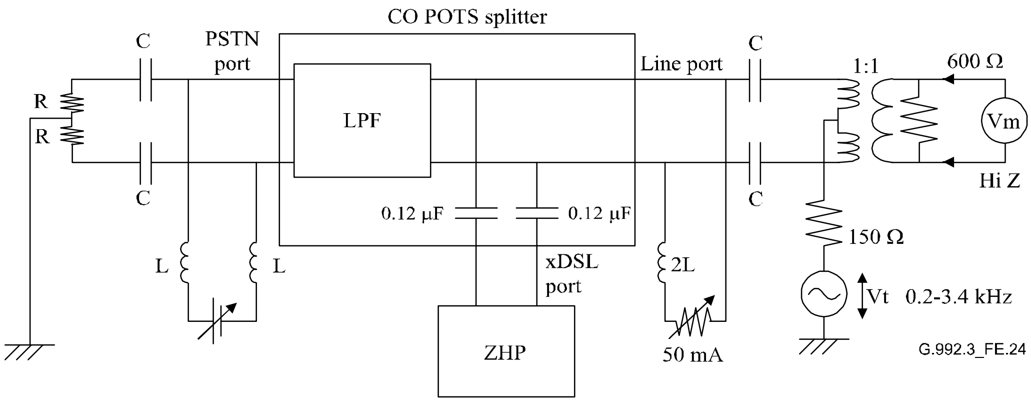
The testing method shall comply with [ITU-T O.42].

With an applied tone set at a level of –9 dBm, the second and third order intermodulation distortion products shall be at least 57 dB and 60 dB, respectively, below the received signal level.

E.4.3.1.6 Longitudinal balance

The longitudinal balance of the POTS splitter shall be greater than 58 dB for frequencies ranging from 0.2 to 3.4 kHz. Test set-ups are shown in Figures E.6, E.7-1 and E.7-2. For the CO POTS splitter test in Figure E.6, the terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP. For the remote POTS splitter tests, the terminal impedance at the xDSL port shall be ZHP for a first test (in Figure E.7-1), and open impedance unconnecting ZHP for a second test (in Figure E.7-2).

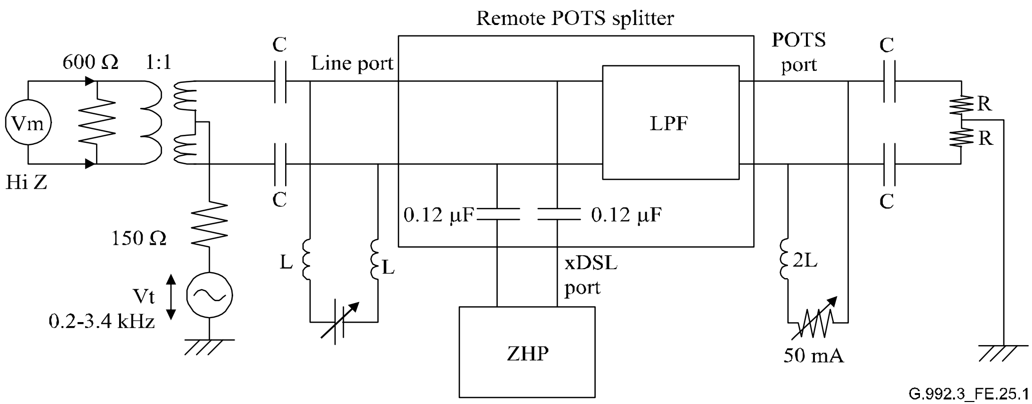
A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of C and L in Figures E.6, E.7-1 and E.7-2 should be set for testing voiceband frequencies ranging from 0.2 kHz to 3.4 kHz, and C ≥ 20 μF and L ≥ 15 H may be among the proper values. The longitudinal voltage of 3.0 V_{pp} shall be imposed as the Vt in the figures.



Longitudinal Balance = –20 Log (Vm / Vt) dB

Where: R = 300 Ω

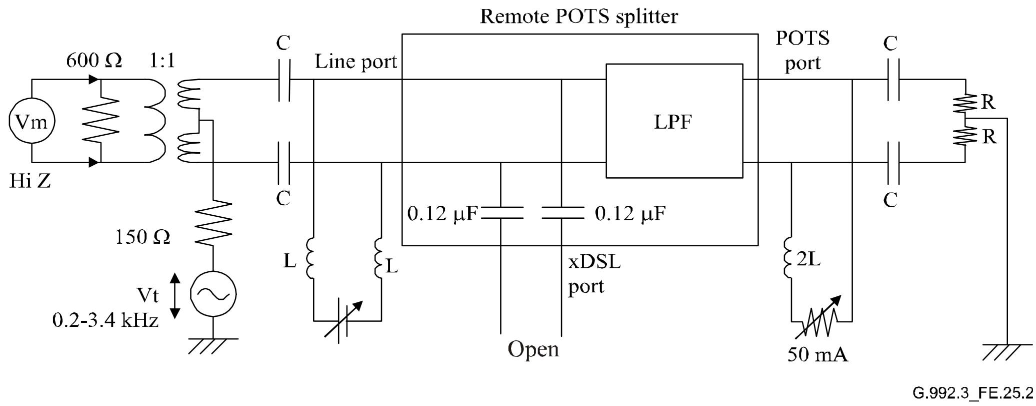
Figure E.6 – Longitudinal balance CO test set-up



Longitudinal Balance = –20 Log (Vm / Vt) dB

Where: R = 300 Ω

Figure E.7-1 – Longitudinal balance remote test set-up (first test)



Longitudinal Balance = –20 Log (Vm / Vt) dB

Where: R = 300 Ω

Figure E.7-2 – Longitudinal balance remote test set-up (second test)

E.4.3.2 Out band

The band between the voiceband and ADSL band is defined as the out band. The attenuation in the out band of the low-pass filter of the remote POTS splitter (i.e., the difference in attenuation measured with and without the low-pass filter), shown in Figure E.9, shall be greater than or equal to $26.48 \times \log_2(f/4)$ dB for 4.0 kHz $\leq f <$ 25 kHz (where f is in kHz) with an input level of 10 dBm (see Notes 1 and 2). A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of C and L in Figure E.9 should be set for testing the frequency range from 4 kHz to 25 kHz, and C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 1.5 H may be among the proper values. This out band attenuation specification is only for the remote POTS splitter, and is not applied to the CO POTS splitter (see Note 3). The out band is used with pulse metering (16 kHz) and OVS signals (7.8 kHz), etc. The service splitters supporting these circuits as using out band signals are outside the scope of this annex.

NOTE 1 – The ATU-R transmit power spectral density (PSD) should be less than or equal to $-97.5 + 26.48 \times \log_2(f/4)$ dBm/Hz for 4.0 kHz $\leq f <$ 8.06 kHz (where f in kHz) in order to suppress ATU-R transmit signal leakage into phones through the low-pass filter of the remote POTS splitter, assuming the above out band sloped attenuation specification for the remote POTS splitter.

NOTE 2 – The digital modem defined in [b-ITU-T V.90] at signal rates of up to 56 kbit/s downstream might be affected in several decrements of 8/6 kbit/s by the low-pass filter cut-off characteristics. The service splitter fully supporting the ITU-T V.90 modem with no performance degradation is outside the scope of this annex.

NOTE 3 – The cut-off frequency of the low-pass filter of the CO POTS splitter should be less than or equal to 8.58 kHz in order to suppress ATU-R transmit signal leakage into the CO analogue line card through the low-pass filter of the CO POTS splitter, when the loop is short and the ATU-R transmit signal attenuation on the CO side is small, where the assumptions are that the characteristics of the low-pass filter built into the CO analogue line card is compliant with [b-ITU-T G.712], and the transmission characteristics at 2-wire analogue interfaces is compliant with [b-ITU-T Q.552] and [b-ITU-T G.121].

E.4.3.3 ADSL band

This clause describes the AC characteristics in the ADSL band.

E.4.3.3.1 ADSL band attenuation

The attenuation in the stopband of the low-pass filter (i.e., the difference in attenuation measured with and without the low-pass filter), shown in Figures E.8 and E.9, shall be greater than 65 dB for the CO POTS splitter and 70 dB for the remote POTS splitter for frequencies ranging from 25 kHz to 300 kHz with an input level of 10 dBm (100 Ω). For frequencies ranging from 300 kHz to 1104 kHz, the attenuation shall be greater than 55 dB for the CO and remote POTS splitters in the same test conditions (see Note). A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of C and L in Figures E.8 and E.9 should be set. C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 0.5 H may be among the proper values for testing the frequency range from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz. As testing the out band (see clause E.4.3.2) together with the ADSL band, C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 1.5 H may be among the proper values for testing the frequency range from 4 kHz to 1104 kHz.

NOTE – The attenuation of CO/remote POTS splitters designed for use with VDSL [ITU-T G.993.1] should also be greater than 55 dB for frequencies ranging from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz. Proper values of C and L (e.g., C ≥ 0.2 µF and L ≥ 5 mH) in Figures E.8 and E.9 should be set for testing in the frequency range from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz.

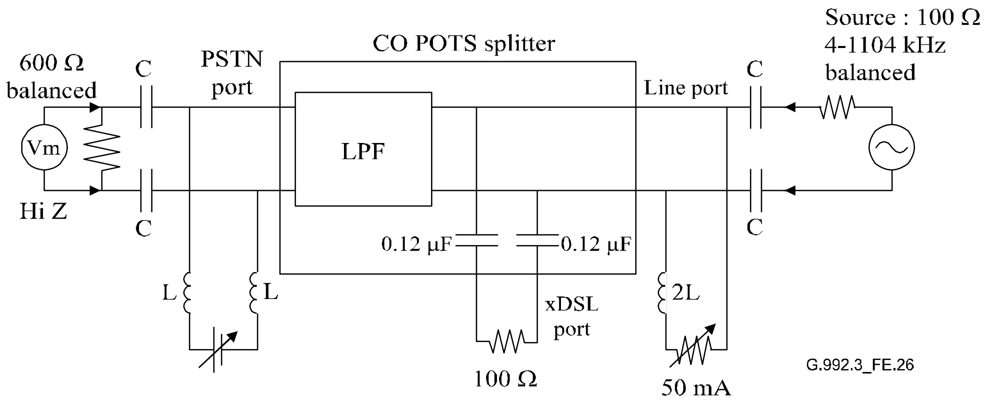


Figure E.8 – Measurement of the CO POTS splitter attenuation in the ADSL band

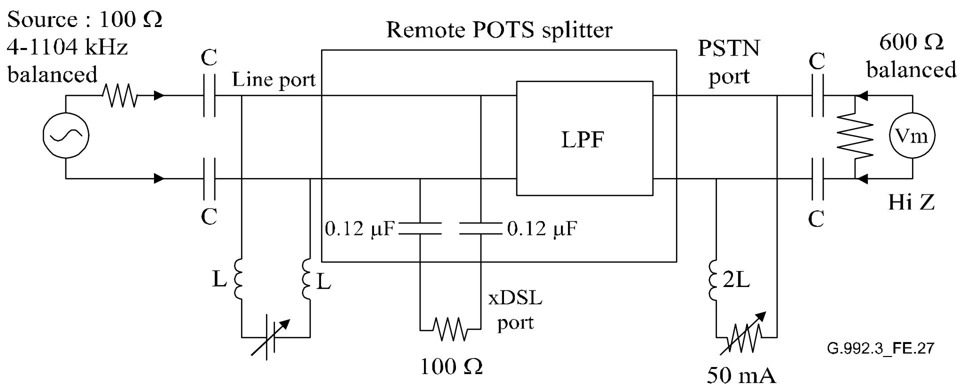
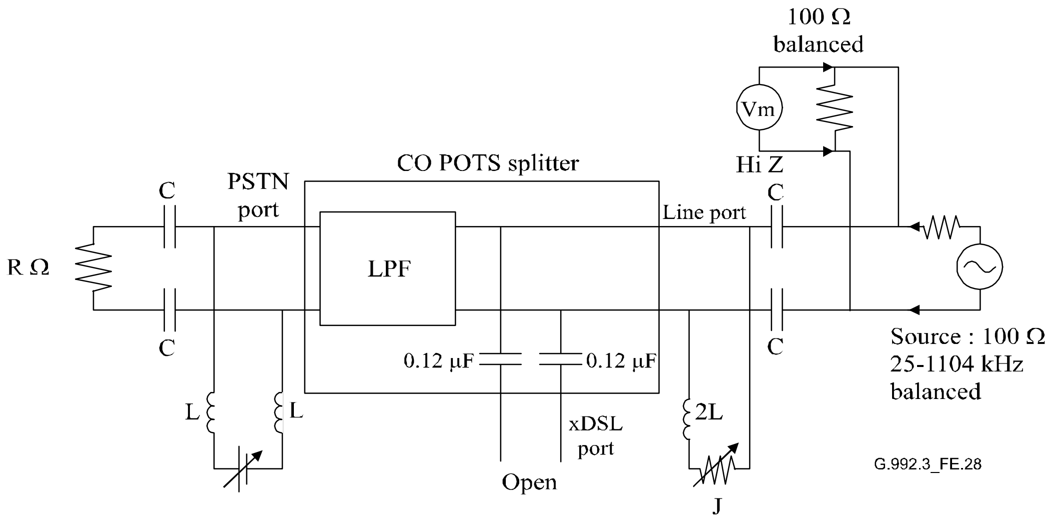


Figure E.9 – Measurement of the remote POTS splitter attenuation in the ADSL band

E.4.3.3.2 ADSL band insertion loss as LPF loading effect

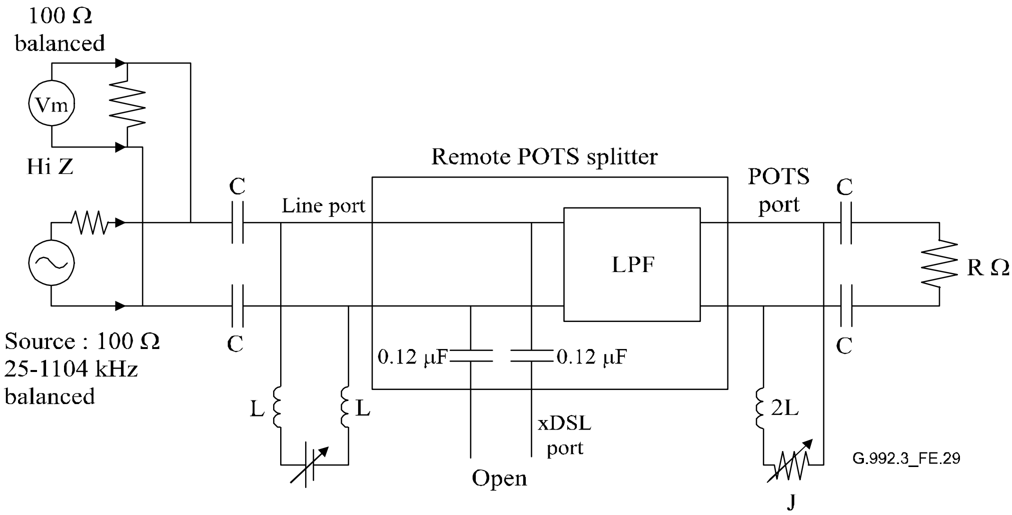
The insertion loss caused by loading the low-pass filter in the band from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz (see Note) with an input level of –10 dBm (100 Ω), as shown in Figures E.10 and E.11, shall be less than 0.35 dB. The requirement shall be met for the POTS/PSTN port termination impedance of both 600 Ω and open. A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied in the test case of the POTS/PSTN port termination impedance of 600 Ω. No DC bias current of 0 mA shall be applied in the test case of the POTS/PSTN port termination impedance of open. Proper values of C and L in Figures E.10 and E.11 should be set for testing the frequency range from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz, and C ≥ 2 µF and L ≥ 0.5 H may be among the proper values.

NOTE – The insertion loss for CO/remote POTS splitters designed for use with VDSL [ITU-T G.993.1] should be less than 1.5 dB for frequencies ranging from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz. Proper values of C and L in Figures E.10 and E.11 should be set. C ≥ 0.2 µF and L ≥ 5 mH may be among the proper values for testing the frequency range from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz.



Where: R = 600 Ω, J = 50 mA
R = open, J = 0 mA

Figure E.10 – Measurement of loading effect of the CO POTS splitter in the ADSL band



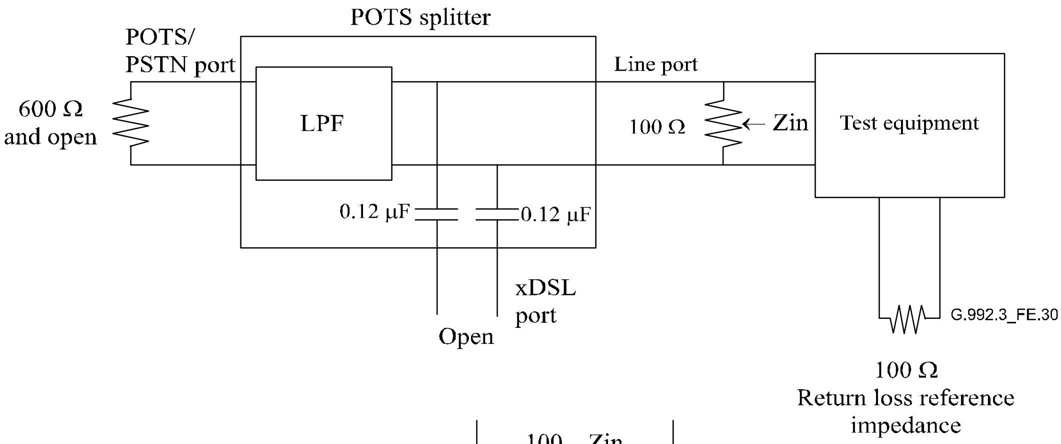
Where: R = 600 Ω, J = 50 mA
R = open, J = 0 mA

Figure E.11 – Measurement of loading effect of the remote POTS splitter in the ADSL band

E.4.3.3.3 ADSL band return loss as LPF loading effect

The return loss caused by loading the low-pass filter in the band from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz against the reference impedance of 100 Ω, as shown in Figure E.12, shall be greater than 14 dB (see Note). The requirement shall be met for the POTS/PSTN port termination impedance of both 600 Ω and open.

NOTE – The return loss for CO/remote POTS splitters designed for use with VDSL [ITU-T G.993.1] should also be greater than 12 dB in the band from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz.



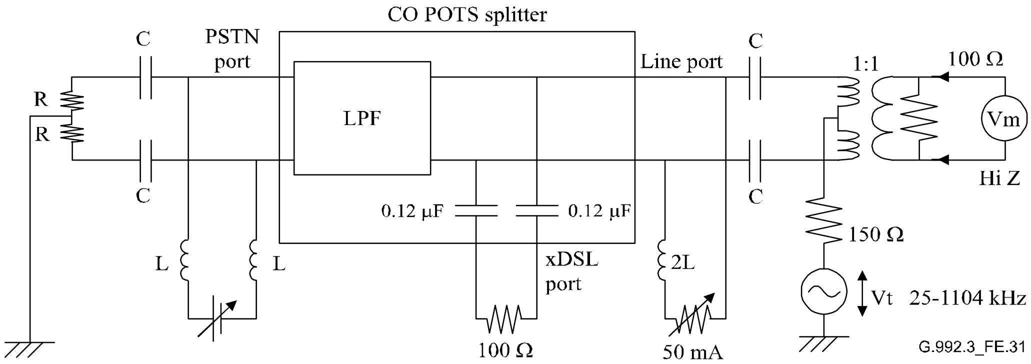
$$\text{Return Loss} = -20\ \text{Log} \left| \frac{100 - \text{Zin}}{\text{Zin} + 100} \right| \text{dB}$$

Figure E.12 – Impedance measurements in the ADSL band for the CO and remote POTS splitters

E.4.3.3.4 ADSL band longitudinal balance

The longitudinal balance of the POTS splitter shall be greater than 40 dB for frequencies ranging from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz (see Note). A DC bias current of 50 mA shall be applied during the test. Proper values of C and L in Figures E.13 and E.14 should be set for testing the frequency range from 25 kHz to 1104 kHz, and C ≥ 2 μF and L ≥ 0.5 H may be among the proper values. The longitudinal voltage of 3.0 V_{pp} shall be imposed as the Vt in the figures.

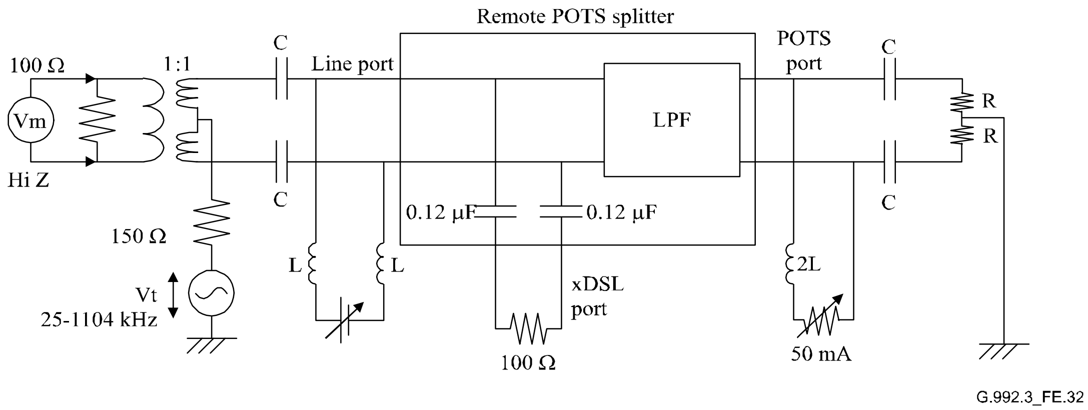
NOTE – The longitudinal balance for CO/remote POTS splitters designed for use with VDSL [ITU-T G.993.1] should also be greater than 40 dB for frequencies ranging from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz. Proper values of C and L in Figures E.13 and E.14 should be set for testing the frequency range from 1104 kHz to 12 MHz, and C ≥ 0.2 μF and L ≥ 5 mH may be among the proper values.



Longitudinal Balance = –20 Log (Vm / Vt) dB

Where: R = 300 Ω

Figure E.13 – Longitudinal balance CO test set-up in the ADSL band



Longitudinal Balance = –20 Log (Vm / Vt) dB

Where: R = 300 Ω

Figure E.14 – Longitudinal balance remote test set-up in the ADSL band

Annex F

ATU-x performance requirements for region A (North America)

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

F.1 Performance requirements for operation of ADSL over POTS (Annex A)

F.1.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses A.1.2 and A.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in [Broadband Forum TR-048], as applicable to North America for testing of physical layer aspects (i.e., excluding clause 9), with the ATU control parameters set as defined in clause F.1.3.

The pass/fail criteria contained in [Broadband Forum TR-048] shall apply as requirements for conformance to this Recommendation.

F.1.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses A.1.3 and A.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in [Broadband Forum TR-048], as applicable to North America for testing of physical layer aspects (i.e., excluding clause 9), with the ATU control parameters set as defined in clause F.1.3.

The pass/fail criteria contained in [Broadband Forum TR-048] shall apply as requirements for conformance to this Recommendation.

F.1.3 ATU control parameter settings

For the purpose of testing according to [Broadband Forum TR-048], the ATU control parameters shall be set as follows:

- Rate adaptive at Init mode (see clause 8.5) shall be used, except for clauses 8.2 and 8.5.2 of [Broadband Forum TR-048], which shall use fixed rate.
- Trellis coding is allowed.
- The target noise margin shall be set to 6 dB upstream and downstream.
- Single latency path and single frame bearer operation.
- Framing message-based overhead data rate shall be set to *MSGmin* = 6 kbit/s.
- Fast mode shall be tested with a nominal one-way maximum payload transfer delay ≤ 4 ms.
- Interleaved mode shall be tested with a nominal one-way maximum payload transfer delay ≤ 20 ms.
- The minimum noise margin shall be set to 0 dB.
- No limitation of maximum noise margin (set to at least 30 dB).
- For testing of operation in the presence of impulse noise events (clause 8.8 of [Broadband Forum TR-048]), the ATU shall be configured in interleaved mode.

The nominal one-way maximum payload transfer delay is defined in clause 5.2.

F.2 Performance requirements for operation of all-digital mode ADSL (Annex I)

F.2.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses I.1.2 and I.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over POTS, as defined in clause F.1.1.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

F.2.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses I.1.3 and I.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for non-overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over POTS, as defined in clause F.1.2.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

Annex G

ATU-x performance requirements for region B (Europe)

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

G.1 Performance requirements for operation of ADSL over POTS (Annex A)

G.1.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses A.1.2 and A.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in clause 5 of [ETSI TS 101 388], as applicable to EC ADSL over POTS.

G.1.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses A.1.3 and A.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in clause 5 of [ETSI TS 101 388], as applicable to FDM ADSL over POTS.

G.2 Performance requirements for operation of ADSL over ISDN (Annex B)

G.2.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses B.1.2 and B.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in clause 5 of [ETSI TS 101 388], as applicable to EC ADSL over ISDN.

G.2.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses B.1.3 and B.2, shall meet the performance requirements defined in clause 5 of [ETSI TS 101 388], as applicable to FDM ADSL over ISDN.

G.3 Performance requirements for operation of all-digital mode ADSL (Annex I)

G.3.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses I.1.2 and I.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over POTS, as defined in clause G.1.1.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

G.3.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses I.1.3 and I.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for non-overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over POTS, as defined in clause G.1.2.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

G.4 Performance requirements for operation of all-digital mode ADSL (Annex J)

G.4.1 Overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses J.1.2 and J.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over ISDN, as defined in clause G.2.1.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

G.4.2 Non-overlapped spectrum operation

An ATU configured for non-overlapped spectrum operation according to clauses J.1.3 and J.2, shall meet at least the performance requirements for non-overlapped spectrum operation of ADSL over ISDN, as defined in clause G.2.2.

The exact definition of the performance requirements is for further study.

Annex H

Specific requirements for a synchronized symmetrical DSL (SSDSL) system operating in the same cable binder as ISDN as defined in Appendix III of Recommendation ITU-T G.961

For further study.

Annex I

All-digital mode ADSL with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over POTS

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

I.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

I.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C control parameter settings, to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body of this Recommendation and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table I.1. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

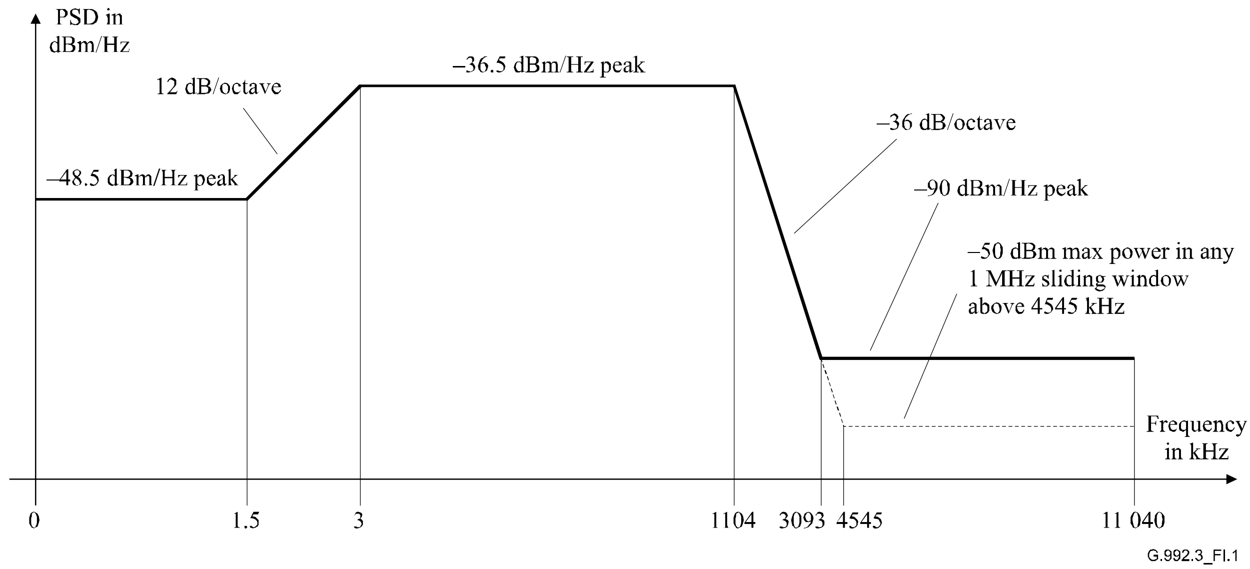
Table I.1 – ATU-C control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCds	256	
NOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPds (operation per clause I.1.2)	20.4 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

I.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 3 to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure I.1 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 3 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.



Frequency band f (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 1.5$	–48.5
$1.5 < f \leq 3$	$-36.5 + 12 \times \log_2(f/3)$
$3 < f \leq 1104$	–36.5
$1104 < f \leq 3093$	$-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$
$3093 < f \leq 4545$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f \leq 11\,040$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm
NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in a 100 Ω resistive termination. NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate. NOTE 3 – Above 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth. Below 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 100 Hz resolution bandwidth. NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency. NOTE 5 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface.	

Figure I.1 – All-digital mode ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for overlapped spectrum operation

NOTE – When deployed in the same cable as ADSL-over-POTS (see Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.1] and Annexes A and B of [b-ITU-T G.992.2]), there may be a spectral compatibility issue between the two systems due to the overlap of the all-digital loop downstream channel with the ADSL-over-POTS upstream channel at frequencies below 138 kHz. Detailed study of spectrum compatibility is referred to regional bodies. Deployment restrictions for systems using the downstream PSD masks defined in this annex may be imposed (e.g., by the regional regulatory authority).

I.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDds* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the channel discovery phase;
- *REFPSDds* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the transceiver training phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDds* – *PCBds* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 µs.

The maximum passband transmit PSD level allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is −40 dBm/Hz.

I.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see clause I.1.2.1). In all cases:

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds – PCBds*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 20.9 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPds – PCBds*) by more than 0.9 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stopbands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-C is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 20.4 dBm.

I.1.3 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

The ATU-C transmit spectral mask shall be identical to the ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation over POTS, as defined in Figure A.2, with the following modification:

> For $0 < f < 4$, the PSD shall be below –97.5 dBm/Hz (no extra limitation of max power in 0-4 kHz band).

Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in clause I.1.2 only in the band below 138 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 138 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 138 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.

I.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause A.1.3.1.

I.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause A.1.3.2.

I.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

I.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R control parameter settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table I.2. Control Parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

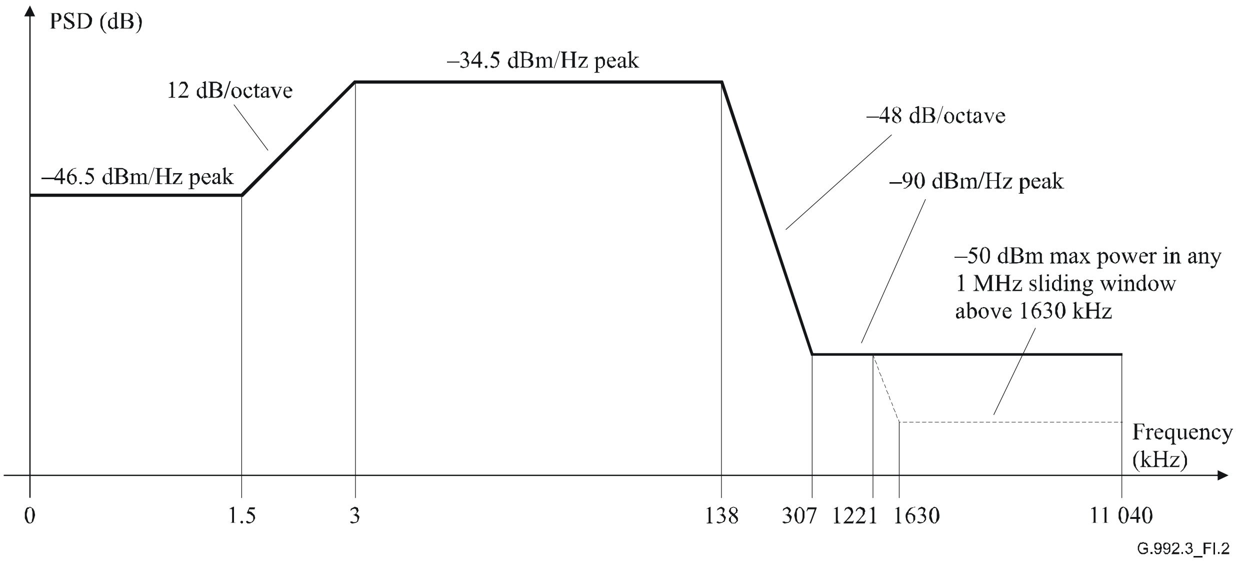
Table I.2 – ATU-R control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCus	32	
NOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPus	13.3 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

I.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements clause 8.10)

The passband is defined as the band from 3 to 138 kHz and is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure I.2 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 3 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 138 kHz.



Frequency band *f* (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 1.5$	–46.5
$1.5 < f \leq 3$	$-34.5 + 12 \times \log_2(f/3)$
$3 < f \leq 138$	–34.5
$138 < f \leq 307$	$-34.5 - 48 \times \log_2(f/138)$
$307 < f \leq 1221$	–90 peak, with max power in the [f, f + 100 kHz] window of –42.5 dBm
$1221 < f \leq 1630$	–90 peak, with max power in the [f, f + 1 MHz] window of ($-90 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1221) + 60$) dBm
$1630 < f \leq 11\,040$	–90 peak, with max power in the [f, f + 1 MHz] window of –50 dBm

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are into a 100 Ω resistive termination.
NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.
NOTE 3 – Above 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth. Below 3 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 100 Hz resolution bandwidth.
NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.
NOTE 5 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-R interface (see Figure 5-6).

Figure I.2 – All-digital mode ATU-R transmitter PSD mask

I.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-C transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent. Across the whole passband, the transmit PSD level shall not exceed the maximum passband transmit PSD level, defined as:

- *NOMPSDus* + 1 dB, for initialization signals up to and including the channel discovery phase;
- *REFPSDus* + 1 dB, during the remainder of initialization, starting with the transceiver training phase;
- *MAXNOMPSDus – PCBus* + 3.5 dB, during showtime.

The group delay variation over the passband shall not exceed 50 μs.

The maximum transmit PSD allows for a 1 dB of non-ideal transmit filter effects (e.g., passband ripple and transition band rolloff).

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband transmit PSD level is −38 dBm/Hz.

I.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see clause I.2.2.1). In all cases:

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus – PCBus*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.8 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 11.040 MHz band shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus – PCBus*) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stopbands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 13.3 dBm.

I.3 Initialization

For this annex, no additional requirements apply (relative to the main body of this Recommendation).

I.4 Electrical characteristics

I.4.1 Wetting current (Region A – North America)

The ATU-C and ATU-R shall support wetting current functionality and related characteristics. The operator may disable the provisioning of wetting current at the ATU-C.

The ATU-R shall be capable of drawing between 1.0 and 20 mA of wetting (sealing) current from the remote feeding circuit. The maximum rate of change of the wetting current shall be no more than 20 mA per second.

The ATU-C may optionally supply power to support wetting current. The minimum voltage should be high enough to ensure a minimum of 32 V at the inputs of the ATU-R. The potential from tip to ground should be zero or negative. In no case shall the voltage or current accessible to the user (in the network or at the ATU-R) exceed the maximum values required for conformance to regional safety requirements.

NOTE – One method to ensure conformance with regional safety requirements would be to design for compliance with the most recent edition of [b-UL 60950], with appropriate consideration for national deviations.

I.4.1.1 Metallic termination

A metallic termination at the ATU-R shall be provided in conjunction with the use of wetting current (see clause I.4.1).

Table I.3 and Figure I.3 give characteristics that apply to the DC metallic termination of the ATU-R. The metallic termination provides a direct current path from tip to ring at the ATU-R, providing a path for sealing current. By exercising the non-linear functions of the metallic termination, a network-side test system may identify the presence of a conforming ATU-R on the customer side of the interface. The characteristics of the metallic termination shall not be affected by whether the ATU-R is powered in any state, or unpowered.

There are two operational states of the DC metallic termination:

a) the ON or conductive state;

b) the OFF or non-conductive state.

I.4.1.1.1 ON state

The application of a voltage across the metallic termination greater than V_{AN}, the activate/non-activate voltage, for a duration greater than the activate time shall cause the termination to transition to the ON state. The activate/non-activate voltage shall be in the range of 30.0 to 39.0 V. The activate time shall be in the range of 3.0 to 50.0 ms. If a change of state is to occur, the transition shall be completed within 50 ms from the point where the applied voltage across the termination first exceeds V_{AN}. Application of a voltage greater than V_{AN} for a duration less than 3.0 ms shall not cause the termination to transition to the ON state. See Table I.3 and Figure I.3.

While in the ON state, when the voltage across the termination is 15 V, the current shall be greater than or equal to 20 mA. The metallic termination shall remain in the ON state as long as the current is greater than the threshold I_{HR} (see Table I.3 and Figure I.3) whose value shall be in the range of 0.1 to 1.0 mA. Application of 90.0 V through 200 to 4000 Ω (for a maximum duration of 2 s) shall result in a current greater than 9.0 mA.

I.4.1.1.2 OFF state

The metallic termination shall transition to the OFF state if the current falls below the threshold I_{HR} whose value shall be in the range of 0.1 to 1.0 mA for a duration greater than the "guaranteed release" time (100 ms) (see Table I.3 and Figure I.3). If a change of state is to occur, the transition shall be completed within 100 ms from the point where the current first falls below I_{HR}. If the current falls below I_{HR} for a duration of less than 3.0 ms, the termination shall not transition to the OFF state. While in the OFF state, the current shall be less than 5.0 μA whenever the voltage is less than 20.0 V. The current shall not exceed 1.0 mA while the voltage across the termination remains less than the activate voltage.

Descriptive material can be found in Table I.3 and Figure I.3.

I.4.1.2 ATU-R capacitance

While the metallic termination is OFF, the tip-to-ring capacitance of the ATU-R when measured at a frequency of less than 100 Hz shall be 1.0 μF ± 10%.

I.4.1.3 Behaviour of the ATU-R during metallic testing

During metallic testing, the ATU-R shall behave as follows:

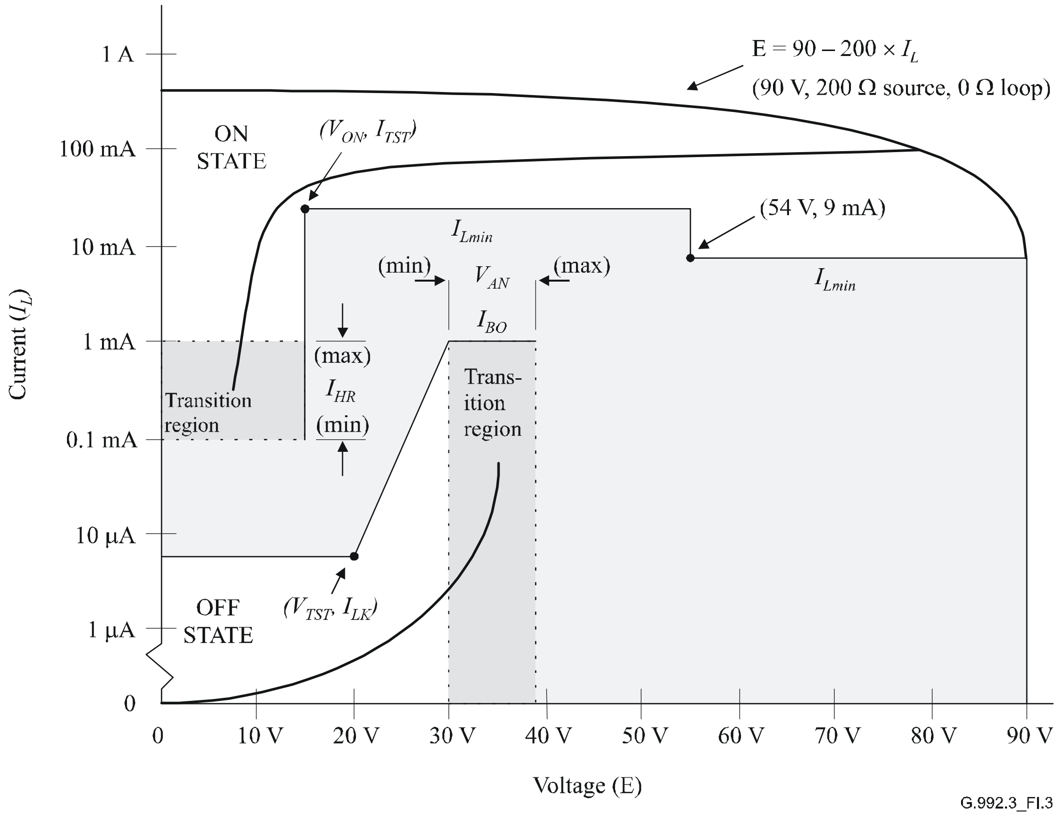
a) When a test voltage of up to 90 V (see Note) is applied across the loop under test, the ATU-R shall present its DC metallic termination as defined in clause I.4.1.1, Table I.3 and Figure I.3, and not trigger any protective device that will mask this signature. The series resistance (test system + test trunk + loop + margin) can be from 200 to 4000 Ω (balanced between the two conductors);

b) The ATU-R may optionally limit current in excess of 25 mA (20 mA maximum sealing current + 5 mA implementation margin).

NOTE – One test system in common use today applies 70 V DC plus 10 Vrms AC (84.4 V peak) to one conductor of the loop while grounding the other conductor.

Table I.3 – Characteristics of DC metallic termination at the ATU-R

Characteristic	Value
Type of operation	Normally OFF DC termination. Turned ON by application of metallic voltage. Held ON by loop current flow. Turned OFF by cessation of loop current flow.
Current in the ON state and at 15 V	≥ 20 mA
DC voltage drop (when ON) at 20 mA current	≤ 15 V
DC current with application of 90 V through 4000 Ω for up to 2 s.	Min 9 mA (see Note). See Figure I.3.
DC leakage current (when OFF) at 20 V	≥ 5.0 µA
Activate/non-activate voltage	30.0 V DC ≤ V_{AN} ≤ 39.0 V DC
Activate (break over) current at V_{AN}	≤ 1.0 mA
Activate time for voltage ≥ V_{AN}	3 ms to 50 ms
Hold/release current	0.1 mA ≤ I_{HR} ≤ 1.0 mA
Release/non-release time for current ≤ I_{HR}	3 ms to 100 ms
NOTE – This requirement is intended to ensure a termination consistent with test system operation.	



DC characteristics

Parameter	Meaning	Limit	Condition	Meaning
I_{LK}	Leakage current	$I_{LT} \leq 5$ µA	$V_{TST} = 20$ V	Test voltage
V_{AN}	Activate/non-activate voltage	30 V $\leq V_{AN} \leq$ 39 V		
I_{BO}	Break over current	$I_{B0} \leq 1.0$ mA		
I_{HR}	Hold/release current	0.1 mA $\leq I_{HR} \leq$ 1.0 mA		
V_{ON}	ON voltage	$V_{0N} \leq 15$ V	$I_{TST} = 20$ mA	Test current
I_{Lmin}	Minimum ON current	9 mA	54 V	

Figure I.3 – Illustration of DC characteristics of the ATU-R (bilateral switch and holding current)

I.4.2 Wetting current (Region B – Europe)

The ATU-C and ATU-R shall support wetting current functionality and related characteristics. The operator may disable the provisioning of wetting current at the ATU-C.

The ATU-R shall be capable of drawing between 0.2 and 3 mA of wetting (sealing) current from the remote feeding circuit.

The ATU-C may optionally supply power to support wetting current. In no case shall the voltage or current accessible to the user (in the network or at the ATU-R) exceed the maximum values required for conformance to regional safety requirements.

NOTE – One method to ensure conformance with regional safety requirements would be to design for compliance with the most recent edition of [b-CENELEC EN 60950-1], with appropriate consideration for national deviations.

I.4.3 ADSL band characteristics

I.4.3.1 Longitudinal balance

The ATU-C shall have a longitudinal conversion loss (LCL) of at least 50 dB in the frequency range from 4 kHz to 138 kHz and at least 40 dB in the frequency range from 138 kHz to 1104 kHz.

The ATU-R shall have a longitudinal conversion loss (LCL) of at least 50 dB in the frequency range from 4 kHz to 1104 kHz.

Test set-up and methodology is defined in clause A.4. The measurement of the longitudinal balance in the specified band shall be performed as shown in Figure A.4. The balance shall be measured in the absence of a DC bias voltage, with the modem under test active (i.e., powered with transmitter and receiver active and initializing or in showtime).

Annex J

All-digital mode ADSL with improved spectral compatibility with ADSL over ISDN

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

J.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

J.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C control parameter settings, to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table J.1. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

Table J.1 – ATU-C control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCds	256	
NOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPds (operation per clause J.1.2)	20.4 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

J.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

The ATU-C transmit spectral mask shall be identical to the ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation, as defined in Figure I.1.

The passband is defined as the band from 3 to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 3 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.

NOTE – When deployed in the same cable as ADSL-over-POTS (see Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.1] and Annexes A and B of [b-ITU-T G.992.2]) there may be a spectral compatibility issue between the two systems due to the overlap of the all-digital loop downstream channel with the ADSL-over-POTS upstream channel at frequencies below 138 kHz. Detailed study of spectrum compatibility is referred to regional bodies. Deployment restrictions for systems using the downstream PSD masks defined in this annex may be imposed (e.g., by the regional regulatory authority).

J.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause I.1.2.1.

J.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause I.1.2.2.

J.1.3 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

The ATU-C transmit spectral mask shall be identical to the ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation over ISDN, as defined in Figure B.2.

Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in clause J.1.2 only in the band below 254 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 254 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband also apply to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 254 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.

J.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause B.1.2.1.

J.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause B.1.3.2.

J.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

J.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R control parameter settings, to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body of this Recommendation and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table J.2. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

Table J.2 – ATU-R control parameter settings

Parameter	Setting	Characteristics
NSCus	64	
NOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPus	13.4 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

J.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements clause 8.10)

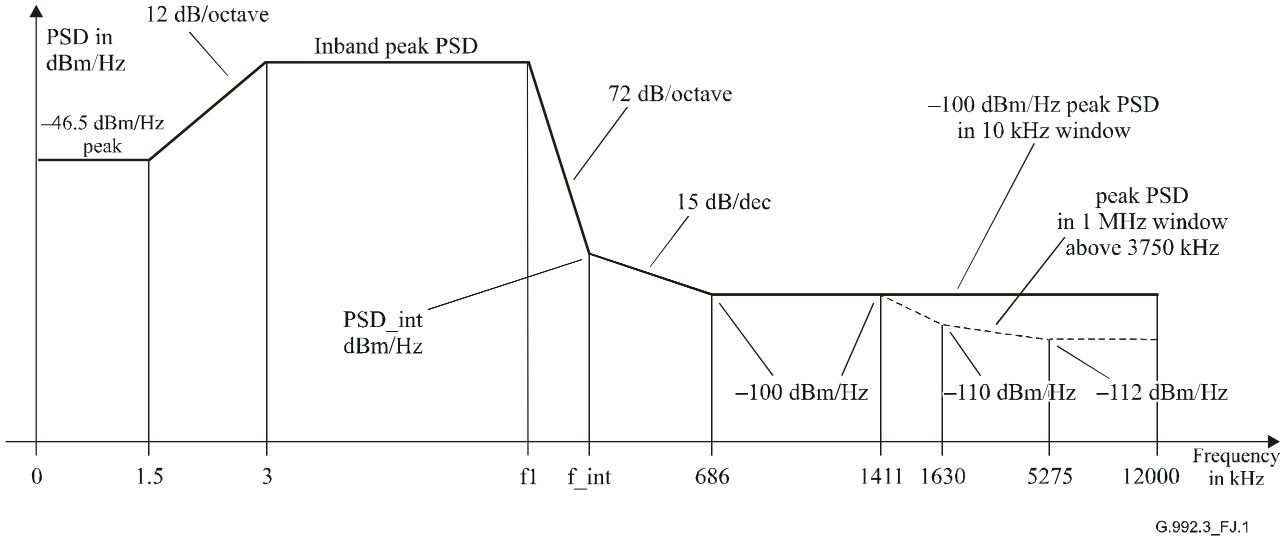
The ATU-R transmit PSD shall comply to one of the allowed family of spectral masks ADLU-32, ADLU-36, …, ADLU-64 (see Note 1). Each of the spectral marks shall be as defined in Figure J.1 and Table J.3.

The passband is defined as the band from 3 kHz to an upperbound frequency $f1$, defined in Table J.3. It is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure J.1 defines the family of ATU-R spectral masks for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 3 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than the passband upperbound frequency $f1$ defined in Table J.3. The *Inband_peak_PSD*, *PSD_int* and the frequencies $f1$ and f_int shall be as defined in Table J.3.

NOTE 1 – The ATU-R selects a transmit PSD mask from the family of upstream transmit PSD masks specified in Table J.3, based on the limitations imposed by the CO-MIB (which are exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization, see clause 8.13.2.4) and based on the capabilities of its transmit PMD function.

NOTE 2 – When deployed in the same cable as ADSL-over-POTS (see Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.1], Annexes A and B of [b-ITU-T G.992.2], Annex A of this Recommendation, Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.4] and Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.5]), there may be a spectral compatibility issue between the two systems due to the overlap of the all-digital mode upstream channel with the ADSL-over-POTS downstream channel at frequencies above 138 kHz. Detailed study of spectrum compatibility is referred to regional bodies. Deployment restrictions for systems using the upstream PSD masks defined in this annex may be imposed (e.g., by the regional regulatory authority).



Frequency (kHz)	PSD level (dBm/Hz)	Measurement BW
0	–46.5	100 Hz
1.5	–46.5	100 Hz
3	*Inband_peak_PSD*	100 Hz
10	*Inband_peak_PSD*	10 kHz
*f*1	*Inband_peak_PSD*	10 kHz
f_int	*PSD_int*	10 kHz
686	–100	10 kHz
5275	–100	10 kHz
12 000	–100	10 kHz

Additionally, the PSD mask shall satisfy the following requirements:

Frequency (kHz)	PSD level (dBm/Hz)	Measurement BW
1 411	–100	1 MHz
1 630	–110	1 MHz
5 275	–112	1 MHz
12 000	–112	1 MHz

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.

NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate. The breakpoints in the tables shall be connected by linear straight lines on a dB/log(f) plot.

NOTE 3 – MBW specifies the measurement bandwidth. The MBW specified for a certain breakpoint with frequency f_i is applicable for all frequencies satisfying $f_i < f \le f_j$, where f_j is the frequency of the next specified breakpoint.

NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency, i.e., power in the [f, f+1 MHz] window shall conform to the specification at frequency f.

NOTE 5 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-R interface.

Figure J.1 – The family of ATU-R transmitter PSD masks

Table J.3 – Inband peak PSD and the frequencies *f*1 and *f*2

Upstream mask number	Designator	Template nominal PSD (dBm/Hz)	Template maximum aggregate transmit power (dBm)	Inband peak PSD (dBm/Hz)	Frequency *f*1 (kHz)	Intercept frequency *f_int* (kHz)	Intercept PSD level *PSD_int* (dBm/Hz)
1	ADLU-32	–38.0	13.4	–34.5	138.00	242.92	–93.2
2	ADLU-36	–38.5	13.4	–35.0	155.25	274.00	–94.0
3	ADLU-40	–39.0	13.4	–35.5	172.50	305.16	–94.7
4	ADLU-44	–39.4	13.4	–35.9	189.75	336.40	–95.4
5	ADLU-48	–39.8	13.4	–36.3	207.00	367.69	–95.9
6	ADLU-52	–40.1	13.4	–36.6	224.25	399.04	–96.5
7	ADLU-56	–40.4	13.4	–36.9	241.50	430.45	–97.0
8	ADLU-60	–40.7	13.4	–37.2	258.75	461.90	–97.4
9	ADLU-64	–41.0	13.4	–37.5	276.00	493.41	–97.9

The upstream spectrum bounds default settings in Table J.2 apply for all ADLU-x and shaped PSD masks. Clause 8.13.2.4 defines how the ATU-R is to resolve inconsistencies between the upstream spectrum bounds, spectrum shaping and MIB_PSD_Mask parameters contained in the CLR and CL messages.

In particular:

1) *NOMPSDus* shall be changed from its default value for the ADLU masks 36 up to 64 during the pre-activation (ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2) at least to the template nominal PSD values listed in Table J.3.

2) *MAXNOMPSDus* shall be a value within the Limit_PSD_Mask for PSD shaping (Table J.10) minus 3.5 dB.

J.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause I.2.2.1.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template is defined in Tables J.4 and J.5 (informative).

Table J.4 – ATU-R transmit PSD template definition

Frequency (kHz)	PSD level (dBm/Hz)
0	–50
1.5	–50
3	*Inband_peak_PSD –3.5 dB*
*f*1	*Inband_peak_PSD –3.5 dB*
f_int_templ	*PSD_int_templ*
686	–100
1411	–100
1630	–110
5275	–112
12000	–112

Table J.5 – The *f_int_templ* and *PSD_int_templ* values for the ATU-R transmit PSD template

Upstream mask number	Designator	Template intercept frequency *f_int_templ* (kHz)	Template intercept PSD level *PSD_int_templ* (dBm/Hz)
1	ADLU-32	234.34	–93.0
2	ADLU-36	264.33	–93.8
3	ADLU-40	294.39	–94.5
4	ADLU-44	324.52	–95.1
5	ADLU-48	354.71	–95.7
6	ADLU-52	384.95	–96.2
7	ADLU-56	415.25	–96.7
8	ADLU-60	445.59	–97.2
9	ADLU-64	475.99	–97.6

J.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see clause J.2.2.1). In all cases:

- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.9 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 12 MHz band shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stopbands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 13.4 dBm.

J.3 Initialization

The ATU-C and ATU-R shall support all upstream PSD masks listed in Table J.3.

J.3.1 Handshake – ATU-C (supplements clause 8.13.2.1)

If, and only if, the ATU-C does not select to use upstream PSD shaping (see clause J.3.4 and Table J.9), the ATU-C shall include the "Annex J submode PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block in CL (see clause J.3.1.1) messages.

If, and only if, the ATU-C does not select to use upstream PSD shaping (see clause J.3.4 and Table J.9), the ATU-C shall include the "Annex J submode PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block in MS messages (see clause J.3.1.2).

J.3.1.1 CL messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.1.1)

The CL message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-20. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 CL message {Par(2)} fields for all-digital mode operation are defined in Table J.6.

Table J.6 – ATU-C CL message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

Spar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Submode PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-R which PSD masks are supported. The submode PSD masks field indicates which upstream PSD masks are supported. Its value will depend on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities of the ATU-C. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octets 1 and 2. The coding shall be as follows: the bit associated to an upstream PSD mask shall be set to ONE to indicate that this mask is supported. The ATU-C shall set to ONE one of the upstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-R the selection of one of the PSD masks listed in Table J.3.

J.3.1.2 MS messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.1.2)

The MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-21. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields for all-digital mode operation are defined in Table J.7.

Table J.7 – ATU-C MS message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Submode PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-R which PSD masks are selected. The submode PSD masks field indicates which upstream PSD masks are selected. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octets 1 and 2. The coding shall be as follows: the bit associated to an upstream PSD mask shall be set to ONE to indicate that this mask is selected. Each of these bits may be set to ONE only if that bit was set to ONE in the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. The ATU-C shall set to ONE one of the upstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-R the selection of one of the PSD masks listed in Table J.3.

J.3.2 Handshake – ATU-R (supplements clause 8.13.2.2)

Regardless of whether the ATU-R supports upstream PSD shaping (see clause J.3.4 and Table J.10) or not, the ATU-R shall always include the "Annex J submode PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block in CLR (see clause J.3.2.1) and MS messages.

If, and only if, the ATU-C does not select to use upstream PSD shaping (see clause J.3.4 and Table J.9), the ATU-R shall include the "Annex J submode PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block in MS messages (see clause J.3.2.2).

J.3.2.1 CLR messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.2.1)

The CLR message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-22. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 CLR message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table J.8.

Table J.8 – ATU-R CLR message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Submode PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-C which PSD masks are supported. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octets 1 and 2. The coding shall be as follows: the bit associated to an upstream PSD mask shall be set to ONE to indicate that this mask is supported. As the ATU-R shall support all PSD mask configurations, it shall set all mask bits to ONE (1).

J.3.2.2 MS messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.2.2)

The MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-23. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table J.9.

Table J.9 – ATU-R MS message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Submode PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-C which PSD masks are selected. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octets 1 and 2. The coding shall be as follows: the bit associated to an upstream PSD mask shall be set to ONE to indicate that this mask is selected. Each of these bits may be set to ONE only if that bit was set to ONE in the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. The ATU-R shall do set to ONE one of the PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-C the selection of one PSD mask listed in Table J.3.

J.3.3 Spectral bounds and shaping parameters (supplements clause 8.13.2.4)

In the CLR message, the ATU-R shall indicate all supported PSD masks. The CLR message may include the upstream spectral shaping (tss_i) and upstream spectrum bounds information of the preferred upstream PSD mask.

In the CL message, the ATU-C shall indicate the selected mode. The CL message may include the upstream spectral shaping (tss_i) and spectrum bounds information of the selected mode.

If the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters of the CLR message, and the PSD mask selection in the CL message are found to be inconsistent, then the ATU-R shall do either of the following:

- The ATU-R sends an MS message indicating that it is not prepared to select a mode at this time (according to clause 10.1.1 of [ITU-T G.994.1]). After termination of the ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R calculates new upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters offline, taking into account the upstream spectrum bounds, shaping parameters and PSD mask specified by the ATU-C in the CL message of the previous ITU-T G.994.1 session. In a subsequent ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R sends a CLR message including the new spectrum bounds and shaping parameters corresponding to the selected PSD mask.
- The ATU-R calculates new upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters on-line, taking into account the upstream spectrum bounds, shaping parameters and PSD mask specified by the ATU-C in the CL message. In the same ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R repeats the CLR/CL exchange transaction with a CLR message including the new spectrum bounds and shaping parameters corresponding to the selected PSD mask.

J.3.4 Upstream PSD shaping

The upstream PSD masks defined in clause J.2 all have a flat PSD limitation in the passband. This clause defines how a non-flat (i.e., shaped) upstream PSD limitation can be negotiated during handshake and used during showtime. The support of upstream PSD shaping is optional for both the ATU-R transmitter and the ATU-R receiver. The use of upstream PSD shaping may be desirable to optimize upstream performance under explicit PSD limitations imposed by the applicable regulatory regime.

J.3.4.1 The Limit_PSD_Mask

For upstream PSD shaping, a Limit_PSD_Mask is defined for Annex J operation. The Limit_PSD_Mask is defined such that a flat PSD mask (from the lower end of the passband at

3 kHz up to a frequency above 138 kHz) shall always have a nominal aggregate transmit power (computed on the PSD template defined as –3.5 dB of the PSD mask in the passband) lower or equal to the *MAXNOMATP* defined in Table J.2. Hence, the Limit_PSD_Mask is consistent with the way the set of PSD masks has been designed in clause J.2.

Table J.10 – The Limit_PSD_Mask for upstream PSD shaping

Frequency (kHz)	PSD level (dBm/Hz)	Measurement BW
0	–46.5	100 Hz
1.5	–46.5	100 Hz
3	–34.5	100 Hz
10	–34.5	10 kHz
138	–34.5	10 kHz
$138 < f \leq 276$	$-34.5 - 10 \times \log10((f-3)/(138-3))$	10 kHz
276	–37.5	10 kHz
493.4	–97.9	10 kHz
686	–100	10 kHz
5275	–100	10 kHz
12000	–100	10 kHz

J.3.4.2 Upstream PSD mask configuration parameter

The upstream PSD mask configuration parameter allows generation of shaped upstream PSD masks for the extended upstream operation modes (e.g., this annex). This configuration parameter is defined in this clause, amending clause 8.5.

The upstream PSD mask configuration parameter consists of a set of breakpoints, each breakpoint representing a pair of a tone index and a PSD level (in dBm/Hz). This set of breakpoints is contained in the CO-MIB and conveyed through the CL message from ATU-C to ATU-R at initialization.

Noting (t_n,PSD_n), for n = 0 to N – 1, the set of N breakpoints, the upstream MIB_PSD_Mask shall be defined as a function of frequency f as follows (Δf represents the subcarrier spacing of 4.3125 kHz):

- For $(f/\Delta f) < t_0$: MIB_PSD_Mask(f) = PSD_0, i.e., flat extension of the MIB_PSD_Mask.
- For $t_{n-1} < (f/\Delta f) < t_n$ (n = 1 to N–1): linear interpolation of PSD values (in dBm/Hz).

  $$MIB\_PSD\_Mask(f) = PSD_{n-1} + (PSD_n - PSD_{n-1}) \times \frac{(f/\Delta f) - t_{n-1}}{t_n - t_{n-1}}$$

- For $t_{N-1} < (f/\Delta f) < (686/\Delta f)$ kHz, the MIB_PSD_Mask shall be the highest of:

  $$MIB\_PSD\_Mask(f) = PSD_{N-1} - 72 \times \log_2((f/\Delta f)/t_{N-1})$$

  $$MIB\_PSD\_Mask(f) = -100 - 15 \times \log_{10}(f/686kHz)$$

  where f_{int} is the frequency at the intersection of the two curves.
- For 686 kHz < f < 12 MHz, the MIB_PSD_Mask(f) = –100 dBm/Hz.

The ATU-R shall meet the upstream PSD Mask that is defined at each frequency f as the lowest of the Limit_PSD_Mask(f) (defined in clause J.3.4.1) and the MIB_PSD_Mask(f) defined above.

The following constraints shall apply to the series of breakpoints defining the MIB_PSD_Mask:

- The tone index is in ascending order, with the last tone index a multiple of 4, in the 32 to 64 range.

$$\forall n : 1 \le n \le N-1 : t_{n-1} < t_n \text{ and } t_{N-1} = 4 \times i, \text{ with } i \text{ integer and } 8 \le i \le 16.$$

- There is at least one PSD value equal to *MAXNOMPSD* + 3.5 dB:

$$\exists n : 0 \le n \le N-1 : PSD_n = MAXNOMPSD + 3.5\,\text{dB}$$

- The maximum range between the minimum and maximum PSD value over the breakpoints is 24 dB:

$$\begin{aligned} & MAXPSD - MINPSD \le 24\,dB \\ & with\ MAXPSD = \max\{PSD_n : 0 \le n \le N-1\} = MAXNOMPSD + 3.5\,\text{dB} \\ & and\ MINPSD = \min\{PSD_n : 0 \le n \le N-1\} \end{aligned}$$

- The maximal slope in between breakpoints is bound by at least one of the following two restrictions:

$$\forall n : 1 \le n \le N-1 : \left| \frac{PSD_n - PSD_{n-1}}{t_n - t_{n-1}} \right| \le 0.75 \text{ dB/tone}$$

$$\forall n : (1 \le n \le N-1) AND \begin{pmatrix} (MAXPSD - PSD_n \le 6\,dB) \\ OR \\ (MAXPSD - PSD_{n-1} \le 6\,dB) \end{pmatrix} : \left| \frac{PSD_n - PSD_{n-1}}{t_n - t_{n-1}} \right| \le 0.60 \text{ dB/tone}$$

NOTE 1 – The maximum slope in between breakpoints is defined such that no time domain filtering is required to meet the upstream PSD mask.

NOTE 2 – The PSD masks defined in clause J.2 can be defined by a single breakpoint with tone index at the end of the passband and PSD equal to the Limit_PSD_Mask at that tone index (apart from minor PSD relaxation at the lower edge of the passband).

J.3.4.3 Transmission of upstream MIB_PSD_Mask configuration parameter

The upstream MIB_PSD_Mask parameter is stored in the CO-MIB and shall be transmitted to the ATU-R to allow the ATU-R to derive the appropriate upstream tss_i values, and other ATU-R-specific spectral shaping and time domain filtering settings, to comply with the requested upstream PSD mask (i.e., the lower of MIB_PSD_Mask and Limit_PSD_Mask). The upstream MIB_PSD_Mask parameter is transmitted from ATU-C to ATU-R through the CL message Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block during the ITU-T G.994.1 handshake initialization phase (see Table J.11). This parameter block shall not be included in a CLR or MS message.

If the CL message includes an Spar(2) Submode_PSD_Mask parameter block (to indicate ATU-C selects one of the upstream PSD masks defined in clause J.2), the CL message shall not include an Spar(2) Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block. If the CL message does not include an Spar(2) Submode_PSD_Mask parameter block, then the CL message may include a Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block (to indicate the need for upstream PSD shaping to the ATU-R). If the CL message does not include the Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block either, then by default the MIB_PSD_Mask equals the Limit_PSD_Mask.

If the CL message includes a Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block, this block shall contain the upstream PSD mask through a set of breakpoints defining the MIB_PSD_Mask. Upon receipt of this Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block, the ATU-R shall verify whether the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping (tss_i) parameter blocks communicated during the CLR message do comply with and are optimum under the requested upstream PSD mask. If not, the ATU-R shall initiate a new CLR/CL transaction with modified upstream spectrum bounds and shaping (tss_i) parameter blocks.

As the support of upstream spectrum shaping is optional, a PSD_shape_support Npar(2) bit shall be added in the CL and CLR message to indicate support of upstream PSD shaping at the ATU-C receiver and ATU-R transmitter respectively (see Tables J.11 and J.12). This bit shall be set to 1 in the CLR if the ATU-R transmitter supports upstream PSD shaping.

- If this bit is set to 0 in the CLR message, the CL message may (in the current transaction or in a subsequent CL/CLR transaction in the current or subsequent ITU-T G.994.1 session) include a Submode_PSD_Mask parameter block (resulting in an MS message selecting an upstream PSD mask defined in clause J.2) or the ATU-C may return the "configuration error" initialization failure code (see [ITU-T G.997.1]).
- If this bit is set to 1 in the CLR message, the CL message may (in the current transaction or in a subsequent CL/CLR transaction in the current or subsequent ITU-T G.994.1 session) include a Submode_PSD_Mask parameter block (resulting in a MS message selecting an upstream PSD mask defined in clause J.2) or the ATU-C may include a Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block (resulting in the MIB_PSD_Mask being equal to Submode_PSD_Shape parameter) or the ATU-C may include no parameter block (resulting in the MIB_PSD_Mask being equal to the Limit_PSD_Mask).

If the CL message does include a Submode_PSD_Mask parameter block, it shall have the Npar(2) bit set to 0 (indicating the ATU-C selects to use an upstream PSD mask defined in clause J.2). If the CL message does not include a Submode_PSD_Mask parameter block, it shall have the Npar(2) bit set to 1 (indicating the ATU-C selects to use upstream PSD shaping).

If both the ATU-C and ATU-R indicate support of upstream spectrum shaping (i.e., the Npar(2) PSD_Shape_support bit is set to 1 in both the CL and CLR message), then the subsequent MS message (see Table J.13) shall have the Npar(2) PSD_Shape_support bit set to 1 and both the Spar(2) Submode_PSD_Mask and Spar(2) Submode_PSD_Shape bits set to 0. The ATU-R shall then comply to the upstream PSD mask as transmitted in the CL message (explicitly through the Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block or implicitly by absence of a Submode_PSD_Shape parameter block).

The indication of support for and selection of the upstream MIB_PSD_Mask is summarized in Table J.13a.

Table J.11 – ATU-C CL message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

Npar(2) bit	**Definition**
PSD_Shape_support	A ONE indicates that the ATU-C selects to use upstream PSD shaping.
Spar(2) bit	**Definition of related Npar(3) bits**
Submode_PSD_shape	In this parameter block, the ATU-C indicates to the ATU-R the upstream MIB_PSD_Mask through a set of maximum four breakpoints (see clause J.3.4.3). Breakpoints are in ascending order of tone index. Each breakpoint is represented by 2 octets: • The tone index n shall be coded as (n – 1) in an unsigned 6-bits value, ranging from tone index 1 (coded 0b000000) to tone index 64 (coded 0b111111). • The PSD at this tone index is coded as the attenuation relative to *MAXNOMPSDus* + 3.5 dB. The attenuation shall be coded as 6 bits in steps of 0.5 dB, ranging from 0 dB (coded 0b000000) to 24 dB (coded 0b110000). At least one breakpoint shall be coded with 0 dB.

Table J.12 – ATU-R CLR message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

Npar(2) bit	Definition
PSD_Shape_support	A ONE indicates that the ATU-R supports upstream PSD shaping.
Spar(2) bit	**Definition of related Npar(3) bits**
Submode_PSD_Shape	This parameter block shall not be included. This Spar(2) shall be set 0.

Table J.13 – MS message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

Npar(2) bit	Definition
PSD_Shape_support	A ONE indicates that the ATU-R upstream PSD mask shall comply to the upstream MIB_PSD_Mask transmitted in the CL message.
Spar(2) bit	**Definition of related Npar(3) bits**
Submode_PSD_Shape	This parameter block shall not be included. This Spar(2) shall be set 0.

Table J.13a – Indication of the upstream MIB_PSD_Mask during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase

	CL = [1 0 0]	CL = [0 1 0]	CL = [0 1 1]
CLR = [1 0 0]	MS = [1 0 0] Flat MIB_PSD_Mask = EU-x as indicated in CL and MS and as defined in clause J.2	Annex J not selected in MS (configuration error)	Annex J not selected in MS (configuration error)
CLR = [1 1 0]	MS = [1 0 0] Flat MIB_PSD_Mask is EU-x as indicated in CL and MS and as defined in clause J.2.	MS = [0 1 0] Shaped MIB_PSD_Mask is Limit_PSD_Mask as defined in Table J.8.	MS = [0 1 0] Shaped MIB_PSD_Mask is as indicated in CL.

NOTE 1 – The notation for the [a b c] combination is defined as follows:
a = Annex J submode PSD masks Spar(2) bit;
b = Annex J PSD shape support Npar(2) bit;
c = Annex J submode PSD shape Spar(2) bit.
NOTE 2 – This table lists all valid [a b c] combinations for CL and CLR messages. Other combinations shall not be used.
NOTE 3 – For each of the a, b and c bits, the value in MS messages shall be the logical AND of the values in the CL and CLR messages.			

J.4 Electrical characteristics

The ATU shall meet the electrical characteristics defined in clause I.4.

The ATU-C longitudinal conversion loss (LCL) requirements shall apply over the frequency ranges from 4 kHz to 276 kHz and from 276 kHz to 1104 kHz, respectively.

Annex K

TPS-TC functional descriptions

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

This annex contains the functional descriptions of various TPS-TC types that may be used within the ITU-T G.992.3 transceivers.

K.1 STM transmission convergence (STM-TC) function

K.1.1 Scope

The STM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional STM-TC stream in either the upstream or downstream direction. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the STM-TC stream. The STM-TC stream is presented synchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

The support for a plesiochronous interface is under study.

K.1.2 References

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no STM-TC-specific references.

K.1.3 Definitions

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no STM-TC-specific definitions.

K.1.4 Abbreviations

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no STM-TC-specific abbreviations.

K.1.5 Transport capabilities

The STM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional STM-TC stream in either the upstream and downstream direction. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the STM-TC stream. The STM-TC stream is presented synchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

After each of the transmit STM-TC procedures has been applied, transport of the STM-TC stream to a receive STM-TC function is carried out by underlying PMS-TC and PMD layers through a series of data frames and PMD symbols. The STM-TC transport capabilities are configured by control parameters described in clause K.1.7. The control parameters provide for the application-appropriate data rates and characteristics of the STM-TC stream. The values of all control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU. The receive STM-TC functions recover the input signal that was presented to the corresponding transmit STM-TC function, those signals having been transported across the STM-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions of an ATU-C and ATU-R pair.

The transmit STM-TC function accepts input signals from the data plane and control plane within the ATU. As a data plane element, the transmit STM-TC function accepts one STM-TC stream from the V-C or T-R reference points. The stream is associated with one, and only one, STM-TC function. These input signals are conveyed to the receive STM-TC interface as depicted in

Figure K.1. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the STM-TC frame bearers. The STM-TC stream is presented synchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

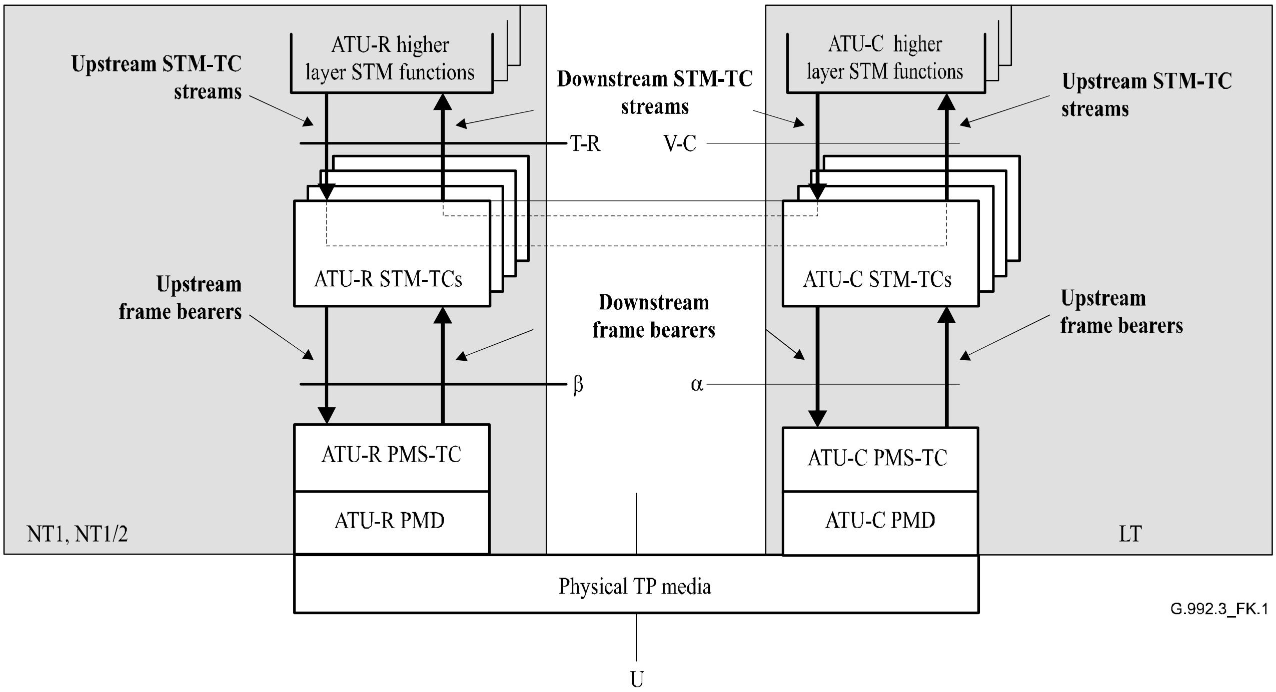


Figure K.1 – STM-TC transport capabilities within the user plane

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the STM-TC function. However, there are some specific indicator bits and overhead response definitions for the STM-TC function as defined in this annex.

K.1.6 Interface primitives

Each ATU-C STM-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure K.2. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

This figure is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to a higher layer STM function. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to the PMS-TC function.

Each ATU-R STM-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure K.3. In this figure, the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from Figure K.1.

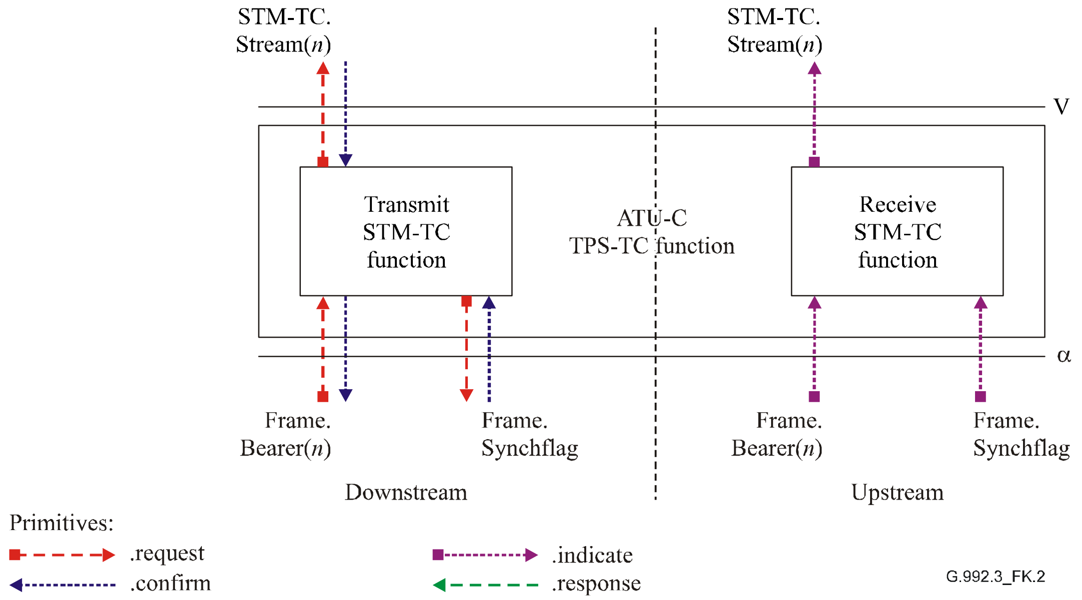


Figure K.2 – Signals of the ATU-C STM-TC function

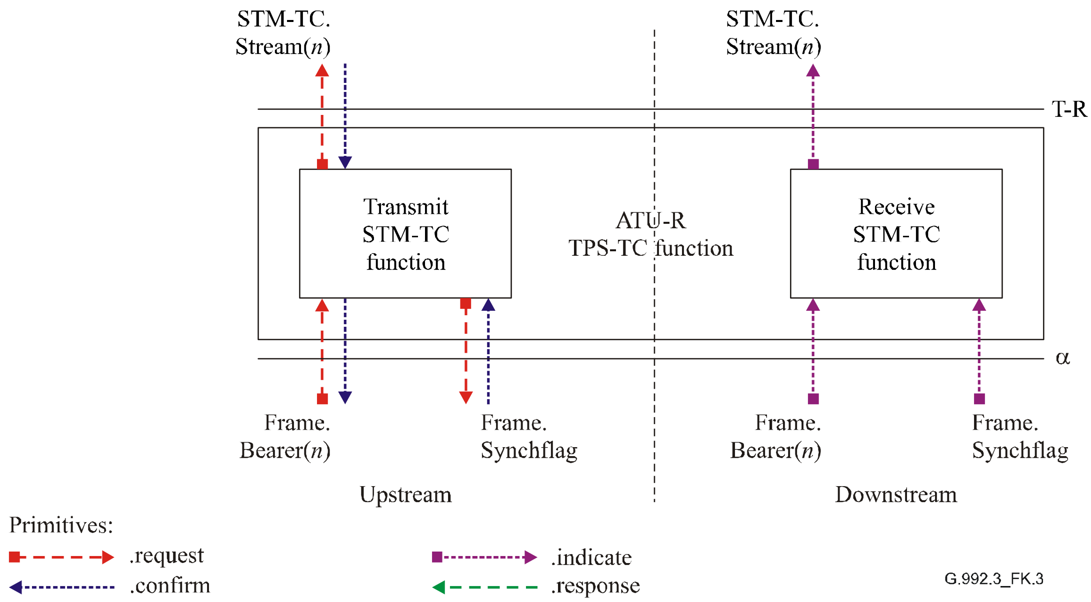


Figure K.3 – Signals of the ATU-R STM-TC function

The signals shown in Figures K.2 and K.3 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between a higher layer STM function and STM-TC function are described in Table K.1. These primitives support the exchange of frame bearer data and regulation of data flow to match PMS-TC configuration. They also support coordinated on-line reconfiguration of the ATU-C and ATU-R.

Table K.1 – Signalling primitives between STM higher layer functions and the STM-TC function

Signal	Primitive	Description
TPS-TC.Stream(*n*).STM	.request	This primitive is used by the transmit STM-TC function to request one or more octets from the transmit higher layer STM function to be transported. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the data flow is matched to the STM-TC configuration (and underlying functions). Primitives are labelled n, where n corresponds to the TPS-TC function ID (e.g., $n = 0$ for TPS-TC #0).
	.confirm	The transmit higher layer STM function passes one or more octets to the STM-TC function to be transported with this primitive. Upon receipt of this primitive, the STM-TC function shall perform the data plane procedures in clause K.1.8.
	.indicate	The receive STM-TC function passes one or more octets to the receive higher layer STM function that have been transported with this primitive.

K.1.7 Control parameters

The configuration of the STM-TC function is controlled by a set of control parameters displayed in Table K.2 in addition to those specified in the main body of this Recommendation. The values of these control parameters are set and communicated during initialization or reconfiguration of an ATU pair. All the values are determined by application requirements, which means that they are beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

Table K.2 – STM-TC parameters

Parameter	Definition
Minimum net data rate net_min_n	The minimum net data rate supported by the STM-TC stream #n. The ATU shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to provide net_min_n data rate.
Maximum net data rate net_max_n	The maximum net data rate supported by STM-TC stream #n. During initialization and reconfiguration procedures, the net data rate shall not exceed this value.
Minimum reserved data rate $net\_reserve_n$	The minimum reserved data rate supported by STM-TC stream #n that shall always be available upon request by an appropriate reconfiguration procedure. The value of $net\_reserve_n$ shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_reserve_n \leq net\_max_n$.
Maximum PMS-TC latency $delay\_max_n$	The STM-TC stream #n shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $delay_p$ is no larger than this control parameter $delay\_max_n$.
Maximum PMS-TC BER $error\_max_n$	The STM-TC stream #n shall be transported with bit error ratio not to exceed $error\_max_n$, referenced to the output of the PMS-TC function in the receiver. The modem shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to assure this value.
Minimum PMS-TC impulse noise protection INP_min_n	The ATM-TC stream #n shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter INP_p is not lower than this control parameter INP_min_n.

Parameter	Definition
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	When set to ZERO for at least one bearer channel transported in latency path #p, the receiver shall set the derived parameter $INP_p = INP\_no\_erasure_p$. When set to ONE for all bearer channels transported in latency path #p, the receiver is not required to set $INP_p = INP\_no\_erasure_p$. NOTE – For backwards compatibility reasons, this bit is named and coded opposite from [b-ITU-T G.993.2].
Channel initialization policy $CIpolicy_n$	This parameter controls the policy to be applied to bearer channel #n in setting the transceiver configuration parameters during initialization (see clause 7.10.3).

If the values of net_min_n, net_max_n and $net\_reserve_n$ are set to the same value, then the STM-TC stream is designated as a fixed data rate STM-TC stream (i.e., *RA-MODE* = MANUAL, see Table 8-6). If $net\_min_n = net\_reserve_n$ and $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n$, then the STM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate STM-TC stream. If the value of $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n \neq net\_reserve_{max}$, then the STM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate STM-TC stream with reserved data rate allocation.

During initialization and reconfiguration procedures, the actual net data rate net_act_n for stream #n shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $net\_act_{p,n}$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$. However, in the case where the $net\_min_n = net\_max_n$, the net_act_n may exceed the net_max_n by up to 8 kbit/s, to allow for the PMS-TC net data rate granularity (see Table 7-7). If $net\_min_n < net\_max_n$, the net_max_n shall be set at least 8 kbit/s above the net_min_n, to allow for the PMS-TC net data rate granularity to meet the $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$ requirement. The latency $delay\_act_n$ shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $delay_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and constrained such that $delay\_act_n \leq delay\_max_n$. The values net_act_n and $delay\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

The impulse noise protection INP_act_n of transport of stream #n shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter INP_p of the underlying PMS-TC path function and constrained such that $INP\_act_n \geq INP\_min_n$ according to the definition of INP_p (see Table 7-7), regardless of any vendor-discretionary techniques including, for example, the use of erasure decoding. The values net_act_n, $delay\_act_n$ and INP_act_n are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

K.1.7.1 Valid configurations

The configurations listed in Table K.3 are valid for the STM-TC function.

Table K.3 – Valid configuration for STM-TC function

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	1
net_min_n	net_min_n may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
net_max_n	net_max_n may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
$delay\_max_n$	$0 \leq delay\_max_n \leq$ the largest value of $delay_p$ (see clause 7.6.1) for supported valid framing configurations. $delay\_max_n = 0$ is a special value indicating no delay bound is being imposed. $delay\_max_n = 1$ is a special value indicating the lowest delay is being imposed (see clause 7.3.2.2 of [ITU-T G.997.1]).
$error\_max_n$	10^{-3}, 10^{-5}, 10^{-7}
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	0, 1 (Boolean)
$CIpolicy_n$	0, 1

NOTE 1 – Configuration of minimum net data rates such that the sum of all minimum net data rates over all bearer channels result in values higher than given in Table K.3a for downstream (using only mandatory D_p values) and Table K.3b for upstream, may lead to configuration errors by the ATU-C and/or initialization failures with "configuration error" failure caused by the ATU-R. Table K.3c gives the downstream net data rate values in case all the optional D_0 values (see Table 7-8) are supported.

NOTE 2 – The net data rates given in Table K.3c are calculated for latency path #0, based on the assumptions listed below. They are calculated independent of operation modes defined in annexes. Some annexes have PSD masks limiting the number of subcarriers, which results in lower net data rates than those given in Table K.3c.

- Number of subcarriers is 255;
- Trellis coding enabled;
- All valid R, S, D and N_{FEC} values listed in Table 7-8 are allowed;
- D and N_{FEC} are co-prime as defined in clause 7.7.1.5;
- OR = 64 kbit/s (see Table 7-7);
- $delay\_max$ and INP_min are as defined in Table 7-7.

Table K.3a – *INP_min* and *delay_max*-related downstream net data rates limits (in kbit/s)

		INP_min						
		0	**½**	**1**	**2**	**4**	**8**	**16**
delay_max [ms]	**1 (Note)**	14656	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2	14656	7104	3008	960	0	0	0
	4	14656	13632	7104	3008	960	0	0
	8	14656	13632	13632	7104	3008	960	0
	16	14656	13632	13632	7552	3520	1472	448
	32	14656	13632	13632	7552	3712	1728	704
	63	14656	13632	13632	7552	3712	1728	704
NOTE – In [ITU-T G.997.1], a 1 ms delay is reserved to mean that $S_p \leq 1$ and $D_p = 1$.								

Table K.3b – *INP_min* and *delay_max*-related upstream net data rates limits (in kbit/s)

		INP_min						
		0	**½**	**1**	**2**	**4**	**8**	**16**
delay_max [ms]	**1 (Note)**	3520	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2	3520	3072	1472	448	0	0	0
	4	3520	3264	1728	704	192	0	0
	8	3520	3264	1792	832	320	64	0
	16	3520	3264	1792	832	384	128	0
	32	3520	3264	1792	832	384	128	0
	63	3520	3264	1792	832	384	128	0
NOTE – In [ITU-T G.997.1], a 1 ms delay is reserved to mean that $S_p \leq 1$ and $D_p = 1$.								

Table K.3c – *INP_min* and *delay_max*-related downstream net data rates limits using the optional D_0 values for downstream latency path #0 (in kbit/s)

		INP_min						
		0	**½**	**1**	**2**	**4**	**8**	**16**
delay_max [ms]	**1 (Note)**	14708	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2	14708	12674	10723	6592	0	0	0
	4	14708	13702	12698	10723	6879	0	0
	8	14708	14215	13745	12770	10723	6879	0
	16	14708	14249	13854	12976	11238	7984	4024
	32	14708	14249	13854	12976	11238	7984	4024
	63	14708	14249	13854	12976	11238	7984	4024
NOTE – In [ITU-T G.997.1], a 1 ms delay is reserved to mean that $S_p \leq 1$ and $D_p = 1$.								

K.1.7.2 Mandatory configurations

If implementing an STM-TC, an ATU shall support all combinations of the values of STM-TC control parameters for an STM-TC function displayed in Tables K.4 and K.5 in the downstream and upstream direction, respectively. The transmitter and receiver shall support mandatory features displayed in the tables.

Table K.4 – Mandatory downstream configuration for STM-TC function #0

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	1
net_min	net_min_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s (see Note).
net_max_n	net_max_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s (see Note).
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s.
$delay\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
$error\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	0
$CIpolicy_n$	0
NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed.	

Table K.5 – Mandatory upstream control configuration for STM-TC function #0

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	1
net_min_n	net_min_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
net_max_n	net_max_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
$delay\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
$error\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	0
$CIpolicy_n$	0
NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed.	

K.1.8 Data plane procedures

Upon receipt of the Frame.Bearer.request(*n*) primitive, the transmit STM-TC function shall signal a TPS-TC.Stream.STM.request to the STM higher layer function, requesting data for transport.

Upon receipt of a TPS-TC.STM.confirm(*n*) primitive, the receive STM-TC function #*n* shall signal a Frame.Bearer(*n*).confirm primitive to the PMS-TC function, providing data for transport.

Upon receipt of the Frame.Bearer.indicate(*n*) primitive, the receive STM-TC function #*n* shall signal a TPS-TC.Stream.STM.indicate to the STM higher layer function, providing data that has been transported.

K.1.9 Management plane procedures

K.1.9.1 Surveillance primitives

Surveillance primitives for the STM-TC function are under study.

K.1.9.2 Indicator bits

TIB#0 and TIB#1 shall be set to a 1 for use in clause 7.8.2.2.

K.1.9.3 Overhead command formats

K.1.9.3.1 Inventory command

The octets returned for the overhead inventory command for TPS-TC capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-15 based upon the STM-TC capabilities octets transmitted during the most recent initialization procedure. The capabilities octets are defined in Table K.6.

K.1.9.3.2 Control value read command

The octets returned for the overhead control parameter read command for TPS-TC control parameters capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-17 based upon the control parameters currently in use by the STM-TC receiver function. The control parameter shall be transmitted in the format displayed in Table K.7.

K.1.9.3.3 Management counter read command

The TPS-TC octets in the response to the overhead management counter read command corresponding to the STM-TC function are under study. The block of counter values corresponding to the STM-TC function returned in the message depicted in Table 9-20 shall have zero length.

K.1.10 Initialization procedure

STM-TC functions shall be configured fully prior to the initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD functions or be configured after initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD function in a manner that is outside the scope of this Recommendation. The configuration prior to initialization is performed via an ITU-T G.994.1 MS message. Information may be exchanged prior to the mode select to ascertain capabilities using an ITU-T G.994.1 CL or CLR message.

The CL and CLR messages shall describe capabilities of the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively, and can be constrained by application requirements, service requirements, implementation choices, etc. Therefore, the capabilities indicated in the CL and CLR message are the enabled capabilities, which may be equal to or a subset of the set of capabilities supported by the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively. In any case, the MS message (and all subsequent initialization messages) shall account for all capability restrictions indicated in the CL and CLR messages.

K.1.10.1 ITU-T G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about each upstream and downstream STM-TC function supported within an ATU shall be as defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the CL and CLR messages. This information may be optionally requested and reported via ITU-T G.994.1 at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once prior to enabling an STM-TC function between the ATU-C and ATU-R, but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- maximum net data rate that can be supported by the STM-TC function;
- maximum latency that might be acceptable for the STM-TC function. The method for setting this value is outside the scope of this Recommendation.

This information for an STM-TC function is represented using a block of ITU-T G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.6.

Table K.6 – Format for an STM-TC CL and CLR message

Spar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) octets
Downstream STM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream STM-TC function #0, if present.
Downstream STM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream STM-TC function #1, if present.
Downstream STM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream STM-TC function #2, if present.
Downstream STM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream STM-TC function #3, if present.
Upstream STM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream STM-TC function #0, if present.
Upstream STM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream STM-TC function #1, if present.
Upstream STM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream STM-TC function #2, if present.
Upstream STM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream STM-TC function #3, if present.
	Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets
	A parameter block of 10 octets containing: • the maximum supported value of *net_max*; • the maximum supported value of *net_min*; • the maximum supported value of *net_reserve*; • the maximum supported value of *delay_max*; • the maximum supported value of *error_max*; • the minimum impulse noise protection *INP_min*; • the value of *INP_no_erasure_not_required*; and • the *CIpolicy* bitmap. The unsigned 12-bit *net_max, net_min* and *net_reserve* values represent the data rate divided by 4000 bit/s. The *delay_max* is a 6-bit unsigned value expressed in ms. A value of 000000 indicates no delay bound is being imposed. The *error_max* is a 2-bit indication, defined as 00 for an error ratio of 1E-3, 01 for an error ratio of 1E-5, and 10 for an error ratio of 1E-7. The value 11 is reserved. The *INP_min* value is an 8-bit indication, with values coded as defined in Table K.6a. The *INP_no_erasure_not_required* is a 1-bit value (Boolean) (see Note 1). The *CIpolicy* (see clause 7.10.3) is a 2-bit bitmap, representing the channel initialization policies ZERO and ONE (see Note 2).
NOTE 1 – This bit is defined for downstream bearer channels only. It shall be set to the same value for all downstream TC types (see clause 6.6.1.1) supported over a particular bearer channel. It may be set to a different value for different downstream bearer channels. In a CL message, this bit shall be set to ZERO if the 'erasure decoding reporting' bit is set to ZERO. In a CLR message, this bit shall be set to the same value as the 'erasure decoding reporting' bit. NOTE 2 – The CLR message shall indicate one or more policies supported by the ATU-R. The CL message shall indicate the single policy enabled by the CO-MIB. Support or enabling of only policy ZERO may be explicitly indicated by setting the related ITU-T G.994.1 codepoint, or implicitly by not including the policy codepoints in the CLR or CL message.	

Table K.6a – Coding of the *INP_min* value

INP_min	CL/MS coding	CLR coding
0	0b 0000 0000	0b 0000 0000
½	0b 0000 0001	0b 0000 0001
1	0b 0000 0010	0b 0000 0010
2	0b 0000 0011	0b 0000 0011
3	0b 0011 0111	0b 0011 0011
4	0b 0000 0111	0b 0100 0111 0b 0000 0111 (Note)
5	0b 0101 1011	0b 0101 0111
6	0b 0110 1011	0b 0110 0111
7	0b 0111 1011	0b 0111 0111
8	0b 0000 1011	0b 1000 1011 0b 0000 1011 (Note)
9	0b 1001 1111	0b 1001 1011
10	0b 1010 1111	0b 1010 1011
11	0b 1011 1111	0b 1011 1011
12	0b 1100 1111	0b 1100 1011
13	0b 1101 1111	0b 1101 1011
14	0b 1110 1111	0b 1110 1011
15	0b 1111 1111	0b 1111 1011
16	0b 0000 1111	0b 1111 1111 0b 0000 1111 (Note)
NOTE 1 – This alternative coding is defined only for the ATU-C receiver, to assure compatibility with an ATU-R only supporting values in the set {0, 1/2, 1, 2, 4, 8, 16}. In this case, the *INP_min* value in the MS message may need to be set higher than in the CL message. NOTE 2 – If the CL or CLR message has the 4 most significant bits set to 0, then the MS message shall also have these bits set to 0.		

K.1.10.2 ITU-T G.994.1 mode select message

Each of the control parameters for each upstream and downstream STM-TC function shall be as defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the MS message. This information for each enabled STM-TC function shall be selected using an MS message prior to the PMD and TPS-TC initialization.

The configuration for an STM-TC function is represented using a block of ITU-T G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.7.

Table K.7 – Format for an STM-TC MS message

Spar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) octets
Downstream STM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream STM-TC function #0, if present.
Downstream STM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream STM-TC function #1, if present.
Downstream STM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream STM-TC function #2, if present.
Downstream STM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream STM-TC function #3, if present.
Upstream STM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream STM-TC function #0, if present.
Upstream STM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream STM-TC function #1, if present.
Upstream STM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream STM-TC function #2, if present.
Upstream STM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream STM-TC function #3, if present.
	Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets
	A parameter block of 10 octets containing: • the value of *net_max*; • the value of *net_min*; • the value of *net_reserve*; • the value of *delay_max*; • the value of *error_max*; • the minimum impulse noise protection *INP_min*; • the value of *INP_no_erasure_not_required* (see Note 1); and • the *CIpolicy* bitmap (see Note 2). The format and usage of the octets is as described in Table K.6.
NOTE 1 – This bit shall be set to ONE if, and only if, it was set to ONE in both the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. NOTE 2 – The MS message shall indicate the policy enabled for use with the bearer channel. Enabling of policy ZERO may be explicitly indicated by setting the related ITU-T G.994.1 codepoint, or implicitly by not including the policy codepoints in the MS message.	

K.1.11 On-line reconfiguration

The on-line reconfiguration of the STM-TC generally requires the STM-TC to communicate peer-to-peer through means outside the scope of this Recommendation. There is no specified mechanism to modify the values of the control parameters of the STM-TC function. The values of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated from the underlying PMS-TC latency path function.

K.1.11.1 Changes to an existing stream

Reconfiguration of an existing STM-TC function occurs only at boundaries between octets. The transmit STM-TC function uses the new values of the control parameters *net_act* and *delay_act* to generate octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive. The receive STM-TC function procedures process octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive using the new values of the control parameters.

K.1.12 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the STM-TC function are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

K.1.12.1 L0 Link state operation

The STM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in clauses K.1.8 and K.1.9 as well as those in the main body of the Recommendation while the link is in power management state L0. All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in clause K.1.7, as well as those provided in the main body of the Recommendation, shall apply.

K.1.12.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

During a transition from link state L0 to state L2, the values of control parameters are not modified. However, the values of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation, the coordinated entry into the L2 link state shall be made as described in clause K.1.11.1.

K.1.12.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific STM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

K.1.12.2 L2 link state operation

The STM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in clauses K.1.8 and K.1.9 as well as those in the main body of the Recommendation while the link is in power management state L2. All control parameter definitions provided in clause K.1.7, as well as those provided in the main body of the Recommendation, shall apply. However, the operating limits imposed by the control parameters *net_min*, *net_reserve* and *delay_max* shall not apply while in the L2 link state.

During the link state L2, the ATU-C STM-TC shall monitor its interface for the arrival of primitives that indicate data rates larger than the reduced data rates must be transported to the ATU-R. When this condition is detected, the ATU-C shall use the procedure described in clause 9.5.3.4 to return to the link state L0.

K.1.12.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

Entry into the L0 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation. The values of the control parameters are not modified upon return to the L2 link state; however, during a transition from link state L2 to state L0, the values of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation, the coordinated entry into the L0 link state shall be made as described in clause K.1.11.1.

K.1.12.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

Transitions to link state L3 shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation. No specific STM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

K.1.12.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, no specific procedures are specified for the STM-TC function.

K.1.12.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in clause K.1.10 as well as in the main body of the Recommendation.

K.2 ATM transmission convergence (ATM-TC) function

K.2.1 Scope

The ATM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional ATM-TC stream in either the upstream or downstream direction. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the ATM-TC stream. The ATM-TC stream is presented asynchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

K.2.2 References

References applicable to this annex are included in clause 2.

K.2.3 Definitions

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no ATM-TC-specific definitions.

K.2.4 Abbreviations

Abbreviations applicable to this annex are included in clause 4.

K.2.5 Transport capabilities

The ATM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional ATM-TC stream in either the upstream or downstream direction. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the ATM-TC stream. The ATM-TC stream is presented asynchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

After each of the transmit ATM-TC procedures has been applied, transport of the ATM-TC stream to a receive ATM-TC function is carried out by underlying PMS-TC and PMD layers through a series of data frames and PMD symbols. The ATM-TC transport capabilities are configured by control parameters described in clause K.2.7. The control parameters provide for the application-appropriate data rates and characteristics of the ATM-TC stream. The values of all control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU. The receive ATM-TC functions recover the input signal that was presented to the corresponding transmit ATM-TC function, those signals having been transported across the ATM-TC, PMS-TC and PMD functions of an ATU-C and ATU-R pair.

The transmit ATM-TC function accepts input signals from the data plane and control plane within the ATU. As a data plane element, the transmit ATM-TC function accepts one ATM-TC stream from the V-C or T-R reference points. The stream is associated with one, and only one, ATM-TC function. These input signals are conveyed to the receive ATM-TC interface as depicted in Figure K.4. Octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the ATM-TC frame bearers. The ATM-TC stream is presented asynchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

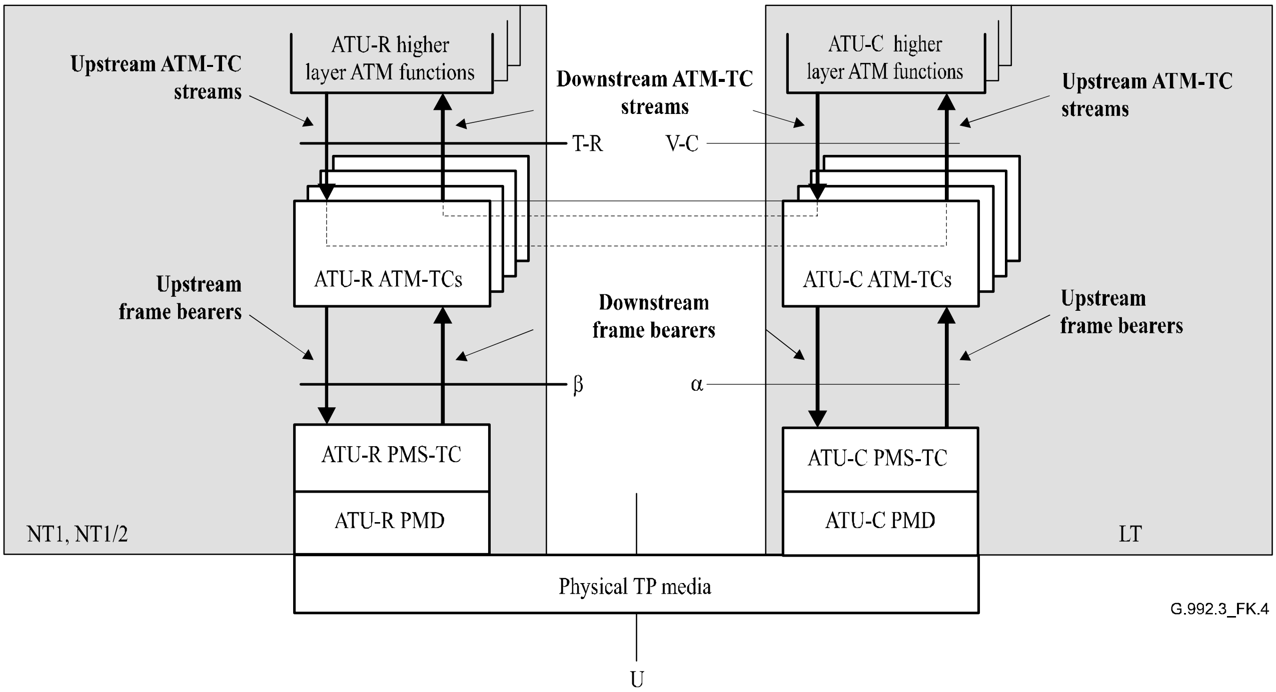


Figure K.4 – ATM-TC transport capabilities within the user plane

As a management plane element, there are no specific transport functions provided by the ATM-TC function. However, there are some specific indicator bit and overhead response definitions for the ATM-TC function as defined in this annex.

K.2.5.1 Additional functions

In addition to transport functions, the transmit ATM-TC function also provides procedures for rate decoupling of the ATM-TC stream and the frame bearer by ATM idle cell insertion, ATM header error control generation, and scrambler.

The receive ATM-TC function reverses each of the listed procedures so that the transported information may be recovered. Additionally, the ATU receive framing function provides several supervisory indications and defect signals associated with some of these procedures (e.g., ATM cell delineation status, HEC error check failure) as described in clause 8.12.1.

K.2.6 Interface primitives

Each ATU-C ATM-TC function has many interface signals as shown in Figure K.5. Each named signal is composed of one or more primitives, as denoted by the directional arrows. The primitive type associated with each arrow is according to the figure legend.

This figure is divided by a dotted line to separate the downstream function and signals from the upstream. The signals shown at the top edge convey primitives to a higher layer ATM function. The signals shown at the bottom edge convey primitives to the PMS-TC function.

Each ATU-R ATM-TC function has similar interface signals as shown in Figure K.6. In this figure, the upstream and downstream labels are reversed from Figure K.5.

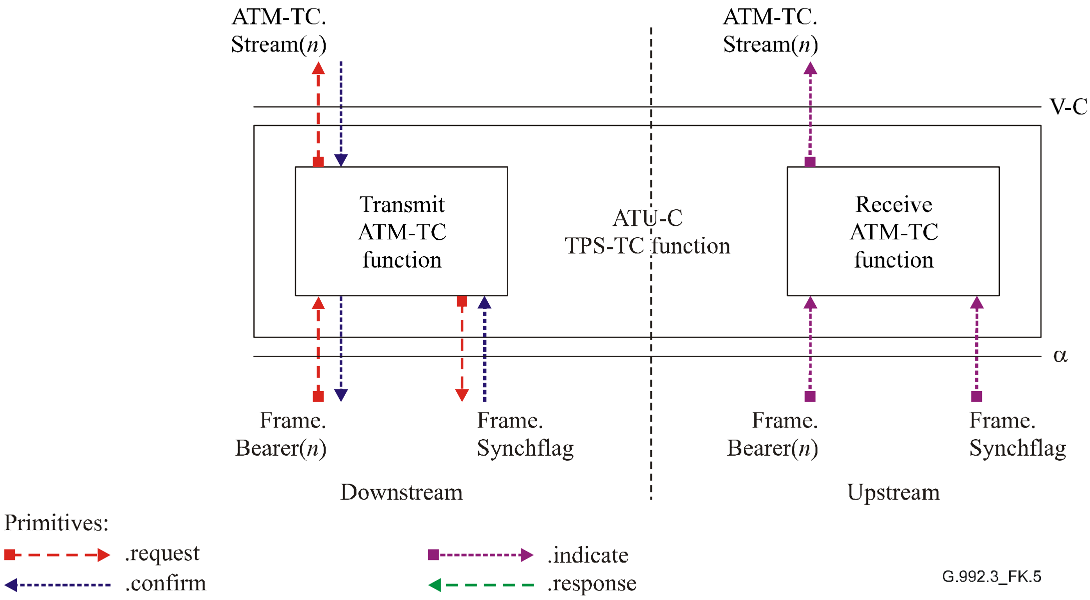


Figure K.5 – Signals of the ATU-C ATM-TC function

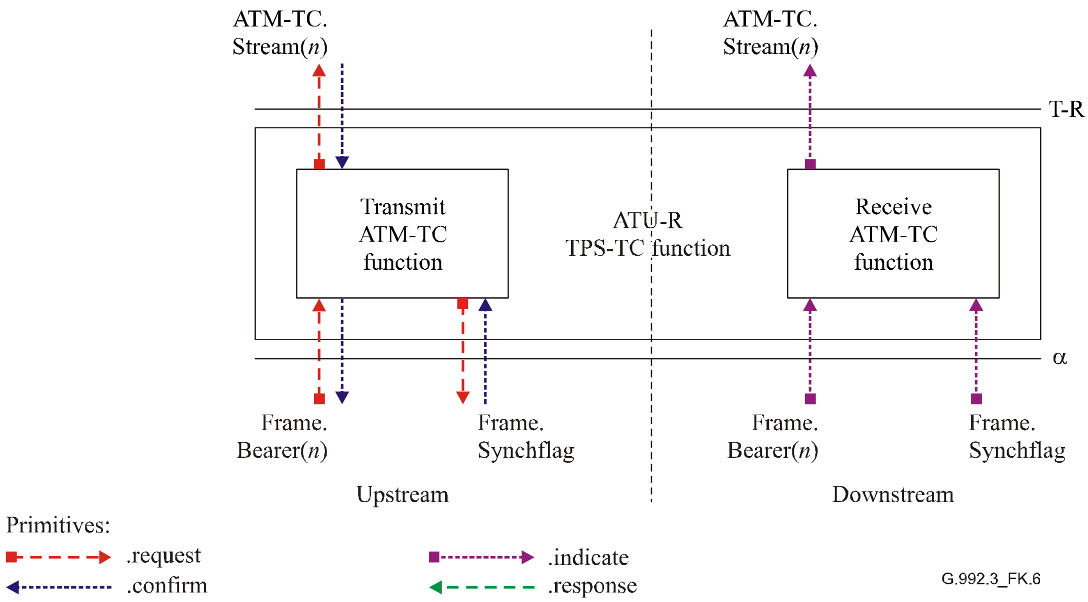


Figure K.6 – Signals of the ATU-R ATM-TC function

The signals shown in Figures K.5 and K.6 are used to carry primitives between functions of this Recommendation. Primitives are only intended for purposes of clearly specifying functions to assure interoperability.

The primitives that are used between a higher layer ATM function and ATM-TC function are described in Table K.8. These primitives support the exchange of stream and frame bearer data and regulation of data flow to match PMS-TC configuration. They also support coordinated on-line reconfiguration of the ATU-C and ATU-R.

Table K.8 – Signalling primitives between ATM higher layer functions and the ATM-TC function

Signal	Primitive	Description
TPS-TC.Stream(n). ATM	.request	This primitive is used by the transmit ATM-TC function to request one or more ATM cells from the transmit higher layer ATM function to be transported. By the interworking of the request and confirm, the data flow is matched to the ATM-TC configuration (and underlying functions). Primitives are labelled n, where n corresponds to the TPS-TC function ID (e.g., $n = 0$ for TPS-TC #0).
	.confirm	The transmit higher layer ATM function passes one or more ATM cells to the ATM-TC function to be transported with this primitive. Upon receipt of this primitive, the ATM-TC function shall perform the procedures in clause K.2.8.2.
	.indicate	The receive ATM-TC function passes one or more ATM cells to the receive higher layer ATM function that have been transported with this primitive.

K.2.7 Control parameters

The configuration of the ATM-TC function is controlled by a set of control parameters displayed in Table K.9 in addition to those specified in the main body of this Recommendation. The values of these control parameters are set and communicated during initialization or reconfiguration of an ATU pair. All the values are determined by application requirements, which means that they are beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

Table K.9 – ATM-TC parameters

Parameter	Definition
Minimum net data rate net_min_n	The minimum net data rate supported by the ATM-TC stream #n. The ATU shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to provide net_min_n data rate.
Maximum net data rate net_max_n	The maximum net data rate supported by ATM-TC stream #n. During activation and reconfiguration procedures, the net data rate shall not exceed this value.
Minimum reserved data rate $net\_reserve_n$	The minimum reserved data rate supported by ATM-TC stream #n that shall always be available upon request by an appropriate reconfiguration procedure. The value of $net\_reserve_n$ shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_reserve_n \leq net\_max_n$.
Maximum PMS-TC latency $delay\_max_n$	The ATM-TC stream #n shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $delay_p$ is no larger than this control parameter $delay\_max_n$.
Maximum PMS-TC BER $error\_max_n$	The ATM-TC stream #n shall be transported with bit error ratio not to exceed $error\_max_n$, referenced to the output of the PMS-TC function in the receiver. The modem shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to assure this value.
Minimum PMS-TC impulse noise protection INP_min_n	The ATM-TC stream #n shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter INP_p is not lower than this control parameter INP_min_n.

Table K.9 – ATM-TC parameters

Parameter	Definition
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	When set to ZERO for at least one bearer channel transported in latency path #*p*, the receiver shall set the derived parameter $INP_p = INP\_no\_erasure_p$. When set to ONE for all bearer channels transported in latency path #*p*, the receiver is not required to set $INP_p = INP\_no\_erasure_p$. NOTE – For backwards compatibility reasons, this bit is named and coded opposite from [b-ITU-T G.993.2].
IMA compatibility mode flag *IMA_flag*	This single bit flag controls specialized functionality of the ATM-TC function. If set to one, the specialized functionality is enabled. See clauses K.2.8.2 and K.2.8.5. More information on the IMA operation mode is available in [b-ATM Forum IMA].
Channel initialization policy $CIpolicy_n$	This parameter controls the policy to be applied to bearer channel #*n* in setting the transceiver configuration parameters during initialization (see clause 7.10.3).

If the values of net_min_n, net_max_n and $net\_reserve_n$ are set to the same value, then the ATM-TC stream is designated as a fixed data rate ATM-TC stream (i.e., *RA-MODE* = MANUAL, see Table 8-6). If $net\_min_n = net\_reserve_n$ and $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n$, then the ATM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate ATM-TC stream. If the value of $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n \neq net\_reserve_{max}$, then the ATM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate ATM-TC stream with reserved data rate allocation.

During activation and reconfiguration procedures, the actual net data rate net_act_n for stream #*n* shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $net\_act_{p,n}$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$. However, in case the $net\_min_n = net\_max_n$, the net_act_n may exceed the net_max_n by up to 8 kbit/s, to allow for the PMS-TC net data rate granularity (see Table 7-7). If $net\_min_n < net\_max_n$, the net_max_n shall be set at least 8 kbit/s above the net_min_n, to allow for the PMS-TC net data rate granularity to meet the $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$ requirement. The latency $delay\_act_n$ of transport of stream #*n* shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $delay_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC path function and constrained such that $delay\_min_n \leq delay\_act_n \leq delay\_max_n$. The values net_act_n and $delay\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

If ATM bonding is not set in the ITU-T G.994.1 bonding code tree, $delay\_min_n$ shall be set to 0 for both upstream and downstream direction and $delay\_max_n$ can be set to any valid value. If ATM bonding is set, then the ITU-T G.994.1 bonding code tree includes the value of the *max_delay_variation* control parameter for downstream ATM bonding and the $delay\_min_n$ shall be set to $delay\_max_n - max\_delay\_variation$ for the downstream direction. If information related to $delay\_min_n$ is available through the ATU-R bonding management interface over the T-R reference point, it may take precedence over the value derived from the ITU-T G.994.1 bonding code tree. For the upstream direction, the information related to $delay\_min_n$ is available through the ATU-C bonding management interface over the V-C reference point. For both upstream and downstream directions, if $delay\_min_n$ is greater than 0, there are combinations of $delay\_min_n$ and $delay\_max_n$ that may result in a failure to connect. Constraints on $delay\_max_n$ and $delay\_min_n$ designed to prevent this failure are described in Appendix V.

The impulse noise protection INP_act_n of transport of stream #n shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter INP_p of the underlying PMS-TC path function and constrained such that $INP\_act_n \geq INP\_min_n$ according to the definition of INP_p (see Table 7-7), regardless of any vendor-discretionary techniques including, for example, the use of erasure decoding. The values net_act_n, $delay\_act_n$ and INP_act_n are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

K.2.7.1 Valid configurations

The configurations listed in Table K.10 are valid for the ATM-TC function.

Table K.10 – Valid configuration for ATM-TC function

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	2
net_min_n	net_min_n may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
net_max_n	net_max_n may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
$delay\_max_n$	$0 \leq delay\_max_n \leq$ the largest value of $delay_p$ (see clause 7.6.1) for supported valid framing configurations. $delay\_max_n = 0$ is a special value indicating no delay bound is being imposed. $delay\_max_n = 1$ is a special value indicating the lowest delay is being imposed (see clause 7.3.2.2 of [ITU-T G.997.1]).
$error\_max_n$	10^{-3}, 10^{-5}, 10^{-7}
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	0, 1 (Boolean)
IMA_flag	0 and 1
$CIpolicy_n$	0, 1

NOTE – Configuration of minimum net data rates such that the sum of all minimum net data rates over all bearer channels result in values higher than given in Table K.3a for downstream and Table K.3b for upstream, may lead to configuration errors by the ATU-C and/or initialization failures with "configuration error" failure caused by the ATU-R.

K.2.7.2 Mandatory configurations

If implementing an ATM-TC, an ATU shall support all combinations of the values of ATM-TC control parameters for ATM-TC function #0 displayed in Tables K.11 and K.12 in the downstream and upstream direction, respectively. The transmitter and receiver shall support mandatory features displayed in the tables.

Table K.11 – Mandatory downstream configuration for ATM-TC function #0

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	2
net_min_n	net_min_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s (see Note).
net_max_n	net_max_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s (see Note).
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s.
$delay\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
$error\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	0
IMA_flag	All valid values shall be supported.
$CIpolicy_n$	0
NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed.	

Table K.12 – Mandatory upstream control configuration for ATM-TC function #0

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	2
net_min_n	net_min_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
net_max_n	net_max_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
$delay\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
$error\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	0
IMA_flag	All valid values shall be supported.
$CIpolicy_n$	0
NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed.	

K.2.8 Data plane procedures

K.2.8.1 Block diagram

Figure K.7 depicts the functions within a transmit ATM-TC function that supports one unidirectional ATM-TC stream and one frame bearer. The ATM-TC stream is shown at the leftmost edge of Figure K.7. The output signal from the ATM-TC function forms a frame bearer (i.e., input to the transmit TPS-TC function), depicted at the rightmost edge of Figure K.7.

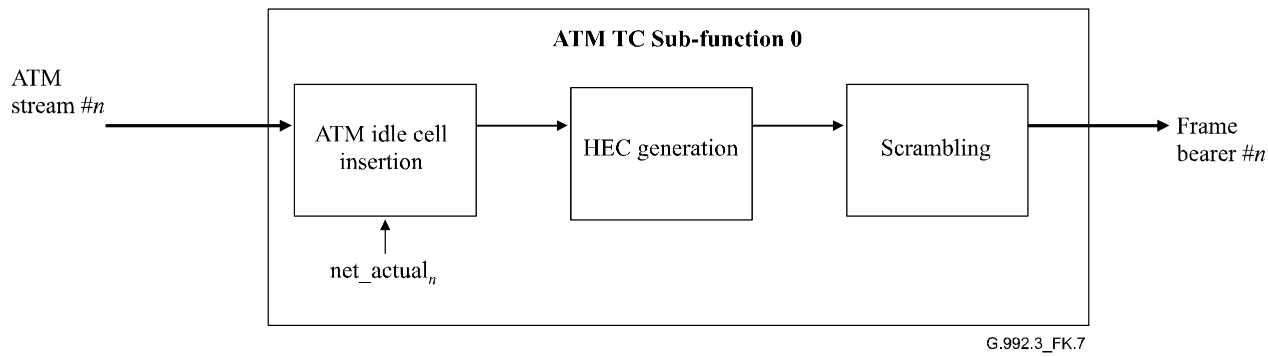


Figure K.7 – Block diagram of transmit ATM-TC function

In the ATM-TC stream and within the ATM-TC function, data octets are transmitted MSB first in accordance with [ITU-T I.361] and [ITU-T I.432.1]. All serial procedures within the ATM-TC function begin MSB first. Below the α and β interfaces of the ATU (starting with the Frame.Bearer primitives), data octets are transported LSB first. As a result, the MSB of the first octet of the first ATM-TC.Stream(n).confirm primitive will be the LSB of the first octet of the first Frame.Bearer(n).confirm primitive. The labelling of bits within the ATM-TC layer and at the frame bearer is depicted in Figure K.8.

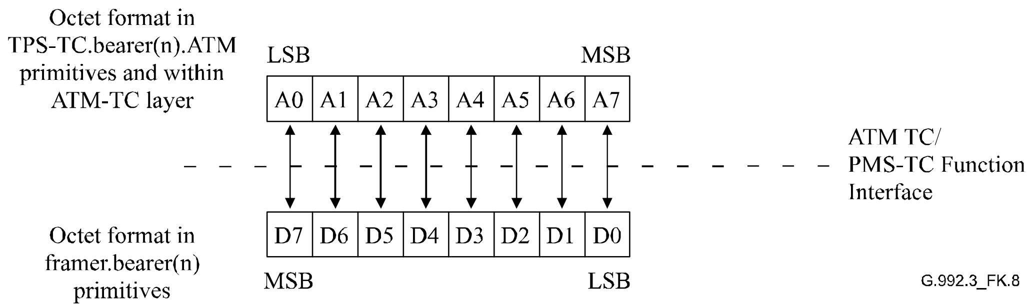


Figure K.8 – Bit mapping of the user plane transport function of the ATM-TC function

K.2.8.2 Rate matching by idle cell insertion

ATM idle cells shall be inserted by the transmit function to provide ATM cell rate decoupling. If the *IMA_flag* is not asserted, ATM idle cells shall not be delivered to higher layers functions by the receive ATM-TC functions. If the control variable *IMA_flag* is asserted, all ATM cells received and delineated shall be passed in TPS-TC.Stream(n).ATM.indicate primitive.

ATM idle cells are identified by the standardized pattern for the cell header given in [ITU-T I.432.1].

Cell rate decoupling is expected to be performed by the IMA function when the control variable *IMA_flag* is asserted. The ATM-TC function therefore inserts a minimum number of idle cells, i.e., no cells are inserted if exact rate decoupling is performed by the IMA function.

K.2.8.3 HEC octet

The transmit ATM-TC function shall generate a HEC octet as described in [ITU-T I.432.1], including the recommended modulo 2 addition (XOR) of the pattern binary 01010101_b to the HEC bits.

The HEC covers the entire cell header. The generator polynomial coefficient set used and the HEC sequence generation procedure shall be in accordance with [ITU-T I.432.1].

K.2.8.4 Cell delineation

The receiver ATM-TC function shall perform cell delineation. The cell delineation procedure permits the identification of ATM cell boundaries in the Frame.Bearer.indicate primitives. The procedure uses the HEC field in the cell header. Cell delineation shall be performed using a coding law by checking the HEC field in the cell header according to the algorithm described in [ITU-T I.432.1]. The cell delineation procedure is depicted as a state machine in Figure K.9. Each state is described in Table K.13.

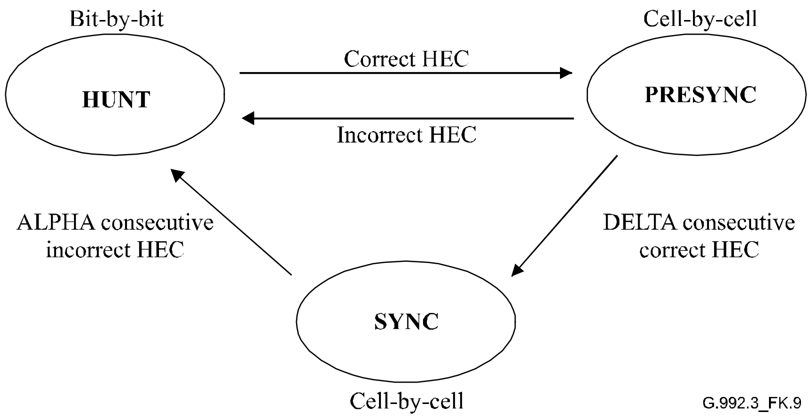


Figure K.9 – Cell delineation procedure state machine

Table K.13 – ATM cell delineation procedure states

State	Definition
HUNT	In the HUNT state, the cell delineation procedure shall be performed by checking bit-by-bit for the correct HEC. Once such an agreement is found, it is assumed that one header has been found, and the method enters the PRESYNC state. When octet boundaries are available, the cell delineation procedure may be performed octet-by-octet.
PRESYNC	In the PRESYNC state, the cell delineation procedure shall be performed by checking cell-by-cell for the correct HEC. The procedure repeats until the correct HEC has been confirmed DELTA times consecutively. If an incorrect HEC is found, the procedure returns to the HUNT state.
SYNC	In the SYNC state, the cell delineation procedure shall return to the HUNT state if an incorrect HEC is obtained ALPHA times consecutively.

No recommendation is made for the values of ALPHA and DELTA, because the choice of these values is not considered to effect interoperability. However, it should be noted that the use of the values suggested in [ITU-T I.432.1] (ALPHA = 7, DELTA = 6) may be inappropriate due to the ATU transport characteristics.

K.2.8.5 ATM cell error detection

The receiver ATM-TC function shall implement error detection over the entire cell header as defined in [ITU-T I.432.1]. The code specified in [ITU-T I.432.1] is capable of single bit error correction and multiple bit error detection. However, HEC error correction shall not be implemented by the ATU, and any HEC error shall be considered as a multiple bit error.

If the control variable *IMA_flag* is not asserted, ATM cells detected to be in error shall not be passed in a TPS-TC.Stream(*n*).ATM.indicate primitive. If the control variable *IMA_flag* is asserted, all ATM cells received and delineated shall be passed in TPS-TC.Stream(*n*).ATM.indicate primitive.

K.2.8.6 Scrambler

The transmit ATM-TC function shall scramble the cell payload field to improve the security and robustness of the HEC cell delineation mechanism. The self-synchronizing scrambler uses the polynomial $X^{43} + 1$. The scrambler procedures defined in [ITU-T I.432.1] shall be implemented.

K.2.9 Management plane procedures

K.2.9.1 Surveillance primitives

The ATM-TC function surveillance primitives are ATM path-related. Both anomalies and defects are defined for each receiver ATM-TC function.

Three near-end anomalies are defined as follows:

- No cell delineation (ncd-*n*) anomaly: An ncd-*n* anomaly occurs immediately after receiving the first Frame.Bearer(*n*).indicate primitive. The anomaly terminates when the cell delineation process of the receive ATM-TC function #*n* transitions to the SYNC state. Once cell delineation is acquired, subsequent losses of cell delineation shall be considered as ocd-*n* anomalies.
- Out of cell delineation (ocd-*n*) anomaly: An ocd-*n* anomaly occurs when the cell delineation process of receive ATM-TC sub-function #*n* transitions from the SYNC state to the HUNT state. An ocd-*n* anomaly terminates when the cell delineation process transitions from PRESYNC state to SYNC state or when the lcd-*n* defect is asserted.
- Header error check (hec-*n*) anomaly: A hec-*n* anomaly occurs each time the ATM cell header process of receiver ATM-TC function #*n* detects an error.

These near-end anomalies are counted locally per [ITU-T G.997.1]. The values of the counter may be read or reset via local commands not defined in this Recommendation.

Three far-end anomalies are defined as follows:

- Far-end no cell delineation (fncd-*n*) anomaly: An fncd-*n* anomaly is a ncd-*n* anomaly detected at the far end.
- Far-end out of cell delineation (focd-*n*) anomaly: An focd-*n* anomaly is an ocd-*n* anomaly detected at the far end.
- Far-end header error check (fhec-*n*) anomaly: An fhec-*n* anomaly is an hec-*n* anomaly detected at the far end.

These far-end anomalies are not individually observable. The count of these far-end anomalies may be read and reset via overhead commands defined in clause 9.4.1.6. The format of the counters shall be as described in clause K.2.9.3.3.

One near-end defect is defined as follows:

- Loss of cell delineation (lcd-*n*) defect: An lcd-*n* defect occurs when at least one ocd-*n* anomaly is present in each of four consecutive overhead channel periods and no SEF defect is present. An lcd-*n* defect terminates when no ocd-*n* anomaly is present in four consecutive overhead channel periods.

This near-end defect is processed locally per [ITU-T G.997.1].

One far-end defect is defined as follows:

- Far-end loss of cell delineation (flcd-*n*) defect: An flcd-*n* defect is a lcd-*n* defect detected at the far end. This defect shall be carried in the bit-oriented portion of the overhead, structured as defined in clause 7.8.2.1.

This far-end defect is directly observed through an indicator bit as described in clause K.2.9.2.

K.2.9.2 Indicator bits

The (logical OR of the) near-end defect lcd-*n* and the near-end anomalies ncd-*n* and ocd-*n* shall be mapped onto the TPS-TC indicator TIB#0 and transported as described in clause 7.8.2.2. The bit shall be encoded as a 1 when inactive for use in clause 7.8.2.2.

The TIB#1 shall be set to a 1 for use in clause 7.8.2.2.

NOTE – The TIB#0 corresponds to the NCD indicator bit defined in [b-ITU-T G.992.1].

K.2.9.3 Overhead command formats

K.2.9.3.1 Inventory command

The octets returned for the overhead inventory command for TPS-TC capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-15 based upon the ATM-TC capabilities octets transmitted during the most recent initialization procedure. The capabilities octets are defined in Table K.15.

K.2.9.3.2 Control value read command

The octets returned for the overhead control parameter read command for TPS-TC control parameters capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-17 based upon the control parameters currently in use by the ATM-TC receiver function. The control parameter shall be transmitted in the format displayed in Table K.16.

K.2.9.3.3 Management counter read command

The TPS-TC management counters in the response to the overhead management counter read command corresponding to the ATM-TC function shall be provided as defined in [ITU-T G.997.1]. The block of counter values corresponding to the ATM-TC function returned in the message depicted in Table 9-20 shall be as depicted in Table K.14.

Table K.14 – ATU management counter values

Octets	Element name
	ATM-TC
4	Counter of the HEC anomalies
4	Counter of total cells passed through HEC function
4	Counter of total cells passed to the upper layer ATM function
4	Counter of total bit errors detected in ATM idle cells payload

K.2.10 Initialization procedure

ATM-TC functions shall be configured fully prior to the initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD functions, or be configured after initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD function in a manner that is outside the scope of this Recommendation. The configuration prior to initialization is performed via an ITU-T G.994.1 MS message. Information may be exchanged prior to the mode select to ascertain capabilities using an ITU-T G.994.1 CL or CLR message.

The CL and CLR messages shall describe capabilities of the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively, and can be constrained by application requirements, service requirements, implementation choices, etc. Therefore, the capabilities indicated in the CL and CLR messages are the enabled capabilities, which may be equal to or a subset of the set of capabilities supported by the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively. In any case, the MS message (and all subsequent initialization messages) shall account for all capability restrictions indicated in the CL and CLR messages.

K.2.10.1 ITU-T G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about each upstream and downstream ATM-TC function supported within an ATU shall be as defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the CL and CLR messages. This information may be optionally requested and reported via ITU-T G.994.1 at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once prior to enabling an ATM-TC function between ATU-C and ATU-R, but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- maximum net data rate that can be supported by the ATM-TC function;
- maximum latency that might be acceptable for the ATM-TC function. The method for setting this value is out of the scope of this Recommendation.

This information for an ATM-TC function is represented using a block of ITU-T G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.15.

Table K.15 – Format for an ATM-TC CL and CLR message

Spar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) octets
Downstream ATM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream ATM-TC function #0, if present.
Downstream ATM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream ATM-TC function #1, if present.
Downstream ATM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream ATM-TC function #2, if present.
Downstream ATM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream ATM-TC function #3, if present.
Upstream ATM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream ATM-TC function #0, if present.
Upstream ATM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream ATM-TC function #1, if present.
Upstream ATM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream ATM-TC function #2, if present.
Upstream ATM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream ATM-TC function #3, if present.
	Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets
	A parameter block of 10 octets containing: • the maximum supported value of *net_max*; • the maximum supported value of *net_min*; • the maximum supported value of *net_reserve*; • the maximum supported value of *delay_max*; • the maximum supported value of *error_max*; • the minimum impulse noise protection *INP_min*; • the value of *INP_no_erasure_not_required*; • the support of *IMA_flag*; and • the *CIpolicy* bitmap (see Note 2 in Table K.6). The format and usage of the octets is as described in Table K.6. The *IMA_flag* is a single bit indication, set to 1 if IMA is supported and set to 0 if IMA is not supported or disabled.

K.2.10.2 ITU-T G.994.1 mode select message

Each of the control parameters for each upstream and downstream ATM-TC function shall be as defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the MS message. This information for each enabled ATM-TC function shall be selected using an MS message prior to the PMD and TPS-TC initialization.

The configuration for an ATM-TC function is represented using a block of ITU-T G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.16.

Table K.16 – Format for an ATM-TC MS message

Spar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) octets
Downstream ATM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream ATM-TC function #0, if present.
Downstream ATM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream ATM-TC function #1, if present.
Downstream ATM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream ATM-TC function #2, if present.
Downstream ATM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream ATM-TC function #3, if present.
Upstream ATM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream ATM-TC function #0, if present.
Upstream ATM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream ATM-TC function #1, if present.
Upstream ATM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream ATM-TC function #2, if present.
Upstream ATM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream ATM-TC function #3, if present.
	Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets
	A parameter block of 10 octets containing: • the value of *net_max*; • the value of *net_min*; • the value of *net_reserve*; • the value of *delay_max*; • the value of *error_max*; • the minimum impulse noise protection *INP_min*; • the value of *INP_no_erasure_not_required*; • the value of the *IMA_flag*; and • the *CIpolicy* bitmap (see Note 2 in Table K.7). The format and usage of the octets is as described in Table K.15 and Table K.7.

K.2.11 On-line reconfiguration

The on-line reconfiguration of the ATM-TC generally requires the ATM-TC to communicate peer-to-peer through means outside the scope of this Recommendation. There is no specified mechanism to modify the value of the control parameters of the ATM-TC function. The value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated from the underlying PMS-TC latency path function.

K.2.11.1 Changes to an existing stream

Reconfiguration of an existing ATM-TC function occurs only at boundaries between octets. The transmit ATM-TC function uses the new values of the control parameters *net_act* and *delay_act* to generate octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive. The receive

ATM-TC function procedures process octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive using the new values of the control parameters.

K.2.12 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the ATM-TC function are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

K.2.12.1 L0 link state operation

The ATM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in clauses K.2.8 and K.2.9, as well as according to those in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, while the link is in power management state L0. All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in clause K.2.7, as well as according to those provided in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, shall apply.

K.2.12.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

During a transition from link state L0 to state L2, the value of control parameters are not modified. However, the value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, the coordinated entry into the L2 link state shall be made as described in clause K.2.11.1.

K.2.12.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific ATM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

K.2.12.2 L2 link state operation

The ATM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in clauses K.2.8 and K.2.9, as well as according to those in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, while the link is in power management state L2. All control parameter definitions provided in clause K.2.7, as well as according to those provided in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, shall apply. However, the operating limits imposed by the control parameters *net_min*, *net_reserve* and *delay_max* shall not apply while in the L2 link state.

During the link state L2, the ATU-C ATM-TC shall monitor its interface for the arrival of primitives that indicate that data rates larger than the reduced data rates must be transported to the ATU-R. When this condition is detected, the ATU-C shall use the procedure described in clause 9.5.3.4 to return to the link state L0.

K.2.12.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

Entry into the L0 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. The values of the control parameters are not modified upon return to the L2 link state; however, during a transition from link state L2 to state L0, the values of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, the coordinated entry into the L0 link state shall be made as described in clause K.2.11.1.

K.2.12.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

Transitions to link state L3 shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific ATM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

K.2.12.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, no specific procedures are specified for the ATM-TC function.

K.2.12.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in clause K.2.10 as well as in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex.

K.3 Packet transmission convergence function (PTM-TC)

K.3.1 Scope

The PTM-TC function provides procedures for the transport of one unidirectional packet stream in either the upstream or downstream direction. Packet boundaries, octet boundaries and the position of most significant bits are explicitly maintained across the transport for the PTM-TC stream. The PTM-TC stream is presented asynchronously across the T-R or V-C reference point with respect to the PMD bit clocks.

The PTM-TC function is defined in terms of the PTM-TC defined in clause H.1 of [ITU-T G.993.1]. Referring to the reference model of that annex, the PTM-TC of VDSL is defined connecting above the PMS-TC function to either a fast or slow channel through the a/b interface. This same function is used for clause K.3 and is defined to connect to a single PMS-TC latency path function.

K.3.2 References

References applicable to this annex are included in clause 2.

K.3.3 Definitions

This clause is intentionally blank because there are no PTM-TC-specific definitions.

K.3.4 Abbreviations

Abbreviations applicable to this annex are included in clause 4.

K.3.5 Transport capabilities

The net data rate for each PTM-TC function in both upstream and downstream directions may be set independently of each other, and to any eligible value that is less than or equal to the assigned maximum net data rate in the corresponding direction. The maximum net data rate for each PTM-TC function in both upstream and downstream directions is set during the system configuration.

A PTM-TC function may be mapped to either enabled bearer channel, which in turn may or may not be interleaved.

The PTM-TC shall provide full transparent data transfer between the γ_C and γ_R interfaces (except non-correctable errors in the PMD sublayer due to the noise in the loop). The PTM-TC shall provide packet integrity over the bearer channel that it is mapped to.

The PTM-TC transport capabilities are configured by control parameters described in clause K.3.7. The control parameters provide for the application-appropriate data rates and characteristics of the PTM-TC stream. The values of all control parameters are set during initialization or reconfiguration of the ATU.

The transmit PTM-TC function accepts input signals from the data plane within the ATU. As a data plane element, the transmit PTM-TC function accepts one PTM-TC stream from a PTM entity across the V-C or T-R reference points. The stream is associated with one, and only one, PTM-TC function.

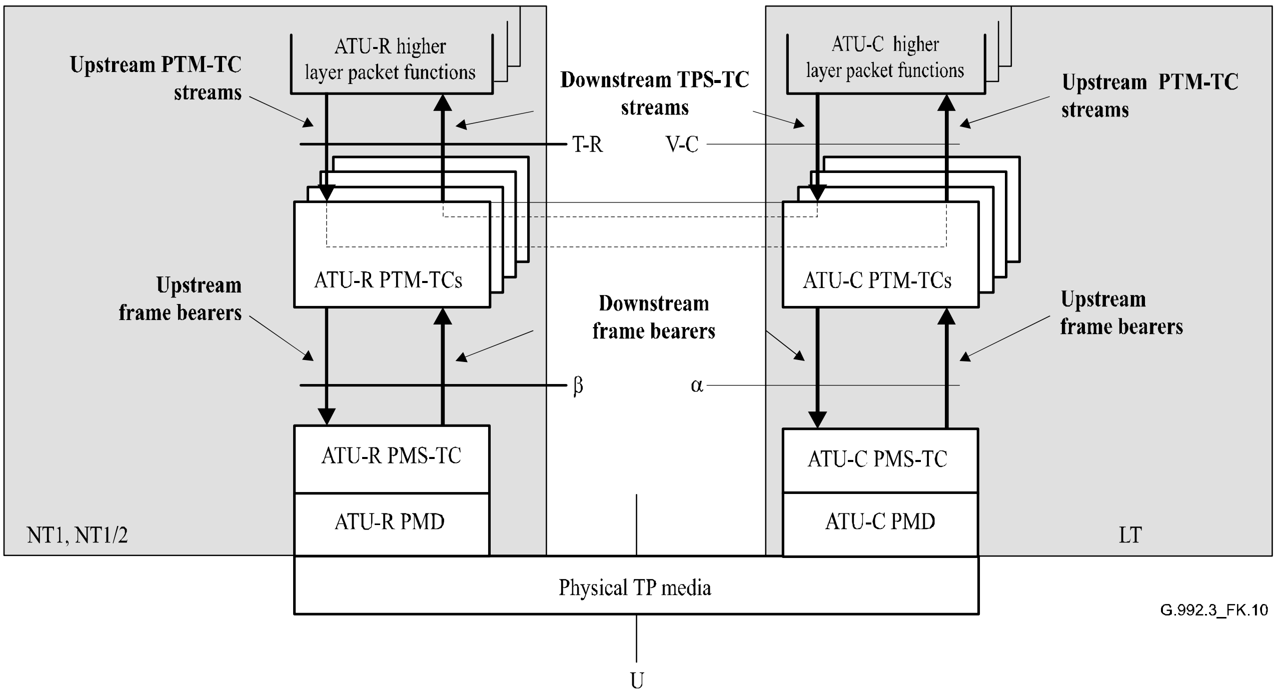


Figure K.10 – PTM-TC transport capabilities within the user plane

K.3.6 Interface primitives

Each ATU-C PTM-TC function has many interface signals as described in clause H.3 of [ITU-T G.993.1]. The interface signals between the PTM-TC and PMS-TC conform to those required by the TPS-TC function in the main body of this Recommendation. To map the signal interfaces required in Annex H of [ITU-T G.993.1] to the signal primitives required in the TPS-TC function of this Recommendation, the procedure in Table K.17 shall be used. The optional bit clock signals defined in Annex H of [ITU-T G.993.1] are not used.

Table K.17 – Signalling primitives mapping from ITU-T G.993.1 PTM-TC to ITU-T G.992.3 PTM-TC functions

Signal	Primitive	Description
Frame.Bearer(n)	.request	Whenever this .request primitive is asserted by the ATU PMS-TC function, the PTM-TC primitive O_synct signal shall be considered asserted. Primitives are labelled n, where n corresponds to the TPS-TC function ID (e.g., n = 0 for TPS-TC #0).
	.confirm	Whenever the PTM-TC signal O_synct is asserted, the octet data contained on the PTM-TC Tx signal shall be passed to the ATU PMS-TC in this .confirm primitive.
	.indicate	Whenever this .indicate primitive is asserted by the ATU PMS-TC function, the octet data contained within it shall be placed onto the PTM-TC signal Rx and the PTM-TC O_syncr signal is asserted.

K.3.7 Control parameters

The configuration of the PTM-TC function is controlled by a set of control parameters displayed in Table K.18 in addition to those specified in the main body of this Recommendation. The values of these control parameters are set and communicated during initialization or reconfiguration of an ATU pair. All the values are determined by application requirements, which means that they are beyond the scope of this Recommendation.

Table K.18 – PTM-TC parameters

Parameter	Definition
Minimum net data rate net_min_n	The minimum net data rate supported by the PTM-TC stream #*n*. The ATU shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to provide net_min_n data rate.
Maximum net data rate net_max_n	The maximum net data rate supported by PTM-TC stream #*n*. During initialization and reconfiguration procedures, the net data rate shall not exceed this value.
Minimum reserved data rate $net\_reserve_n$	The minimum reserved data rate supported by PTM-TC stream #*n* that shall always be available upon request by an appropriate reconfiguration procedure. The value of $net\_reserve_n$ shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_reserve_n \leq net\_max_n$.
Maximum PMS-TC latency $delay\_max_n$	The PTM-TC stream #*n* shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter $delay_p$ is no larger than this control parameter $delay\_max_n$.
Maximum PMS-TC BER $error\_max_n$	The PTM-TC stream #*n* shall be transported with bit error ratio not to exceed $error\_max_n$, referenced to the output of the PMS-TC function in the receiver. The modem shall implement appropriate initialization and reconfiguration procedures to assure this value.
Minimum PMS-TC impulse noise protection INP_min_n	The PTM-TC stream #*n* shall be transported with underlying PMS-TC functions configured such that the derived parameter INP_p is not lower than this control parameter INP_min_n.
$INP\_no\_erasure\_not\_required_n$	When set to ZERO for at least one bearer channel transported in latency path #*p*, the receiver shall set the derived parameter $INP_p = INP\_no\_erasure_p$. When set to ONE for all bearer channels transported in latency path #*p*, the receiver is not required to set $INP_p = INP\_no\_erasure_p$. NOTE – For backwards compatibility reasons, this bit is named and coded opposite from [b-ITU-T G.993.2].
Channel initialization policy $CIpolicy_n$	This parameter controls the policy to be applied to bearer channel #*n* in setting the transceiver configuration parameters during initialization (see clause 7.10.3).

If the values of net_min_n, net_max_n and $net\_reserve_n$ are set to the same value, then the PTM-TC stream is designated as a fixed data rate PTM-TC stream (i.e., *RA-MODE* = MANUAL, see Table 8-6). If $net\_min_n = net\_reserve_n$ and $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n$, then the PTM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate PTM-TC stream. If the value of $net\_min_n \neq net\_max_n \neq net\_reserve_{max}$, then the PTM-TC stream is designated as a flexible data rate PTM-TC stream with reserved data rate allocation.

During initialization and reconfiguration procedures, the actual net data rate net_act_n for stream #*n* shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $net\_act_{p,n}$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and shall be constrained such that $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$. However, in case $net\_min_n = net\_max_n$, the net_act_n may exceed net_max_n by up to 8 kbit/s, to allow for the

PMS-TC net data rate granularity (see Table 7-7). If $net\_min_n < net\_max_n$, the net_max_n shall be set at least 8 kbit/s above net_min_n, to allow for the PMS-TC net data rate granularity to meet the $net\_min_n \leq net\_act_n \leq net\_max_n$ requirement. The latency $delay\_act_n$ of transport of stream #n shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter $delay_p$ of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function and constrained such that $delay\_act_n \leq delay\_max_n$. The values net_act_n and $delay\_act_n$ are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

The impulse noise protection INP_act_n of transport of stream #n shall always be set to the value of the derived parameter INP_p of the underlying PMS-TC path function and constrained such that $INP\_act_n \geq INP\_min_n$ according to the definition of INP_p (see Table 7-7), regardless of any vendor-discretionary techniques including, for example, the use of erasure decoding. The values net_act_n, $delay\_act_n$ and INP_act_n are not control parameters; these values are the result of specific initialization and reconfiguration procedures.

K.3.7.1 Valid configurations

The configurations listed in Table K.19 are valid for the PTM-TC function.

Table K.19 – Valid configuration for PTM-TC function

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	3
net_min_n	net_min_n may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
net_max_n	net_max_n may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ may be supported for all valid framing configurations.
$delay\_max_n$	$0 < delay\_max_n \leq$ the largest value of $delay_p$ (see clause 7.6.1) for supported valid framing configurations. $delay\_max_n = 0$ is a special value indicating no delay bound is being imposed. $delay\_max_n = 1$ is a special value indicating the lowest delay is being imposed (see clause 7.3.2.2 of [ITU-T G.997.1]).
$error\_max_n$	10^{-3}, 10^{-5}, 10^{-7}
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16
INP_no_erasure_not_required	0, 1 (Boolean)
$CIpolicy_n$	0, 1

NOTE – Configuration of minimum net data rates such that the sum of all minimum net data rates over all bearer channels result in values higher than given in Table K.3a for downstream and Table K.3b for upstream, may lead to configuration errors by the ATU-C and/or initialization failures with "configuration error" failure caused by the ATU-R.

K.3.7.2 Mandatory configurations

If implementing a PTM-TC function, an ATU shall support all combinations of the values of PTM-TC control parameters for PTM-TC function #0 displayed in Tables K.20 and K.21 in the downstream and upstream direction, respectively. The transmitter and receiver shall support mandatory features displayed in the tables.

Table K.20 – Mandatory downstream configuration for PTM-TC function #0

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	3
net_min_n	net_min_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s (see Note).
net_max_n	net_max_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s (see Note).
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 8 Mbit/s.
$delay\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
$error\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2
INP_no_erasure_not_required	0
$CIpolicy_n$	0
NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed.	

Table K.21 – Mandatory upstream control configuration for PTM-TC function #0

Parameter	Capability
$type_n$	3
net_min_n	net_min_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
net_max_n	net_max_n shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
$net\_reserve_n$	$net\_reserve_n$ shall be supported for all valid framing configurations up to and equal to 800 kbit/s (see Note).
$delay\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
$error\_max_n$	All valid values shall be supported.
INP_min_n	0, 1/2, 1, 2
INP_no_erasure_not_required	0
$CIpolicy_n$	0
NOTE – Support for values above the required net data rate is optional and allowed.	

K.3.8 Data plane procedures

K.3.8.1 PTM-TC/PMS-TC function interface

In the PTM-TC stream, and within the PTM-TC function, data octets are transmitted MSB first. Below the α and β interfaces of the ATU (starting with the Frame.Bearer primitives), data octets are transported LSB first. As a result, the MSB of the first octet of the first PTM-TC.Stream(n).confirm primitive will be the LSB of the first octet of the first Frame.Bearer(n).confirm primitive. The labelling of bits within the PTM-TC layer and at the frame bearer is depicted in Figure K.10a.

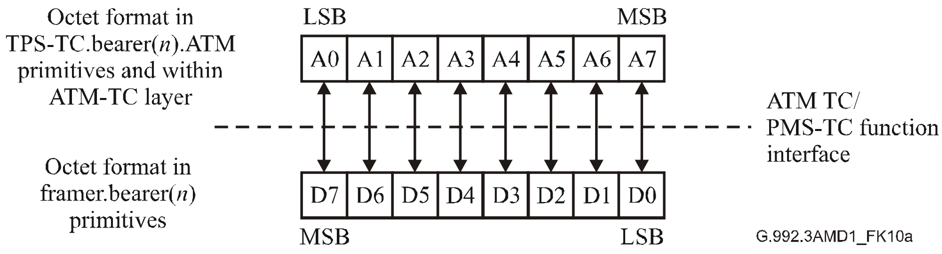


Figure K.10a – Bit mapping of the user plane transport function of the PTM-TC function

K.3.8.2 Functionality

Two optional packet encapsulation methods are defined:

- HDLC encapsulation, as defined in clause H.4 of [ITU-T G.993.1];
- 64/65-octet encapsulation, as defined in Annex N.

The ATU may indicate, during initialization, support for one or both packet encapsulation methods. Which packet encapsulation method is used, is selected during initialization (ITU-T G.994.1 phase).

The functionality of the PTM-TC shall include encapsulation, packet error monitoring, data rate decoupling and frame delineation. For frame error monitoring, the transmitting PTM-TC shall insert the 16-bit CRC as defined for the selected packet encapsulation method.

K.3.9 Management plane procedures

K.3.9.1 Surveillance primitives

K.3.9.1.1 Surveillance primitives for HDLC encapsulation

The PTM-TC function surveillance primitives are PTM data path related.

Three near-end anomalies are defined:

- TC_out_of_sync (oos-*n*) anomaly: An oos-*n* anomaly occurs when the TC_synchronization signal is deasserted. An oos-*n* anomaly terminates when the TC_synchronization signal is asserted. The TC_synchronization signal is vendor discretionary.
- TC_CRC_error (crc-*n*) anomaly: A crc-*n* anomaly occurs when a frame is received with the TC_CRC_error signal asserted. The TC_CRC_error signal is asserted for packets received with incorrect CRC, and is deasserted otherwise.
- TC_coding_violation (cv-*n*) anomaly: A cv-*n* anomaly occurs when an octet is received with the TC_coding_error signal asserted. The TC_coding_error signal is vendor discretionary.

One far-end anomaly is defined:

- TC_out_of_sync (oos-*f*) anomaly: An oos-*f* anomaly occurs when the remote_TC_out_of_sync signal is asserted. An oos-*f* anomaly terminates when the remote_TC_out_of_sync signal is deasserted. The remote_TC_out_of_sync signal is vendor discretionary.

  NOTE 1 – There is no out-of-sync indication transmitted from the far-end within this Recommendation. Hence, the far-end TC_out_of_sync (oos-*f*) anomaly does not occur.

The TC_CRC_error and TC_coding_violation anomalies shall be counted locally by the PTM-TC management entity. The values of the counter may be read or reset by the management function (residing above the γ reference point) via local commands not defined in this Recommendation.

Two near-end counters are defined:

- TC_CRC_error_counter-*n*: This is a 16-bit counter of crc-*n* anomalies. The counter shall be reset to all zeroes when read by the management function or upon execution of a PTM-TC reset. The counter shall be held at all ones in the case of overflow.
- TC_coding_violation_counter-*n*: This is a 32-bit counter of cv-*n* anomalies. The counter shall be reset to all zeroes when read by the management function or upon execution of a PTM-TC reset. The counter shall be held at all ones in the case of overflow.

NOTE 2 – Related current 15-minute and current 1-day performance monitoring counters to be maintained by the management function are defined in [ITU-T G.997.1].

NOTE 3 – No far-end counters are defined. It is assumed that each higher layer protocol running over this PTM-TC will provide means (outside the scope of this Recommendation) to retrieve far-end PTM-TC surveillance primitives from the far-end.

K.3.9.1.2 Surveillance primitives for 64/65-octet encapsulation

See clause N.4.

K.3.9.2 Indicator bits

The indicator bits TIB#0 and TIB#1 shall be set to a 1 for use in clause 7.8.2.2.

K.3.9.3 Overhead command formats

K.3.9.3.1 Inventory command

The octets returned for the overhead inventory command for TPS-TC capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-15 based upon the PTM-TC capabilities octets transmitted during the most recent initialization procedure. The capabilities octets are defined in Table K.22.

K.3.9.3.2 Control value read command

The octets returned for the overhead control parameter read command for TPS-TC control parameters capabilities shall be inserted into the response in Table 9-17 based upon the control parameters currently in use by the PTM-TC receiver function. The control parameter shall be transmitted in the format displayed in Table K.23.

K.3.9.3.3 Management counter read command

The TPS-TC octets in the response to the overhead management counter read command corresponding to the PTM-TC function are under study. The block of counter values corresponding to the PTM-TC function returned in the message depicted in Table 9-20 shall have zero length.

K.3.10 Initialization procedure

PTM-TC functions shall be configured fully prior to the initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD functions or be configured after initialization of the PMS-TC and PMD function in a manner that is outside the scope of this Recommendation. The configuration prior to initialization is performed via an ITU-T G.994.1 MS message. Information may be exchanged prior to the mode select to ascertain capabilities using an ITU-T G.994.1 CL or CLR message.

The CL and CLR messages shall describe capabilities of the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively, and can be constrained by application requirements, service requirements, implementation choices, etc. Therefore, the capabilities indicated in the CL and CLR messages are the enabled capabilities, which may be equal to or a subset of the set of capabilities supported by the ATU-C and ATU-R, respectively. In any case, the MS message (and all subsequent initialization messages) shall account for all capability restrictions indicated in the CL and CLR messages.

K.3.10.1 ITU-T G.994.1 capabilities list message

The following information about each upstream and downstream PTM-TC function supported within an ATU shall be as defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the CL and CLR messages. This information may be optionally requested and reported via ITU-T G.994.1 at the start of a session. However, the information shall be exchanged at least once prior to enabling a PTM-TC function between the ATU-C and ATU-R, but not necessarily at the start of each session. The information exchanged includes:

- maximum net data rate that can be supported by the PTM-TC function;
- maximum latency, maximum bit error ratio (BER) and minimum INP that might be acceptable for the PTM-TC function. The method for setting this value is out of the scope of this Recommendation.

This information for a PTM-TC function shall be represented using a block of ITU-T G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.22.

Table K.22 – Format for a PTM-TC CL and CLR message

Spar(2) bit	**Definition of related Npar(3) octets**
Downstream PTM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream PTM-TC function #0, if present.
Downstream PTM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream PTM-TC function #1, if present.
Downstream PTM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream PTM-TC function #2, if present.
Downstream PTM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the downstream PTM-TC function #3, if present.
Upstream PTM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream PTM-TC function #0, if present.
Upstream PTM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream PTM-TC function #1, if present.
Upstream PTM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream PTM-TC function #2, if present.
Upstream PTM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the capabilities of the upstream PTM-TC function #3, if present.
	Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets
	A parameter block of 11 octets containing: • the maximum supported value of *net_max*; • the maximum supported value of *net_min*; • the maximum supported value of *net_reserve*; • the maximum supported value of *delay_max*; • the maximum supported value of *error_max*; • the minimum impulse noise protection *INP_min*; • the value of *INP_no_erasure_not_required*; • the encapsulation type (see clause K.3.8); and • the *CIpolicy* bitmap (see Note 2 in Table K.6). The format and usage of the octets is as described in Table K.6 and K.22a.

The format for the octet indicating the supported encapsulation types is shown in Table K.22a. If this octet is not included in the CL or CLR message, it shall be assumed that HDLC encapsulation is supported and that 64/65-octet encapsulation is not supported (implicit indication).

Table K.22a – Indication of supported encapsulation types

Bits 8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	PTM TPS-TC #n NPar(3)s – Octet 10
x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	HDLC encapsulation
x	x	x	x	x	x	1	x	Reserved by ITU-T
x	x	x	x	x	1	x	x	Reserved by ITU-T
x	x	x	x	1	x	x	x	64/65-octet encapsulation with short packets (clause N.3.1.3)
x	x	x	1	x	x	x	x	64/65-octet encapsulation with preemption (clause N.3.1.2)
x	x	1	x	x	x	x	x	64/65-octet encapsulation supported (clause N.3.1.1)
NOTE – Bit 4 and/or bit 5 may only be set if bit 6 is set.								

K.3.10.2 ITU-T G.994.1 mode select message

Each of the control parameters for each upstream and downstream PTM-TC function shall be as defined in [ITU-T G.994.1] as part of the MS message. This information for each enabled PTM-TC function shall be selected using a MS message prior to the PMD and TPS-TC initialization.

The configuration for a PTM-TC function shall be represented using a block of ITU-T G.994.1 information as shown in Table K.23.

Table K.23 – Format for an PTM-TC MS message

Spar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) octets
Downstream PTM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream PTM-TC function #0, if present.
Downstream PTM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream PTM-TC function #1, if present.
Downstream PTM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream PTM-TC function #2, if present.
Downstream PTM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the downstream PTM-TC function #3, if present.
Upstream PTM TPS-TC #0	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream PTM-TC function #0, if present.
Upstream PTM TPS-TC #1	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream PTM-TC function #1, if present.
Upstream PTM TPS-TC #2	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream PTM-TC function #2, if present.
Upstream PTM TPS-TC #3	A block of Npar(3) octets as defined below describing the configuration of the upstream PTM-TC function #3, if present.

Table K.23 – Format for an PTM-TC MS message

	Definition of the parameter block of Npar(3) octets
	A parameter block of 11 octets containing: • the value of *net_max*; • the value of *net_min*; • the value of *net_reserve*; • the value of *delay_max*; • the value of *error_max*; • the minimum impulse noise protection *INP_min*; • the value of *INP_no_erasure_not_required*; • the encapsulation type (see clause K.3.8); and • the *CIpolicy* bitmap (see Note 2 in Table K.7). The format and usage of the octets is as described in Tables K.7, K.22 and K.22a.

If the octet containing an indication of the selected encapsulation type is not included in the MS message, it shall be assumed that HDLC encapsulation is selected (implicit indication). If the octet is included in the MS message, either HDLC or 64/65-octet encapsulation shall be selected. For 64/65-octet encapsulation, use of preemption and/or short packets shall only be selected if, and only if, support is indicated in both CL and CLR messages.

K.3.11 On-line reconfiguration

The on-line reconfiguration of the PTM-TC generally requires the PTM-TC to communicate peer-to-peer through means outside the scope of this Recommendation. There is no specified mechanism to modify the value of the control parameters of the PTM-TC function. The value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated from the underlying PMS-TC latency path function.

K.3.11.1 Changes to an existing stream

Reconfiguration of an existing PTM-TC function occurs only at boundaries between octets. The transmit PTM-TC function uses the new values of the control parameters *net_act* and *delay_act* to generate octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.confirm primitive. The receive PTM-TC function procedures process octets that follow the signalling of the Frame.Synchflag.indicate primitive using the new values of the control parameters.

K.3.12 Power management mode

The procedures defined for the PTM-TC function are intended for use while the ATU link is in power management states L0 and L2.

K.3.12.1 L0 link state operation

The PTM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in clauses K.3.8 and K.3.9 as well as according to those in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, while the link is in power management state L0. All control parameter definitions and conditions provided in clause K.3.7, as well as according to those provided in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, shall apply.

K.3.12.1.1 Transition to L2 link state operation

During a transition from link state L0 to state L2, the values of control parameters are not modified. However, the value of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, the coordinated entry into the L2 link state shall be made as described in clause K.3.11.1.

K.3.12.1.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

The orderly shutdown of the ATU shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific PTM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

K.3.12.2 L2 link state operation

The PTM-TC function shall operate according to the data plane procedures defined in clauses K.3.8 and K.3.9, as well as according to those in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex while the link is in power management state L2. All control parameter definitions provided in clause K.3.7, as well as according to those provided in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, shall apply. However, the operating limits imposed by the control parameters *net_min*, *net_reserve* and *delay_max* shall not apply while in the L2 link state.

During the link state L2, the ATU-C PTM-TC shall monitor its interface for the arrival of primitives that indicate that data rates larger than the reduced data rates must be transported to the ATU-R. When this condition is detected, the ATU-C shall use the procedure described in clause 9.5.3.4 to return to the link state L0.

K.3.12.2.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

Entry into the L0 link state shall be preceded by the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. The values of the control parameters are not modified upon return to the L2 link state; however, during a transition from link state L2 to state L0, the values of *net_act* and *delay_act* are automatically updated to match those of the underlying PMS-TC latency path function. Following the successful completion of the protocol described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex, the coordinated entry into the L0 link state shall be made as described in clause K.3.11.1.

K.3.12.2.2 Transition to L3 link state operation

Transitions to link state L3 shall be as described in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex. No specific PTM-TC tear-down procedure is specified.

K.3.12.3 L3 link state operation

In the L3 link state, no specific procedures are specified for the PTM-TC function.

K.3.12.3.1 Transition to L0 link state operation

The initialization procedures of the ATU are intended to provide the transition from link state L3 to state L0. The transition shall be as described in clause K.3.10 as well as in the main body of the Recommendation referring to this annex.

Annex L

Specific requirements for a Reach Extended ADSL2 (READSL2) system operating in the frequency band above POTS

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

This annex defines those parameters of the ADSL system that have been left undefined in the main body of this Recommendation because they are unique to a Reach Extended ADSL2 service that is frequency-division duplexed with POTS.

For an ATU supporting Annex L, support of Annex A is a mandatory capability.

For an ATU supporting Annex A, support of Annex L is an optional capability.

Performance requirements shall only be defined for the mandatory non-overlapped transmit spectral masks. The optional overlapped masks should not be used in performance requirements.

L.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

The support of the downstream non-overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.3 is a mandatory capability.

The support of the downstream overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.2 is an optional capability.

L.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C control parameter settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body of this Recommendation and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table L.1. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

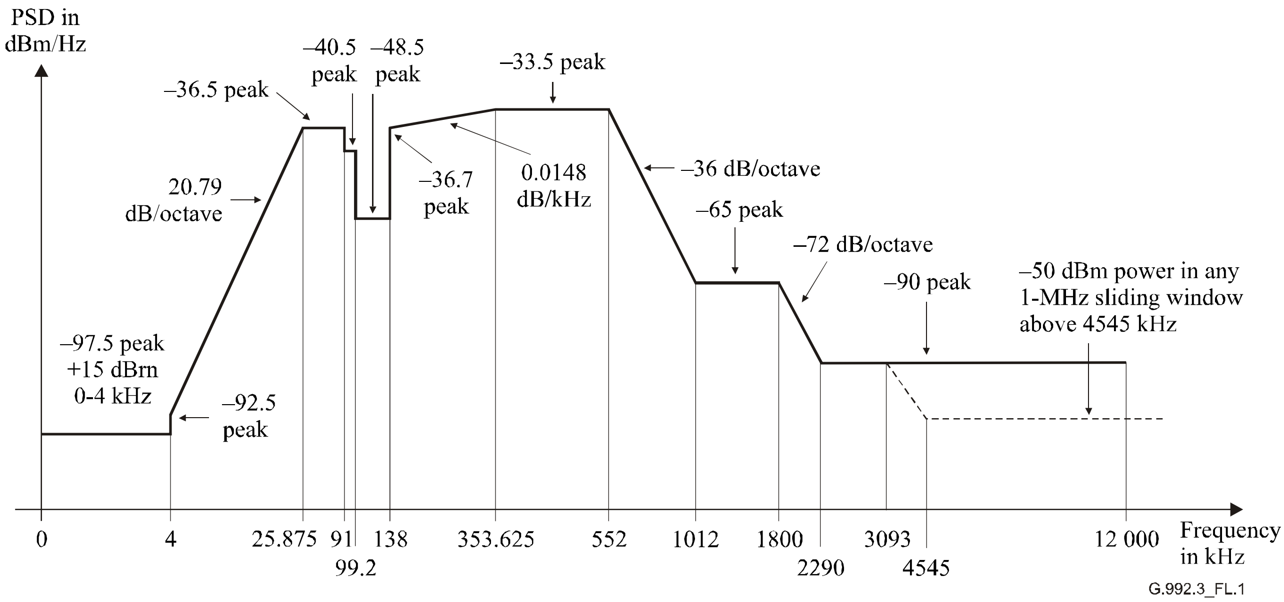
Table L.1 – ATU-C control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCds	256	
NOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPds	20.4 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

L.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation (supplements clause 8)

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 to 552 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., for Reach Extended ADSL over POTS implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure L.1 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz and includes the POTS band, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 552 kHz.



Frequency band f (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \le 4$	–97.5, with max power in the 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f \le 25.875$	$-92.5 + 20.79 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$25.875 < f \le 91$	–36.5
$91 < f \le 99.2$	–40.5
$99.2 < f \le 138$	–48.5
$138 < f \le 353.625$	$-36.7 + 0.0148 \times (f - 138)$
$353.625 < f \le 552$	–33.5
$552 < f \le 1012$	$-33.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/552)$
$1012 < f \le 1800$	–65
$1800 < f \le 2290$	$-65 - 72 \times \log_2(f/1800)$
$2290 < f \le 3093$	–90
$3093 < f \le 4545$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f \le 12\,000$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.
NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.
NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.
NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.
NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect ITU-T V.90 performance (see Figure A.1).
NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

Figure L.1 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation

L.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause A.1.2.1. For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template for overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation is defined in Table L.2 (informative).

Table L.2 – ATU-C PSD template for overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation

Frequency (kHz)	PSD (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–101
$4 < f \leq 25.875$	$-96 + 20.79 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$25.875 < f \leq 91$	–40
$91 < f \leq 99.2$	–44
$99.2 < f \leq 138$	–52
$138 < f \leq 353.625$	$-40.2 + 0.0148 \times (f - 138)$
$353.625 < f \leq 552$	–37
$552 < f \leq 1012$	$-37 - 36 \times \log_2(f/552)$
$1012 < f \leq 1800$	–68.5
$1800 < f \leq 2290$	$-68.5 - 72 \times \log_2(f/1800)$
$2290 < f \leq 3093$	–93.5
$3093 < f \leq 4545$	$-40 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$
$4545 < f \leq 12\,000$	–113.5

L.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause A.1.2.2. In addition, for overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation, the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed 19.4 dBm.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 18.9 dBm.

The power emitted by the ATU-C is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

L.1.2.3 Mandatory and optional settings of control parameters

Clause 8.5.2 applies except for the ATU-C valid control parameter settings for the transmit PMD function which are shown in Table L.3.

Table L.3 – Valid ATU-C PMD transmit function control parameters

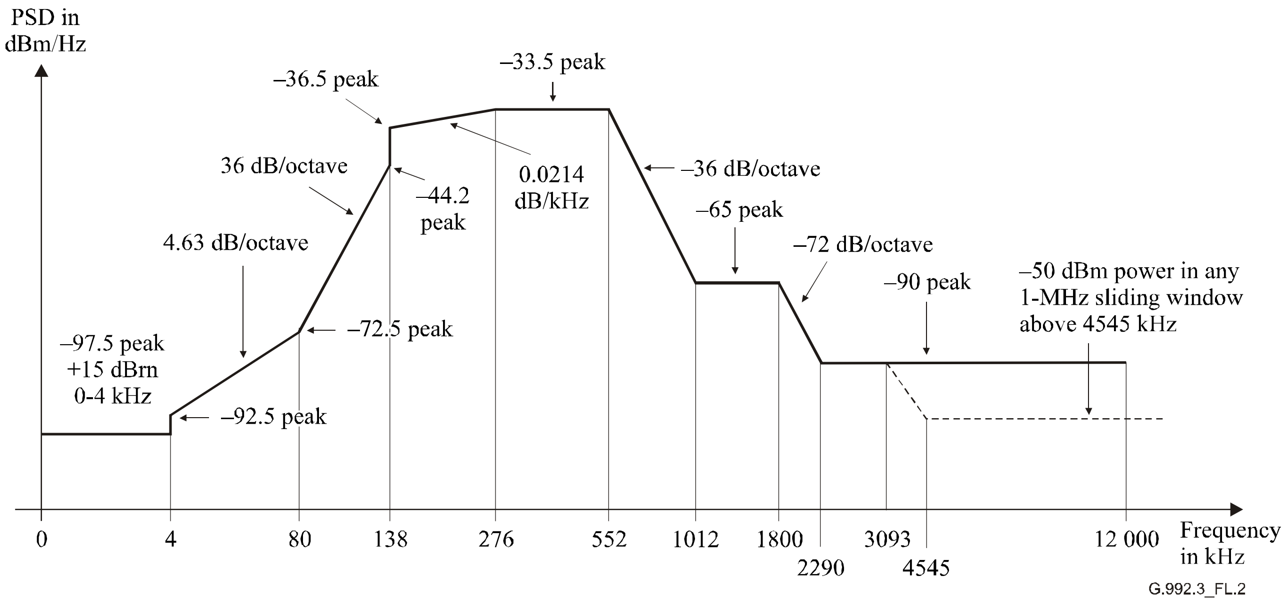
MAXNOMPSDds	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –37 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.
NOMPSDds	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –37 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.

L.1.3 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation (supplements clause 8)

Figure L.2 defines the spectral mask for the ATU-C transmitted signal, which results in reduced NEXT into the ADSL upstream band, relative to the mask in clause L.1.2. Adherence to this mask will in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers.

The passband is defined as the band from 138 to 552 kHz. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure L.2 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 138 kHz and includes the POTS band, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 552 kHz.



Frequency band *f* (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–97.5, with max power in the 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f \leq 80$	$-92.5 + 4.63 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$80 < f \leq 138$	$-72.5 + 36 \times \log_2(f/80)$
$138 < f \leq 276$	$-36.5 + 0.0214 \times (f - 138)$
$276 < f \leq 552$	–33.5
$552 < f \leq 1012$	$-33.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/552)$
$1012 < f \leq 1800$	–65
$1800 < f \leq 2290$	$-65 - 72 \times \log_2(f/1800)$
$2290 < f \leq 3093$	–90
$3093 < f \leq 4545$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f \leq 12\,000$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.
NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.
NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.
NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.
NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect ITU-T V.90 performance (see Figure A.1).
NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-C interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

Figure L.2 – ATU-C transmitter PSD mask for non-overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation

L.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause A.1.2.1. For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template for non-overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation is defined in Table L.4 (informative).

Table L.4 – ATU-C PSD template for non-overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation

Frequency (kHz)	PSD (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–101
$4 < f \leq 80$	$-96 + 4.63 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$80 < f \leq 138$	$-76 + 36 \times \log_2(f/80)$
$138 < f \leq 276$	$-40 + 0.0214 \times (f - 138)$
$276 < f \leq 552$	–37
$552 < f \leq 1012$	$-37 - 36 \times \log_2(f/552)$
$1012 < f \leq 1800$	–68.5
$1800 < f \leq 2290$	$-68.5 - 72 \times \log_2(f/1800)$
$2290 < f \leq 3093$	–93.5
$3093 < f \leq 4545$	$-40 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104)$
$4545 < f \leq 12\,000$	–113.5

L.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause A.1.2.2. In addition, for non-overlapped spectrum reach-extended operation, the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed 19.3 dBm.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 18.8 dBm.

The power emitted by the ATU-C is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

L.1.3.3 Mandatory and optional settings of control parameters

Clause 8.5.2 applies except for the ATU-C valid control parameter settings for the transmit PMD function which are shown in Table L.5.

Table L.5 – Valid ATU-C PMD transmit function control parameters

MAXNOMPSDds	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –37 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.
NOMPSDds	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –37 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.

L.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

The support of the upstream reach-extended operation with transmit spectral mask 1, according to clause L.2.2, is a mandatory capability.

The support of the upstream reach-extended operation with transmit spectral mask 2, according to clause L.2.3, is a mandatory capability.

L.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R control parameter settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body of this Recommendation and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table L.6. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

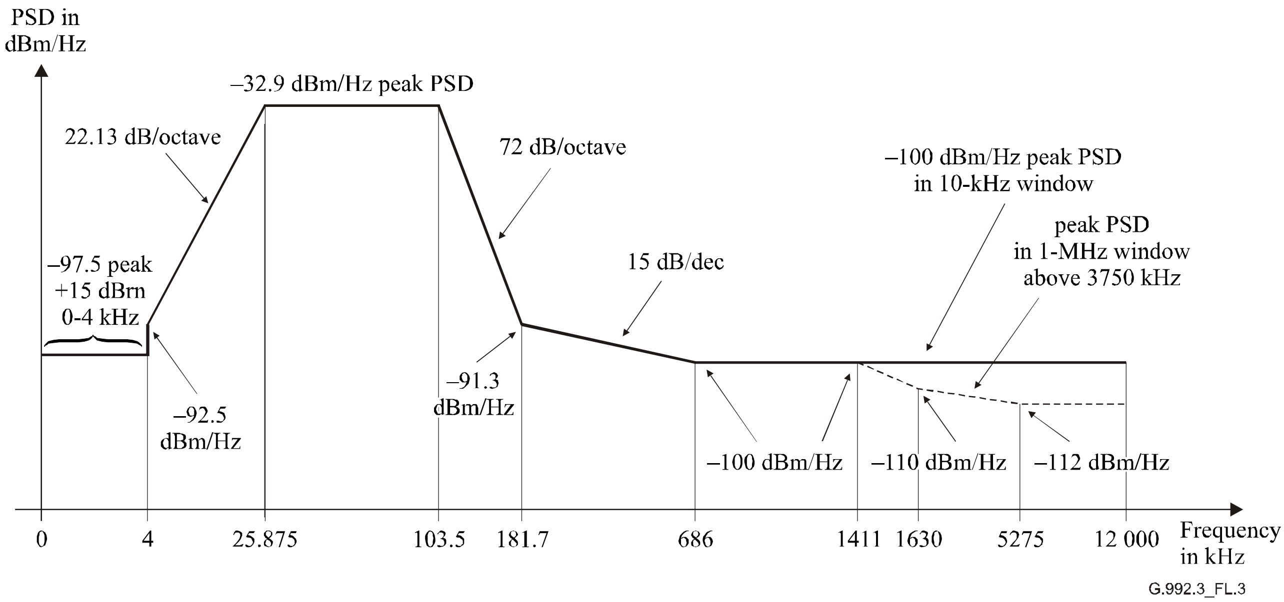
Table L.6 – ATU-R control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCus	32	
NOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPus	12.5 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

L.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask 1 for reach-extended operation (supplements clause 8)

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 to 103.5 kHz. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure L.3 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz and includes the POTS band (see also Figure L.1), the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 103.5 kHz.



Frequency band *f* (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–97.5, with max power in the 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f \leq 25.875$	$-92.5 + 22.13 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$25.875 < f \leq 103.5$	–32.9
$103.5 < f \leq 686$	$\text{Max}\{-32.9 - 72 \times \log_2(f/103.5), 10 \times \log10[0.05683 \times (f \times 10^3)^{-1.5}]\}$
$686 < f \leq 1411$	–100
$1411 < f \leq 1630$	–100 peak, with max power in the [f, f + 1 MHz] window of $(-100 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1411) + 60)$ dBm
$1630 < f \leq 5275$	–100 peak, with max power in the [f, f + 1 MHz] window of $(-110 - 1.18 \times \log_2(f/1630) + 60)$ dBm
$1630 < f \leq 12\,000$	–100 peak with max power in the [f, f + 1 MHz] window of –52 dBm

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.
NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.
NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.
NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.
NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect ITU-T V.90 performance (see Figure A.1).
NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-R interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

Figure L.3 – ATU-R transmitter PSD mask 1 for reach-extended operation

L.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause A.2.2.1. For spectrum management purposes, the ATU-R upstream PSD template for mask 1 for reach-extended operation is defined in Table L.7 (informative).

Table L.7 – ATU-R upstream PSD template for mask 1 for reach-extended operation

Frequency (kHz)	PSD (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \le 4$	–101
$4 < f \le 25.875$	$-96 + 22.13 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$25.875 < f \le 103.5$	–36.4
$103.5 < f \le 400.9$	$\text{Max}\{-36.4 - 72 \times \log_2(f/103.5),\ 10 \times \log10[0.05683 \times (f \times 10^3)^{-1.5}] - 3.5\}$
$400.9 < f \le 1411$	–100
$1411 < f \le 1630$	$-100 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1411)$
$1630 < f \le 5275$	$-110 - 1.18 \times \log_2(f/1630)$
$5275 < f \le 12\,000$	–112

L.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause A.2.2.2. In addition, for mask 1 of reach-extended operation, the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed 13.0 dBm.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 12.5 dBm.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

L.2.2.3 Mandatory and optional settings of control parameters

Clause 8.5.2 applies except for the ATU-R valid control parameter settings for the transmit PMD function which are shown in Table L.8.

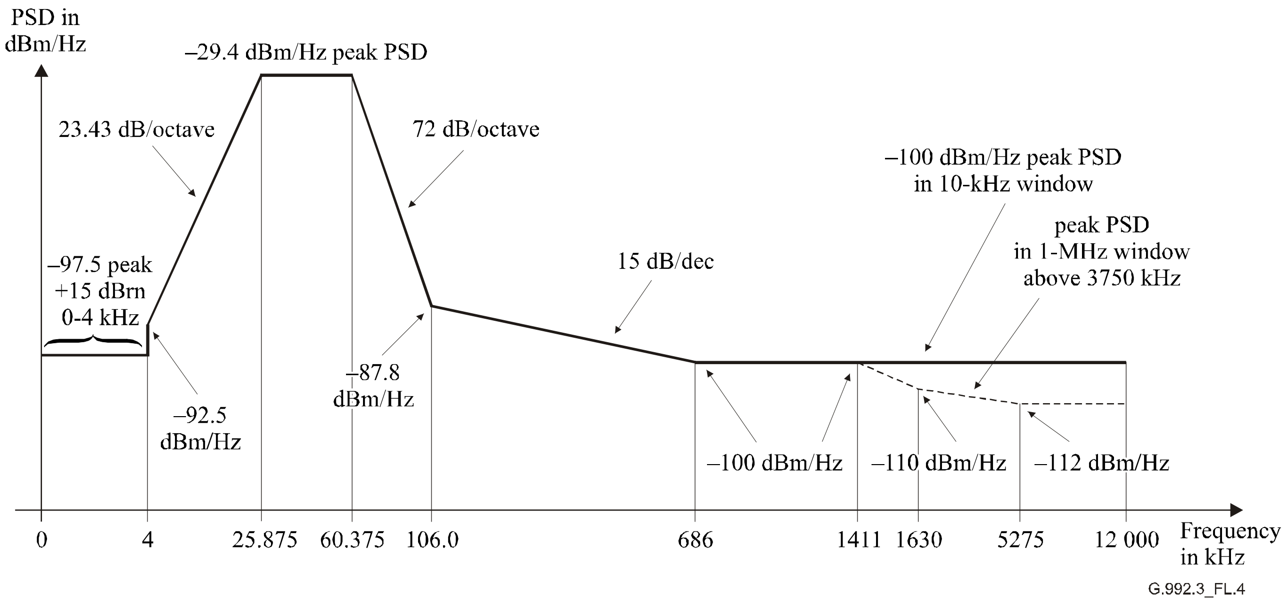
Table L.8 – Valid ATU-R PMD transmit function control parameters

MAXNOMPSDus	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –36.4 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.
NOMPSDus	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –36.4 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.

L.2.3 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask 2 for reach-extended operation (supplements clause 8)

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 to 60.375 kHz. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure L.4 defines the spectral mask for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz and includes the POTS band (see also Figure L.1), the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 60.375 kHz.



Frequency band *f* (kHz)	Equation for line (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–97.5, with max power in the 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f \leq 25.875$	$-92.5 + 23.43 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$25.875 < f \leq 60.375$	–29.4
$60.375 < f \leq 686$	$\text{Max}\{-29.4 - 72 \times \log_2(f/60.375),\ 10 \times \log10[0.05683 \times (f \times 10^3)^{-1.5}]\}$
$686 < f \leq 1411$	–100
$1411 < f \leq 1630$	–100 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-100 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1411) + 60)$ dBm
$1630 < f \leq 5275$	–100 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-110 - 1.18 \times \log_2(f/1630) + 60)$ dBm
$1630 < f \leq 12\,000$	–100 peak with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –52 dBm

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.

NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate.

NOTE 3 – Above 25.875 kHz, the peak PSD shall be measured with a 10 kHz resolution bandwidth.

NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency.

NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect ITU-T V.90 performance (see Figure A.1).

NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-R interface (see Figures 5-4 and 5-5); the signals delivered to the PSTN are specified in Annex E.

Figure L.4 – ATU-R transmitter PSD mask 2 for reach-extended operation

L.2.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause A.2.2.1. For spectrum management purposes, the ATU-R upstream PSD template for mask 2 for reach-extended operation is defined in Table L.9 (informative).

Table L.9 – ATU-R upstream PSD template for mask 2 for reach-extended operation

Frequency (kHz)	PSD (dBm/Hz)
$0 < f \leq 4$	–101
$4 < f \leq 25.875$	$-96 + 23.43 \times \log_2(f/4)$
$25.875 < f \leq 60.375$	–32.9
$60.375 < f \leq 400.9$	$\text{Max}\{-32.9 - 72 \times \log_2(f/60.375),\ 10 \times \log10[0.05683 \times (f \times 10^3)^{-1.5}] - 3.5\}$
$400.9 < f \leq 1411$	–100
$1411 < f \leq 1630$	$-100 - 48 \times \log_2(f/1411)$
$1630 < f \leq 5275$	$-110 - 1.18 \times \log_2(f/1630)$
$5275 < f \leq 12\,000$	–112

L.2.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause A.2.2.2. In addition, for mask 2 for reach-extended operation, the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed 13.0 dBm.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 12.5 dBm.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

L.2.3.3 Mandatory and optional settings of control parameters

Clause 8.5.2 applies except for the ATU-R valid control parameter settings for the transmit PMD function which are shown in Table L.10.

Table L.10 – Valid ATU-R PMD transmit function control parameters

MAXNOMPSDus	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –32.9 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.
NOMPSDus	All values from –60 dBm/Hz to –32.9 dBm/Hz in steps of 0.1 dBm/Hz.

L.3 Initialization

The valid modes of reach-extended operation are listed in Table L.11. The ATU-C and ATU-R shall support reach-extended operation according to the modes indicated as a mandatory capability. The ATU-C and ATU-R may support reach-extended operation according to the modes indicated as optional capability.

Table L.11 – Valid and mandatory/optional modes of reach-extended operation

Mode of operation	Mandatory/ optional capability	Downstream mask	Upstream mask	Notes
Mode 1	Mandatory	Clause L.1.3	Clause L.2.2	Non-overlapped spectrum downstream Wide spectrum upstream
Mode 2	Mandatory	Clause L.1.3	Clause L.2.3	Non-overlapped spectrum downstream Narrow spectrum upstream
Mode 3	Optional (see Note)	Clause L.1.2	Clause L.2.2	Overlapped spectrum downstream Wide spectrum upstream
Mode 4	Optional (see Note)	Clause L.1.2	Clause L.2.3	Overlapped spectrum downstream Narrow spectrum upstream
NOTE – Modes 3 and 4 are defined as a single option for the ATU-R. If one mode is supported, the ATU-R shall also support the other mode (see CLR message definition in Table L.14).				

L.3.1 Handshake – ATU-C (supplements clause 8.13.2.1)

The ITU-T G.994.1 codepoints required for the initialization of ATU-C and ATU-R shall be contained in an "Annex L reach-extended PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block. This parameter block shall be added to the ITU-T G.994.1 code tree defined for Annex A (ADSL operation over POTS).

Automode between ADSL2 Annex A and Annex L operation shall be a one-sided ATU-C controlled process, using the ITU-T G.994.1 CL/CLR mechanisms. [ITU-T G.997.1] contains the definition of automode and defines a configuration parameter to force an automode cold-start for use in test-lab environment.

L.3.1.1 CL messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.1.1)

The CL message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-20. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 CL message {Par(2)} fields for reach-extended operation are defined in Table L.12.

Table L.12 – ATU-C CL message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

Spar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Reach-extended PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-R which PSD masks are supported. Codepoints shall be structured as: • The PSD masks upstream field indicates which upstream PSD masks are supported. Its value will depend on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities of the ATU-C. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octet 1. The coding shall be as follows: – Bit 1: Set to ONE indicates the support of the upstream reach-extended operation according to clause L.2.2. – Bit 2: Set to ONE indicates the support of the upstream reach-extended operation according to clause L.2.3. • The PSD masks downstream field indicates which downstream PSD masks are supported. Its value will depend on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities of the ATU-C. This field shall be coded in PSD Mask NPar(3) octet 2. The coding shall be as follows: – Bit 1: Set to ONE indicates the support of the downstream non-overlapped reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.3. – Bit 2: Set to ONE indicates the support of the downstream overlapped reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.2. The ATU-C shall do one of the following: • Set to ONE one of the upstream PSD mask bits and set to ONE one of the downstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-R the selection of one of the reach-extended modes listed in Table L.11. • Set to ZERO all of the upstream PSD mask bits and all of the downstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-R the selection of operation according to Annex A.

L.3.1.2 MS messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.1.2)

The MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-21. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields for reach-extended operation are defined in Table L.13.

Table L.13 – ATU-C MS message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Reach-extended PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-R which PSD masks are selected. Codepoints shall be structured as: • The PSD masks upstream field indicates which upstream PSD mask is selected. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octet 1. The coding shall be as follows: – Bit 1: Set to ONE indicates the selection of the upstream reach-extended operation mask 1 according to clause L.2.2. – Bit 2: Set to ONE indicates the selection of the upstream reach-extended operation mask 2 according to clause L.2.3. • The PSD masks downstream field indicates which downstream PSD mask is selected. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octet 2. The coding shall be as follows: – Bit 1: Set to ONE indicates the selection of the downstream non-overlapped reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.3. – Bit 2: Set to ONE indicates the selection of the downstream overlapped reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.2. Each of these bits may be set to ONE only if that bit was set to ONE in the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. The ATU-C shall do one of the following: • Set to ONE one of the upstream PSD mask bits and set to ONE one of the downstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-R the selection of one of the reach-extended modes listed in Table L.11. • Set to ZERO all of the upstream PSD mask bits and all of the downstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-R the selection of operation according to Annex A.

L.3.2 Handshake – ATU-R (supplements clause 8.13.2.2)

The ITU-T G.994.1 codepoints required for the initialization of ATU-C and ATU-R shall be contained in an "Annex L reach-extended PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block. This parameter block shall be added to the ITU-T G.994.1 code tree defined for Annex A (ADSL operation over POTS).

Automode between ADSL2 Annex A and Annex L operation shall be a one sided ATU-C controlled process, using the ITU-T G.994.1 CL/CLR mechanisms. [ITU-T G.997.1] defines a configuration parameter to force a cold-start for use in test-lab environment.

L.3.2.1 CLR messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.2.1)

The CLR message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-22. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 CLR message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table L.14.

Table L.14 – ATU-R CLR message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Reach-extended PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-C which PSD masks are supported. Codepoints shall be structured as: • The PSD masks upstream field indicates which upstream PSD masks are supported. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octet 1. The coding shall be as follows: – Bit 1: Set to ONE indicates the support of the upstream reach-extended operation mask 1 according to clause L.2.2. – Bit 2: Set to ONE indicates the support of the upstream reach-extended operation mask 2 according to clause L.2.3. As the ATU-R shall support both upstream PSD masks defined in clause L.2, it shall set the upstream mask bits 1 and 2 to ONE (1). • The PSD masks downstream field indicates which downstream PSD masks are supported. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octet 2. The coding shall be as follows: – Bit 1: Set to ONE indicates the support of the downstream non-overlapped reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.3. – Bit 2: Set to ONE indicates the support of the downstream overlapped reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.2. As the ATU-R shall support mandatory configuration for operation in downstream non-overlapped reach-extended mode, it shall set the downstream mask bit 1 to ONE (1). If the ATU-R supports the optional downstream overlapped reach-extended mode, it shall also set to ONE (1) the bit 2.

L.3.2.2 MS messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.2.2)

The MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-23. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table L.15.

Table L.15 – ATU-R MS message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

<table>
<tr><th>SPar(2) bit</th><th>Definition of related Npar(3) bits</th></tr>
<tr><td>Reach-extended PSD masks</td><td>This parameter block indicates to the ATU-C which PSD masks are selected. Codepoints shall be structured as:
• The PSD masks upstream field indicates which upstream PSD mask is selected. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octet 1. The coding shall be as follows:
– Bit 1: Set to ONE indicates the selection of the upstream reach-extended operation mask 1 according to clause L.2.2;
– Bit 2: Set to ONE indicates the selection of the upstream reach-extended operation mask 2 according to clause L.2.3.
• The PSD masks downstream field indicates which downstream PSD mask is selected. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octet 2. The coding shall be as follows:
– Bit 1: Set to ONE indicates the selection of the downstream non-overlapped reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.3.
– Bit 2: Set to ONE indicates the selection of the downstream overlapped reach-extended operation according to clause L.1.2.
Each of these bits may be set to ONE only if that bit was set to ONE in the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message.
The ATU-R shall do one of the following:
• Set to ONE one of the upstream PSD mask bits and set to ONE one of the downstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-C the selection of one of the reach-extended modes listed in Table L.11.
• Set to ZERO all of the upstream PSD mask bits and all of the downstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-C the selection of operation according to Annex A.</td></tr>
</table>

L.3.3 Spectral bounds and shaping parameters (supplements clause 8.13.2.4)

In the CLR message, the ATU-R shall indicate all supported PSD masks.

- If the ATU-R supports operation per Annex A, but does not support operation per Annex L, then the CLR message does not include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block. The CLR message includes the upstream spectral shaping (tss_i) and upstream spectrum bounds information of the Annex A upstream PSD mask (see clause 8.13.2.4).
- If the ATU-R supports operation per Annex A and Annex L, then the CLR message shall include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block, with the supported reach-extended PSD masks indicated by the PSD masks bits (see Table L.14). If any of the upstream spectral shaping (tss_i) or upstream spectrum bounds parameter blocks is included in the CLR message, it shall be related to the preferred upstream PSD mask. The preferred upstream PSD mask shall be the Annex A upstream mask (clause A.2.2) or the Annex L upstream mask 1 (clause L.2.2) or the Annex L upstream mask 2 (clause L.2.3).

In the CL message, the ATU-C shall indicate the selected mode.

- To indicate selection of operation per Annex A, the CL message shall either not include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block, or the CL message shall include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block with all PSD masks bits set to ZERO. If any of the downstream or upstream spectral shaping (tss_i) or spectrum bounds parameter blocks is included in the CL message, it shall be related to operation according to Annex A (see clause 8.13.2.4).

- To indicate selection of a reach-extended mode listed in Table L.11, the CL message shall include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block with the selected mode indicated by the PSD masks bits. If any of the downstream or upstream spectral shaping (tss_i) or spectrum bounds parameter blocks is included in the CL message, it shall be related to the selected mode.

If the CL or CLR message does not include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block, then the MS message shall not include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block.

If the MS message does not include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block or includes the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block with all PSD masks bits set to ZERO, then the ATU-C and ATU-R shall operate according to Annex A.

If the ATU-R supports operation per Annex A, but does not support operation per Annex L, then the CLR message does not include the reach-extended PSD masks parameter block. If only the operation according to Annex L is enabled through the CO-MIB (Annex A disabled), the ATU-C shall indicate in the CL message the selection of a reach-extended mode listed in Table L.11. In a subsequent ITU-T G.994.1 transaction, the ATU-C shall do one of the following:

- in response to an MS message selecting Annex A operation, the ATU-C shall send a NACK-NS message to indicate the requested mode is disabled (see clause 7.9 of [ITU-T G.994.1]);
- in response to an MR message, the ATU-C shall send an MS message to indicate it is not prepared to select a mode at this time (see clause 10.1.2 of [ITU-T G.994.1]).

If the upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters of the CLR message, and the PSD mask selection in the CL message are found to be inconsistent, then the ATU-R shall do either of the following:

- The ATU-R sends an MS message indicating that it is not prepared to select a mode at this time (according to clause 10.1.1 of [ITU-T G.994.1]). After termination of the ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R calculates new upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters offline, taking into account the upstream spectrum bounds, shaping parameters and PSD mask specified by the ATU-C in the CL message of the previous ITU-T G.994.1 session. In a subsequent ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R sends a CLR message, including the new spectrum bounds and shaping parameters corresponding to the selected PSD mask.
- The ATU-R calculates new upstream spectrum bounds and shaping parameters on-line, taking into account the upstream spectrum bounds, shaping parameters and PSD mask specified by the ATU-C in the CL message. In the same ITU-T G.994.1 session, the ATU-R repeats the CLR/CL exchange transaction with a CLR message including the new spectrum bounds and shaping parameters corresponding to the selected PSD mask.

L.4 Electrical characteristics

The ATU shall meet the electrical characteristics defined in clause A.4.

Annex M

Specific requirements for an ADSL system with extended upstream bandwidth, operating in the frequency band above POTS*

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

M.1 ATU-C functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

M.1.1 ATU-C control parameter settings

The ATU-C control parameter settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table M.1. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

Table M.1 – ATU-C control parameter settings

Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCds	256	
NOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDds	–40 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPds (operation per clause M.1.2)	20.4 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

M.1.2 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

The ATU-C transmit spectral mask shall be identical to the ATU-C transmit spectral mask for overlapped spectrum operation over POTS, as defined in Figure A.1.

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 to 1104 kHz and is the widest possible band used (i.e., implemented with overlapped spectrum). Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.

NOTE – When deployed in the same cable as ADSL-over-POTS (Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.1], Annexes A and B of [b-ITU-T G.992.2], Annex A of this Recommendation and Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.4]), there may be a spectral compatibility issue between the two systems due to the overlap of the Annex M downstream channel with the ADSL-over-POTS upstream channel at frequencies below 138 kHz. Detailed

* Softbank BB (Japan), Conexant Systems (USA) and UT Starcom (USA), in line with the provisions of clause 5.5 of Recommendation ITU-T A.8, registered a degree of concern with regard to Annex M. Their concern is:

"Today, there are over 60 million lines of ADSL deployed worldwide based on Annex A. If ADSL systems based on Annex M are deployed in the same cable with Annex A-based systems, the service quality of existing ADSL systems may become significantly degraded. The impact of high volume deployment of Annex M-based systems has not been thoroughly evaluated or considered. Proper definition of Annex M should be such that it can be deployed on a worldwide volume basis."

study of spectrum compatibility is referred to regional bodies. Deployment restrictions for systems using the downstream PSD masks defined in this annex may be imposed (e.g., by the regional regulatory authority).

M.1.2.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause A.1.2.1.

M.1.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause A.1.2.2.

M.1.3 ATU-C downstream transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation (supplements clause 8.10)

The ATU-C transmit spectral mask shall be identical to the ATU-C transmit spectral mask for non-overlapped spectrum operation over ISDN, as defined in Figure B.2.

Adherence to this mask will, in many cases, result in improved upstream performance of the other ADSL systems in the same or adjacent binder group, with the improvement dependent upon the other interferers. This mask differs from the mask in clause M.1.2 only in the band below 254 kHz.

The passband is defined as the band from 254 to 1104 kHz. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 254 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than 1104 kHz.

In addition, the maximum PSD level in the in 0-4 kHz band shall not exceed –97.5 dBm/Hz measured in a reference impedance of 100 ohms, and the aggregate transmit power in the 0-4 kHz band shall not exceed +15 dBrn measured in a reference impedance of 600 ohms.

M.1.3.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause B.1.2.1.

M.1.3.2 Aggregate transmit power

See clause B.1.3.2.

M.2 ATU-R functional characteristics (pertains to clause 8)

M.2.1 ATU-R control parameter settings

The ATU-R control parameter settings to be used in the parameterized parts of the main body of this Recommendation and/or to be used in this annex are listed in Table M.2. Control parameters are defined in clause 8.5.

Table M.2 – ATU-R control parameter settings

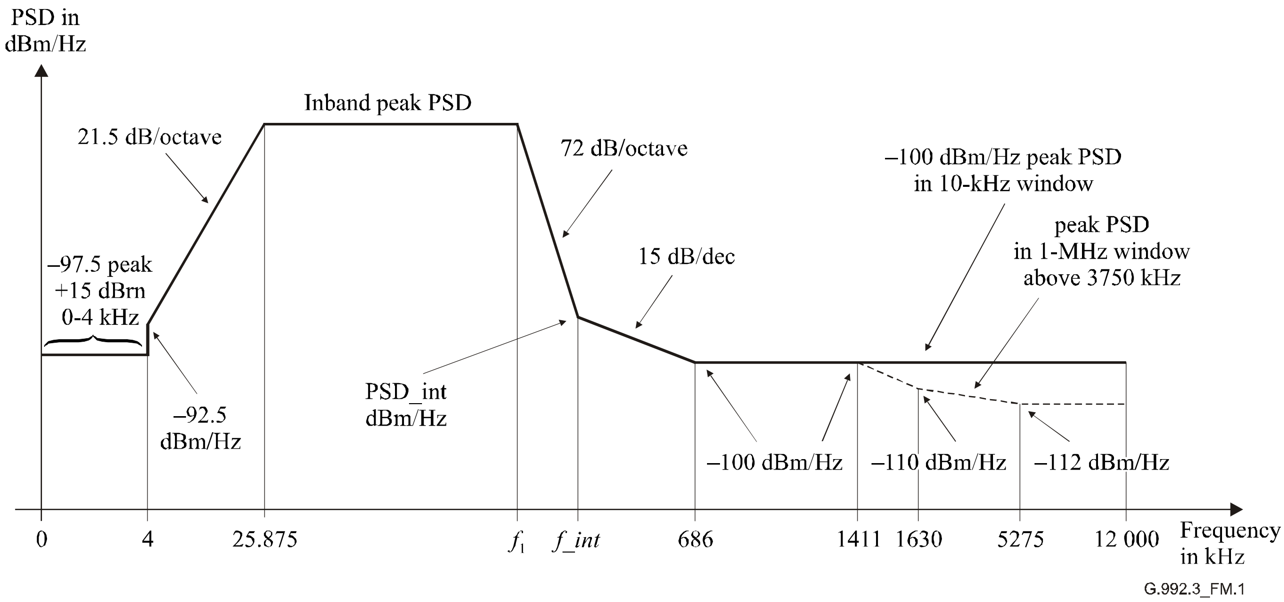
Parameter	Default setting	Characteristics
NSCus	64	
NOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMPSDus	–38 dBm/Hz	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.
MAXNOMATPus	12.5 dBm	Setting may be changed relative to this value during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase, see clause 8.13.2.

M.2.2 ATU-R upstream transmit spectral mask (supplements clause 8.10)

The ATU-R transmit PSD shall comply to one of the allowed family of spectral masks EU-32, EU-36, ... , EU-64 (see Note 1 after Table M.3). Each of the spectral masks shall be as defined in Figure M.1 and Table M.3.

The passband is defined as the band from 25.875 kHz to an upperbound frequency $f1$, defined in Table M.3. It is the widest possible band used. Limits defined within the passband apply also to any narrower bands used.

Figure M.1 defines the family of ATU-R spectral masks for the transmit signal. The low-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies below 25.875 kHz, the high-frequency stopband is defined as frequencies greater than the passband upperbound frequency $f1$ defined in Table M.3. The *Inband_peak_PSD*, *PSD_int* and the frequencies $f1$ and *f_int* shall be as defined in Table M.3.



Frequency (kHz)	PSD level (dBm/Hz)	Measurement BW
0	–97.5	100 Hz
4	–97.5	100 Hz
4	–92.5	100 Hz
10	Interpolated	10 kHz
25.875	*Inband_peak_PSD*	10 kHz
*f*1	*Inband_peak_PSD*	10 kHz
f_int	*PSD_int*	10 kHz
686	–100	10 kHz
5275	–100	10 kHz
12 000	–100	10 kHz

Additionally, the PSD mask shall be satisfying following requirements:

Frequency (kHz)	PSD level (dBm/Hz)	Measurement BW
1411	–100	1 MHz
1630	–110	1 MHz
5275	–112	1 MHz
12 000	–112	1 MHz

NOTE 1 – All PSD measurements are in 100 Ω; the POTS band total power measurement is in 600 Ω.

NOTE 2 – The breakpoint frequencies and PSD values are exact; the indicated slopes are approximate. The breakpoints in the tables shall be connected by linear straight lines on a dB/log(*f*) plot.

NOTE 3 – MBW specifies the measurement bandwidth. The MBW specified for a certain breakpoint with frequency f_i is applicable for all frequencies satisfying $f_i < f \leq f_j$, where f_j is the frequency of the next specified breakpoint.

NOTE 4 – The power in a 1 MHz sliding window is measured in a 1 MHz bandwidth, starting at the measurement frequency i.e., power in the [f, f + 1 MHz] window shall conform to the specification at frequency f.

NOTE 5 – The step in the PSD mask at 4 kHz is to protect ITU-T V.90 performance (see Figure A.1).

NOTE 6 – All PSD and power measurements shall be made at the U-R interface.

Figure M.1 – ATU-R transmitter PSD mask

Table M.3 – *Inband_peak_PSD*, *PSD_int* and the frequencies *f*1 and *f_int*

Upstream mask number	Desig-nator	Template nominal PSD (dBm/Hz)	Template maximum aggregate transmit power (dBm)	Inband peak PSD (dBm/Hz)	Frequency *f*1 (kHz)	Intercept frequency *f_int* (kHz)	Intercept PSD level *PSD_int* (dBm/Hz)
1	EU-32	–38.0	12.5	–34.5	138.00	242.92	–93.2
2	EU-36	–38.5	12.62	–35.0	155.25	274.00	–94.0
3	EU-40	–39.0	12.66	–35.5	172.50	305.16	–94.7
4	EU-44	–39.4	12.75	–35.9	189.75	336.40	–95.4
5	EU-48	–39.8	12.78	–36.3	207.00	367.69	–95.9
6	EU-52	–40.1	12.87	–36.6	224.25	399.04	–96.5
7	EU-56	–40.4	12.94	–36.9	241.50	430.45	–97.0
8	EU-60	–40.7	12.97	–37.2	258.75	461.90	–97.4
9	EU-64	–41.0	12.98	–37.5	276.00	493.41	–97.9
NOTE – The aggregate transmit power shall be limited for all PSD masks as defined in clause M.2.2.2.							

NOTE 1 – The ATU-R selects a transmit PSD mask from the family of upstream transmit PSD masks specified in Table M.3, based on the limitations imposed by the CO-MIB (which are exchanged during the ITU-T G.994.1 phase of initialization, see clause 8.13.2.4) and based on the capabilities of its transmit PMD function.

NOTE 2 – When deployed in the same cable as ADSL-over-POTS (Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.1], Annexes A and B of [b-ITU-T G.992.2], Annex A of this Recommendation, Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.4] and Annex A of [b-ITU-T G.992.5]), there may be a spectral compatibility issue between the two systems due to the overlap of the Annex M upstream channel with the ADSL-over-POTS downstream channel at frequencies above 138 kHz. Detailed study of spectrum compatibility is referred to regional bodies. Deployment restrictions for systems using the upstream PSD masks defined in this annex may be imposed (e.g., by the regional regulatory authority).

M.2.2.1 Passband PSD and response

See clause A.2.2.1.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template is defined in Tables M.4 and M.5 (informative).

Table M.4 – ATU-R transmit PSD template definition

Frequency (kHz)	PSD level (dBm/Hz)
0	–101
4	–101
4	–96
25.875	*Inband_peak_PSD* –3.5 dB
*f*1	*Inband_peak_PSD* –3.5 dB
f_int _templ	*PSD_int_templ*
686	–100
1411	–100
1630	–110
5275	–112
12000	–112

Table M.5 – The *f_int_templ* and *PSD_int_templ* values for the ATU-R transmit PSD template

Upstream mask number	Designator	Template intercept frequency *f_int_templ* (kHz)	Template intercept PSD level *PSD_int_templ* (dBm/Hz)
1	EU-32	234.34	–93.0
2	EU-36	264.33	–93.8
3	EU-40	294.39	–94.5
4	EU-44	324.52	–95.1
5	EU-48	354.71	–95.7
6	EU-52	384.95	–96.2
7	EU-56	415.25	–96.7
8	EU-60	445.59	–97.2
9	EU-64	475.99	–97.6

M.2.2.2 Aggregate transmit power

There are three different PSD masks for the ATU-R transmit signal, depending on the type of signal sent (see clause M.2.2.1). In all cases:

- the aggregate transmit power in the voiceband, measured at the U-R interface, and that is delivered to the plain old telephone service (POTS) interface, shall not exceed +15 dBrn (see [ITU-T G.996.1] for method of measurement);
- the aggregate transmit power across the whole passband shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.5 dB, in order to accommodate implementational tolerances, and shall not exceed 13.0 dBm;
- the aggregate transmit power over the 0 to 12 MHz band shall not exceed (*MAXNOMATPus* – *PCBus*) by more than 0.8 dB, in order to account for residual transmit power in the stopbands and implementational tolerances.

The power emitted by the ATU-R is limited by the requirements in this clause. Notwithstanding these requirements, it is assumed that the ADSL will comply with applicable national requirements on emission of electromagnetic energy.

For spectrum management purposes, the PSD template nominal passband aggregate transmit power is 12.5 dBm.

M.3 Initialization

The ATU-C and ATU-R shall support all upstream PSD masks listed in Table M.3.

M.3.1 Handshake – ATU-C (supplements clause 8.13.2.1)

If, and only if, the ATU-C does not select to use upstream PSD shaping (see clause M.3.4), then the ATU-C shall include the "Annex M submode PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block in CL (see clause M.3.1.1) and MS messages (see clause M.3.1.2).

M.3.1.1 CL messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.1.1)

The CL message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-20. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 CL message {Par(2)} fields for extended upstream operation over POTS are defined in Table M.6.

Table M.6 – ATU-C CL message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

Spar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Submode PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-R which PSD masks are supported. The submode PSD masks field indicates which upstream PSD masks are supported. Its value will depend on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities of the ATU-C. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octets 1 and 2. The coding shall be as follows: the bit associated to an upstream PSD mask shall be set to ONE to indicate that this mask is supported. The ATU-C shall set to ONE one of the upstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-R the selection of one of the PSD masks listed in Table M.3.

M.3.1.2 MS messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.1.2)

The MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-21. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields for extended upstream operation over POTS are defined in Table M.7.

Table M.7 – ATU-C MS message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Submode PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-R which PSD masks are selected. The submode PSD masks field indicates which upstream PSD masks is selected. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octets 1 and 2. The coding shall be as follows: the bit associated to an upstream PSD mask shall be set to ONE to indicate that this mask is selected. Each of these bits may be set to ONE only if that bit was set to ONE in the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. The ATU-C shall set to ONE one of the upstream PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-R the selection of one of the PSD masks listed in Table M.3.

M.3.2 Handshake – ATU-R (supplements clause 8.13.2.2)

Regardless whether the ATU-R supports upstream PSD shaping (see clause M.3.4) or not, the ATU-R shall always include the "Annex M submode PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block in CLR messages (see clause M.3.2.1).

If, and only if, the ATU-C does not select to use upstream PSD shaping (see clause M.3.4), the ATU-R shall include the "Annex M submode PSD masks" Spar(2) parameter block in MS messages (see clause M.3.2.2).

M.3.2.1 CLR messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.2.1)

The CLR message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-22. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 CLR message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table M.8.

Table M.8 – ATU-R CLR message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Submode PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-C which PSD masks are supported. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octets 1 and 2. The coding shall be as follows: the bit associated to an upstream PSD mask shall be set to ONE to indicate that this mask is supported. As the ATU-R shall support all PSD mask configurations, it shall set all mask bits to ONE (1).

M.3.2.2 MS messages (supplements clause 8.13.2.2.2)

The MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table 8-23. Additional ITU-T G.994.1 MS message {Par(2)} fields are defined in Table M.9.

Table M.9 – ATU-R MS message additional Par(2) PMD bit definitions

SPar(2) bit	Definition of related Npar(3) bits
Submode PSD masks	This parameter block indicates to the ATU-C which PSD masks are selected. This field shall be coded in PSD mask NPar(3) octets 1 and 2. The coding shall be as follows: the bit associated to an upstream PSD mask shall be set to ONE to indicate that this mask is selected. Each of these bits may be set to ONE only if that bit was set to ONE in the last previous CL message and the last previous CLR message. The ATU-R shall do set to ONE one of the PSD mask bits to indicate to the ATU-C the selection of one PSD mask listed in Table M.3.

M.3.3 Spectral bounds and shaping parameters (supplements clause 8.13.2.4)

See clause J.3.3.

M.3.4 Upstream spectrum shaping

The upstream spectrum shaping for this annex is defined in the same way as for Annex J (see clause J.3.4). The differences with clause J.3.4 are the limit mask (see Table M.10, which differs from Table J.10 only below 25.875 kHz), and the handshake codepoints being identically defined but added under the ITU-T G.992.3 Annex M Spar(1) code tree.

Table M.10 – *Limit_PSD_Mask* for upstream spectrum shaping

Frequency (kHz)	PSD level (dBm/Hz)	Measurement BW
0	–97.5	100 Hz
4	–97.5	100 Hz
4	–92.5	100 Hz
10	Interpolated	10 kHz
25.875	–34.5	10 kHz
138	–34.5	10 kHz
$138 < f \leq 276$	$-34.5 - 10 \times \log10((f - 3)/(138 - 3))$	10 kHz
276	–37.5	10 kHz
493.4	–97.9	10 kHz
686	–100	10 kHz
5275	–100	10 kHz
12000	–100	10 kHz

M.4 Electrical characteristics

The ATU shall meet the electrical characteristics defined in clause A.4.

The ATU-C longitudinal conversion loss (LCL) requirements shall apply over the frequency ranges from 30 kHz to 276 kHz and from 276 kHz to 1104 kHz, respectively.

Annex N

64/65-octet PTM-TC sublayer functional specifications

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

N.1 Scope

The PTM-TC shall provide full transparent transfer of packets between the γ reference points at network and premises side (except non-correctable errors caused by the transmission medium). It shall also provide packet integrity and packet error monitoring capability.

In the transmit direction, the PTM-TC receives packets from the higher layer PTM entity via the γ-interface. An additional CRC is calculated on the packet and appended (to construct a PTM-TC frame). The PTM-TC then performs 64/65-octet encapsulation on the frame, and sends the resulting codewords to the PMS-TC via the α/β-interface. In the receive direction, the PTM-TC receives codewords from the PMS-TC via the α/β-interface, recovers the transported PTM-TC frame, checks the CRC and submits the extracted packet to the PTM entity via the γ-interface.

The γ-interface data, synchronization and control flows signals, (de)asserted by the higher layer PTM entity or by the PTM-TC, are summarized in Appendix VI.

The basic encapsulation and coding shall comply with clause 61.3.3 of [IEEE 802.3], amended with support of preemption for insertion of high priority packets and amended with support for short packets (i.e., packets of less than 64 octets). Support of preemption and support of short packets are optional and are defined in the following subclauses. A transceiver supporting preemption shall support it in both the downstream and upstream direction.

NOTE 1 – In this annex, the term "packet" is used generically to describe any type of packet (e.g., layer 2 or layer 3 packet or part thereof) that is presented to the PTM-TC at the γ reference point for transmission over the DSL link. [IEEE 802.3] uses the term "fragment" as a synonym for the term "packet" used in this annex.

NOTE 2 – If the PTM-TC carries IEEE 802.3 (Ethernet) packets, the packet length is at least 64 octets, in which case the codeword formats to support short packets do not occur.

NOTE 3 – If the PTM-TC defined in this annex carries a single Ethernet packet flow (no preemption and no short packets), it is identical to the Ethernet packet encapsulation defined in clause 61.3 of [IEEE 802.3].

NOTE 4 – If the PTM-TC carries IEEE 802.3 (Ethernet) packets, it is assumed that the preamble and SFD fields have been discarded by the PTM entity before transmitting the packets to the PTM-TC. See clause 61.1.4.1.2 of [IEEE 802.3].

NOTE 5 – The choice to support preemption is service-related, particularly in low data rate environment.

N.2 References

See clause 2.

N.3 PTM-TC functions

N.3.1 PTM-TC encapsulation and coding

N.3.1.1 PTM-TC basic encapsulation and coding

The PTM-TC basic encapsulation and coding shall comply with clause 61.3.3.1 of [IEEE 802.3].

The PTM-TC coding function shall use the CRC as defined in the ITU-T Recommendations referencing this annex, and generates codewords with a fixed length of 65 octets (64/65-octet coding). A codeword consists of a sync octet and 64 octet fields, where each octet field is either a data octet or one of the valid control characters. The PTM-TC basic codeword format and basic control character values are repeated for information in Tables N.1 and N.2.

Table N.1 – PTM-TC basic codeword formats

Type	Frame data	Sync octet	Octet fields 1-64									
All data	DDDD – DDDD	$0F_{16}$	D_0	D_1	D_2	D_3	D_4	D_5	…	D_{61}	D_{62}	D_{63}
End of frame	Contains k D's ($0 \le k \le 63$) and $(63 - k)$ Z's	$F0_{16}$	C_k	D_0	D_1	D_2	D_3	…	D_{k-1}	Z	…	Z
Start of frame while transmitting	Contains last k D's of first frame ($0 \le k \le 62$), $(62 - k - j)$ Z's and first j D's of second frame ($0 \le j \le 62 - k$)	$F0_{16}$	C_k	D_0	…	D_{k-1}	Z	Z	S	D_0	…	D_{j-1}
All idle	ZZZZ – ZZZZ	$F0_{16}$	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z	...	Z	Z	Z	Z
Start of frame while idle	Contains $(63 - k)$ Z's and k D's ($0 \le k \le 63$)	$F0_{16}$	Z	Z	S	D_0	D_1	D_2	…	D_{k-3}	D_{k-2}	D_{k-1}
All idle out-of-sync	YZZZ – ZZZZ	$F0_{16}$	Y	Z	Z	Z	Z	...	Z	Z	Z	Z

Table N.2 – PTM-TC basic control character values

Character	Value
All data sync	$0F_{16}$ in sync position only
End or idle	$F0_{16}$ in sync position only
Z	00_{16}
C_k, $0 \le k \le 63$	$C_k = k + 10_{16}$, with MSB set so that resulting value has even parity; $C_0 = 90_{16}$, $C_1 = 11_{16}$, $C_2 = 12_{16}$, $C_3 = 93_{16}$, ... $C_{62} = 4E_{16}$, $C_{63} = CF_{16}$
Y	$D1_{16}$
S	50_{16}
R	All other values (reserved)

N.3.1.2 Support for preemption

Preemption allows for the transport of a high and low priority packet flow through a single bearer channel. Under control of the PTM entity, the transmission of a low priority packet is paused, then high priority data is transmitted and the transmission of the low priority packet is resumed. Using preemption, the packet insertion delay is minimized for the high priority packets, at the expense of a higher delay for the low priority packets.

During the transmission of low priority data or idles, high priority data may be inserted in the data stream after the sync position of the next 64/65-octet codeword, indicating a high priority codeword with a different sync octet value (AF_{16} or $F5_{16}$) as compared to low priority codewords ($0F_{16}$ or $F0_{16}$). The PTM entity indicates the presence of high-priority data to transmit through the preemptive γ-interface (corresponding to the high-priority packets flow) by asserting the Tx_Avbl synchronization signal (see Appendix VI).

Upon assertion of the Tx_Avbl synchronization signal of the preemptive γ-interface by the PTM entity (not necessarily coinciding with the start of a packet), the non-preemptive state machine for sending non-preemptive packets is, effectively, frozen in time while the high priority data is inserted. The preemptive state machine shall then send a 64/65-octet codeword starting with the preemptive sync octet $F5_{16}$ in the sync position. The preemptive codewords shall always use the same format as defined in Table N.1 for the peer non-preemptive codewords (except for different sync octet values). When starting a new preemptive frame from idle, the first preemptive codeword shall contain a start (S) character in the first position after the sync code (as a system will only insert a preemptive codeword when it has data ready to send). Subsequent 64/65-octet preemptive codewords shall start with AF_{16} in the sync position (if there are 64 or more bytes remaining) or $F5_{16}$ in sync position (if there are less than 64 bytes remaining). Starting from the next 64/65-octet codeword after the end of the last preemptive codeword, as the Tx_Avbl synchronization signal of the preemptive γ-interface is de-asserted (not necessarily coinciding with the end of a packet), the preemptive state machine for sending preemptive packets is, effectively, frozen in time, while the non-preemptive state machine continues as if it had not been interrupted and transmission of low-priority packets is resumed per the (de)assertion of the Tx_Avbl synchronization signal of the non-preemptive γ-interface (corresponding to the low priority packets flow).

There are two logically separated γ-interfaces if the PTM-TC supports preemption. The preemptive packets enter the PTM-TC sublayer through a different γ-interface than the one used by the non-preemptive packets. The two different sets of sync octets act as "virtual channel indicators" that make sure that preemptive packets can be presented to the correct γ-interface upon arrival at the receiver. If a PTM-TC with preemption is used over multiple bearer channels, then two logically separated γ-interfaces exist for each bearer channel. This is shown in Figure N.1, for the case where dual latency (with one bearer channel in each latency path) and preemption are combined.

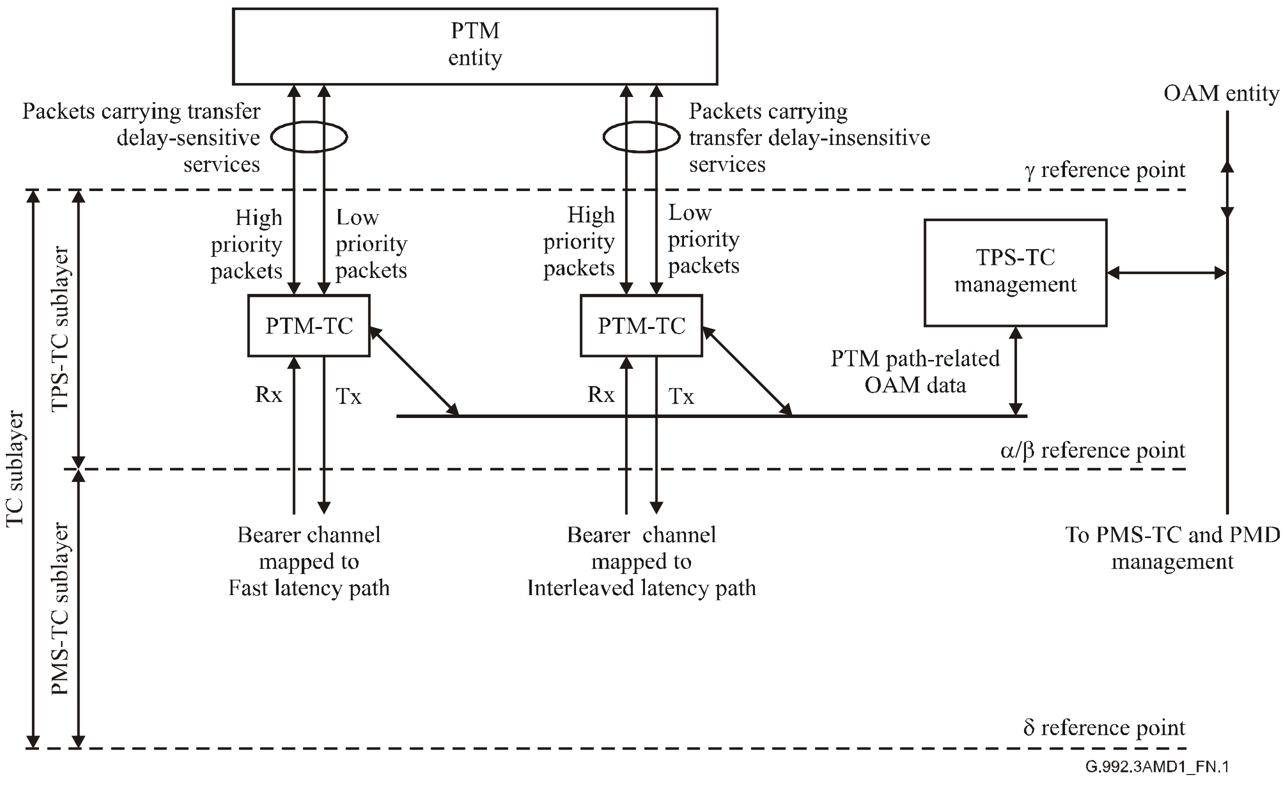


Figure N.1 – Reference model for packet transport with preemption

The preemptive PTM-TC frame is constructed by appending to the packet the same CRC as for constructing non-preemptive frames (see clause N.3.3), and is sent using the same types of 64/65-octet codewords as are used for non-preemptive frames (see Table N.3), except that all idle codewords and out-of-sync codewords are not supported with the preemptive sync octet. Upon loss of TC synchronization (TC_link_state becoming FALSE), the PTM-TC shall transmit the "all idle out-of-sync" codeword from Table N.1 as the next codeword, flushing the remainder of the preemptive packet and the non-preemptive packet from the transmit buffer. The non-preemptive state machine then resumes operation.

The sync octet in the preemptive codeword uses new additional control character values that are reserved in operation without preemption (see Table N.4). All other control character values for use in the octet fields 1-64 are identical to the operation without preemption.

If the non-preemptive and preemptive Tx_Avbl are asserted mutually exclusive in time, and a full packet is transmitted over the respective γ-interface each time the respective Tx_Avbl is asserted, then the switchover from high to low or low to high priority codewords shall coincide with packet boundaries.

Table N.3 – PTM-TC codeword formats for preemption

Type	Frame data	Sync octet	Octet fields 1-64									
All preemptive data	DDDD – DDDD	AF_{16}	D_0	D_1	D_2	D_3	D_4	D_5	…	D_{61}	D_{62}	D_{63}
End preemptive frame (followed by the appropriate codeword from Table N.1)	Contain k D's ($0 \le k \le 63$) and ($63 - k$) Z's	$F5_{16}$	C_k	D_0	D_1	D_2	D_3	…	D_{k-1}	Z	…	Z
Start new preemptive frame after the end of preemptive frame	Contains last k D's of the first frame ($0 \le k \le 62$), ($62 - j - k$) Z's and first j D's of the second frame ($0 \le j \le 62 - k$)	$F5_{16}$	C_k	D_0	…	D_{k-1}	Z	Z	S	D_0	…	D_{j-1}
Start new preemptive frame from idle	Contains 63 D's	$F5_{16}$	S	D_0	D_1	D_2	D_3	…	D_{59}	D_{60}	D_{61}	D_{62}

NOTE – Depending on whether or not the use of preemption is enabled during initialization, codewords with sync code AF or F5 may or may not represent a coding violation. It is expected that the receiver takes this into account when declaring the coding violations defined in clause N.4.

Table N.4 – PTM-TC control character values for preemption

Character	Value
Continue preempt with all data, equivalent to $0F_{16}$	AF_{16} in sync position only
End preempt or start from idle, equivalent to $F0_{16}$	$F5_{16}$ in sync position only

N.3.1.3 Support for short packets

In order to support short packets (i.e., less than 64 octets) and related short frames, a C_j character shall be inserted immediately before the S character for any frame that will finish before the end of the codeword in which it starts. The definition of the C_j character shall be identical to the C_k character specified in Table N.1, with regard to the position *j* in the codeword the frame ends. If no C_j character precedes the S character, then the data shall continue to the end of the codeword as per the original definition in Table N.1.

NOTE 1 – For traffic containing no packets shorter than 63 octets, there will never be a need to insert a C_j character before an S character. Also, for short packets that start in one codeword and end in the next codeword, the extra C_j character is not inserted.

The short packet support (as indicated in [ITU-T G.994.1]) is applicable to both non-preemptive and preemptive codeword types using an identical definition for both. The extra codewords to support short frames (i.e., short packets with CRC appended) are defined in Table N.5, and are valid for both non-preemptive and preemptive coding.

There is no limit to the number of short frames carried in one codeword (other than the limit imposed by the minimum encapsulated packet length for $j = 1$ in Table N.5 and the codeword length).

Table N.5 – PTM-TC codeword formats for short packets

Type	Frame data	Sync octet	Octet fields 1-64												
Start short frame after end	(1)	$F0_{16}$	C_k	D_0	…	D_{k-1}	Z	…	C_{j1}	S	D_0	…	D_{j1-1}	Z, S or C_{j2}	…
Start short frame after idle	(2)	$F0_{16}$	Z		…		Z	…	C_{j1}	S	D_0	…	D_{j1-1}	Z, S or C_{j2}	…
Start short frame immediately after sync code	(3)	$F0_{16}$	C_{j1}	S	D_0	…		…			…		D_{j1-1}	Z, S or C_{j2}	…

(1) Contains last *k* D's of the first frame ($0 \le k \le 62$) and *j*1 D's comprising the second frame ($1 \le j1 \le 61 - k$). Note that another one or more frames could start before the end of the codeword.
(2) Contains up to ($62 - j1$) Z's and *j* D's comprising the short frame ($1 \le j1 \le 62$). Note that another one or more frames could start before the end of the codeword (leaving fewer Z's).
(3) Contains *j*1 D's comprising the short frame, where $1 \le j1 \le 62$ and ($62 - j1$) Z's. Note that another one or more frames could start before the end of the codeword (leaving fewer Z's).

NOTE 2 – Depending on whether or not the use of short packets is enabled during initialization, some octet sequences (like Z Cj S) may or may not represent a coding violation. It is expected that the receiver takes this into account when declaring the coding violations defined in clause N.4.

N.3.2 Sync insertion and transmit control

See clause 61.3.3.2 of [IEEE 802.3].

This clause relates to the flow-control signals at the γ reference point. A logical description of the γ-interface is contained in Appendix VI.

N.3.3 PTM-TC CRC functions

See clause 61.3.3.3 of [IEEE 802.3]. This clause defines a 16-bit and a 32-bit CRC.

The PTM-TC shall use either the 16-bit or the 32-bit CRC, as defined in the relevant ITU-T Recommendations referencing this annex.

N.3.4 Bit ordering

See clause 61.3.3.4 of [IEEE 802.3].

In this Recommendation, for each octet, the first bit received by the PTM-TC from the γ-interface shall be processed within the PTM-TC as the PTM-TC MSB. The first bit transmitted to the α/β-interface by the PTM-TC shall be the PTM-TC MSB. The PTM-TC MSB corresponds with the TC sublayer LSB b8 in Figure 61-16 of [IEEE 802.3].

N.3.5 Sync detection

See clause 61.3.3.5 of [IEEE 802.3].

N.3.6 Receive control

See clause 61.3.3.6 of [IEEE 802.3].

This clause relates to the flow-control signals at the γ reference point. A logical description of the γ-interface is contained in Appendix VI.

N.3.7 State diagrams for 64/65-octet encapsulation

N.3.7.1 Transmit state diagram

The transmit state diagram for 64/65-octet encapsulation is shown in Figures N.2 and N.3.

The transmit state diagram shows state transitions based on conditions driven by γ interface signals (Tx_Avbl and Tx_EoP), synchronization signals (TC_synchronized and TC_link_state) and state variables internal to the state diagram. For simplicity of the state diagram, the γ interface signals (Tx_Avbl and Tx_EoP) are used as applying to a frame (i.e., after the CRC has been appended to the packet), meaning the Tx_Avbl is asserted with each octet of the packet and with each CRC octet appended to the packet, and meaning Tx_EoP is asserted with the last CRC octet appended to the packet.

NOTE 1 – This transmit state diagram is equivalent to the transmit state diagram defined in clause 61.3.3.7.1 of [IEEE 802.3], with extensions for the support of preemption and short packets.

NOTE 2 – The use of Tx_Avbl and Tx_EoP as applying to the frame, rather than the packet, is identical to the use in the transmit state diagram in Figure 61-18 of [IEEE 802.3].

NOTE 3 – For the non-preemptive packet flow, the Tx_Avbl is asserted by the PTM entity for the full time period starting from Tx_SoP being asserted to, and including, Tx_EoP being asserted (i.e., non-preemptive packets are made available at the γ-interface in whole). For the preemptive packet flow, the Tx_Avbl may be (de)asserted by the PTM entity at instants not coinciding with packet boundaries (i.e., preemptive packets may be made available at the γ-interface in parts).

The transmit state diagram uses the following variables:

TC_synchronized	Variable of type boolean, set to FALSE at BEGIN and indicating that receiver synchronization has been acquired.
TC_link_state	Variable of type boolean, indicating link is active and framing has synchronized according to the definition in clause 61.3.3 of [IEEE 802.3] (TC_synchronized = TRUE) and remote_TC_out_of_sync (see clause 61.3.3.7 of [IEEE 802.3]) is not asserted.

k Variable of type integer, used to keep track of the number of octets used in the current codeword, not including the sync symbols.

b Variable of type integer, used to keep track of the number of data octets currently in the data buffer.

sc Variable of type boolean, used to indicate that a start of frame (S) character is to be transmitted before the buffered data octets are transmitted.

ec Variable of type boolean, used to indicate that the last data octet of a frame has been written into the buffer but the end of frame (C) character is deferred to the next codeword for transmission.

ep Variable of type Boolean, used to indicate the state of the Tx_EoP signal for the last data octet written into the data buffer. The ep variable is set to TRUE under two distinct conditions:

a) at INIT;

b) when the last CRC octet is written into the transmit buffer. It is set to FALSE when the first data octet of a frame is written into the transmit buffer.

av Variable of type boolean, used to indicate that the Tx_Avbl signal is asserted and TC_link_state = TRUE.

The transmit state diagram uses the following functions. The character values are defined in Table N.2.

transmitSync() Function that transmits a single end or idle SYNC character to the α/β-interface.

transmitAllDataSync() Function that transmits a single all data SYNC character to the α/β-interface.

transmitS() Function that transmits a single S character to the α/β-interface.

transmitC(k) Function that transmits a single C_k character to the α/β-interface.

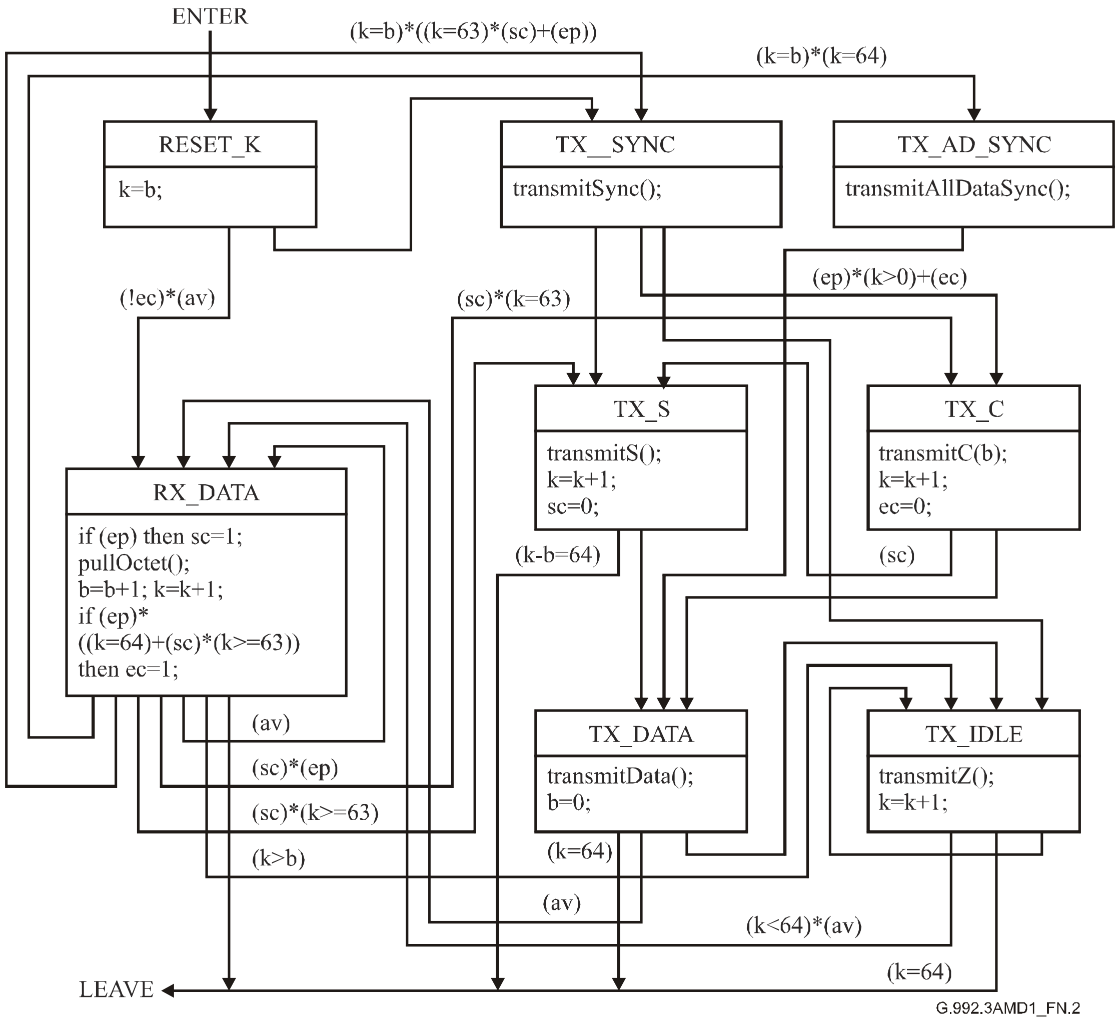
transmitZ() Function that transmits a single Z character to the α/β-interface.

transmitY() Function that transmits a single Y character to the α/β-interface.

transmitData() Function that transmits the b data octets currently in the transmit buffer to the α/β-interface.

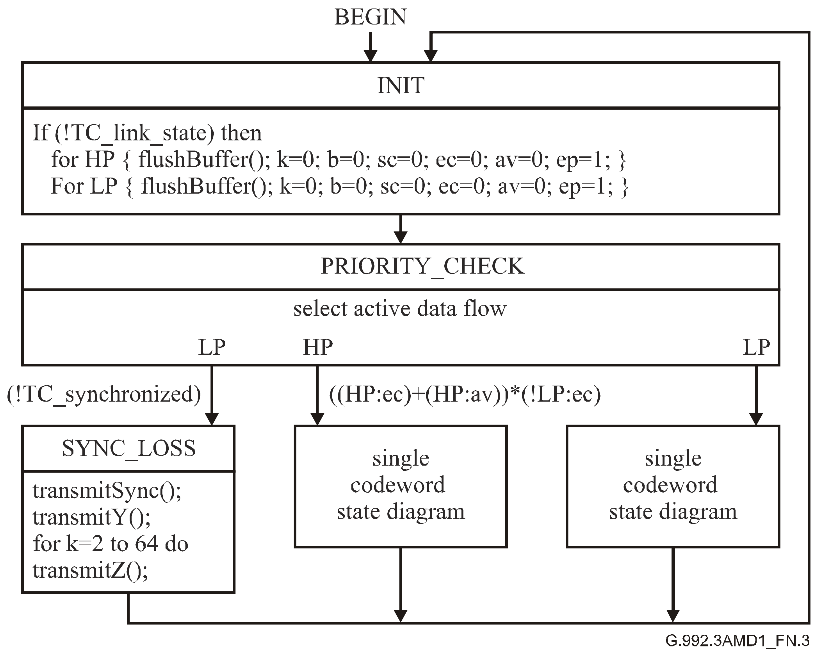
pullOctet() Function that receives a single data octet from the γ-interface into the transmit buffer and (re)sets the ep variable according to this data octet. At the end of a packet, this function returns the octets of the TC-CRC in the order specified in clause N.3.3.

flushBuffer() Function that removes any data octets that have been pulled by the function pullOctet() from the transmit buffer.



NOTE – The state exit conditions are evaluated left to right, the first condition evaluating TRUE is followed. The rightmost exit condition covers the ELSE/OTHERWISE conditions.

Figure N.2 – State diagram for the single codeword transmit function



NOTE 1 – The state exit conditions are evaluated left to right, the first condition evaluating TRUE is followed. The rightmost exit condition covers the ELSE/OTHERWISE conditions.
NOTE 2 – The LP and HP indicate the low priority (non-preemptive) and high priority (preemptive) packet flow, respectively.

Figure N.3 – State diagram for the PTM-TC transmit function

N.3.7.2 Receive state diagram

The informative receive state diagram for 64/65-octet encapsulation (without support for preemption and short packets) is shown in clause 61.3.3.7.2 of [IEEE 802.3].

N.3.8 PTM-TC sublayer management entity signals

See clause 61.3.3.8 of [IEEE 802.3].

N.4 Surveillance primitives

The PTM-TC function surveillance primitives are PTM path-related (see clause N.3.8). In case preemption is used, the preemptive and non-preemptive packet flows are separate logical packet flows over the γ reference point as shown in Figure N.1. Hence, the anomalies and related performance counters shall be maintained separately for both the preemptive and non-preemptive packet flow.

One near-end anomaly is defined for the entire bearer (applies to both the non-preemptive and preemptive packet flow):

- TC_out_of_sync (oos-*n*) anomaly: An oos-*n* anomaly occurs when the TC_synchronization signal is deasserted. An oos-*n* anomaly terminates when the TC_synchronization signal is asserted.

Two near-end anomalies are defined for the non-preemptive packet flow:

- TC_CRC_error (crc-*n*) anomaly: A crc-*n* anomaly occurs when a frame is received with the TC_CRC_error signal asserted (see clause N.3.7).
- TC_coding_violation (cv-*n*) anomaly: A cv-*n* anomaly occurs when an octet is received with the TC_coding_error signal asserted (see clause N.3.7).

Similarly, two near-end anomalies are defined for the preemptive packet flow:

- TC_CRC_error (crc-*np*) anomaly.
- TC_coding_violation (cv-*np*) anomaly.

One far-end anomaly is defined for the entire bearer channel (applies to both the non-preemptive and preemptive packet flow):

- Remote_TC_out_of_sync (oos-*f*) anomaly: An oos-*f* anomaly occurs when the remote_TC_out_of_sync signal is asserted. An oos-*f* anomaly terminates when the remote_TC_out_of_sync signal is deasserted.

  NOTE 1 – The out-of-sync codewords are defined as part of the non-preemptive packet flow (see Table N.1). The remote_TC_out_of_sync is therefore a common signal for both preemptive and non-preemptive packet flows.

The TC_CRC_error and TC_coding_violation anomalies shall be counted (separately for both the preemptive and non-preemptive packet flow) locally by the PTM-TC management entity. The values of the counter may be read or reset by the management function (residing above the γ reference point) via local commands not defined in this Recommendation.

Two near-end counters are defined for the non-preemptive packet flow:

- TC_CRC_error_counter-*n*: This is a 16-bit counter of crc-*n* anomalies. The counter shall be reset to all zeroes when read by the management function or upon execution of a PTM-TC reset. The counter shall be held at all ones in the case of overflow.
- TC_coding_violation_counter-*n*: This is a 32-bit counter of cv-*n* anomalies. The counter shall be reset to all zeroes when read by the management function or upon execution of a PTM-TC reset. The counter shall be held at all ones in the case of overflow.

Similarly, two near-end counters are defined for the preemptive packet flow:

- TC_CRC_error_counter-*np*.
- TC_coding_violation_counter-*np*.

NOTE 2 – Related current 15-minute and current 1-day performance monitoring counters to be maintained by the management function are defined in [ITU-T G.997.1].

NOTE 3 – No far-end counters are defined. It is assumed that each higher layer protocol running over this PTM-TC will provide means (outside the scope of this Recommendation) to retrieve far-end PTM-TC surveillance primitives from the far-end.

NOTE 4 – In [IEEE 802.3], the PTM-TC sublayer management entity signals are mapped to clause 45 registers or cause clause 45 counters to increment. Clause 45 registers and counters are accessible over the local γ-interface (see clauses 45.2.6.11, 45.2.6.12 and 45.2.6.13 of [IEEE 802.3]) for a PTM-TC that is an MDIO (management data I/O) manageable device (TC MMD).

NOTE 5 – In [IEEE 802.3], the Ethernet management function (residing above the γ reference point) maps the near-end surveillance primitives and counters (obtained over the γ-interface through access to clause 45 MDIO registers) into MIB objects defined in clause 30 of [IEEE 802.3]. MIB objects can be read from the far-end using the Ethernet OAM PDU format and protocol defined in clause 57 of [IEEE 802.3]. The use of [IEEE 802.3] clause 57 Ethernet OAM requires a bidirectional packet flow per logically separated γ-interface, i.e., that bearer channels and preemption, if enabled, are enabled in both the downstream and upstream direction.

NOTE 6 – The receiver is expected to first separate the preemptive and non-preemptive codewords based on the sync code (including handling of invalid sync code values) and then detect preemptive and non-preemptive coding violations separately per the receiver state diagram in clause N.3.7.2, such that code violations are counted only once, as either preemptive or non-preemptive code violations.

NOTE 7 – The handling of invalid sync codes will imply that, in some cases, code violations in the (non-) preemptive stream are not detected as code violation of the (non-) preemptive stream, but will be erroneously detected as code violation of the other stream.

Annex O

This annex is intentionally left blank

Annex P

Reduced downstream aggregate transmit power requirements

(This annex forms an integral part of this Recommendation)

P.1 Scope

This annex defines reduced downstream aggregate transmit power (ATP) requirements for implementations of this Recommendation, e.g., from the cabinet where high transmit power is not required and would be inefficient.

An ATU-C compliant with the reduced downstream ATP requirements listed in this annex, is not required to comply to the performance requirements defined in Annex F and Annex G. Instead, it is expected that such ATU-C implementation has a significantly lower power consumption than an ATU-C compliant with Annex F or Annex G.

P.2 Downstream ATP requirements

The downstream maximum nominal aggregate transmit power (*MAXNOMATPds*) is a transmit PMD function control parameter defined in Table 8-4. It configures the maximum value for the derived *NOMATPds* parameter defined in Table 8-5. The *MAXNOMATPds* value depends on CO-MIB element settings and local capabilities and is exchanged in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase in the downstream spectrum bounds parameter block (see Table 8-20). The value is coded relative to a default setting, which is defined for each operating mode separately (e.g., in Table A.1 for operation according to Annex A).

Annexes F and G define regional performance requirements for region A (North America) and region B (Europe), respectively. These performance requirements are set assuming (but not requiring) that the ATU-C is capable of transmitting an aggregate power related to the *MAXNOMATPds* default setting. Hence, this Recommendation does not define minimum downstream ATP requirements as such, but only indirectly via the Annex F and G performance requirements.

P.3 Reduced downstream ATP requirements

An ATU-C compliant with this annex shall indicate in the ITU-T G.994.1 phase a *MAXNOMATPds* parameter value that shall not exceed the value listed in Table P.1, even if the Table P.1 value is lower than the related setting for the CO-MIB element *MAXNOMATPds* (see clause 7.3.1.2.3 of [ITU-T G.997.1]).

An ATU-C compliant with this annex shall comply with one of the ATP limits defined in Table P.1. Multiple ATP limits are defined, each corresponding to a different maximum ITU-T G.994.1 *MAXNOMATPds* value.

Table P.1 – Maximum ITU-T G.994.1 *MAXNOMATPds* values

ATP limit	Maximum ITU-T G.994.1 *MAXNOMATPds* value
ATPlimit14	14.5 dBm
ATPlimit11	11.5 dBm

The ATU-C ATP limit is independent of the ATU-C operating mode. The values listed in Table P.1 apply to all of the operating modes defined in various annexes of this Recommendation.

This Recommendation does not define performance requirements for an ATU-C compliant with this annex.

Appendix I

ATM layer to physical layer logical interface

(This appendix does not form an integral part of this Recommendation)

This appendix describes the logical interface between the ATM layer and the physical layer. The physical layer (i.e., the ATU) consists of the cell-specific transmission convergence sublayer (ATM TPS-TC), the mux/sync control block (ADSL framing and FEC in the PMS-TC) and the other physical layer functions (modulation in the PMD), as defined in clauses 6, 7 and 8 respectively, and shown in Figure 5-1.

The ATM layer to physical layer interface (named V-C at the ATU-C and named T-R at the ATU-R) are shown in Figure I.1. TxRef* is optional at the ATU-C, RxRef* is optional at the ATU-R.

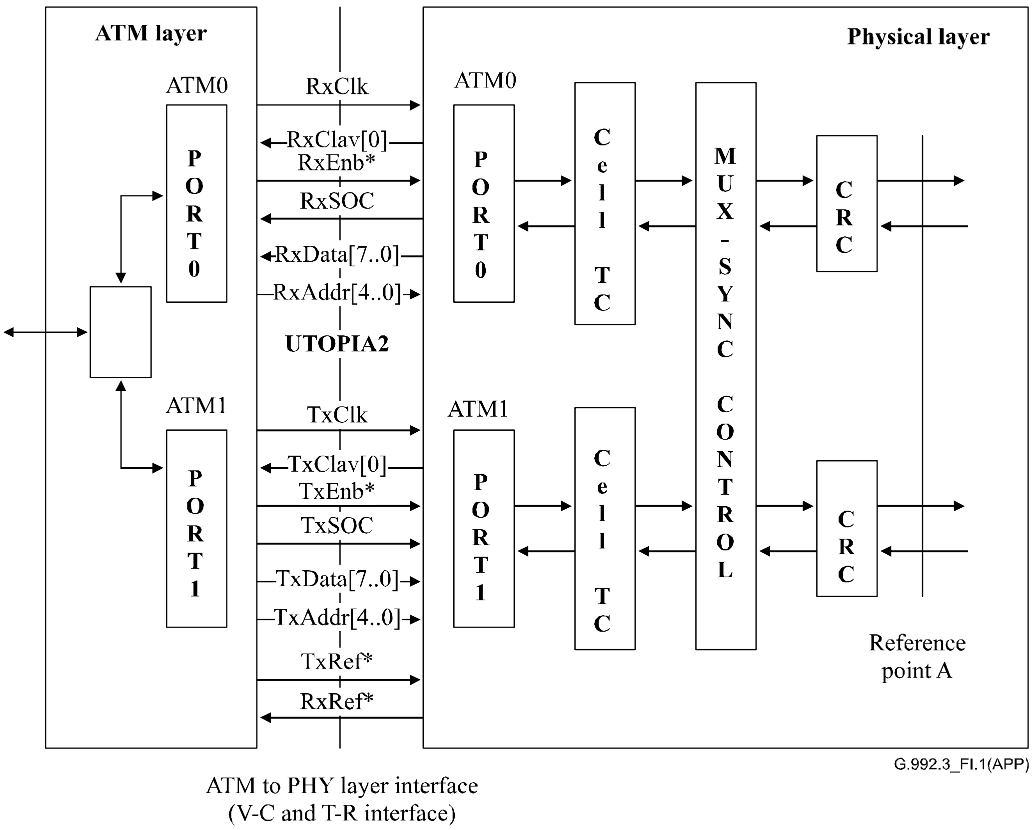


Figure I.1 – ATM to physical layer logical interface at ATU-C and ATU-R

The ATM layer performs cell multiplexing from and demultiplexing to the appropriate physical port (i.e., latency path – fast or interleaved) based on the virtual path identifier (VPI) and virtual connection identifier (VCI), both contained in the ATM cell header. Configuration of the cell demultiplexing process is done by ATM layer management.

A cell-specific transmission convergence sublayer (ATM TPS-TC) is provided for each latency path separately. Cell TC functionalities are specified in clause K.2.8.

The logical input and output interfaces at the V-C reference point for ATM transport is based on the

UTOPIA level 2 interface with cell level handshake. The logical interface is given in Tables I.1 and I.2 and is shown in Figure I.1. When a flow control flag is activated by the ATU-C (i.e., the ATU-C wants to transmit or receive a cell), the ATM layer initiates a cell Tx or cell Rx cycle (53 octet transfer). The ATU-x should support transfer of a complete cell within 53 consecutive clock cycles. The UTOPIA Tx and Rx clocks are mastered from the ATM layer. The same logical input and output interfaces based on the UTOPIA level 2 interface can be used at the T-R reference point in the ATU-R.

Table I.1 – UTOPIA level 2 ATM interface signals for Tx

Signal name	Direction	Description
Transmit interface		
TxClk	ATM to PHY	Timing signal for transfer.
TxClav[0]	PHY to ATM	Asserted to indicate that the PHY layer has buffer space available to receive a cell from the ATM layer (de-asserted 4 cycles before the end of the cell transfer).
TxEnb*	ATM to PHY	Asserted to indicate that the PHY layer must sample and accept data during the current clock cycle.
TxSOC	ATM to PHY	Identifies the cell boundary on TxData.
TxData[7..0]	ATM to PHY	ATM cell data transfer (8-bit mode).
TxAddr[4..0]	ATM to PHY	PHY device address to select the device that will be active or polled for TxClav status.
TxRef*	ATM to PHY	Network timing reference (8 kHz timing signal) (only at V-C interface).

Table I.2 – UTOPIA level 2 ATM interface signals for Rx

Signal name	Direction	Description
Receive interface		
RxClk	ATM to PHY	Timing signal for transfer.
RxClav[0]	PHY to ATM	Asserted to indicate to the ATM layer that the PHY Layer has a cell ready for transfer to the ATM layer (de-asserted at the end of the cell transfer).
RxEnb*	ATM to PHY	Asserted to indicate that the ATM layer will sample and accept data during the next clock cycle.
RxSOC	PHY to ATM	Identifies the cell boundary on RxData.
RxData[7..0]	PHY to ATM	ATM cell data transfer (8-bit mode).
RxAddr[4..0]	ATM to PHY	PHY device address to select the device that will be active or polled for RxClav status.
RxRef*	PHY to ATM	Network timing reference (8 kHz timing signal) (only at T-R interface).

More details on the UTOPIA level 2 interface can be found in [b-ATM Forum Utopia].

Appendix II

Compatibility with other customer premises equipment

(This appendix does not form an integral part of this Recommendation)

ITU-T G.992.3 ATU-R transceivers may share the CPE wiring plant with other equipment, e.g., networking devices, over the POTS splitter.

Some networking devices can operate above 4 MHz on customer premises phone wiring. To prevent signals from such networking devices from aliasing into the ITU-T G.992.3 frequency band, the inclusion of an adequate downstream receiver anti-aliasing filter in the ITU-T G.992.3 ATU-R is recommended, collocated with the ATU-R shown in Figures 5-4 and 5-5. The filter may take the form of an external in-line filter, may be integrated into the ITU-T G.992.3 ATU-R, or may be integrated in the POTS splitter as specified in Annex E.

Home networking devices may coexist with voice terminals and non-voice terminals on the TELE/POTS port side (the port in Figures 5-4 and 5-5 that attaches to the wire leading to the telephone set or voiceband modem) of the POTS splitter used in the ITU-T G.992.3 application to isolate the customer premises wiring from the ADSL signal. It is desirable that the remote POTS splitter be compatible with other customer premises wiring devices (e.g., the TELE/POTS port impedance above 4 MHz should be considered).

Appendix III

The impact of primary protection devices on line balance

(This appendix does not form an integral part of this Recommendation)

III.1 Scope

This appendix is intended to help guide operators in choosing appropriate protection devices for lines deploying ITU-T G.992.3. It does not address the intended protection characteristics of these devices, only the potential unintended effects on line impedance and line balance. A significant change in impedance will reduce the received signal. Imbalance can impair performance on the imbalanced line by increasing the coupled crosstalk and RFI ingress. It can also impair performance on other pairs in the cable by increasing the crosstalk, and cause interference into devices outside the cable by causing RFI egress. Each of these issues is discussed.

III.2 Background

In many jurisdictions, primary protection devices are required to limit the likelihood of fires or electric shocks to personnel. A secondary purpose of these protection devices is to reduce the probability of equipment damage, through overvoltage or overcurrent, when exposed to foreign potentials as can be caused by lightning, power line contacts, power line induction or ground potential rise. Figure III.1 shows a typical arrangement of protection devices. It should be noted that not all protection components will be required in all jurisdictions, and different arrangements are possible.

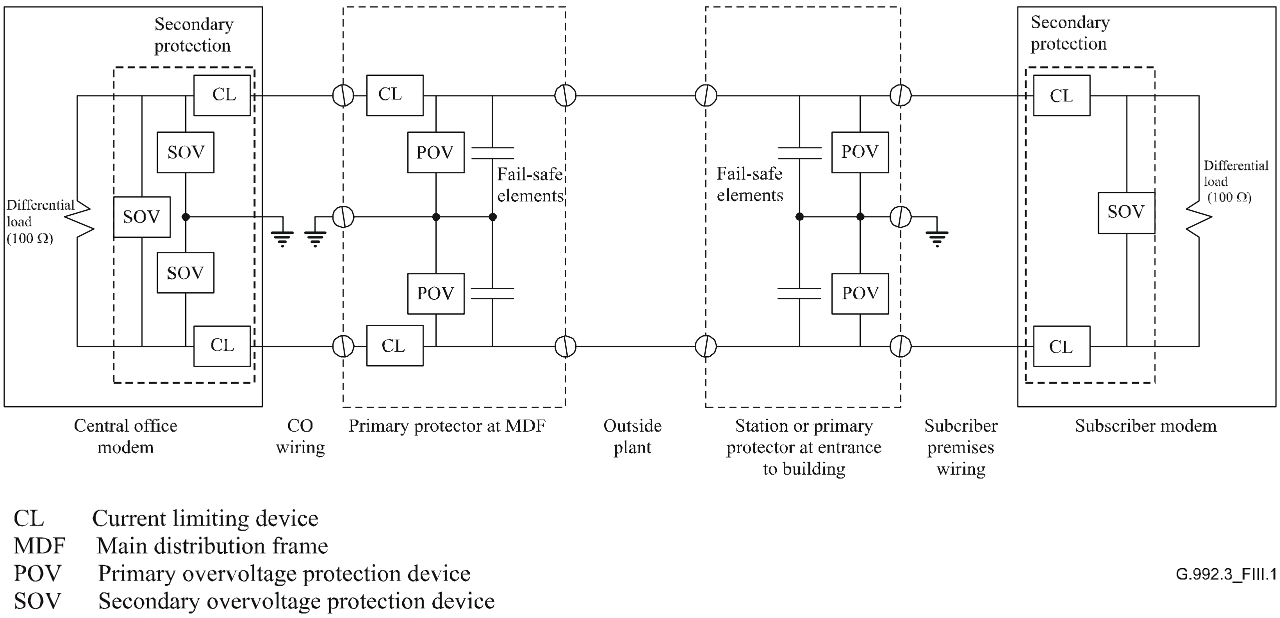


Figure III.1 – Typical arrangement of protection devices

In many jurisdictions, there is a required first level of protection at the building entry. This is usually in the network interface device (NID) at the subscriber premises and at the main distribution frame (MDF) in the central office. This first level of protection is intended to protect against personal injury and property damage but may be followed by additional protection devices to fully protect against equipment damage. When the protector is legally required and is located at the customer premises location, it is referred to as the primary protection device. When it is located in the NID it is also referred to as the station protector.

The effect of the protection device on line balance is important in all levels of protection devices. However, this discussion focuses on the building entry devices as they are usually specified by the operator. Additional protection devices found within modems will be covered by the balance requirements of the modem.

Primary protection devices may be fused or fuseless; however, in practice, there is a strong preference for fuseless protectors for safety reasons. Fuseless over-voltage protection devices include carbon block, two or three element gas tubes, solid state silicon avalanche or metal oxide varistor (MOV) devices and combinations of device types. They are deployed between tip and ground and ring and ground as shown in Figure III.1. Typically, a fail-safe mechanism is used in parallel to the device. Gas tube devices often also have a parallel air gap as an additional fail-safe mechanism. Optionally, a current-limiting component such as a resistor, positive temperature coefficient thermistor (PTC) or fuse is placed in series between the primary protector and secondary protector to prevent the secondary protector from operating first, thereby drawing unacceptable levels of current into the building.

Secondary protection devices, when present, are placed between the primary devices and the terminal equipment. The same elements are used, but are generally more sensitive. A current-limiting component such as a resistor, PTC or fuse is placed in series between the primary protector and secondary protector to prevent the secondary protector from operating first, thereby drawing unacceptable levels of current into the building.

The overvoltage protection elements differ in their cost and protection characteristics (speed of action, ability to self-restore and operating voltage) and operator preferences have varied over time and region. The characteristics relevant to xDSL performance are the impedance they present at the frequencies used by the xDSL service and whether they present a different impedance from tip and from ring to ground under normal operating conditions. In the case of services over POTS, normal operating conditions in North America include up to –52 V applied to ring, with tip at 0 V.

Solid state over voltage protection devices (SSOVP) incorporate with back-to-back silicon avalanche diodes. Thus, the silicon avalanche diodes are always reverse biased when either polarity of voltage is applied. Silicon avalanche diodes capacitance vary with reverse or forward bias. With a hard reverse bias, such as would occur to the device from ring-to-ground in an on-hook condition, a reduction in capacitance of 1/2 to 1/3 of the unbiased capacitance is possible. Gas and carbon block and metal oxide varistor (MOV) devices do not exhibit large changes in capacitance (MOV devices are technically a solid state device but do not appear to be sold under the name SSOVP by the industry). Hybrid devices typically combine a gas tube protection device with a MOV device to get the desirable characteristics of each. There is, however, nothing that would prevent the combination of gas tubes with silicon diodes from being referred to as a hybrid device.

III.3 Recommended maximum capacitance of overvoltage protectors

Solid state-based devices for telephony typically have capacitance in the 60 to 200 pF range with 0 DC bias, and gas tube devices in the 2-30 pF range. This capacitance is significant as it shunts the differential impedance of the line.

To maintain a minimum of 1000 Ω in parallel with the differential (nominally 100 Ω load requires the capacitance be less than the value shown in Table III.1). Note that two devices appear in series from tip-to-ring, thus a single device must present a minimum of 500 Ω.

Table III.1 – Maximum capacitance to ground to maintain 500 Ω at top frequency of xDSL service

ITU-T Recommendation	Top frequency of Recommendation	Max. capacitance (pF)
ITU-T G.991.2	385 kHz	826
ITU-T G.992.2	552 kHz	575
ITU-T G.992.1	1.024 MHz	310
ITU-T G.993.1 and ITU-T G.9951	10 MHz	31

In North America, it is unlikely that existing devices will exceed 200 pF as this is the maximum capacitance allowed tip-to-ground, ring-to-ground, or tip-to-ring by the regional specification on primary protectors (see clause III.5). Thus, for [b-ITU-T G.991.2], [b-ITU-T G.992.1], [b-ITU-T G.992.2], this Recommendation and [b-ITU-T G.992.4], this parameter is not a significant factor. For [ITU-T G.993.1] and [b-ITU-T G.9951], this requirement on impedance would tend to limit the protection choices to gas tubes or carbon blocks. A lower impedance of 250 Ω or 62 pF would also allow hybrid devices using MOV elements. Given the widely varying line impedance at these frequencies, the lowering of the differential impedance of the line from approximately 100 Ω to approximately 83 Ω that would occur with this additional capacitance may be acceptable.

III.4 Capacitance matching requirements of overvoltage protectors

Line balance is important to xDSL services as it determines the level of crosstalk within a cable, and the ingress and egress from the cable. The amount of signal transferred between two pairs due to imbalance is a function of the product of the imbalance of the interfering pair and that of the victim pair. Thus, if each had 40-dB balance, the crosstalk would be down around 80 dB from the differential level on the interfering pair.

Data from cable measurements at 80 kHz of NEXT crosstalk in polyethylene-insulated cable (PIC) can be used to generate Table III.2. From these results, we can see that at 40 dB balance no significant change will occur to the performance predictions based on 1% worst coupling in the frequencies from 552 kHz to 10 MHz. However, it would have a small impact on the 50% crosstalk levels in a sparsely filled cable. Thus, even 40 dB balance for frequencies above 500 kHz will not invalidate crosstalk predictions.

Table III.2 – Data of NEXT crosstalk in PIC cables measured at 80 kHz and extended to higher frequencies

Frequency	1% crosstalker (dB)	10% crosstalker (dB)	50% crosstalker (dB)
80 kHz	69.7	78.9	92.7
552 kHz	57.2	66.4	80.2
1.0 MHz	53.1	62.3	76.1
10 MHz	38.3	47.5	61.2

The second concern of ingress and egress from the cable is also directly dependent on cable balance. Table III.3 shows average cable balance from a study in Germany. The data correspond roughly to measurements taken in North America.

Table III.3 – Data of average cable balance based on measurements taken in Germany

Frequency (MHz)	Average LCL balance of cables (dB)
0.2-0.5	57.9
0.5-1.0	54.6
1.0-2.0	50.7
2.0-5.0	47.6
5.0-10	44.1

Where possible, the line balance of the protection device should meet or exceed the typical balance of the cable, or ingress and egress issues will be increased. The precise values required to meet egress requirements will vary with the nature of the service being interfered with, and the regulatory definition of, "interference".

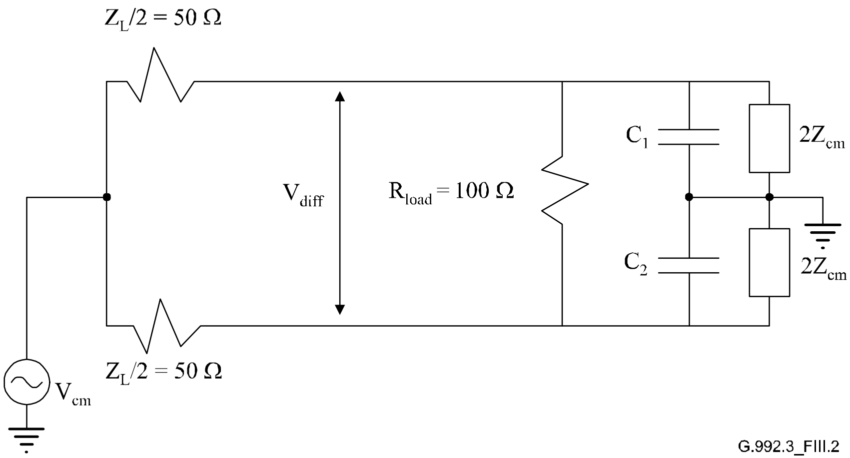


Figure III.2 – Schematic used to determine line balance due to mismatched capacitance in protective devices

Figure III.2 shows a schematic of the line driven in common mode and terminated in an xDSL modem. The differential impedance of the line is shown as a simplified 100 Ω. The capacitors, C_1 and C_2, represent the capacitance to ground of the protective devices. The common mode impedance to ground could be defined either by the cable itself or the modem terminating the line. The common mode impedance of the cable can be highly variable as it depends on the position of the pair with respect to ground. The full equation for balance, given the above circuit, is:

$$LineBalance\,(dB) =$$

$$20\times\log_{10}\left(\frac{\frac{2}{Z_L}\left[j\omega C_2 - j\omega C_1\right]}{\left(j\omega C_1+\frac{1}{2Z_{cm}}+\frac{2}{Z_L}\right)\left(j\omega C_2+\frac{1}{2Z_{cm}}+\frac{2}{Z_L}\right)+\frac{1}{R_L}\left(j\omega C_1+j\omega C_2+\frac{1}{Z_{cm}}+\frac{4}{Z_L}\right)}\right)$$

When $Z_L = R_L$ and Z_{cm}, $1/j\omega C_1$, $1/j\omega C_2 >> R_L$, then, the formula simplifies to:

$$LineBalance\,(dB) = 20\times\log_{10}(50\times\pi\times(C_2 - C_1)\times f) = 20\times\log_{10}(50\times\Delta C\times\pi\times f)$$

With $Z_L = R_L = 100\ \Omega$, reducing Z_{cm} from infinite to 200 Ω will improve the balances in Table III.4 by approximately 1.5 dB.

Table III.4 – Required capacitance matching with Z_{cm} = 10 kΩ to achieve balances from 40 to 60 dB at the top frequency of several xDSL services

ITU-T Recommendation	Top frequency of Recommendation	Max. Δ*C* between tip and ground, and ring and ground to maintain stated Balance				
		40 dB balance (pF)	45 dB balance (pF)	50 dB balance (pF)	55 dB balance (pF)	60 dB balance (pF)
ITU-T G.991.2	385 kHz	165	92	52	29	16
ITU-T G.992.2 ITU-T G.992.4	552 kHz	115	64	36	20	11
ITU-T G.992.1 ITU-T G.992.3	1.104 MHz	57	32	18	10	5
ITU-T G.9951	10 MHz	6.3	3.5	2.0	1.1	0.6
ITU-T G.993.1	12 MHz	5.3	2.9	1.6	0.9	0.5

The Δ*C* must be maintained under all the bias conditions the protection devices will be placed. Thus, if POTS service is on the same line as the xDSL service the Δ*C* must be maintained when one device has –52 bias (North American numbers) and the other has zero bias applied. If no POTS service will ever be present, consideration must be made for the inherent impedance match without bias of the two devices within the protector to each other, the peak signal swing and any sealing currents that may be applied to keep the splices clean.

III.5 References

The regional specification on primary protectors applicable in North America is:

GR-974-CORE (1999), *Generic Requirements for Telecommunications Line Protector Units* (*TLPUs*).

The ITU-T K-series Recommendations contain requirements for resistibility of telecommunication equipment against electromagnetic effects and characteristics of protection components.

Telecommunication equipment is required to have an inherent resistibility so that it can be installed without additional protection components when the risk for overvoltages or overcurrents is deemed sufficiently low by the operator. When there is deemed to be a significant risk for electromagnetic threats that exceed the inherent resistibility of the equipment, additional protection components are installed on the telecommunication and/or power lines. These components are called "primary protection" and they are installed by the operator. The resistibility Recommendations contain tests to ensure the coordination between primary protection and the inherent protection of the equipment. [b-ITU-T K.46] provides guidance for the operators on the decision to install primary protection.

Resistibility ITU-T Recommendations:

- [b-ITU-T K.44] defines the different resistibility tests.
- [b-ITU-T K.20] specifies the applicable tests and acceptance criteria for equipment installed in the central office, e.g., access node.
- [b-ITU-T K.21] specifies the applicable tests and acceptance criteria for equipment installed on the customer premises, e.g., ADSL modem.
- [b-ITU-T K.45] specifies the applicable tests and acceptance criteria for equipment installed in the outside plant, e.g., access node installed in a cabinet.

ITU-T Recommendations on protective components:

- [b-ITU-T K.36] provides guidance on the selection of protective components.
- [b-ITU-T K.12] specifies the characteristics of different types of gas discharge tubes that can be installed in telecommunication networks.

  Characteristics related to the transmission capabilities of the line:

  – Insulation resistance higher than 1000 MΩ initially, higher than 100 MΩ after the life tests.

  – Capacitance less than 20 pF between terminals. This characteristic is not tested after the life tests.
- [b-ITU-T K.28] specifies the characteristics of semi-conductor arrester assemblies.

  Characteristics related to the transmission capabilities of the line:

  – Insulation resistance 165 KΩ to 100 MΩ, depending on the applied DC voltage.

  – Capacitance less than 200 pF between any 2 terminals. The capacitance measurement is not specified with a DC bias.
- [b-ITU-T K.30] defines characteristics of positive temperature coefficient thermistors (PTCs) used for overcurrent protection, and provides test methods. It does not specify the values of the different parameters as these may be very different depending on the application.

Appendix IV

Example overlapped PSD masks for use in a TCM-ISDN crosstalk environment

(This appendix does not form an integral part of this Recommendation)

This appendix defines example shaped overlapped downstream PSD masks for use in a TCM-ISDN crosstalk environment. These masks may be used with Annex C modes of operation that use overlapped PSDs.

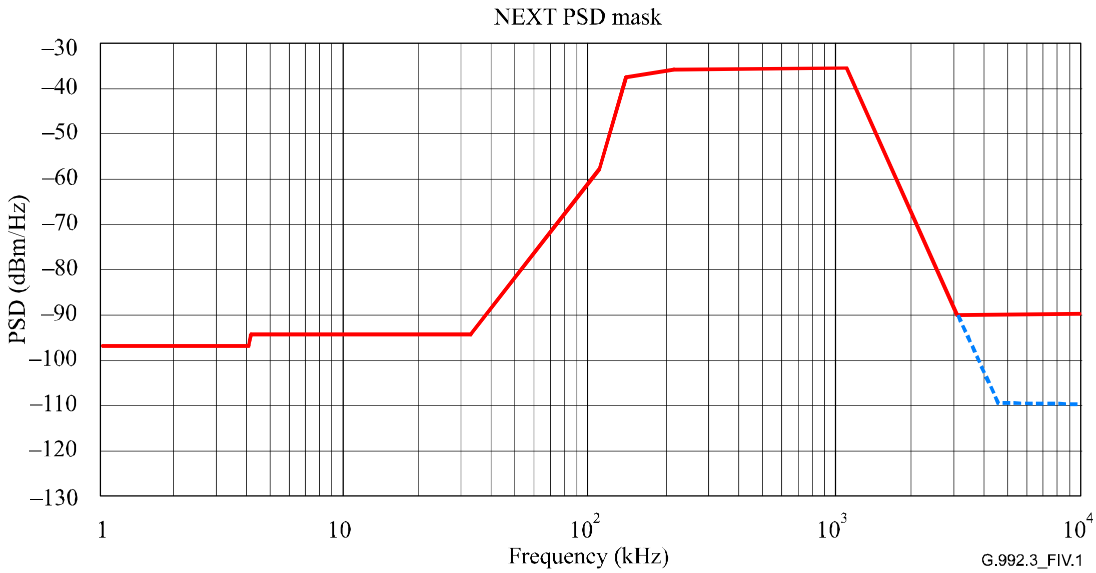
IV.1 Example downstream PSD masks for use with profiles 5 and 6

In this clause, two example downstream PSD masks are described. They may be used for downstream dual bitmap modes with overlapped spectrum. In general, using overlapped spectrum downstream may result in NEXT to the upstream channel. To meet spectrum compatibility requirements, the frequency components overlapping the upstream channel are shaped to reduce the crosstalk. The first example is a spectrally shaped mask used during the NEXT phase of the TTR clock. The second PSD mask has an alternative spectral shaping and is designed for use during the FEXT phase of the TTR clock.

IV.1.1 Downstream shaped overlapped PSD mask for use during NEXT periods

The shaped overlapped spectral mask for use during NEXT periods of the TTR clock is defined in Figure IV.1. Spectral shaping is provided in the frequency band overlapping the ADSL upstream channel. Adherence to this mask will result in spectral compatibility with other systems deployed in an access network in a TCM-ISDN crosstalk environment.

Note that the definitions given Figure IV.1 are those of a PSD mask. The corresponding PSD template is 3.5 dB below the mask at all frequencies.



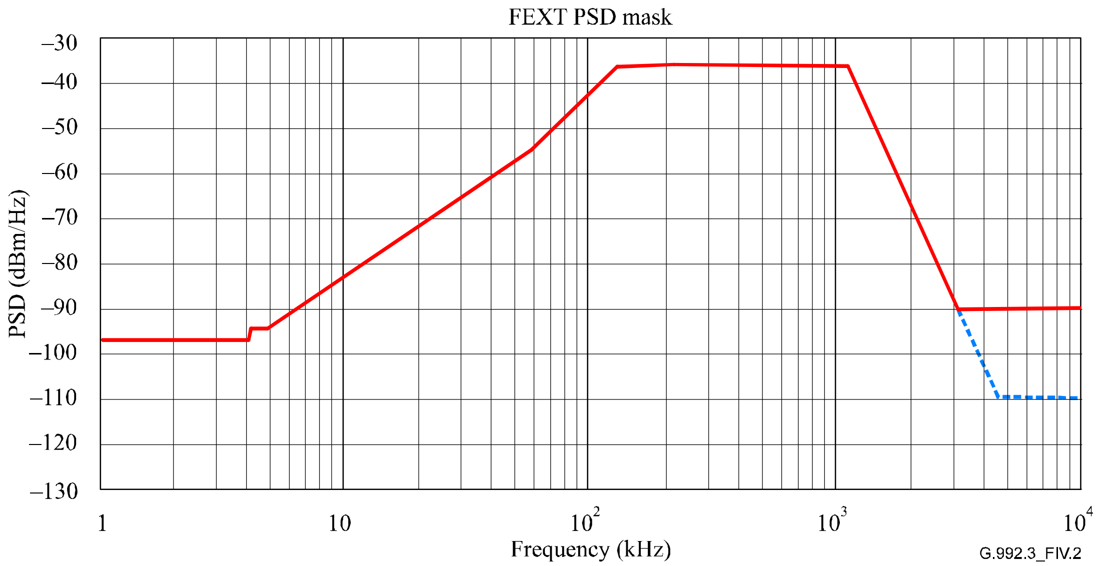
Frequency f (kHz)	PSD (dBm/Hz) peak values
$0 < f < 4$	–97.5, with max power in the 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f < 32$	–94.5
$32 < f < 109$	$-94.5 + 20.65 \log_2(f/32)$
$109 < f < 138$	$-58 + 58 \log_2(f/109)$
$138 < f < 200$	$-38.3 + 3.36 \log_2(f/138)$
$200 < f < 1104$	–36.5
$1104 < f < 3093$	$-36.5 - 36 \log_2(f/1104)$
$3093 < f < 4545$	–90, peak with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f < 11\,040$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm

Figure IV.1 – A shaped overlapped downstream PSD mask for use during NEXT periods of the TTR clock

IV.1.2 Downstream shaped PSD mask for use during FEXT periods

The shaped overlapped spectral mask for use during FEXT periods of the TTR clock is defined in Figure IV.2. Spectral shaping is provided in the frequency band overlapping the ADSL upstream channel. Adherence to this mask will result in spectral compatibility with other systems deployed in an access network in a TCM-ISDN crosstalk environment.

Note that the definitions given in Figure IV.2 are those of a PSD mask. The corresponding PSD template is 3.5 dB below the mask at all frequencies.



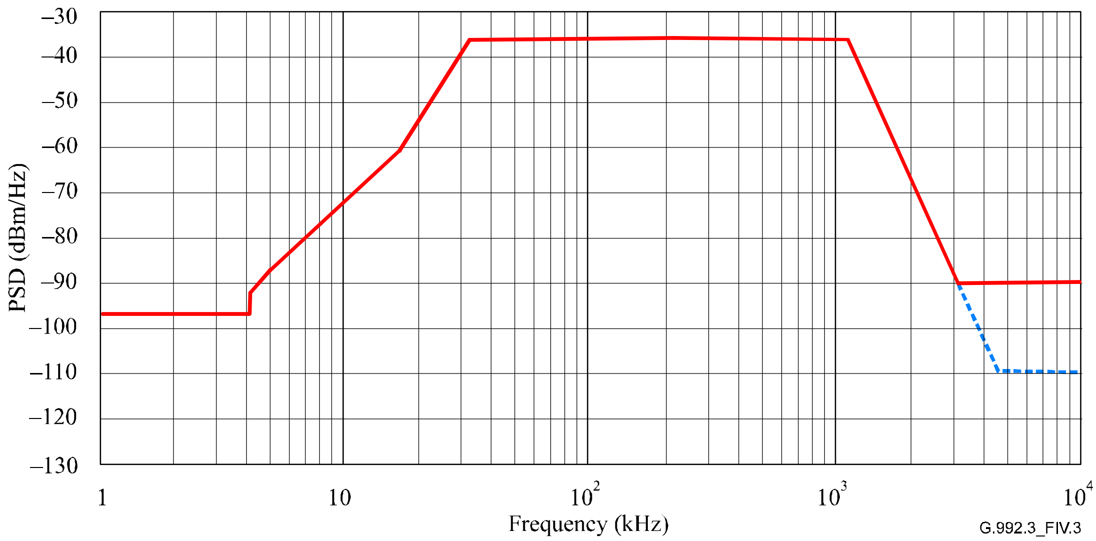
Frequency f (kHz)	PSD (dBm/Hz) peak values
$0 < f < 4$	–97.5, with max power in the 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f < 4.8$	–94.5
$4.8 < f < 50$	$-94.5 + 11.0 \log_2(f/4.8)$
$50 < f < 126$	$-57.5 + 15.7 \log_2(f/50)$
$126 < f < 1104$	–36.5
$1104 < f < 3093$	$-36.5 - 36 \log_2(f/1104)$
$3093 < f < 4545$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f < 11\,040$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm

Figure IV.2 – A shaped overlapped downstream PSD mask for use during FEXT periods of the TTR clock

IV.2 Example downstream PSD mask for use with profile 3

An example shaped overlapped spectral mask for use with profile 3 is defined in Table IV.3 and shown in Figure IV.3. Spectral shaping is provided in the frequency band overlapping the ADSL upstream channel. Adherence to this mask will result in spectral compatibility with other systems deployed in an access network in a TCM-ISDN crosstalk environment.

Note that the definitions given in Table IV.3 and Figure IV.3 are those of a PSD mask. The corresponding PSD template is 3.5 dB below the mask at all frequencies.



Frequency f (KHz)	PSD (dBm/Hz) peak values
$0 < f < 4$	–97.5, with max power in the 0-4 kHz band of +15 dBrn
$4 < f < 5$	$-92.5 + 18.64 \log_2(f/4)$
$5 < f < 5.25$	–86.5
$5.25 < f < 16$	$-86.5 + 15.25 \log_2(f/5.25)$
$16 < f < 32$	$-62 + 25.5 \log_2(f/16)$
$32 < f < 1104$	–36.5
$1104 < f < 3093$	$-36.5 - 36 \log_2(f/1104)$
$3093 < f < 4545$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of $(-36.5 - 36 \times \log_2(f/1104) + 60)$ dBm
$4545 < f < 11\,040$	–90 peak, with max power in the $[f, f + 1$ MHz$]$ window of –50 dBm

Figure IV.3 – A shaped downstream PSD mask for profile 3

Appendix V

Constraints on delay, impulse noise protection, overhead rate, and net data rate when bonding

(This appendix does not form an integral part of this Recommendation)

This appendix considers the case when multiple transceivers form a bonding group, and the differential delay among members of the group, are controlled through the *delay_min* parameter derived from [ITU-T G.994.1]. This appendix outlines a set of simple rules that allows the construction of a valid set of configuration parameters involving the minimum delay (*delay_min*), the minimum impulse noise protection (*INP_min*), the minimum overhead message rate (*MSGmin*), the minimum net data rate (*net_min*) and the data rate granularity. These rules restrict the framing parameters and may lead to a reduction in the attainable data rates.

The rules are as follows:

- Set *delay_min* = *delay_max*. In either the upstream or downstream direction, all transceivers in a bonding group should use the same delay. The value for *delay_min* and *delay_max* should be selected from Table V.1 or V.2.
- Set the minimum net data rate below the values shown in Tables V.1 and V.2 for downstream and upstream, respectively. Depending on the downstream PSD mask and value of *BIMAX*, the actual maximum net data rate might be lower than those shown in these tables.
- The valid range of *MSGmin* and the corresponding data rate granularity (minimum value of *net_max* – *net_min*) are listed in Table V.3.

Table V.1 – Maximum downstream net data rate (kbit/s) for various values of *delay_min* = *delay_max* and *INP_min*

		***INP_min* (Note 2)**						
		0	**½**	**1**	**2**	**4**	**8**	**16**
***delay_min* *delay_max* (ms)**	**1 (Note 1)**	14656	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2	14656	7104	3008	960	0	0	0
	4	14656	13632	7104	3008	960	0	0
	8	14656	13632	13632	7104	3008	960	0
	16	8064	7552	7552	7552	3520	1472	448
	32	3968	3712	3712	3712	3712	1728	704
NOTE 1 – In [ITU-T G.997.1], a 1 ms delay is reserved to mean that $S_p \leq 1$ and $D_p = 1$. NOTE 2 – Values of *INP_min* in grey are optional.								

Table V.2 – Maximum upstream net data rate (kbit/s) for various values of *delay_min* = *delay_max* and *INP_min*

		INP_min (Note 2)						
		0	**½**	**1**	**2**	**4**	**8**	**16**
***delay_min* *delay_max* (ms)**	**1 (Note 1)**	3520	0	0	0	0	0	0
	2	3520	3072	1472	448	0	0	0
	4	3520	3264	1728	704	192	0	0
	8	1920	1792	1792	832	320	64	0
	16	896	832	832	832	384	128	0
	32	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

NOTE 1 – In [ITU-T G.997.1], a 1 ms delay is reserved to mean that $S_p \leq 1$ and $D_p = 1$.
NOTE 2 – Values of *INP_min* in grey are optional.

Table V.3 – Range of *MSGmin* and minimum data rate granularity (*net_max* – *net_min*) when delay is selected from Table V.1 or V.2

MSGmin (kbit/s)	Data rate granularity (kbit/s)
61-64	Not supported
29-60	64
14-28	32
6-13	16
4-5	8

Appendix VI

Packet layer to physical layer logical interface

(This appendix does not form an integral part of this Recommendation)

The γ_C (V-C) and γ_R (T-R) reference points define interfaces between the higher layer packet functions (PTM entity) and PTM-TC at the network side transceiver and premises side transceiver, respectively, as shown in Figure K.10. Both interfaces are identical, functional and independent of the contents of the transported packets. The interfaces are defined by the following flows of signals between the PTM entity and the PTM-TC sublayer:

- data flow;
- synchronization flow;
- control flow;
- OAM flow.

VI.1 Data flow

The data flow consists of two contra-directional octet-based streams of packets: transmit packets (*Tx_PTM*) and receive packets (*Rx_PTM*). The packet transported in either direction over the γ interface may be of variable length. Bits within an octet are labelled a_1 through a_8, with a_1 being the LSB and a_8 being the MSB. If either of the data streams is transmitted serially, the first octet of the packet is transmitted first and bit a_1 of each octet is transmitted first. The Data Flow signal description is presented in Table VI.1.

Table VI.1 – PTM-TC: γ interface data, synchronization and control flows signal summary

Flow	Signal	Description	Direction
Transmit signals			
Data	*Tx_PTM*	Transmit data	PTM → PTM-TC
Control	*Tx_Enbl*	Asserted by the PTM-TC; indicates PTM may push data to the PTM-TC	PTM ← PTM-TC
Control	*TX_Err*	Errored transmit packet (request to abort)	PTM → PTM-TC
Sync	*Tx_Avbl*	Asserted by the PTM entity if data is available for transmission	PTM → PTM-TC
Sync	*Tx_Clk*	Clock signal asserted by the PTM entity	PTM → PTM-TC
Sync	*Tx_SoP*	Start of the transmit packet	PTM → PTM-TC
Sync	*Tx_EoP*	End of the transmit packet	PTM → PTM-TC

Flow	Signal	Description	Direction
Receive signals			
Data	*Rx_PTM*	Receive data	PTM ← PTM-TC
Control	*Rx_Enbl*	Asserted by the PTM-TC; indicates PTM may pull data from the PTM-TC	PTM ← PTM-TC
Control	*RX_Err*	Received error signals including FCS error, invalid frame and OK	PTM ← PTM-TC
Sync	*Rx_Clk*	Clock signal asserted by the PTM entity	PTM → PTM-TC
Sync	*Rx_SoP*	Start of the receive packet	PTM ← PTM-TC
Sync	*Rx_EoP*	End of the receive packet	PTM ← PTM-TC

For the non-preemptive packet flow, the PTM entity asserts *Tx_Avbl* when an entire packet is available for transmission, and de-asserts *Tx_Avbl* when there are no packets to transmit. *Tx_Avbl* is never de-asserted during the transmission of a packet. For the preemptive packet flow, the PTM entity may (de)assert *Tx_Avbl* during the transmission of a packet.

VI.2 Synchronization flow

This flow provides synchronization between the PTM entity and the PTM-TC sublayer and contains the necessary timing to provide packet integrity during the transport. The synchronization flow consists of the following signals presented in Table VI.1:

- Transmit and receive timing signals (*Tx_Clk*, *Rx_Clk*): Both asserted by PTM entity.
- Start of Packet signals (*Tx_SoP*, *Rx_SoP*): Asserted by PTM entity and by PTM-TC, respectively, and intended to identify the beginning of the transported packet in the corresponding direction of transmission.
- End of Packet signals (*Tx_EoP*, *Rx_EoP*): Asserted by PTM entity and by PTM-TC, respectively, and intended to identify the end of the transported packet in the corresponding direction of transmission.
- Transmit Packet available signals (*Tx_Avbl*): Asserted by PTM entity to indicate that data for transmission in the corresponding direction is ready.

VI.3 Control flow

Control signals are used to improve robustness of data transport between the PTM entity and PTM-TC and are presented in clause VI.1.

- Enable signals (*Tx_Enbl*, *Rx_Enbl*): Asserted by PTM-TC and indicates that data may be, respectively, sent from PTM entity to PTM-TC or pulled from PTM-TC to PTM entity.
- Transmit error message (*Tx_Err*): Asserted by the PTM entity and indicates that the packet or a part of the packet already transported from PTM entity to PTM-TC is errored or undesirable for transmission (abort of transmitted packet).
- Receive error message (*Rx_Err*): Asserted by the PTM-TC to indicate that an errored packet is transported from PTM-TC to PTM entity.
- TC_link_state: Asserted by the PTM-TC and indicates that the link is active AND the local TC state machine is synchronized (applies to 64/65-octet encapsulation only) AND the remote TC state machine is synchronized (applies to 64/65-octet encapsulation only).

VI.4 OAM flow

The OAM flow across the γ interface exchanges OAM information between the OAM entity and its PTM-related TPS-TC management functions. OAM flow is bidirectional.

Appendix VII

ADSL2 automoding

(This appendix does not form an integral part of this Recommendation)

VII.1 Definition of automode

Automode shall be defined as the capability to automatically select (according to the automode policy) an operating mode among a selected set of enabled modes in a transceiver supporting multiple operating modes.

VII.2 Automode policies

A single automode policy is defined as the typical automode policy for which performance requirements should be defined (to be met with a single typical set of operating modes enabled in the MIB). Alternative automode policies may be enabled through functionalities outside the transceiver or through vendor-discretionary MIB extensions, without definition of related performance requirements.

The single typical set of enabled operating modes is:

- ITU-T G.992.5 Annex A non-overlapped downstream;
- ITU-T G.992.3 Annex A non-overlapped downstream;
- ITU-T G.992.3 Annex L non-overlapped downstream, wide upstream.

The single typical automode policy shall choose the mode which achieves the highest total data rate, where the total data rate is defined as the sum of downstream and upstream net data rates, under the standard requirements of meeting minimum data rates, target noise margins, etc., for upstream and downstream.

VII.3 Automode performance requirements

Implementers are encouraged to shorten automode initialization time.

Appendix VIII

Impact of loop and ATU impedance mismatch on the Hlog accuracy

(This appendix does not form an integral part of this Recommendation)

This appendix provides a discussion regarding the effects on measured accuracy of Hlog when there is a mismatch between a nominal loop termination impedance of 100 Ω and the actual termination impedance (Z_{ATU}) provided by the ATU. This appendix is meant to provide additional technical details regarding clause 8.12.5.1.1 on accuracy requirements for the HLOGps test parameter.

VIII.1 Impact of impedance mismatch on the Hlog error

Figure VIII.1 shows the reference diagram for computing reference received PSD with a spectrum or network analyser.

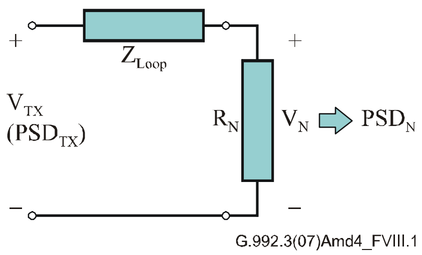


Figure VIII.1 – Measurement of PSD received by network or spectrum analyser

Z_{loop} is the impedance of the loop as seen by the network analyser looking into the test loop. Note that this loop impedance is dependent on the loop topology and may vary with frequency.

R_N is the input impedance of the network analyser and we assume $R_N = 100\ \Omega$. This value is independent of frequency.

The power spectral density of the received signal as seen by the network analyser may be represented as:

$$PSD_N = \frac{|V_{Tx}|^2}{\Delta f} \cdot \frac{R_N}{|Z_{loop} + R_N|^2} \qquad \text{(VIII.1)}$$

with Δf representing the subcarrier spacing of 4.3125 kHz.

Figure VIII.2 shows the reference diagram for computing the PSD received by the ATU.

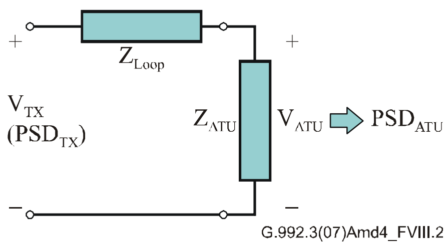


Figure VIII.2 – Measurement of PSD received by ATU

Z_{loop} is the same loop impedance as for the reference case above in Figure VIII.1; this is the impedance of the line seen by the ATU looking into the loop.

Z_{ATU} is the input impedance of the ATU as seen by the test loop.

The power spectral density of the received signal as seen by the ATU may be represented as:

$$PSD_{ATU} = \frac{|V_{Tx}|^2}{\Delta f} \cdot \frac{|Z_{ATU}|}{|Z_{loop} + Z_{ATU}|^2} \tag{VIII.2}$$

with Δf representing the subcarrier spacing of 4.3125 kHz.

The difference between equations VIII.1 and VIII.2 is the error in the receive PSD. Assuming that the transmit PSDs are identical for each case, this difference would represent the error in the HLOGps measurement. Hence, the HLOGps error in dB may be represented as follows:

$$Error_{dB} = 10 \cdot \log\left(\frac{PSD_N}{PSD_{ATU}}\right) = 10 \cdot \log\left(\frac{(R_N)}{|Z_{ATU}|} \cdot \frac{|Z_{ATU} + Z_{loop}|^2}{|R_N + Z_{loop}|^2}\right) \tag{VIII.3}$$

The above error expression in dB per equation VIII.3 also represents the (contribution of Z_{loop} and Z_{ATU} variation to the) HLOGps accuracy in dB. Figure VIII.3 shows a plot of the HLOGps error in dB vs the ATU input impedance, for different loop impedances that vary from 10 Ω to 200 Ω.

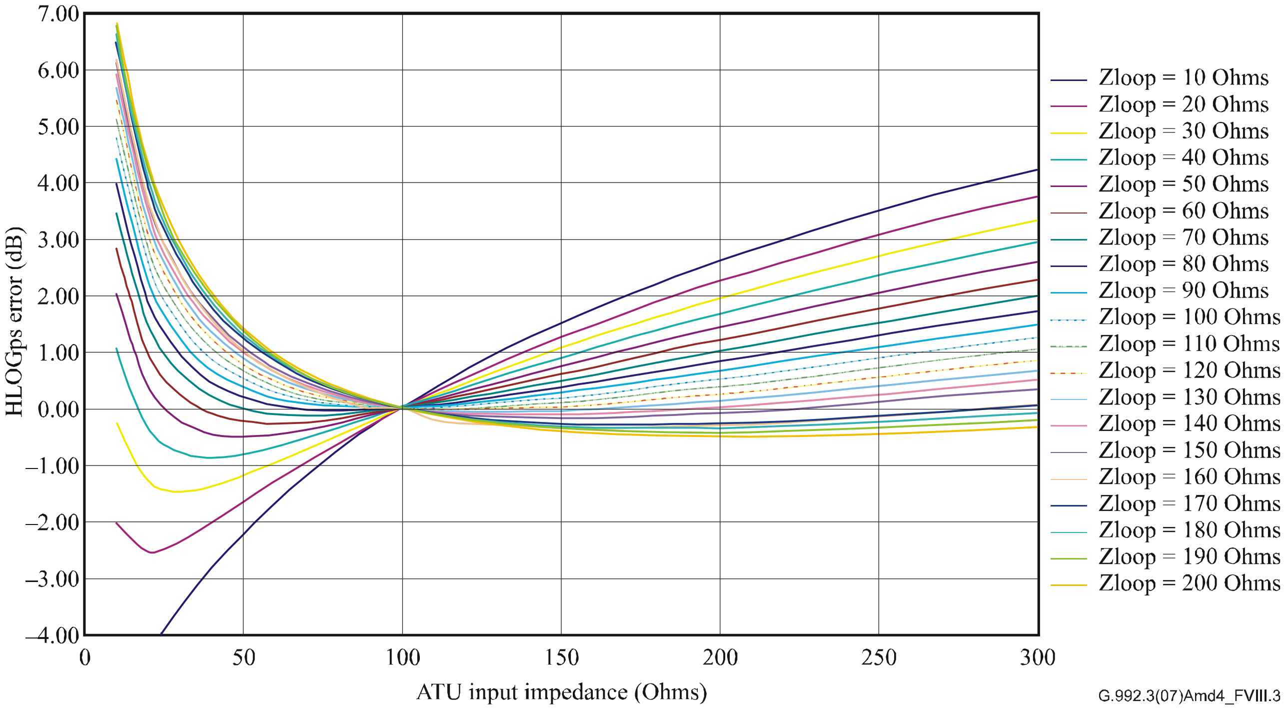


Figure VIII.3 – HLOGps error in dB as function of loop and ATU impedance variations

Regarding the variation of HLOGps error with input impedances, the following is noted:

- This Recommendation does not define any input impedance requirements for ATUs. Similarly, this Recommendation does not define any requirements on return loss. Therefore, ATU implementers are free to design for any input impedance to optimize ATU performance.

- Although it is noted that the transmit PSD is reported relative to 100 Ω, the loop impedance will generally be different from 100 Ω and the resulting transmit PSD will vary accordingly.
- The ATU input impedance varies among those from different manufacturers.
- The ATU input impedance varies with frequency, which is dependent on implementation.
- If the ATU input impedance is equal to the reference impedance of the network analyser, i.e., $Z_{ATU} = R_N$, and everything else is perfect, then the error is zero.
- The curves in Figure VIII.3 do not include any tolerance for components inside the ATU. This tolerance is implementation dependent.

Note that the actual input impedance of an ATU is complex. The impedance values shown in Figure VIII.3 are the equivalent real Ohmic values.

VIII.2 Setting the accuracy requirement for HLOGps

The HLOGps accuracy requirement is set to ±3 dB for a loop impedance that may vary between 100 and 120 Ω. The ATU impedance tolerance and the ATU component tolerance contribute to the overall ATU tolerance. The actual partitioning of the ±3 dB to each of the tolerance sources is implementation-specific. The following are examples of such partitioning:

- With an uncompensated ATU input impedance of 30 Ω, Figure VIII.3 shows that the highest HLOGps error is ±2 dB, and component tolerance may be up to ±1 dB. Compensating for ATU impedance (relative to 100 Ω) results in lower ATU impedance tolerance and allows higher component tolerance.
- With an ATU input impedance of 100 Ω, Figure VIII.3 shows that there is no HLOGps error, and component tolerance may be up to ±3 dB.

Bibliography

[b-ITU-T G.121] Recommendation ITU-T G.121 (1993), *Loudness ratings (LRs) of national systems*.

[b-ITU-T G.712] Recommendation ITU-T G.712 (2001), *Transmission performance characteristics of pulse code modulation channels*.

[b-ITU-T G.991.2] Recommendation ITU-T G.991.2 (2003), *Single-pair high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL) transceivers*.

[b-ITU-T G.992.1] Recommendation ITU-T G.992.1 (1999), *Asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) transceivers*.

[b-ITU-T G.992.2] Recommendation ITU-T G.992.2 (1999), *Splitterless asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) transceivers*.

[b-ITU-T G.992.4] Recommendation ITU-T G.992.4 (2002), *Splitterless asymmetric digital subscriber line transceivers 2 (splitterless ADSL2)*.

[b-ITU-T G.992.5] Recommendation ITU-T G.992.5 (2009), *Asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) transceivers – Extended bandwidth ADSL2 (ADSL2plus)*.

[b-ITU-T G.993.2] Recommendation ITU-T G.993.2 (2006), *Very high speed digital subscriber line transceivers 2 (VDSL2)*.

[b-ITU-T G.995.1] Recommendation ITU-T G.995.1 (2001), *Overview of digital subscriber line (DSL) Recommendations*.

[b-ITU-T G.9951] Recommendation ITU-T G.9951 (2001), *Phoneline networking transceivers – Foundation*.

[b-ITU-T G.9952] Recommendation ITU-T G.9952 (2001), *Phoneline networking transceivers – Payload format and link layer requirements*.

[b-ITU-T K.12] Recommendation ITU-T K.12 (2000), *Characteristics of gas discharge tubes for the protection of telecommunications installations*.

[b-ITU-T K.20] Recommendation ITU-T K.20 (2003), *Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in a telecommunications centre to overvoltages and overcurrents*.

[b-ITU-T K.21] Recommendation ITU-T K.21 (2003), *Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in customer premises to overvoltages and overcurrents*.

[b-ITU-T K.28] Recommendation ITU-T K.28 (1993), *Characteristics of semi-conductor arrester assemblies for the protection of telecommunications installations*.

[b-ITU-T K.30] Recommendation ITU-T K.30 (1993), *Self-restoring overcurrent protectors*.

[b-ITU-T K.36] Recommendation ITU-T K.36 (1996), *Selection of protective devices*.

[b-ITU-T K.44] Recommendation ITU-T K.44 (2003), *Resistibility tests for telecommunication equipment exposed to overvoltages and overcurrents – Basic Recommendation*.

[b-ITU-T K.45] Recommendation ITU-T K.45 (2003), *Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in the access and trunk networks to overvoltages and overcurrents*.

[b-ITU-T K.46] Recommendation ITU-T K.46 (2003), *Protection of telecommunication lines using metallic symmetric conductors against lightning-induced surges*.

[b-ITU-T O.41] Recommendation ITU-T O.41 (1994), *Psophometer for use on telephone-type circuits*.

[b-ITU-T Q.552] Recommendation ITU-T Q.552 (2001), *Transmission characteristics at 2-wire analogue interfaces of digital exchanges*.

[b-ITU-T T.35] Recommendation ITU-T T.35 (2000), *Procedure for the allocation of ITU-T defined codes for non-standard facilities*.

[b-ITU-T V.11] Recommendation ITU-T V.11/X.27 (1996), *Electrical characteristics for balanced double-current interchange circuits operating at data signalling rates up to 10 Mbit/s*.

[b-ITU-T V.90] Recommendation ITU-T V.90 (1998), *A digital modem and analogue modem pair for use on the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) at data signalling rates of up to 56 000 bit/s downstream and up to 33 600 bit/s upstream*.

[b-ANSI T1.413] ANSI T1.413 (1998), *Network to Customer Installation Interfaces – Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line (ADSL) Metallic Interface*.

[b-ANSI T1.421] ANSI T1.421 (2001), *In-Line Filter for Use with Voiceband Terminal Equipment Operating on the Same Wire Pair with High Frequency (up to 12 MHz) Devices*.

[b-ANSI T1.417] ANSI T1.417 (2003), *Spectrum Management For Loop Transmission Systems*.

[b-ATM Forum Utopia] ATM Forum AF-PHY-0039.000 v1.0 (1995), *Utopia Level 2*.

[b-ATM Forum IMA] ATM Forum AF-PHY-0086.001 v1.1 (1999), *Inverse Multiplexing for ATM (IMA) Specification*.

[b-CENELEC EN 60950-1] CENELEC EN 60950-1 (2001), *Information technology equipment – Safety Part 1: General Requirements*.

[b-EIA/TIA-571] EIA/TIA-571 (1991), *Environmental Considerations for Telephone Terminals*.

[b-T1 TR No. 28] Committee T1-Telecommunications TR No. 28 (1994), *High-Bit-Rate Digital Subscriber Line (HDSL)*.

[b-GR-974-CORE] Telcordia GR-974-CORE (1999), *Generic Requirements for Telecommunications Line Protector Units (TLPUS)*.

[b-UL 60950] Underwriter Laboratories, Inc. UL 60950, third edition (2000), *UL Standard for Safety of Information Technology Equipment*.

SERIES OF ITU-T RECOMMENDATIONS

Series A	Organization of the work of ITU-T
Series D	General tariff principles
Series E	Overall network operation, telephone service, service operation and human factors
Series F	Non-telephone telecommunication services
Series G	**Transmission systems and media, digital systems and networks**
Series H	Audiovisual and multimedia systems
Series I	Integrated services digital network
Series J	Cable networks and transmission of television, sound programme and other multimedia signals
Series K	Protection against interference
Series L	Construction, installation and protection of cables and other elements of outside plant
Series M	Telecommunication management, including TMN and network maintenance
Series N	Maintenance: international sound programme and television transmission circuits
Series O	Specifications of measuring equipment
Series P	Terminals and subjective and objective assessment methods
Series Q	Switching and signalling
Series R	Telegraph transmission
Series S	Telegraph services terminal equipment
Series T	Terminals for telematic services
Series U	Telegraph switching
Series V	Data communication over the telephone network
Series X	Data networks, open system communications and security
Series Y	Global information infrastructure, Internet protocol aspects and next-generation networks
Series Z	Languages and general software aspects for telecommunication systems

Printed in Switzerland
Geneva, 2010